English: 1 Corinthians, 1 John, 1 Peter, 1 Thessalonians, 1 Timothy, 2 Corinthians, 2 John, 2 Peter, 2 Thessalonians, 2 Timothy, 3 John, Acts, Colossians, Ephesians, Galatians, Hebrews, James, John, Jude, Luke, Mark, Matthew, Philemon, Philippians, Revelation, Romans, Titus

Formatted for Translators

©2022 Wycliffe Associates

Released under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Bible Text: The English Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB)

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English Unlocked Literal Bible is based on the unfoldingWord® Literal Text, CC BY-SA 4.0. The original work of the unfoldingWord® Literal Text is available at [https://unfoldingword.bible/ult/](https://nam12.safelinks.protection.outlook.com/?url=https%3A%2F%2Funfoldingword.bible%2Fult%2F&data=02%7C01%7Cmarv_lucas%40wycliffeassociates.org%7Cab3b29dbe7fc44554aeb08d8080e8e70%7C7baa11086adb4be299cf00a4872ab1cf%7C0%7C0%7C637268205914531190&sdata=SW2KxVr%2BcxHGAgMpv602NzoYenorfHi9bOs2SNzVpR4%3D&reserved=0).

The ULB is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Notes: English ULB Translation Notes

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English ULB Translation Notes is based on the unfoldingWord translationNotes, under CC BY-SA 4.0. The original unfoldingWord work is available at <https://unfoldingword.bible/utn>.

The ULB Notes is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

To view a copy of the CC BY-SA 4.0 license visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/>

Below is a human-readable summary of (and not a substitute for) the license.

**You are free to:**

* **Share**— copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format.
* **Adapt**— remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

**Under the following conditions:**

* **Attribution**— You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <https://BibleInEveryLanguage.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
* **ShareAlike**— If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.
* **No additional restrictions**— You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

**Notices:**

You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.

No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material.

A picture containing text, clipart

Description automatically generated

TOC \o "1-2" \h \z \uRight-click to update field (doing so will insert table of contents).

Page left intentionally blank

## Chapter 1

#### Matthew 1:1

##### The book of the genealogy of Jesus Christ

"This is the list of the ancestors of Jesus Christ"

##### Jesus Christ, son of David, son of Abraham

"Jesus Christ, a descendant of David, who was a descendant of Abraham"

##### son of David

Sometimes the phrase "son of David" is used as a title, but here it seems to be used only to identify Jesus's ancestry.

#### Matthew 1:2

##### Abraham was the father of Isaac

"Abraham became the father of Isaac" or "Abraham had a son Isaac" or "Abraham had a son named Isaac." There are different ways you could translate this. Whichever way you translate it here, it would be best to translate it the same way throughout the list of Jesus's ancestors.

##### Isaac the father ... Jacob the father

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Isaac was the father ... Jacob was the father"

#### Matthew 1:3

##### Perez the father ... Hezron the father

"Perez was the father ... Hezron was the father"

#### Matthew 1:4

##### Amminadab the father ... Nahshon the father

"Amminadab was the father ... Nahshon was the father"

#### Matthew 1:5

##### Salmon was the father of Boaz by Rahab

"Salmon and Rahab were the parents of Boaz"

##### Boaz the father of Obed by Ruth

"Boaz and Ruth were the parents of Obed"

#### Matthew 1:6

##### David was the father of Solomon by the wife of Uriah

"David was the father of Solomon, and Solomon's mother was Uriah's wife" or "David and the wife of Uriah were the parents of Solomon"

##### the wife of Uriah

"the widow of Uriah." Solomon was born after Uriah died.

#### Matthew 1:7

##### Rehoboam the father of Abijah, Abijah the father of Asa

"Rehoboam was the father of Abijah, and Abijah was the father of Asa"

#### Matthew 1:8

##### Joram

This man was called both Joram and Jehoram in the Old Testament.

#### Matthew 1:10

##### Amon

Sometimes this is translated "Amos."

#### Matthew 1:11

##### Josiah was an ancestor of Jechoniah

"Josiah was a grandfather of Jechoniah"

##### at the time of the deportation to Babylon

"when they were forced to move to Babylon" or "when the Babylonians conquered them and made them go live in Babylon."

##### Babylon

Here this means the country of Babylon, not just the city of Babylon.

#### Matthew 1:16

##### Mary, by whom Jesus was born

"Mary, who gave birth to Jesus"

##### who is called Christ

"whom people call Christ"

#### Matthew 1:18

##### His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph

"his mother, Mary, was promised in marriage to Joseph" or "His mother, Mary, was going to marry Joseph"

##### His mother, Mary, was engaged

Jesus was not already born when Mary was engaged to Joseph. Alternate translation: "Mary, who would be the mother of Jesus, was engaged"

##### before they came together

"before they got married." This may refer to Mary and Joseph sleeping together. Alternate translation: "before they had slept together"

##### she was found to be pregnant

"they realized that she was pregnant"

##### pregnant by the Holy Spirit

The power of the Holy Spirit had enabled Mary to have a baby before she had slept with a man.

#### Matthew 1:19

##### Joseph, her husband

"Joseph, who was supposed to marry Mary"

##### to divorce her quietly

"to quietly cancel their plans to get married"

#### Matthew 1:20

##### appeared to him in a dream

"came to him while Joseph was dreaming"

##### son of David

Here "son" means "descendant."

##### the one who is conceived in her is conceived by the Holy Spirit

"the Holy Spirit caused Mary to become pregnant with this child"

#### Matthew 1:21

##### you will call his name Jesus

"you must name him Jesus" or "you must give him the name Jesus."

##### for he will save

You may add a footnote that says, "The name 'Jesus' means 'the Lord saves.'"

#### Matthew 1:22

##### all this happened

The angel is no longer speaking. Matthew is now explaining the importance of what the angel said.

##### what was spoken by the Lord through the prophet

"what the Lord told the prophet to write long ago"

##### the prophet

"the prophet Isaiah"

#### Matthew 1:23

##### Behold ... Immanuel

Here Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah.

##### Behold, the virgin will become pregnant

"Look, the virgin will become pregnant" or "Pay attention. The virgin will conceive"

##### Immanuel"—which being translated is, "God with us."

"Immanuel." This name means 'God with us.'"

#### Matthew 1:24

##### he took her as his wife

"he married Mary"

#### Matthew 1:25

##### he did not know her

"he did not have sexual relations with her"

##### to a son

"to a male baby" or "to her son." Make sure it is clear that Joseph is not portrayed as the actual father.

## Chapter 2

#### Matthew 2:1

##### Bethlehem of Judea

"the town of Bethlehem in the province of Judea"

##### in the days of Herod the king

"when Herod the Great was king there"

##### learned men from the east

"knowledgable men from the east"

#### Matthew 2:2

##### Where is he who was born King of the Jews?

The men knew from studying the stars that the one who would become king had been born. They were trying to learn where he was. Alternate translation: "A baby who will become the king of the Jews has been born. Where is he?"

##### his star

"the star that tells about him" or "the star that is associated with his birth"

##### in the east

Possible meanings are 1) "as it came up in the east" or 2) "while we were in the east"

##### worship

Possible meanings are 1) they intended to worship the baby as divine, or 2) they wanted to honor him as a human king. If your language has a word that includes both meanings, you should consider using it here.

#### Matthew 2:3

##### he was troubled

"he was worried."

##### all Jerusalem

"many of the people in Jerusalem were also troubled"

#### Matthew 2:5

##### In Bethlehem of Judea

"In the town of Bethlehem in the province of Judea"

##### this is what was written by the prophet

"this is what the prophet wrote"

#### Matthew 2:6

##### General Information:

The chief priests and scribes of the people quote the prophet Micah to show that the Christ would be born in Bethlehem.

##### you, Bethlehem, ... are not the least among the rulers of Judah

"you, people of Bethlehem, ... your town is among the most important towns in Judah"

##### who will shepherd my people Israel

"who will lead my people Israel as a shepherd leads his sheep"

#### Matthew 2:7

##### men to ask them exactly what time the star had appeared.

"called the men, and he asked them, 'When exactly did this star appear?'"

#### Matthew 2:8

##### bring me a report

"report back to me" or "let me know"

#### Matthew 2:9

##### went before them

"guided them" or "led them"

##### stood still over

"stopped over"

##### where the young child was

"the place where the young child was staying"

#### Matthew 2:11

##### They fell down and worshiped him

"They knelt down and put their faces close to the ground." They did this to honor Jesus.

##### their treasures

Here "treasures" refers to the boxes or bags they used to carry their treasures. "the containers that held their treasures"

#### Matthew 2:12

##### in a dream not to return to Herod, so

"in a dream saying, 'Do not go back to King Herod.' So"

#### Matthew 2:13

##### appeared to Joseph in a dream

"came to Joseph while he was dreaming"

##### until I tell you

"until I tell you it is safe to come back"

#### Matthew 2:15

##### General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Hosea to show that the Christ would spend time in Egypt.

##### He remained

"They remained"

##### until the death of Herod

"what the Lord had said through the prophet; he said" or "what the Lord had told the prophet to say; he said"

##### Out of Egypt I have called my Son

"I have called my Son out of Egypt"

#### Matthew 2:16

##### he had been mocked by the learned men

"the learned men had tricked him"

##### He sent and killed all the male children

"He sent soldiers to kill all the baby boys"

##### according to the time that he had determined exactly from the learned men

based on what he discovered from the learned men about exactly when the star had appeared

#### Matthew 2:17

##### Then was fulfilled

"This fulfilled" or "Herod's actions fulfilled"

##### what had been spoken through Jeremiah the prophet

"what the Lord spoke long ago through the prophet Jeremiah"

#### Matthew 2:18

##### A voice was heard

"People heard a voice" or "There was a loud sound"

##### Rachel weeping for her children

Rachel lived many years before this time. This prophecy shows Rachel, who has died, weeping for her descendants.

##### she refused to be comforted

"no one could comfort her" or "she did not let anyone comfort her"

##### because they were no more

"because they were dead"

#### Matthew 2:19

##### behold

This word marks the beginning of another event in the larger story.

#### Matthew 2:20

##### those who sought the child's life

"those who were looking for the child in order to kill him"

#### Matthew 2:22

##### But when he heard

"But when Joseph heard"

##### Archelaus

This is the name of Herod's son.

#### Matthew 2:23

##### what had been spoken through the prophets

"what the Lord spoke long ago through the prophets"

##### he would be called a Nazarene

"people would say that the Christ is a Nazarene"

## Chapter 3

#### Matthew 3:1

##### In those days

"In those times" or "Some years later"

#### Matthew 3:2

##### the kingdom of heaven is near

"our God in heaven will soon show himself to be king"

#### Matthew 3:3

##### For this is he who was spoken of by Isaiah the prophet, saying

"For John is the one Isaiah the prophet spoke about when he said"

##### The voice of one calling out in the wilderness

"The voice of one calling out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone calling out in the wilderness"

##### Make ready the way of the Lord, make his paths straight

"Make the road ready for the Lord, prepare for him to come."

#### Matthew 3:4

##### wore clothing of camel's hair and a leather belt around his waist

This clothing symbolizes that John is a prophet like the prophets from long ago, especially the prophet Elijah.

#### Matthew 3:5

##### Then Jerusalem, all Judea, and all the region

"Then very may people from Jerusalem, Judea, and that region"

#### Matthew 3:6

##### They

This refers to the people coming from Jerusalem, Judea, and the region around the Jordan River.

##### They were baptized by him ... River, confessing their sins

"John baptized them ... River after they confessed their sins"

#### Matthew 3:7

##### You offspring of vipers, who

"You evil poisonous snakes! Who" or "You are evil like poisonous snakes! Who"

##### who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming?

John rebukes the Pharisees and Sadducees. Alternate translation: "you cannot flee from God's coming punishment like this." or "do not think that you can flee from God's wrath just because I baptize you."

##### flee from the wrath that is coming

"run away from the punishment that is coming" or "escape because God is about to punish you"

#### Matthew 3:8

##### Bear fruit worthy of repentance

“Let your actions show that you have truly repented”

#### Matthew 3:9

##### We have Abraham for our father

"Abraham is our ancestor" or "We are descendants of Abraham." The Jewish leaders thought that God would not punish them since they were descendants of Abraham.

##### God is able to raise up children for Abraham even out of these stones

"God can make even these stones become children of Abraham"

#### Matthew 3:10

##### Already the ax has been placed against the root of the trees. So every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire

"God has his axe and he is ready to cut down and burn any tree that does not produce good fruit" or "As a person gets his axe ready to cut down and burn a tree that does not produce good fruit, God is ready to punish you for your sin"

#### Matthew 3:11

##### for repentance

"to show that you have repented"

##### he who comes after me

John was speaking about the Christ, although he probably did not know who that was.

##### is mightier than I

"is more important than I am"

##### He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire

This means John's baptism only symbolically cleanses people of their sins. The baptism by Holy Spirit and fire will truly cleanse people of their sins. If possible, use the word "baptize" in your translation to keep the comparison to John's baptism.

#### Matthew 3:12

##### His winnowing fork is in his hand

"He is like a man whose winnowing fork is in his hand"

##### winnowing fork

This is a tool for tossing wheat up into the air to separate the wheat grain from the chaff. The heavier grain falls back down and the unwanted chaff is blown away by the wind.

##### his threshing floor

"his floor" or "the ground where he separates the grain from the chaff"

##### fire that can never be put out

"fire that no one can put out" or "fire that will never burn out"

#### Matthew 3:13

##### to be baptized by John

"so John could baptize him"

#### Matthew 3:14

##### I need to be baptized by you, and do you come to me?

"I need you to baptize me, yet you want me to baptize you."

#### Matthew 3:15

##### John permitted him

"John allowed Jesus to be baptized" or "John agreed to baptize Jesus"

#### Matthew 3:16

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### the heavens were opened to him

"Jesus saw the sky open" or "God opened the heavens to Jesus"

##### coming down like a dove

Possible meanings are 1) the Spirit was in the form of a dove or 2) the Spirit came down gently, the way a dove would.

#### Matthew 3:17

##### a voice came out of the heavens saying

"A speaker said from heaven" or "God said from heaven"

##### Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

## Chapter 4

#### Matthew 4:1

##### Jesus was led up by the Spirit

"the Spirit led Jesus"

##### to be tempted by the devil

"so the devil could tempt Jesus"

#### Matthew 4:2

##### he had fasted ... he was hungry

These refer to Jesus.

##### forty days and forty nights

"40 days"

#### Matthew 4:3

##### The tempter

These words refer to the same being as "the devil" (as in verse 1).

##### If you are the Son of God, command

"You are the Son of God, so you can command" Alternate translation: "Prove that you are the Son of God by commanding"

##### the Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### command these stones to become bread.

"say to these stones, 'Become bread.'"

##### bread

"food"

#### Matthew 4:4

##### It is written

"The scriptures say" or "God said in the scriptures"

##### Man does not live on bread alone

This implies that there is something more important to life than food.

##### but by every word that comes out of the mouth of God

"but by every word that God speaks" or "but by listening to everything that God says"

#### Matthew 4:6

##### the Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### throw yourself down

"let yourself fall to the ground" or "jump down"

##### 'He will command his angels to take care of you,' and

"'God will say to his angels, "Take care of him,"' and" or "'God will command his angels to take care of you,' and"

##### They will carry you

"The angels will hold you"

#### Matthew 4:7

##### You must not test

"One should not test" or "No person should test"

#### Matthew 4:8

##### Again, the devil

"Next, the devil"

#### Matthew 4:9

##### He said to him

"The devil said to Jesus"

##### All these things I will give you

"I will give you all these things."

##### fall down

"put your face near the ground." This was a common action to show that a person was worshiping.

#### Matthew 4:10

##### For it is written

"For Moses also wrote in the scriptures"

#### Matthew 4:11

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the important new information that follows.

#### Matthew 4:12

##### John had been handed over

"the king had handed John over to the prison" or "the king had arrested John"

#### Matthew 4:13

##### in the territories of Zebulun and Naphtali

"Zebulun" and "Naphtali" are the names of the tribes that lived in these territories many years earlier before foreigners took control of the land of Israel.

#### Matthew 4:14

##### what was said

"what God said"

#### Matthew 4:15

##### General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus's ministry in Galilee was a fulfillment of prophecy.

##### toward the sea

This is the Sea of Galilee.

#### Matthew 4:16

##### The people who sat in darkness have seen a great light

Here "darkness"means not knowing the truth about God. And "light" is God's true message

##### The people who sat

"In the territory of Zebulun and Naphtali ... where many Gentiles live, the people who sat"

##### to those who sat in the region and shadow of death, upon them has a light arisen

Here "those who sat in the region and shadow of death" represents those who did not know God. These people were in danger of dying and being separated from God forever.

#### Matthew 4:17

##### the kingdom of heaven is near

"our God in heaven will soon show himself to be king"

#### Matthew 4:18

##### casting a net into the sea

"throwing a net into the water to catch fish"

#### Matthew 4:19

##### Come, follow me

"Be my disciples"

##### I will make you fishers of men

"I will teach you to gather men to me like you used to gather fish"

#### Matthew 4:21

##### He called them

"Jesus called John and James." This phrase also means that Jesus invited them to follow him, live with him, and become his disciples.

#### Matthew 4:22

##### they immediately left

"at that moment they left"

##### left the boat ... and followed him

It should be clear that they immediately put their nets down and left that place with Jesus. If your language requires you to tell whether they were leaving for the rest of the day or for a long time or for the rest of their lives, you should probably translate as they were leaving for the rest of their lives.

#### Matthew 4:23

##### teaching in their synagogues

"teaching in the synagogues of the Galileans" or "teaching in the synagogues of those people"

##### preaching the gospel of the kingdom

"preaching the good news that God will show himself as king"

##### every kind of disease and sickness

The words "disease" and "sickness" are closely related but should be translated as two different words if possible. "Disease" is what causes a person to be sick. "Sickness" is the physical weakness or affliction that results from having a disease.

#### Matthew 4:24

##### those who were possessed by demons

"those whom demons controlled"

##### the epileptics

The word "epileptic" refers to people who have epilepsy and so sometimes become unconscious and move uncontrollably.

#### Matthew 4:25

##### the Decapolis

This name means "the Ten Towns." This is the name of a region to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee.

## Chapter 5

#### Matthew 5:1

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story in which Jesus begins to teach his disciples. This part continues through the end of chapter 7 and is frequently called the Sermon on the Mount.

#### Matthew 5:2

##### He opened his mouth

"Jesus began to speak"

#### Matthew 5:3

##### the poor in spirit

"those who know they need God"

##### for theirs is the kingdom of heaven

"for God in heaven will be their king"

#### Matthew 5:4

##### those who mourn

Possible reasons they are sad are 1) the sinfulness of the world or 2) their own sins or 3) the death of someone. Do not specify the reason for mourning unless your language requires it.

##### they will be comforted

"God will comfort them"

#### Matthew 5:5

##### the meek

"the gentle" or "those who do not rely on their own power"

##### they will inherit the earth

"God will give them the entire earth"

#### Matthew 5:6

##### those who hunger and thirst for righteousness

"those who desire to live right as much as they desire food and drink"

##### they will be filled

"God will fill them" or "God will satisfy them"

#### Matthew 5:8

##### the pure in heart

"those who only want to serve God"

##### they will see God

"God will allow them to live with him"

#### Matthew 5:9

##### the peacemakers

These are the people who help others to have peace with one another.

##### for they will be called sons of God

"for God will call them his children" or "they will be children of God"

##### sons of God

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human son or child.

#### Matthew 5:10

##### those who have been persecuted

"those people whom others treat unfairly"

##### for righteousness' sake

"because they do what God wants them to do" or "because they do what God wants them to do"

##### theirs is the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation.

#### Matthew 5:11

##### for my sake

"because you follow me" or because you believe in me"

#### Matthew 5:13

##### You are the salt of the earth

"You are like salt for the people of the world" or 2) just as salt preserves food, disciples of Jesus keep people from becoming totally corrupt."

##### if the salt has lost its taste

Possible meanings are 1) "if the salt has lost its power to do things that salt does" or 2) "if the salt has lost its flavor."

##### how can it be made salty again?

"it cannot become useful again."

##### except to be thrown out and trampled under people's feet

"except for people to throw it out into the road and walk on it"

#### Matthew 5:14

##### You are the light of the world

"You are like a light for the people of the world"

##### A city set on a hill cannot be hidden

"no one can hide the lights that shine from a city on a hill" or "Everyone sees the lights of a city on a hill"

#### Matthew 5:15

##### put it under a basket

"place the lamp under a basket." This is saying it is foolish to create light only to hide it so people do not see the light of the lamp.

#### Matthew 5:16

##### Let your light shine before people

"Let your lives be like a light that shines before people"

##### your Father who is in heaven

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 5:17

##### the prophets

"what the prophets wrote"

##### I have come ... to fulfill them

"I have come ... to do the things that are in the law and the writings of the prophets

#### Matthew 5:18

##### truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### until heaven and earth pass away

"as long as the universe lasts"

##### until all things have been accomplished

"until all things have happened" or "until God causes all things to happen"

##### all things

"everything in the law" or "all that is written in the law"

#### Matthew 5:19

##### whoever breaks

"whoever disobeys" or "whoever ignores"

##### the least one of these commandments and teaches

"any of these commandments, even the least important one, and teaches"

##### whoever ... teaches others to do so will be called

"if anyone ... teaches others to do so, God will call that person"

##### least in the kingdom of heaven

"the least important in the heavenly kingdom" or "the least important under the rule of our God in heaven"

##### keeps them and teaches them

"obeys all these commandments and teaches others to do the same"

#### Matthew 5:21

##### it was said to them in ancient times

"God said to those who lived long ago" or "Moses said to your ancestors long ago"

##### will be subject to judgment

Possible meanings are 1) "will have to go to the judge" or 2) "will be in danger of punishment."

#### Matthew 5:22

##### But I say to you

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is important. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis.

##### brother

This probably refers to a fellow believer.

##### worthless person ... fool

Both of these insults represent a person who does not think correctly. "Worthless person" is close to "brainless," where "fool" adds the idea of disobedience to God.

##### council

This was likely a local council, not the main religious council in Jerusalem.

#### Matthew 5:23

##### offering your gift

"giving your gift" or "bringing your gift to God"

##### at the altar

"at God's altar"

##### and there remember

"and while you are standing at the altar you remember"

##### your brother has anything against you

"another person is angry with you because of something you did"

#### Matthew 5:24

##### First be reconciled with your brother

"First make peace with the person"

#### Matthew 5:25

##### your adversary

This is a person who takes someone to court to accuse him of doing something wrong.

##### may hand you over to the judge

"will let the judge deal with you"

##### the officer

a person who has authority to carry out the decisions of a judge

##### you may be thrown into prison

"the officer might put you in prison"

#### Matthew 5:26

##### from there

"from the prison"

#### Matthew 5:27

##### that it was said

"that God said" or "that Moses said." See how you translated a similar phrase in Matthew 5:21.

#### Matthew 5:28

##### But I say to you

See how you translated this in Matthew 5:22.

##### everyone who looks on a woman to lust after her has already committed adultery with her in his heart

This teaches that a man who lusts after a woman is as guilty of adultery as a man who actually commits the act of adultery.

##### to lust after her

“and lusts after her” or “and desires to sleep with her”

##### in his heart

“in his mind” or “in his thoughts”

#### Matthew 5:29

##### If your right eye causes you to stumble

“if looking at something with your right eye tempts you to sin” or “if you are tempted to sin with your right eye”

##### your right eye

The Jews thought of the right hand as more important than the left hand, so the phrase “right eye” represents the more important eye. You may need to translate “right” as “better” or “stronger.”

##### pluck it out

“pluck out your eye” or “destroy it”

##### one of your members should perish

“one part of your body should perish” or “you should lose one part of your body”

##### than that your whole body should be thrown into hell

“than for God to throw your whole body into hell”

#### Matthew 5:30

##### If your right hand causes you to stumble

"If what you can do with your right hand causes you to sin" or "if you are tempted to sin with your right hand"

##### right hand

This means the important hand, as opposed to the left hand. You may need to translate "right" as "better" or "stronger."

##### cut it off

"cut off your hand"

#### Matthew 5:31

##### sends his wife away

"divorces his wife."

##### let him give

"he must give"

#### Matthew 5:32

##### makes her an adulteress

It is the man who divorces the woman improperly who "causes her to commit adultery." In many cultures it would be normal for her to remarry, but if the divorce is improper, such a remarriage is adultery.

##### marries her after she has been divorced

"marries her after her husband has divorced her" or "marries the divorced woman"

#### Matthew 5:33

##### Again, you have heard

"Also, you have heard" or "Here is another example. You have heard"

##### Do not swear a false oath, but carry out your oaths to the Lord.

"Do not swear that you will do something and then not do it. Instead do whatever you have sworn to the Lord that you will do"

#### Matthew 5:34

##### General Information:

In Matthew 5:34-37, some people were teaching that if a person swears by God that he will do something, then he must do it, but if he swears by something else, then it is less offensive if he does not do what he swore to do. Jesus says that swearing by heaven or earth or Jerusalem is just as serious as swearing by God because those things all belong to God.

##### swear not at all

"do not swear at all" or "do not swear by anything"

##### neither by heaven

"Do not swear by heaven"

##### it is the throne of God

"it is from here that God rules"

#### Matthew 5:35

##### nor by the earth ... nor by Jerusalem

"do not swear by the earth ... and do not swear by Jerusalem." Jesus continues to name things that people should not swear by.

##### it is the footstool for his feet

"it is like a footstool where a king rests his feet"

##### for it is the city of the great King

"for it is the city that belongs to God, the great King"

#### Matthew 5:36

##### Neither swear by your head

"And do not swear by your head." See how you translated "swear" in Matthew 5:34.

#### Matthew 5:37

##### let your speech be 'Yes, yes,' or 'No, no.'

"if you mean 'yes,' say 'yes,' and if you mean 'no,' say 'no.'"

#### Matthew 5:38

##### that it was said

See how you translated this in Matthew 5:27

##### eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth

The law of Moses allowed a person to harm a person in the same way he had harmed him, but he could not harm him more than that..

#### Matthew 5:39

##### one who is evil

"an evil person" or "someone who harms you"

##### strikes

hits with the back of an open hand

##### turn to him the other also

"let him hit your other cheek also"

#### Matthew 5:40

##### tunic ... cloak

The "tunic" was worn close to the body, like a heavy shirt or a sweater. The "cloak," the more valuable of the two, was worn over the "tunic" for warmth and also used as a blanket for warmth at night.

##### let that person also have your cloak

"give that person your cloak, too"

#### Matthew 5:41

##### Whoever compels you to go one mile

"If someone forces you to walk one mile with him"

##### one mile

This is one thousand paces, the distance a Roman soldier could legally force someone to carry something for him. If "mile" is confusing, it can be translated as "one kilometer."

##### go with him two

"go with him twice as far" or "go with him two miles"

#### Matthew 5:42

##### do not turn away from

"do not refuse to lend to."

#### Matthew 5:43

##### General Information:

God taught in the law that people must love their neighbors. Some people said that God taught that people should hate their enemies.

##### your neighbor

"your countrymen" or "those who belong to your people group"

#### Matthew 5:44

##### I say to you ... your enemies ... pray ... persecute you

All instances of "you" and "your," as well as the command to pray, are plural.

#### Matthew 5:45

##### you may be sons of your Father

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to human sons or children.

#### Matthew 5:46

##### what reward do you get?

"you will get no reward."

##### Do not even the tax collectors do the same thing?

"Even the tax collectors do the same thing."

#### Matthew 5:47

##### what do you do more than others?

"you do nothing more than others."

##### greet

This is a general term for showing a desire for the well-being of the hearer.

##### Do not even the Gentiles do the same thing?

"Even the Gentiles do the same thing."

#### Matthew 5:48

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

## Chapter 6

#### Matthew 6:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples in his Sermon on the Mount, which began in Matthew 5:3.

##### Watch out

"Be careful" or "Beware"

##### before people to be seen by them

"in front of people just so that they can see you and think well of you"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 6:2

##### So when you give alms

"So when you give to poor people"

##### do not sound a trumpet before yourself

"do not draw attention to yourself like someone who plays a loud trumpet in a crowd"

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

#### Matthew 6:3

##### do not let your left hand know what your right hand is doing

“do it so secretly that even your left hand does not know that your right hand is giving alms”

#### Matthew 6:4

##### your alms may be given in secret

"you can give to the poor without other people knowing"

#### Matthew 6:5

##### so that they may be seen by people

"so that people will see them and give them honor"

#### Matthew 6:6

##### enter your inner chamber. Shut the door

“go into room alone. Close the door” or “go where you can be alone”

##### Father, who is in secret

“Father, who is with you in private” or 2) no one can see God. Alternate translation: “Father, who is invisible”

##### your Father who sees in secret

“your Father will see what you do in private and”

#### Matthew 6:7

##### do not make useless repetitions

"do not keeping repeating meaningless words"

##### they will be heard

"their false gods will hear them"

#### Matthew 6:9

##### Our Father in heaven

This is the beginning of the prayer and how Jesus teaches the people to address God.

##### may your name be honored as holy

Here "your name" refers to God himself. Alternate translation: "may people honor you as holy" or "may people honor you because you are holy"

#### Matthew 6:10

##### May your kingdom come

"May you rule over everyone and everything completely"

##### May your will be done on earth as it is in heaven

"May everything on earth happen in accordance with your will, just as everything in heaven does"

#### Matthew 6:11

##### daily bread

Here "bread" refers to food in general.

#### Matthew 6:12

##### debts

A debt is what one person owes another.

##### our debtors

A debtor is a person who owes a debt to another person.

#### Matthew 6:13

##### Do not bring us into temptation

"Do not let anything tempt us" or "Do not let anything make us want to sin"

#### Matthew 6:14

##### their trespasses

"when they trespass against you" or "when they do you wrong"

#### Matthew 6:15

##### their trespasses ... your trespasses

"them when they trespass against you ... you when you trespass against God" or "them when they do things that harm you ... you when you do things that make your Father angry"

#### Matthew 6:16

##### they disfigure their faces

"they make their faces look dirty" or "they put ashes on their faces"

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

#### Matthew 6:17

##### anoint your head

Jesus means that people should look the same whether they are fasting or not.

#### Matthew 6:18

##### who sees in secret

"who sees what you do in private."

#### Matthew 6:19

##### treasures

"riches" or "valuable things"

##### where moth and rust destroy

"where moths and rust ruin things"

##### moth

a small, flying insect that destroys cloth

#### Matthew 6:20

##### store up for yourselves treasures in heaven

This means to do good things on earth so God will reward you in heaven.

#### Matthew 6:21

##### there will your heart be also

Here "heart" means a person's thoughts and desires.

#### Matthew 6:22

##### The eye is the lamp of the body

"A person's eyes are like a lamp for his body"

##### if your eye is good

"if your eye is noble" or "if your eyes see clearly."

##### the whole body is filled with light

Possible meanings are 1) "you are full of righteousness" or 2) "you understand what is truly good"

#### Matthew 6:23

##### if your eye is bad, your whole body is full of darkness

Possible meanings are 1) "if your eye does not see clearly, it fills your body with darkness" or 2) "if your eye is bad, it shows that your body is full of darkness."

##### your whole body is full of darkness

Possible meanings are "you are full of evil" or 2) "you will understand nothing about what is right."

##### how great is that darkness!

"then that darkness is extremely dark"

#### Matthew 6:24

##### You cannot serve God and wealth

"You cannot love God and money at the same time"

#### Matthew 6:25

##### I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### is not life more than food, and the body more than clothes?

"life is more than what you eat, and your body is more than what you wear." or "there are things in life that are more important than food, and there are things concerning the body that are more important than clothes."

#### Matthew 6:26

##### gather into barns

"store food in barns"

##### Are you not more valuable than they are?

"Obviously you are more valuable than birds."

#### Matthew 6:27

##### Which one of you by being anxious can add one cubit to his lifespan?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "None of you can add a cubit to your lifespan by worrying." or "Worrying will not help any of you make your life even one hour longer."

##### one cubit

A cubit, a measure of a little less than half a meter, is used here to refer to a short period of time. Alternate translation: "one hour" or "one minute"

#### Matthew 6:28

##### Why are you anxious about clothing?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "There is no reason to be worried about clothing."

##### lilies

A lily is a kind of wild flower.

##### they do not spin cloth

"they do not spin thread for cloth" or "they do not make cloth"

#### Matthew 6:29

##### even Solomon ... was not clothed like one of these

Jesus speaks about the lilies as if they were people who wore clothes. The lilies were plants having beautiful and colorful flowers.

##### was not clothed like one of these

"did not wear clothes that are as beautiful as these lilies"

#### Matthew 6:30

##### so clothes the grass in the fields

"makes such beautiful flowers to be like clothing for the grass in the field"

##### is thrown into the oven

"someone throws it into a fire" or "someone burns it"

##### how much more will he clothe you ... faith?

"he will certainly clothe you ... faith."

##### you of little faith

"you who have such little faith." Jesus addresses the people this way because their anxiety about food and clothing shows they have little faith in God.

#### Matthew 6:31

##### What clothes will we wear

"What possessions will we have"

#### Matthew 6:32

##### For the Gentiles search for these things

"For the Gentiles are concerned about what they will eat, drink, and wear"

##### your heavenly Father knows that you need them

Jesus is implying that God will make sure their basic needs are met.

#### Matthew 6:33

##### seek first his kingdom and his righteousness

"concern yourselves first with serving God, who is your king, and doing what is right"

##### all these things will be given to you

"God will provide all these things for you"

#### Matthew 6:34

##### tomorrow will be anxious for itself

"tomorrow there will be other things to be anxious about"

##### Each day has enough evil of its own

"Each day has enough trouble of its own"

## Chapter 7

#### Matthew 7:1

##### Do not judge

"Do not condemn others"

##### you will not be judged

"God will not judge you" or "God will not condemn you"

#### Matthew 7:2

##### with the judgment you judge, you will be judged

"God will judge you in the same way you judge others"

##### measure

Possible meanings are 1) this is the amount of punishment given or 2) this is the standard used for judgment.

##### it will be measured out to you

"God will measure it out to you"

#### Matthew 7:3

##### Why do you look ... brother's eye, but you do not take notice of the log that is in your own eye?

"You look ... brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye." or "Do not look ... brother's eye and ignore the log that is in your own eye."

##### the tiny piece of straw that is in your brother's eye

This refers to the less important faults of a fellow believer.

##### tiny piece of straw

"speck" or "splinter" or "bit of dust." Use a word for the smallest thing that commonly falls into a person's eyes.

##### brother

All occurrences of "brother" in 7:3-5 refer to a fellow believer, not to a literal brother or a neighbor.

##### the log that is in your own eye

This is refers to a person's serious faults. Jesus is saying that a person should pay attention to his own serious faults before he deals with another person's less important faults.

##### log

the largest part of a tree that someone has cut down

#### Matthew 7:4

##### How can you say ... your own eye?

"You should not say ... your own eye."

#### Matthew 7:6

##### dogs ... pigs

Jews considered these animals dirty, and God told the Jews not to eat them. Jesus used these words to refer to wicked people who do not value holy things. It would be best to translate these words literally.

##### pearls

These are similar to round, valuable stones or beads. Jesus used this word to refer to the knowledge of God or precious things in general.

##### they may trample

"the pigs may trample"

##### then turn and tear

"the dogs will then turn and tear"

#### Matthew 7:7

##### Ask ... Seek ... Knock

These are word pictures of praying to God. The verb form shows that we are to keep praying until he answers.

##### Ask

"Ask for what you need" or "Ask God for what you need"

##### it will be given to you

"you will receive it" or "he will give it to you"

##### Seek

"Look for what you need"

##### Knock

"Call at the door"

##### it will be opened to you

"the door will be opened for you" or "God will open it for you"

#### Matthew 7:9

##### Or which one of you ... a stone?

"There is not one person among you ... a stone."

##### a loaf of bread

"some food"

##### stone

This word should be translated literally.

#### Matthew 7:10

##### Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a snake?

"And there is not one person among you, if his son asks for a fish, will give him a snake."

##### fish ... snake

These words should be translated literally.

#### Matthew 7:11

##### how much more will your Father in heaven give ... him?

"then your Father in heaven will most certainly give ... him."

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 7:12

##### for this is the law and the prophets

"for this is what Moses and the prophets teach in the scriptures"

#### Matthew 7:13

##### Enter through the narrow gate ... many people who go through it

This is an image of people traveling on a road and going through a gate into a kingdom. One kingdom is easy to enter; the other is hard to enter.

##### Wide is the gate and broad is the way that leads to destruction

"The gate is wide and the road is broad that leads to destruction" or "The wide gate and the broad road lead to destruction"

##### to destruction

"to the place where people are destroyed"

#### Matthew 7:14

##### the gate is narrow and the way is difficult that leads to life

"the narrow gate and the difficult path lead to life"

##### to life

"to the place where people live"

#### Matthew 7:15

##### Beware of

"Be on guard against"

##### who come to you in sheep's clothing but are truly ravenous wolves

"who look like sheep but are really ravenous wolves" or "who appear to be harmless like sheep, but are really like ravenous wolves"

##### ravenous wolves

wolves that are extremely hungry and that consume or destroy everything they touch

#### Matthew 7:16

##### By their fruits you will know them

"Just as you know a tree by its fruit, you will know false prophets by how they act" or "You will know them by the results of their teaching”

##### Do people gather ... thistles?

"People do not gather ... thistles."

#### Matthew 7:17

##### every good tree produces good fruit

Jesus refers to good prophets who produce good works or words.

##### the bad tree produces bad fruit

Jesus refers to bad prophets who produce evil works.

#### Matthew 7:19

##### is chopped down and thrown into the fire

"people chop down and throw into the fire" or "people chop down and burn"

#### Matthew 7:20

##### you will recognize them by their fruits

"You will know what they are really like by their fruits"

#### Matthew 7:21

##### Not everyone who says to me, 'Lord, Lord,' will enter

"Some who say to me, 'Lord, Lord,' will not enter"

##### will enter into the kingdom of heaven

"will live with God in heaven when he shows himself to be king"

##### only those who do the will of my Father who is in heaven

"only those who do what my Father in heaven wants will enter"

#### Matthew 7:22

##### in that day

"on judgment day"

##### did we not prophesy ... drive out demons ... do many miracles?

"we prophesied ... we drove out demons ... we did many miracles."

##### in your name

Possible meanings are 1) "by your authority" or "by your power" or 2) "because we were doing what you wanted us to do" or 3) "because we asked you for the power to do it"

#### Matthew 7:23

##### I never knew you

"You are not my follower" or "I have nothing to do with you"

#### Matthew 7:24

##### Therefore

"For that reason"

##### my words

"What I Say"

##### rock

This is the bedrock below the topsoil and clay, not a large stone or boulder above the ground.

#### Matthew 7:25

##### it was founded on the rock

"its foundation was on the rock" or he built it on the firm rock"

#### Matthew 7:26

##### like a foolish man who built his house upon the sand

Jesus compares those who do not obey his words to foolish house-builders. Only a fool would build a house on a sandy place where rain, floods, and wind can sweep the sand away.

#### Matthew 7:27

##### fell

collapsed

##### its destruction was complete

:It was completely destroyed"

#### Matthew 7:28

##### It came about that when

"When" or "After"

##### were astonished by his teaching

"were amazed by the way he taught"

#### Matthew 7:29

##### as one who had authority

"with authority"

## Chapter 8

#### Matthew 8:2

##### Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### a leper

"a man who had leprosy" or "a man who had a skin disease"

##### bowed before him

This is a sign of humble respect before Jesus.

##### if you are willing

"if you want to"

##### you can make me clean

"you can heal me" or "please heal me"

#### Matthew 8:3

##### he was cleansed of his leprosy

"At that moment the leprosy left him" or "the leprosy ended" or "he became well"

#### Matthew 8:4

##### say nothing to any man

"do not say anything to anyone" or "do not tell anyone I healed you"

##### show yourself to the priest

Jewish law required that the person show his healed skin to the priest, who would then allow him or her to return to the community, to be with other people.

##### offer the gift that Moses commanded, for a testimony to them

The law of Moses required that someone healed of leprosy give a thanksgiving offering to the priest. When the priest accepted the gift, people would know that the man had been healed.

##### to them

This can possibly refer to 1) the priests or 2) all the people or 3) the critics of Jesus. If possible, use a pronoun that could refer to any of these groups.

#### Matthew 8:5

##### When he was coming into Capernaum

"When Jesus was coming into Capernaum"

#### Matthew 8:6

##### paralyzed

unable to move because of disease or stroke

#### Matthew 8:7

##### I will come and heal him

"I will come to your house and make your servant well"

#### Matthew 8:8

##### under my roof

"into my house"

##### say the word

"give the command"

##### will be healed

"will become well"

#### Matthew 8:9

##### I also am a man under authority, and I have soldiers under me

"I also have to obey my leaders, and I have soldiers who have to obey me"

#### Matthew 8:10

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### I have not found anyone with such faith in Israel

Jesus's hearers would have thought that the Jews in Israel, who claim to be children of God, would have greater faith than anyone. Jesus is saying they are wrong and that the centurion's faith was greater.

#### Matthew 8:11

##### you

Here "you" is plural and refers to "those who were following him" in Matthew 8:10.

##### from the east and the west

"from everywhere" or "from far away in every direction"

##### recline at the table

"sit at the feast"

##### in the kingdom of heaven

"when our God in heaven shows that he is king"

#### Matthew 8:12

##### sons of the kingdom will be cast out

"God will throw the sons of the kingdom out"

##### the sons of the kingdom

"the citizens of the kingdom"or "those who should have allowed God to rule over them"

##### the outer darkness

"the distant dark place"

##### weeping and grinding of teeth

"weeping and showing their extreme suffering"

#### Matthew 8:13

##### so may it be done for you

"so may it happen to you" or "so I will do it for you"

##### the servant was healed

"the servant became well"

##### at that very hour

"at the exact time Jesus said he would heal the servant"

#### Matthew 8:14

##### Peter's mother-in-law

"the mother of Peter's wife"

#### Matthew 8:15

##### the fever left her

"the fever ended"

#### Matthew 8:16

##### many who were possessed by demons

"many people whom demons possessed" or "many people whom demons controlled"

##### He drove out the spirits with a word

"By speaking, he made the spirits go away" or "He commanded the spirits to leave and they left"

#### Matthew 8:17

##### This was to fulfill

"Jesus did this to fulfill"

##### what was spoken through Isaiah the prophet

"what Isaiah the prophet had spoken"

##### He took our illnesses and bore our diseases

"Truly he took our illnesses"

#### Matthew 8:18

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

##### he gave instructions

"he told his disciples"

#### Matthew 8:19

##### Then

This means after Jesus "gave instructions" but before he could get into the boat.

#### Matthew 8:20

##### Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests

This means even wild animals have somewhere to rest.

##### Foxes

Foxes are animals like dogs. make holes in the ground to live in.

##### the Son of Man

"I, the Son of man" or "the man from heaven" or "the One who became a human"

##### nowhere to lay his head

"no place of his own to sleep"

#### Matthew 8:21

##### allow me first to go and bury my father

It is unclear whether the man's father has died and he will bury him immediately, or if the man wants to wait until his father dies so he can bury him before he follows Jesus.

#### Matthew 8:22

##### leave the dead to bury their own dead

"let spiritually dead people bury their own people who have died." The main point is that a disciple must not let anything delay him from following Jesus.

#### Matthew 8:24

##### Behold

"Suddenly" or "Without warning"

##### there arose a great storm on the sea

"a powerful storm arose on the sea"

##### so that the boat was covered with the waves

"so that the waves covered the boat"

#### Matthew 8:25

##### woke him up, saying, "Save us

Possible meanings are 1) they first woke Jesus and then they said, "Save us" or 2) as they were waking Jesus up, they were saying "Save us."

##### we are perishing

"we are going to die" or "we are about to die"

#### Matthew 8:26

##### Why are you afraid ... faith?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not be afraid ... faith!" or "There is nothing for you to be afraid of ... faith!"

##### you of little faith

"you who have such little faith." Jesus addresses his disciples this way because their anxiety about the storm shows they have little faith in him to control it. See how you translated this in (Matthew 6:30).

#### Matthew 8:27

##### What sort of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him?

"This man is unlike any other person! Even the wind and the waves obey him!"

#### Matthew 8:28

##### to the other side

"to the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

##### the Gadarenes

This name refers to the people who lived in the town of Gadara.

##### They ... were very violent, so that no traveler could pass that way

The demons that were controlling these two men were so dangerous that no one could go through that area.

#### Matthew 8:29

##### Behold

This word introduces something surprising. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### What do we have to do with you, Son of God?

"You have nothing to do with us, Son of God!" or "You have no right to bother us, Son of God!"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus, which describes his relationship to God.

##### Have you come here to torment us before the set time?

"You have no right to punishment us before the time for that!"

#### Matthew 8:30

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew tells background information about a herd of pigs that had been there before Jesus arrived.

#### Matthew 8:31

##### If you cast us out

"Because you are going to cast us out"

#### Matthew 8:32

##### The demons came out and went into the pigs

"The demons left the men and entered the pigs"

##### behold

This alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### rushed down the steep hill

"ran quickly down the steep slope"

##### they died in the water

"they fell into the water and drowned"

#### Matthew 8:33

##### tending the pigs

"taking care of the pigs"

#### Matthew 8:34

##### Behold

This word introduces another surprising event.

##### all the city

The word "city" here refers to the people of the city. The word "all" is probably an exaggeration to emphasize that very many people came out. Not necessarily every person came out.

##### Their Region

"their area"

## Chapter 9

#### Matthew 9:1

##### into his own city

"to the town where he lived." This refers to Capernaum.

#### Matthew 9:2

##### they brought

"some men from the city brought"

##### Son

The man was not Jesus's real son. Jesus was speaking to him politely. If this is confusing, it can also be translated "My friend" or "Young man" or even omitted.

##### Your sins have been forgiven

"I have forgiven your sins"

#### Matthew 9:3

##### said among themselves

Possible meanings are 1) each one was thinking to himself, or 2) they were speaking among themselves.

##### blaspheming

The scribes thought that Jesus was insulting God because he claimed do something that only God can do.

#### Matthew 9:4

##### knew their thoughts

Jesus knew what they were thinking

##### Why are you thinking evil in your hearts?

'You are thinking evil in your hearts." or "You should not think evil thoughts."

##### evil

This is moral evil or wickedness, not simply error in fact.

#### Matthew 9:5

##### For which is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?

"For it is easier to say 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up and walk.'"

##### Your sins are forgiven

"I have forgiven your sins"

#### Matthew 9:6

##### go to your house

Jesus is not forbidding the man to go elsewhere. He is giving the man the opportunity to go home.

#### Matthew 9:8

##### they were afraid

Possible meanings are 1) they were afraid, or 2) they were in awe. "Awe" is a feeling of wonder a person has when they see or experience something great or powerful.

##### who had given

"because he had given"

##### such authority

This refers to the authority to declare sins forgiven.

#### Matthew 9:9

##### passed by

"was leaving" or "was going"

##### Matthew ... him ... He

Church tradition says that this Matthew is the author of this Gospel, but the text gives no reason to change the pronouns from "him" and "He" to "me" and "I."

##### He said to him

"Jesus said to Matthew"

##### He got up and followed him

"Matthew got up and followed Jesus." This means Matthew became Jesus's disciple.

#### Matthew 9:10

##### the house

This is probably Matthew's house, but it could also be Jesus's house. Specify only if needed to avoid confusion.

##### behold

Here this word introduces a surprising event. Your language may have a way of doing this

##### sinners

people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

#### Matthew 9:11

##### When the Pharisees saw it

"When the Pharisees saw that Jesus was eating with the tax collectors and sinful people"

##### Why does your teacher eat with tax collectors and sinners?

"Your teacher should not eat with tax collectors and sinner." The Pharisees were criticizing what Jesus was doing.

#### Matthew 9:12

##### When Jesus heard this

"When Jesus heard what the Pharisees said about him"

##### People who are strong in body do not need a physician, only those who are sick

"People who are healthy do not need a doctor; only people who are sick need a doctor." Jesus means that just as sick people need a doctor, sinners need him.

#### Matthew 9:13

##### You should go and learn what this means

Jesus is about to quote the scriptures. Alternate translation: "You should learn what God meant when he said this"

##### For I came

Here "I" refers to Jesus.

##### the righteous

"those who think they are righteous"

##### but sinners

"but I came to call sinners to repent"

#### Matthew 9:14

##### do not fast

“do not stop eating at certain times” or “continue to eat regularly”

#### Matthew 9:15

##### Can the sons of the wedding hall mourn while the bridegroom is still with them?

"The sons of the wedding hall never mourn while the bridegroom is still with them."

##### sons of the wedding hall

"bridegroom's attendants"

##### the days will come when

"the time will come when" or "someday"

##### the bridegroom will be taken away from them

"the bridegroom will not be able to be with them any longer" or "someone will take the bridegroom away from them"

#### Matthew 9:16

##### No man puts a piece of new cloth on an old garment

"No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment" or "People do not sew a piece of new cloth as a patch old clothing"

##### the patch will tear away from the garment

If someone were to wash the garment, the patch of new cloth would shrink, but the old garment would not shrink. This would tear the patch off the garment and leave a bigger hole.

#### Matthew 9:17

##### Neither do people put

"Neither does anyone pur" or "People never put"

##### new wine

"unfermented wine" or "grape juice" or "unfermented fruit juice"

##### old wineskins

This refers to wineskins that have stretched and dried out because they were already used for fermenting wine.

##### wineskins

"wine bags" or "skin bags." These were bags made out of animal skins.

##### the wine will be spilled, and the wineskins will be destroyed

"and this will ruin the wineskins and spill the wine"

##### the skins will burst

When the new wine ferments and expands, old wineskins tear open because they can no longer stretch out.

##### fresh wineskins

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to wineskins that no one has used.

##### both will be preserved

"this will keep safe both the wineskins and the wine"

#### Matthew 9:18

##### behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### bowed down to him

This is a way someone would show respect in Jewish culture.

#### Matthew 9:19

##### his disciples

"Jesus's disciples"

#### Matthew 9:20

##### Behold

The word "Behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### who suffered from a discharge of blood

"who had been bleeding" or "who frequently had a flow of blood." She was probably bleeding from her womb even when it was not the normal time for it. Some cultures may have a polite way of referring to this condition.

##### his garment

"his robe" or "what he was wearing"

#### Matthew 9:21

##### For she had said to herself, "If only I touch his clothes, I will be made well."

She said this to herself before she touched Jesus's garment. This tells why she touched Jesus's garment.

#### Matthew 9:22

##### Daughter

The woman was not Jesus's real daughter. Jesus was speaking to her politely. If this is confusing, it can also be translated "Young woman" or even omitted.

##### your faith has made you well

"because you believed in me, I will heal you" or “because you believed, you will become well”

##### the woman was healed from that hour

“the woman became well at that moment”

#### Matthew 9:23

##### Connecting Statement:

This returns to the account of Jesus bringing the daughter of the Jewish official back to life.

##### the flute players and the crowd making a commotion

This was a common way to mourn for someone who has died.

##### and the crowd making a commotion

"and the crowd making a lot of noise" or "and the noisy crowd"

#### Matthew 9:24

##### Go away

Jesus said this to the crowd.

##### the girl is not dead, but she is asleep

It was common in Jesus's day to refer to a dead person as one who "sleeps." But here the dead girl will get up, as though she had only been sleeping.

#### Matthew 9:25

##### When the crowd had been put outside

"After Jesus had sent the crowd outside" or "After the family had sent the people outside"

#### Matthew 9:26

##### The news about this spread into all that region

"The people of that whole region heard about it" or "The people who saw that the girl was alive started telling everyone in the whole area about it"

#### Matthew 9:27

##### passed by

"was leaving" or "was going"

##### followed him

This means they were walking behind Jesus, not necessarily that they had become his disciples.

##### Son of David

Jesus was not David’s literal son. Here “Son of David” is a title for the Messiah. Alternate Translation: “Descendant of David”

#### Matthew 9:28

##### When Jesus had come into the house

This could be either Jesus's own house or the house in Matthew 9:10.

##### Yes, Lord

"Yes, Lord, we believe you can heal us"

#### Matthew 9:29

##### Let it be done to you according to your faith

"I will do as you have believed" or "Because you believe, it will happen”

#### Matthew 9:30

##### their eyes were opened

"God healed their eyes" or "the two blind men were able to see"

##### See that no one knows about this

"Be sure no one finds out about this" or "Do not tell anyone that I healed you"

#### Matthew 9:31

##### spread the news

“told many people throughout that region what had happened to them”

#### Matthew 9:32

##### a mute man ... was brought to Jesus

"someone brought a mute man ... to Jesus"

##### a mute man

a man who was not able to talk

##### possessed by a demon

"whom a demon had possessed" or "whom a demon was controlling"

#### Matthew 9:33

##### When the demon had been driven out

"After Jesus had forced the demon out" or "After Jesus made the demon to leave"

##### the mute man spoke

"the man who had been mute spoke"

##### This has never been seen

“No one has ever seen anything like this before”

#### Matthew 9:34

##### he drives

The pronoun "he" refers to Jesus.

#### Matthew 9:35

##### cities ... villages

"large villages ... small villages" or "large towns ... small towns"

##### the gospel of the kingdom

“the good news that God will show himself as king”

##### all kinds of disease and all kinds of sickness

"every disease and every sickness." The words "disease" and "sickness" are closely related but should be translated as two different words if possible. "Disease" is what causes a person to be sick. "Sickness" is the physical weakness or affliction that results from having a disease.

#### Matthew 9:36

##### They were like sheep without a shepherd

"The people did not have a leader"

#### Matthew 9:37

##### The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few

Jesus said this to teach that there are a lot of people who are ready to believe God but only a few people to teach them about God.

##### The harvest is plentiful

"There is plenty of ripe food for someone to collect"

##### laborers

"workers"

#### Matthew 9:38

##### pray to the Lord of the harvest

"pray to God, because he is in charge of the harvest"

## Chapter 10

#### Matthew 10:1

##### gave them authority ... sickness

Be sure that the text clearly communicates that this authority was 1) to drive out unclean spirits and 2) to heal disease and sickness.

##### to drive them out

"to make the unclean spirits leave"

#### Matthew 10:2

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew tells the names of the twelve apostles.

##### twelve apostles

This is the same group as the “twelve disciples” in Matthew 10:1.

##### first

This is first in order, not in rank. Peter was probably the first to become one of Jesus’ disciples.

#### Matthew 10:3

##### Matthew the tax collector

"Matthew, who was a tax collector"

#### Matthew 10:4

##### the Zealot

"the patriot" or "the nationalist" or 2) "the Zealot" is a description that shows that he was zealous for God to be honored.

##### who would betray him

"who would betray Jesus"

#### Matthew 10:5

##### General Information:

Although verse 5 begins by saying that he sent out the twelve, Jesus gave these instructions before he sent them out.

##### These twelve Jesus sent out

"Jesus sent out these twelve men" or "It was these twelve men whom Jesus sent out"

##### sent out

Jesus sent them out for a particular purpose.

##### He instructed them

"He told them what they needed to do" or "He commanded them"

#### Matthew 10:6

##### lost sheep of the house of Israel

“the people of Israel. They are like lost sheep”

##### house of Israel

"people of Israel" or "descendants of Israel"

#### Matthew 10:7

##### The kingdom of heaven is near

“Our God in heaven will soon show himself to be king”

#### Matthew 10:8

##### raise the dead

"cause the dead to live again"

##### Freely you have received, freely give

"Freely you have received these things, freely give them to others" or "You received these things without paying, so give them to others without making them pay"

#### Matthew 10:9

##### gold, silver, or copper

These are metals out of which coins were made. Alternate translation: "money"

##### belts

"purses" or "pouches"

#### Matthew 10:10

##### traveling bag

This could either be any bag used to carry things on a journey, or a bag used by someone to collect food or money.

##### an extra tunic

Use the same word you used for "tunic" in Matthew 5:40.

##### his food

"what he needs"

#### Matthew 10:11

##### Whatever city or village you enter

"Whenever you enter a city or village" or "When you go into any city or village"

##### worthy

A "worthy" person is a person who is willing to welcome the disciples.

##### stay there until you leave

"live in that person's house until you leave the town or village"

#### Matthew 10:12

##### As you enter into the house, greet it

“As you enter the house, greet the people who live in it”

#### Matthew 10:13

##### If the house is worthy

"If the people in that house receive you well" or "If the people who live in that house treat you well"

##### let your peace come upon it

"let them receive your peace" or "let them receive the peace that you greeted them with"

##### if it is not worthy

"if they do not receive you well" or "if they do not treat you well"

##### let your peace return to you

"take back your greeting of peace"

#### Matthew 10:14

##### As for those who do not receive you or listen

"If no people in that house or city will receive you or listen"

##### listen to your words

"listen to your message" or "listen to what you have to say"

##### shake off the dust from your feet

"shake the dust off your feet as you leave." This is a sign that God has rejected the people of that house or city.

#### Matthew 10:15

##### Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

##### it will be more bearable

"the suffering will be less"

##### the land of Sodom and Gomorrah

"the people who lived in the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah"

##### that city

"the people of the city that does not receive you"

#### Matthew 10:16

##### See, I send

"Look, I send" or "Listen, I send" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you. I send"

##### I send you out

Jesus is sending them out for a particular purpose.

##### as sheep in the midst of wolves

"as sheep among people who are like dangerous wolves" or "as sheep among people who act the way dangerous animals act"

##### be as wise as serpents and innocent as doves

"act with understanding and caution, as well as with innocence and virtue"

#### Matthew 10:17

##### will deliver you up to

"will put you under the control of"

##### councils

local religious leaders or elders who together keep peace in the community

##### whip you

"beat you with a whip"

#### Matthew 10:18

##### you will be brought

"they will bring you" or "they will drag you"

##### for my sake

"because you belong to me" or "because you follow me"

#### Matthew 10:19

##### When they deliver you up

"When people take you to the councils."

##### do not be anxious

"do not worry"

##### how or what you will speak

"how you are to speak or what you are to say." The two ideas may be combined: "what you are to say"

##### for what to say will be given to you

“for you will be told what to say” or “for the Holy Spirit will tell you what to say”

#### Matthew 10:20

##### the Spirit of your Father

If necessary, this can be translated as "the Spirit of God your heavenly Father" or a footnote can be added to make it clear that this refers to God the Holy Spirit and not to the spirit of an earthly father.

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### in you

"through you"

#### Matthew 10:21

##### Brother will deliver up brother to death

“One brother will deliver up his brother to death” or “Brothers will hand their brothers over to authorities, who will execute them.” Jesus speaks of something that will happen many times.

##### a father his child

"fathers will deliver up their children to death"

##### rise up against

"rebel against" or "turn against"

##### cause them to be put to death

"have them put to death" or "have the authorities execute them"

#### Matthew 10:22

##### You will be hated by everyone

"Everyone will hate you" or "All people will hate you"

##### because of my name

"because of me" or "because you trust in me"

##### whoever endures

"whoever stays faithful"

##### to the end

It is not clear whether the "end" means when a person dies, when the persecution ends, or the end of the age when God shows himself to be king. The main point is that they endure as long as necessary.

##### that person will be saved

"God will save that person"

#### Matthew 10:23

##### in this city

"in one city"

##### flee to the next

"flee to the next city"

##### before the Son of Man has

"before I, the Son of Man, have"

#### Matthew 10:24

##### A disciple is not greater than his teacher, nor a servant above his master

Jesus is using a proverb to teach his disciples a general truth. Jesus is emphasizing that the disciples should not expect people to treat them any better than the people treat Jesus.

##### A disciple is not greater than his teacher

"A disciple is always less important than his teacher" or "A teacher is always more important than his disciple"

##### nor a servant above his master

"and a servant is always less important than his master" or "and a master is always more important than his servant"

#### Matthew 10:25

##### It is enough for the disciple that he should be like his teacher

"The disciple should be satisfied to become like his teacher"

##### the servant like his master

"the servant should be satisfied to become only as important as his master"

##### If they have called the master ... how much worse ... they call ... the members of his household

Again Jesus is emphasizing that since people have mistreated him, his disciples should expect people to treat them the same or worse.

##### how much worse would be the names they call the members of his household

"the names that they call the members of his household will certainly be much worse" or "they will certainly call the members of his household much worse names"

##### If they have called

"Since people have called"

##### Beelzebul

This name here refers to Satan. It can either be 1) transcribed as “Beelzebul” or 2) translated as “Satan.”

#### Matthew 10:26

##### do not fear them

“do not be afraid of those people” or “do not be afraid of people who might treat you badly”

##### there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed, and nothing hidden that will not be known

“everything that is concealed will be revealed, and everything that is hidden will be made known.”

#### Matthew 10:27

##### What I tell you in the darkness, say in the daylight

"What I tell you at night, say in the daytime"

##### what you hear softly in your ear

"what I whisper to you" or "what I say to you privately"

##### proclaim upon the housetops

"speak loudly in a public place"

#### Matthew 10:28

##### Do not be afraid of those who kill the body but are unable to kill the soul

"Do not be afraid of people. They can kill the body, but they cannot kill the soul"

##### kill the body

This means to cause physical death. If these words are awkward, they can be translated as "kill you" or "kill people."

##### fear him who is able to destroy

"fear God, because he is able to destroy"

##### body

the part of a person that can be touched, as opposed to the soul or spirit

##### soul

the part of a person that cannot be touched and that lives on after the physical body dies

##### fear him who is able

"fear God because he is able"

#### Matthew 10:29

##### Are not two sparrows sold for a small coin?

This question can be translated as a statement. "Two sparrows are sold for only a small coin." or "Sparrows have so little value that you can buy two of them for only one small coin."

##### sparrows

These are very small birds. Alternate translation: "small birds"

##### a small coin

This is often translated as the least valuable coin in your country. Alternate translation: "a penny" or "very little money"

##### not one of them falls to the ground without your Father's knowledge

"your Father knows when every one of them falls to the ground"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 10:30

##### even the hairs of your head are all numbered

“God knows even how many hairs are on your head”

##### numbered

"counted"

#### Matthew 10:31

##### You are more valuable than many sparrows

"God values you more than many sparrows"

#### Matthew 10:32

##### everyone who confesses me ... I will also confess before my Father

"whoever confesses me ... I will also confess before my Father" or "if anyone confesses me ... I will also confess him before my Father"

##### confesses me before men

"tells others that he is my disciple" or "acknowledges before other people that he is loyal to me"

##### I will also confess before my Father who is in heaven

"I will also acknowledge before my Father who is in heaven that that person belongs to me"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 10:33

##### he who denies me ... I will also deny before my Father

"whoever denies me ... I will also deny before my Father" or "if anyone denies me ... I will also deny him before my Father"

##### denies me before men

"denies to other people that he is loyal to me" or "refuses to acknowledge to others that he is my disciple"

##### I will also deny before my Father who is in heaven

"I will deny before my Father who is in heaven that this person belongs to me"

#### Matthew 10:34

##### upon the earth

"to the people of the earth" or "to people"

##### a sword

This refers to division, fighting, and killing among people.

#### Matthew 10:35

##### to set ... against

"to cause ... to fight against"

##### a man against his father

"a son against his father"

#### Matthew 10:36

##### A man's enemies

"A person's enemies"

##### those of his own household

"members of his own family"

#### Matthew 10:37

##### He who loves ... is not worthy

"Those who love ... are not worthy" or "If you love ... you are not worthy"

##### loves

"cares for" or "is devoted to" or "is fond of"

##### is not worthy of me

“does not deserve to belong to me” or “is not worthy to be my disciple”

#### Matthew 10:38

##### pick up his cross and follow after me

“obey me even to the point of suffering and dying”

#### Matthew 10:39

##### He who finds his life will lose it. But he who loses ... will find it

"Those who find their lives will lose them. But those who lose their lives ... will find them" or "If you find your life you will lose it. But if you lose your life ... you will find it"

##### finds his life

"tries to keep his life will lose it" or "tries to save his life will not have true life"

##### who loses his life for my sake

"who denies himself for my sake"

##### will find it

"will find true life"

#### Matthew 10:40

##### He who welcomes you

"Whoever welcomes you" or "Anyone who welcomes you"

##### He who welcomes you welcomes me

"When someone welcomes you, it is like he is welcoming me" or "If someone welcomes you, it is as if he were welcoming me"

##### him who sent me

God the Father who sent me"

#### Matthew 10:41

##### in the name of a prophet

“because that person is a prophet” or “because he knows that person is a prophet”

##### a prophet's reward

These phrases refer to the rewards that God gives to prophets and righteous men, not to rewards that prophets or righteous men give to other people.

##### in the name of a righteous man

“because that righteous man is a righteous man” or “because he knows that person is righteous.”

##### a righteous man's reward

This refers to the reward God gives to a righteous person.

#### Matthew 10:42

##### one of these little ones

"one of these lowly ones" or "the least important of these." This refers to Jesus's disciples.

##### in the name of a disciple

"because that person is a disciple" or "because he knows that that person is a disciple."

##### he will ... his reward

Here "he" and "his" refer to the one who is giving.

##### he will in no way lose his reward

"he will certainly receive his reward"

## Chapter 20

#### Matthew 20:1

##### For the kingdom of heaven is like

This is the beginning of a parable.

#### Matthew 20:2

##### After he had agreed

"After the landowner had agreed"

##### one denarius

"one day's wages"

#### Matthew 20:3

##### He went out again

"The landowner went out again"

##### the third hour

The third hour is around nine in the morning.

##### standing idle in the marketplace

"standing in the marketplace not doing anything" or "standing in the marketplace with no work to do"

##### marketplace

a large, open-air area where people buy and sell food and other items

#### Matthew 20:5

##### Again he went out

"Again the landowner went out"

##### the sixth hour and again the ninth hour

The sixth hour is around noon. The ninth hour is around three in the afternoon.

##### did the same

This means the landowner went to the marketplace and hired workers.

#### Matthew 20:6

##### the eleventh hour

This is about five in the afternoon.

##### standing idle

"not doing anything" or "not having any work"

#### Matthew 20:8

##### beginning from the last to the first

"beginning with the workers who started working last, then the workers who started working earlier, and finally the workers who started working first" or "first paying the workers I hired last, then paying the workers I hired earlier in the day, and finally paying the workers I hired first"

#### Matthew 20:9

##### who had been hired

"whom the landowner hired"

#### Matthew 20:10

##### one denarius

"one day's wages"

#### Matthew 20:11

##### When they received

"When the workers who had worked the longest received"

#### Matthew 20:12

##### you have made them equal to us

"you have paid them the same amount of money as you paid us"

##### we who have borne the burden of the day and the scorching heat

"we who have worked the entire day, even during the hottest part"

#### Matthew 20:13

##### one of them

"one of the workers who had worked the longest"

##### Friend

Use a word that one man would use to address another man whom he is politely rebuking.

##### Did you not agree with me for one denarius?

"We already agreed that I would give you one denarius."

##### one denarius

"one day's wages"

#### Matthew 20:15

##### Is it not lawful for me to do as I want with what belongs to me?

"It is lawful for me do what I want with my own possessions."

##### Is it not lawful for me

"Do I not have the right" or "Is it not proper."

##### Or are you envious because I am good?

"You should not be envious because I am generous."

#### Matthew 20:16

##### So the last will be first, and the first last

"So those who seem to be unimportant now will be the most important, and those who seem to be the most important now will be the least important"

#### Matthew 20:17

##### going up to Jerusalem

Jerusalem was on top of a hill, so people had to travel up to get there.

#### Matthew 20:18

##### See, we are going

Jesus uses the word "See" to tell the disciples the must pay attention to what he is about to tell them.

##### the Son of Man will be given over

"someone will give the Son of Man over"

##### Son of Man ... him

Jesus is referring to himself.

##### They will condemn

The chief priests and scribes will condemn Jesus.

#### Matthew 20:19

##### and will deliver him to the Gentiles for them to mock

The chief priests and scribes will deliver Jesus to the Gentiles, and the Gentiles will mock him.

##### to flog

"to whip him" or "to beat him with whips"

##### him ... him ... he

Jesus is referring to himself

##### he will be raised up

"God will raise him up" or "God will make him alive again"

#### Matthew 20:20

##### the sons of Zebedee

This refers to James and John.

#### Matthew 20:21

##### at your right hand ... at your left hand

These refer to having positions of power, authority, and honor.

##### in your kingdom

"when you are king"

#### Matthew 20:22

##### You do not know

Here "you" is plural and refers to the mother and the sons.

##### Are you able

Here "you" is plural, but Jesus is only talking to the two sons.

##### drink the cup that I am about to drink

"suffer what I am about to suffer"

##### They said

"The sons of Zebedee said" or "James and John said"

#### Matthew 20:23

##### My cup you will indeed drink

"You will indeed suffer as I will suffer"

##### right hand ... left hand

These refer to having positions of power, authority, and honor.

##### but it is for those for whom it has been prepared by my Father

"for my Father has prepared those places, and he will give them to whom he chooses"

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Matthew 20:24

##### they were very angry with the two brothers

"the other disciples were very angry with the two brothers because each of them also wanted to sit in a place of honor next to Jesus"

#### Matthew 20:25

##### called them

"called the twelve disciples"

##### the rulers of the Gentiles dominate them

"the Gentile kings forcefully rule over their people"

##### their important men

"the important men among the Gentiles"

##### exercise authority over them

"have control over the people"

#### Matthew 20:27

##### to be first

"to be important"

#### Matthew 20:28

##### the Son of Man ... his life

Jesus is speaking about himself.

##### did not come to be served

"did not come so that other people would serve him" or "did not come so that other people would serve me"

##### but to serve

"but to serve other people"

##### to give his life as a ransom for many

"to give his life as a substitute for many" or "to give his life as a substitute to set many free"

##### to give his life

"to die"

##### for many

"for many people"

#### Matthew 20:30

##### When they heard

"When the two blind men heard"

##### Son of David

"Son of David" is also a title for the Messiah, and the men were probably calling Jesus by this title.

#### Matthew 20:32

##### called to them

"called to the blind men"

##### do you wish

"do you want"

#### Matthew 20:33

##### that our eyes may be opened

"we want you to open our eyes" or "we want to be able to see"

#### Matthew 20:34

##### being moved with compassion

"having compassion" or "feeling compassion for them"

## Chapter 1

#### Mark 1:1

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Mark 1:2

##### before your face

This means "ahead of you."

##### your face ... your way

Here the word "your" refers to the Lord and is singular.

##### the one

This refers to the messenger.

##### will prepare your way

"will prepare the people for your arrival"

#### Mark 1:3

##### The voice of one crying out in the wilderness

"The voice of one crying out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone crying out in the wilderness"

##### Make ready the way of the Lord

"Prepare yourselves for the Lord to come" or "Be ready for the Lord when he comes"

#### Mark 1:4

##### John came

"So John came" or "In fulfillment of that prophecy, John came"

#### Mark 1:5

##### The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem

"Many people from Judea and Jerusalem"

##### They were baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins

"When they repented of their sins, John baptized them in the Jordan River"

#### Mark 1:6

##### he ate locusts and wild honey

Locusts and wild honey were foods that John could find in the wilderness. Wild honey is honey that wild bees make.

#### Mark 1:7

##### He was preaching

"John was preaching"

##### the strap of his sandals I am not worthy to stoop down and untie

"I am not even worthy to do the lowly task of removing his shoes"

##### the strap of his sandals

People often wore sandals that were made of leather and were tied to their feet with leather straps.

##### stoop down

"bend down"

#### Mark 1:8

##### but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit

To baptize with the Holy Spirit means that God would send the Holy Spirit to purify people. The Holy Spirit would then live in them and empower them to stop sinning and to obey God. If possible, use the same word for "baptize" here as you used for John's baptism.

#### Mark 1:9

##### It happened in those days

This marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

##### he was baptized by John

"John baptized him"

#### Mark 1:10

##### the Spirit coming down on him like a dove

Possible meanings are 1) the Spirit descended upon Jesus as a bird descends from the sky toward the ground or 2) the Spirit literally looked like a dove as he descended upon Jesus.

#### Mark 1:11

##### A voice came out of the heavens

"God spoke from the heavens"

##### beloved Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son. The Father calls Jesus his "beloved Son" because of his eternal love for him.

#### Mark 1:12

##### compelled him to go out

"forced Jesus to go out"

#### Mark 1:13

##### He was with

"He was among"

#### Mark 1:14

##### after John was arrested

"after King Herod had John arrested" or "after soldiers arrested John"

##### proclaiming the gospel

"telling many people about the good news"

#### Mark 1:15

##### The time is fulfilled

"It is now time"

##### the kingdom of God is near

"God is beginning to rule over all" or 2) God would soon rule over all.

#### Mark 1:16

##### casting a net in the sea

"throwing a net into the water to catch fish"

#### Mark 1:17

##### I will make you fishers of men

"I will teach you to gather men to me like you gather fish"

##### men

human beings, persons, people, not specifically males

#### Mark 1:19

##### mending the nets

"repairing the nets"

#### Mark 1:20

##### called them

"called them to come with him"

##### hired servants

"servants who worked for them"

##### they followed him

James and John went with Jesus.

#### Mark 1:21

##### came into Capernaum

"arrived at Capernaum"

#### Mark 1:22

##### for he was teaching them as someone who has authority and not as the scribes

"for he was teaching them as someone who has authority teaches and not as the scribes teach"

#### Mark 1:24

##### What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth?

"Jesus of Nazareth, leave us alone! There is no reason for you to interfere with us."

##### we ... us

These pronouns refer to the demon inside the man and all other demons, but do not include the listener.

##### Have you come to destroy us?

"Do not destroy us!"

#### Mark 1:26

##### threw him down

Here the word "him" refers to the demon-possessed man.

#### Mark 1:27

##### so they asked each other, "What is this? ... they obey him!"

"so they said to each other, 'This is amazing! ... they obey him!'"

##### A new teaching with authority!

"He gives a new teaching, and he speaks with authority!" or "He teaches something new, and he has authority!"

##### He even commands the unclean spirits and they obey him!

This was evidence of Jesus' authority.

#### Mark 1:30

##### Now Simon's mother-in-law was lying sick with a fever

Mark introduces Simon's mother-in-law to the story and gives information about her health.

#### Mark 1:31

##### raised her up

"caused her to stand" or "made her able to get out of bed"

##### the fever left her

"Jesus healed her of the fever"

##### she started serving them

"she provided them with food and drinks"

#### Mark 1:32

##### all who were sick or possessed by demons were brought to him.

"many who were sick or possessed by demons were brought to Jesus"

#### Mark 1:33

##### The whole city gathered together at the door

"Many people from that city gathered outside the door"

#### Mark 1:34

##### He healed

"Jesus healed"

#### Mark 1:35

##### He got up and went to a solitary place

"Jesus got up and went to a place where he could be alone"

#### Mark 1:36

##### Simon and those who were with him

Here "him" refers to Simon. Those with him include Andrew, James, John, and possibly other people.

#### Mark 1:37

##### Everyone is looking for you

"Many people are looking for you"

#### Mark 1:38

##### Let us go elsewhere

"We need to go to some other place."

#### Mark 1:39

##### He went throughout all of Galilee

"He went to many places in Galilee"

#### Mark 1:40

##### If you are willing, you can make me clean

"If you want to make me clean, then you can make me clean"

##### you can make me clean

"you can heal me"

#### Mark 1:41

##### Moved with compassion, Jesus

"Having compassion for him, Jesus" or "Jesus felt compassion for the man"

##### I am willing

"I am willing to make you clean"

#### Mark 1:44

##### show yourself to the priest

Jesus told the man to show himself to the priest so that the priest could look at his skin to see if his leprosy was really gone. The law of Moses required people to present themselves to the priest if they had been unclean but were no longer unclean.

##### a testimony to them

Possible meanings are 1) "a testimony to the priests" or 2) "a testimony to the people."

#### Mark 1:45

##### But he went out

The word "he" refers to the man Jesus healed.

##### began to declare it freely

"began to tell people in many places about what Jesus had done"

##### that Jesus could no longer enter a town openly

"so much that Jesus could no longer enter a town publicly" or "that Jesus could no longer enter the towns in a way that many people would see him"

##### remote places

"lonely places" or "places where no one lived"

##### from everywhere

"from all over the region"

## Chapter 2

#### Mark 2:1

##### it was heard that he was at home

"the people there heard that he was staying at his home"

#### Mark 2:2

##### So many gathered there

"So many people gathered there" or "So many people came to the house"

#### Mark 2:3

##### were bringing a paralyzed man

"were bringing a man who was unable to walk or use his arms"

#### Mark 2:4

##### could not get near him

"could not get close to where Jesus was"

##### they removed the roof that was above Jesus, and after they made an opening, they lowered the mat the paralyzed man was lying on

"they removed the tiles from the part of the roof above where Jesus was. And when they had dug through the clay roof, they lowered the mat the paralzyed man was lying on" or "they made a hole in the roof above Jesus, and then they lowered the paralyzed man on the mat"

#### Mark 2:5

##### Seeing their faith

Possible meanings are 1) that only the men who carried the paralyzed man had faith or 2) that the paralyzed man and the men who brought him to Jesus all had faith.

##### Son

"My son"

##### your sins are forgiven

"your sins are gone" or "you do not have to pay for your sins" or "your sins do not count against you"

#### Mark 2:6

##### reasoned in their hearts

"were thinking to themselves"

#### Mark 2:7

##### How can this man speak this way?

"This man should not speak this way!"

##### Who can forgive sins but God alone?

"Only God can forgive sins!"

#### Mark 2:8

##### in his spirit

"in his inner being" or "in himself"

##### they were thinking within themselves

Each of the scribes was thinking to himself; they were not talking to each other.

##### Why are you thinking this in your hearts?

"What you are thinking is wrong." or "Do not think that I am blaspheming."

##### this in your hearts

"this inside yourselves" or "these things"

#### Mark 2:9

##### Which is easier, to say to the paralyzed man, ... take up your mat and walk'?

"I just said to the paralyzed man, 'Your sins are forgiven.' You may think that it is harder to say 'Get up, take up your mat and walk,' because the proof of whether or not I can heal him will be shown by whether or not he gets up and walks." or "You may think that it is easier to say to the paralyzed man 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up, take up your mat and walk.'"

#### Mark 2:10

##### that the Son of Man has authority

"that I am the Son of Man and I have authority"

#### Mark 2:12

##### in front of everyone

"while all the people there were watching"

#### Mark 2:13

##### the lake

This is the Sea of Galilee, which is also known as the Lake of Gennesaret.

#### Mark 2:14

##### the tax collector's tent

We do not know what kind of a structure this was or what it was made of. It may have been a tent or booth. It probably included a table and some kind of protection from sun and rain.

#### Mark 2:15

##### sinners

In this verse, the word "sinners" refers to people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

##### for there were many and they followed him

Possible meanings are 1) "for there were many tax collectors and sinful people who followed Jesus" or 2) "for Jesus had many disciples and they followed him."

#### Mark 2:16

##### Why does he eat with tax collectors and sinners?

"He should not eat with tax collectors and sinners!"

#### Mark 2:17

##### he said to them

"he said to the scribes"

##### People who are strong in body do not need a physician; only people who are sick need one

Jesus used this proverb about sick people and doctors to teach them that only people who know that they are sinful realize that they need Jesus.

##### strong in body

"healthy"

##### I did not come to call righteous people, but I came to call sinners

"I came for people who understand they are sinful, not for people who believe they are righteous"

#### Mark 2:18

##### the Pharisees were fasting ... the disciples of the Pharisees

These two phrases refer to the same group of people, but the second is more specific. Both refer to the followers of the Pharisee sect, but they do not focus on the leaders of the Pharisees.

##### Some people

The possible meanings are 1) these men were not among John's disciples or the disciples of the Pharisees or 2) these men were among John's disciples.

##### came and said to him

"came and said to Jesus"

#### Mark 2:19

##### Can the wedding attendants fast while the bridegroom is still with them?

"Wedding attendants do not fast while the bridegroom is with them. Rather they celebrate and feast."

#### Mark 2:20

##### the bridegroom will be taken away and then they will fast

"the bridegroom will go away and then the the wedding attendants will fast"

#### Mark 2:21

##### No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment

Sewing a piece of new cloth on an old garment will make the hole on an old garment worse if the piece of new cloth has not yet shrunk. Both the new cloth and old garment will be ruined.

#### Mark 2:22

##### new wine

"grape juice." This refers to wine that has not fermented yet. If grapes are unknown in your area, use the general term for fruit juice.

##### old wineskins

This refers to wineskins that have been used many times.

##### wineskins

These were bags made out of animal skins. They could also be called "wine bags" or "skin bags."

##### the wine will burst the skins

New wine expands as it ferments. If it is put in new wineskins, the wineskins will stretch. But old wineskins are brittle and cannot stretch. If new wine is poured into old wineskins, the wineskins will tear open and be ruined.

##### fresh wineskins

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to wineskins that have never been used.

#### Mark 2:23

##### began picking heads of grain

The disciples were picking heads of grain to eat the kernels, or seeds, in them while they were walking. They were not harvesting the grain to take it home. Plucking grain in others' fields and eating it was not considered stealing. The question was whether it was lawful to do this on the Sabbath.

##### heads of grain

The "heads" are the topmost part of the wheat plant, which is a kind of tall grass. The heads hold the mature grain or seeds of the plant.

##### as they made their way

"as they walked along"

#### Mark 2:24

##### Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful on the Sabbath day?

"Look! They are breaking the Jewish law concerning the Sabbath."

#### Mark 2:25

##### He said to them

"Jesus said to the Pharisees"

##### Have you never read in the scriptures what David did

"You have read what David did" or "Remember what you read about what David did"

#### Mark 2:26

##### how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him?

"how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him."

##### the bread of the presence

This refers to the twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God.

#### Mark 2:27

##### The Sabbath was made for mankind

"God made the Sabbath for mankind"

##### mankind

"man" or "people" or "the needs of people." This word refers to both men and women.

##### not mankind for the Sabbath

"mankind was not made for the Sabbath" or "God did not make mankind for the Sabbath"

## Chapter 3

#### Mark 3:1

##### a man with a withered hand

"a man with a crippled hand"

#### Mark 3:2

##### Some people

"Some of the Pharisees."

##### so that they could accuse him

"so that they could accuse him of wrongdoing" or "so that they could accuse him of breaking the law"

#### Mark 3:3

##### in the middle of everyone

"in the middle of this crowd"

#### Mark 3:4

##### Is it lawful to do good on the Sabbath ... or to kill?

Jesus said this to challenge them. He wanted them to acknowledge that it is lawful to heal people on the Sabbath.

##### to save a life or to kill

"is it lawful to save a life or to kill"

##### to save a life

"to save someone's life" or "to save someone from dying"

##### But they were silent

"But they refused to answer him"

#### Mark 3:5

##### was grieved

"was deeply saddened"

##### by their hardness of heart

"because they were unwilling to have compassion on the man"

##### Stretch out your hand

"Reach out with your hand"

##### his hand was restored

"Jesus restored his hand" or "Jesus made his hand the way it was before"

#### Mark 3:6

##### began to plot

"began to make a plan"

##### the Herodians

This is the name of an informal political party that supported Herod Antipas.

##### how they might put him to death

"how they might kill Jesus"

#### Mark 3:7

##### the sea

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 3:8

##### Idumea

This is the region, previously known as Edom, which covered the southern half of the province of Judea.

##### the things he was doing

"the great miracles that Jesus was performing"

#### Mark 3:9

##### He told his disciples to have a small boat ... not press against him

As the large crowd was pushing forward toward Jesus, he was in danger of being crushed by them. They would not crush him intentionally. It was just that there were so many people.

#### Mark 3:10

##### For he healed many, so that everyone ... to touch him

"For, because Jesus had healed many people, everyone ... to touch him"

##### everyone who had afflictions eagerly approached him in order to touch him

"all the sick people pushed forward eagerly trying to touch him so that they might be healed"

#### Mark 3:11

##### saw him

"saw Jesus"

##### they fell down ... cried out, and they said

"they caused the people they were possessing to fall down before him and to cry out to him"

##### they fell down before him

The unclean spirits did not fall down before Jesus because they loved him or wanted to worship him. They fell down before him because they were afraid of him.

##### You are the Son of God

Jesus has power over unclean spirits because he is the "Son of God."

#### Mark 3:12

##### He strictly ordered them

"Jesus strictly ordered the unclean spirits"

#### Mark 3:16

##### Simon, to whom he gave the name Peter

The author begins to list the names of the twelve apostles. Simon is the first man listed.

#### Mark 3:17

##### to whom he gave

The phrase "to whom" refers to both James son of Zebedee and his brother John.

##### the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder

"the name Boanerges, which means men who are like thunder" or "the name Boanerges, which means thunder men"

#### Mark 3:18

##### Thaddaeus

This is the name of a man.

#### Mark 3:19

##### who would betray him

"who would betray Jesus" The word "who" refers to Judas Iscariot.

#### Mark 3:20

##### Then he went home

"Then Jesus went to the house where he was staying."

##### they could not even eat bread

"Jesus and his disciples could not eat at all" or "they could not eat anything because of the crowd"

#### Mark 3:21

##### they went out to seize him

Members of his family went to the house so that they could take hold of him and force him to go home with them.

##### for they said

Possible meanings for the word "they" are 1) his relatives or 2) some people in the crowd.

##### out of his mind

"crazy" or "insane"

#### Mark 3:22

##### By the ruler of the demons he drives out demons

"By the power of Beelzebul, who is the ruler of the demons, Jesus drives out demons"

#### Mark 3:23

##### Jesus called them to himself

"Jesus called the people to come to him"

##### How can Satan cast out Satan?

"Satan cannot cast out himself!" or "Satan does not go against his own evil spirits!"

#### Mark 3:24

##### If a kingdom is divided against itself it cannot stand

"If the people who live in a kingdom are divided against each other, the kingdom cannot endure or will end"

#### Mark 3:25

##### house

"family" or "household"

#### Mark 3:26

##### If Satan has risen up against himself and is divided

"If Satan and his evil spirits were fighting one another" or "If Satan and his evil spirits have risen up against each other and are divided"

##### is not able to stand

"cannot endure" or "cannot stay strong"

#### Mark 3:27

##### plunder

to steal a person's valuables and possessions

#### Mark 3:28

##### Truly I say to you

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important.

##### the sons of men

"people"

##### utter

speak

#### Mark 3:29

##### will never have forgiveness

"will never be forgiven"

##### is guilty of an eternal sin

"is guilty of a sin that will be punished eternally"

#### Mark 3:30

##### they were saying

"the people were saying"

##### has an unclean spirit

"is possessed by an unclean spirit"

#### Mark 3:31

##### They sent for Jesus, summoning him

"They sent someone inside to tell Jesus that they were outside and to have him come out to them"

#### Mark 3:32

##### are looking for you

"are asking for you"

#### Mark 3:33

##### Who are my mother and my brothers?

"I will tell you who are really my mother and brothers."

#### Mark 3:34

##### here are my mother and my brothers

Jesus's disciples belong to Jesus's spiritual family. This is more important than belonging to his physical family.

#### Mark 3:35

##### whoever does ... that person is

"those who do ... they are"

##### that person is my brother, and sister, and mother

"that person is like a brother, sister, or mother to me"

## Chapter 4

#### Mark 4:1

##### the sea

This is the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 4:3

##### A farmer went out to sow his seed

This means that he tossed seeds onto the ground so they could grow.

#### Mark 4:5

##### Other seed fell on the rocky ground, where it did not have much soil

"Other seed fell on shallow soil with underlying rock"

##### it sprang up, because it did not have deep soil

"The seed sprouted quickly because the soil was shallow"

#### Mark 4:6

##### the plants were scorched

"the sun scorched the young plants"

##### because they had no root, they dried up

"because the young plants had no roots, they dried up"

#### Mark 4:7

##### Other seed ... choked it ... it did not produce

"Other seed fell among thorns, which grew up and choked the plants, so that they produced no grain"

#### Mark 4:8

##### yielding thirty, sixty, and even a hundred times

"Some plants produced thirty times as much as the grain the man had planted, some produced sixty times as much grain, and some produced a hundred times as much grain"

#### Mark 4:9

##### Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear

"Whoever is willing to listen, listen" or "Whoever is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

#### Mark 4:10

##### When Jesus was alone

This does not mean that Jesus was completely alone; rather, it means that the crowds were gone and Jesus was only with the twelve and some of his other close followers.

#### Mark 4:11

##### To you is given

"God has given you" or "I have given you"

##### to those outside

"to those outside our group" or "to those who are not among us." This refers to all the other people who were not among the twelve or Jesus's other close followers.

##### everything is in parables

"I have spoken everything in parables"

#### Mark 4:12

##### when they look ... when they hear

"when they look at what I am doing ... when they hear what I am saying"

##### they look, but do not see

"they look, but they do not understand" Or 2) here the word translated "look" refers to seeing what one is looking at and the word translated "see" refers to understanding what they are seeing.

##### they would turn and God would forgive them

"they would repent and God would forgive them"

#### Mark 4:13

##### He said to them

"Then Jesus said to his disciples"

##### Do you not understand this parable? How then will you understand all the parables?

"If you cannot understand this parable, think about how hard it will be for you to understand all the other parables."

#### Mark 4:14

##### The sower

"The farmer who sows his seed"

##### sows the word

"teaches people God's word" or "teaches God's message"

#### Mark 4:15

##### These are the ones beside the road

"These people are the seeds that fall beside the road" or "These people are like seeds that fall beside a road"

##### When they hear

"When they hear the word"

#### Mark 4:16

##### these are the seed sown on the rocky ground

"These people are the seeds that fall on the rocky ground" or "These people are like seeds that fall on the rocky ground"

#### Mark 4:17

##### they do not have root in themselves

"they are like young plants that have no roots"

##### endure

"continue in their belief"

##### tribulation or persecution arises on account of the word

"tribulation or persecution comes because they believe God's message"

##### they immediately fall away

In this parable, "fall away" means "stop believing God's message"

#### Mark 4:19

##### the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke the word

"the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke God's message in their lives like thorns that choke young plants"

##### the cares of the world

"the worries in this life" or "the concerns about this present life"

##### the deceitfulness of wealth

"the lie that wealth will make them happy" or "the lie that having many possessions will make them happy"

##### it is unproductive

The word being unproductive means that it does not have an effect on the person's life.

#### Mark 4:20

##### and bear fruit, thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much

"and produce good results, like plants that bear thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much fruit as what was sown"

#### Mark 4:21

##### Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket or under the bed?

"You certainly do not bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under a bed!"

#### Mark 4:22

##### For nothing is hidden that will not be known ... come out into the open

"For everything that is hidden will be made known, and everything that is secret will come out into to open"

#### Mark 4:23

##### If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear

"If anyone is willing to listen, listen" or "If anyone is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

#### Mark 4:24

##### for the measure you use

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is talking about a literal measure and giving generously to others or 2) Jesus speaks of "understanding" as if it were "measuring."

##### will be measured to you, and more will be added to you.

"God will measure that amount for you, and he will add it to you"

#### Mark 4:25

##### to him will be given more ... even what he has will be taken

"to him God will give more ... from him God will take away" or "God will give more to him ... God will take away from him"

#### Mark 4:26

##### like a man who sows his seed

"like a farmer who plants his seed" or "like a farmer who scatters his seed"

#### Mark 4:27

##### He sleeps at night and gets up by day

"He sleeps each night and gets up each day" or "He sleeps each night and gets up the next day"

##### gets up by day

"is up during the day" or "is active during the day"

##### though he does not know how

"though the man does not know how the seed sprouts and grows"

#### Mark 4:28

##### the blade

the stalk or sprout

##### the ear

the head on the stalk or the part of the plant that holds the fruit

#### Mark 4:29

##### he immediately sends in the sickle

"he immediately goes into the field with a sickle to harvest the grain" or "he immediately sends people with sickles into the field to harvest the grain"

##### sickle

a curved blade or a sharp hook used to cut grain

##### because the harvest has come

"because it is time for harvesting the grain" or "because the grain is ready to be gathered"

#### Mark 4:30

##### To what can we compare the kingdom of God, or what parable can we use to explain it?

"With this parable I can explain what the kingdom of God is like."

#### Mark 4:31

##### when it is sown

"when someone sows it" or "when someone plants it"

#### Mark 4:33

##### he spoke the word to them

"he taught them the message of God"

##### as much as they were able to understand

"and if they were able to understand some, he kept telling them more"

#### Mark 4:34

##### when he was alone

This means that he was away from the crowds, but his disciples were still with him.

##### he explained everything

"he explained all his parables"

#### Mark 4:35

##### the other side

"the other side of the Sea of Galilee" or "the other side of the sea"

#### Mark 4:37

##### a violent windstorm arose

"a violent windstorm began"

##### the boat was almost full of water

"the boat was in danger of being filled with water"

#### Mark 4:38

##### the stern

The stern is the back part of the boat.

##### do you not care that we are about to die?

"you need to pay attention to what is happening; we are all about to die!"

##### we are about to die

The word "we" includes the disciples and Jesus.

#### Mark 4:39

##### Peace! Be still!

These two phrases are similar and used to emphasize what Jesus wanted the wind and the sea to do.

##### a great calm

"a great stillness over the sea" or "a great calm over the sea"

#### Mark 4:40

##### Why are you afraid? Do you still not have faith?

"You should not be afraid. You need to have more faith."

#### Mark 4:41

##### Who then is this, because even the wind and the sea obey him?

"This man is not like ordinary men; even the wind and the sea obey him!"

## Chapter 5

#### Mark 5:1

##### They came

The word "They" refers to Jesus and his disciples.

##### the sea

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

##### Gerasenes

This name refers to the people who live in Gerasa.

#### Mark 5:2

##### with an unclean spirit

"controlled by an unclean spirit" or "that an unclean spirit possessed"

#### Mark 5:4

##### He had been bound many times

"People had bound him many times"

##### his shackles were shattered

"he shattered his shackles"

##### shackles

pieces of metal that people wrap around the arms and legs of prisoners and attach with chains to objects that do not move so the prisoners cannot move

##### No one had the strength to subdue him

"He was so strong that no one was strong enough to control him"

#### Mark 5:5

##### cut himself with sharp stones

Often when a person is possessed by a demon, the demon will cause the person to do self-destructive things, such as cutting himself.

#### Mark 5:6

##### When he saw Jesus from a distance

When the man first saw Jesus, Jesus would have been getting out of the boat.

##### bowed down

This means that he knelt down before Jesus out of reverence and respect, not out of worship.

#### Mark 5:7

##### He cried out

"The unclean spirit cried out"

##### What do I have to do with you, Jesus, Son of the Most High God?

The unclean spirit cried out "Leave me alone, Jesus, Son of the Most High God! There is no reason for you to interfere with me."

##### Jesus ... do not torment me

Jesus has the power to torment unclean spirits.

##### Son of the Most High God

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### I beg you by God himself

"I beg you before God" or "I swear by God himself and beg you"

#### Mark 5:9

##### He asked him

"And Jesus asked the unclean spirit"

##### He answered him, "My name is Legion, for we are many."

"And the spirit said to him, 'Call us an army, for many of us are inside the man.'"

#### Mark 5:10

##### He begged him not to send them

"The unclean spirit begged Jesus not to send him and the other unclean spirits"

#### Mark 5:12

##### they begged him

"the unclean spirits begged Jesus"

#### Mark 5:13

##### he allowed them

"Jesus allowed the unclean spirits to do what they asked permission to do"

##### into the sea, and about two thousand pigs drowned in the sea

You can make the words after the comma a separate sentence: "into the sea. There were about two thousand pigs, and they drowned in the sea"

#### Mark 5:14

##### reported what had happened in the city and in the countryside

"told people in the city and in the countryside what had happened"

#### Mark 5:15

##### Legion

This was the name of the many demons that had been in the man.

##### in his right mind

"of a normal mind" or "thinking clearly"

##### they were afraid

The word "they" refers to the group of people who went out to see what had happened.

#### Mark 5:19

##### But Jesus did not permit him

"But he did not allow the man to come with them"

#### Mark 5:20

##### Decapolis

This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee.

##### everyone was amazed

"all the people who heard what the man said were amazed"

#### Mark 5:21

##### the other side

This refers to the other side of the Sea of Galilee

##### beside the sea

"on the seashore" or "on the shore"

#### Mark 5:22

##### Jairus

This is the name of a man.

#### Mark 5:23

##### lay your hands

"Laying on hands" refers to a prophet or teacher placing his hand on someone and imparting either healing or a blessing. In this case, Jarius is asking Jesus to heal his daughter.

##### that she may be made well and live

"and heal her and make her live"

#### Mark 5:24

##### So he went with him

"So Jesus and the disciples went with Jairus"

##### pressed close around him

This means they crowded around Jesus and pressed themselves together to be closer to Jesus.

#### Mark 5:25

##### a woman was there who had a flow of blood for twelve years

The woman did not have an open wound; rather, her monthly flow of blood would not stop. Your language may have a polite way to refer to this condition.

#### Mark 5:26

##### she grew worse

"her sickness got worse" or "her bleeding increased"

#### Mark 5:27

##### the reports about Jesus

"that Jesus healed people"

##### cloak

outer garment or coat

#### Mark 5:28

##### I will be healed

"it will heal me" or "his power will heal me"

#### Mark 5:29

##### she was healed from her affliction

"the sickness left her" or "she was no longer sick"

#### Mark 5:30

##### that power had gone out from him

"that his healing power had healed someone"

#### Mark 5:33

##### told him the whole truth

"told him the whole truth about how she had touched him"

#### Mark 5:34

##### Daughter

Jesus called the woman "Daughter." This was a kind way for a teacher to speak to a woman. Jesus showed that he cared about her.

##### your faith

"your faith in me"

#### Mark 5:35

##### While he was speaking some people came from the leader of the synagogue

"While Jesus was speaking some people came from the house of the leader of the synagogue" or "some people from the synagogue leader's household came"

##### the leader of the synagogue

This refers to Jairus

##### Why trouble the teacher any longer?

"It is useless to bother the teacher any longer" or "There is no need to bother the teacher any longer."

##### the teacher

This refers to Jesus.

#### Mark 5:36

##### the message that was spoken

"the message that they told Jairus"

##### Just believe

"Just believe I can make you daughter live"

#### Mark 5:37

##### He did not permit anyone to accompany him except Peter ... James

"Jesus only permitted Peter ... James to accompany him"

#### Mark 5:38

##### he saw

Jesus saw

#### Mark 5:39

##### he said to them why are you upset and why do you weep?

"Jesus said to the people this is not a time to be upset and crying."

##### The child is not dead but sleeps

Jesus uses the common word for sleep, and so should the translation.

#### Mark 5:40

##### They began to mock him

The people who hear Jesus speak are laughing at him because they truly do know the difference between a dead person and a sleeping person and they think he does not.

##### put them all outside

"sent all the other people outside the house"

##### those who were with him went in where the child was

"Peter, James, and John went into the room where the child was lying"

#### Mark 5:41

##### Talitha, koum

This is an Aramaic sentence that Jesus spoke to the little girl in her language. Write these words as they sound, using your alphabet.

#### Mark 5:43

##### He strictly ordered them that no one should know about this. Then

"He ordered them strictly, 'No one should know about this!' Then" or "He ordered them strictly, 'Do not tell anyone about what I have done!' Then"

##### Then he told them to give her something to eat.

"And he told them, 'Give her something to eat.'"

## Chapter 6

#### Mark 6:1

##### his hometown

This refers to the town of Nazareth, where Jesus grew up and where his family lived. This does not mean that he owned land there.

#### Mark 6:2

##### that he does with his hands

"that he himself works"

#### Mark 6:3

##### Is this not the carpenter, the son of Mary and the brother of James and Joses and Judas and Simon? Are his sisters not here with us?

"He is just an ordinary carpenter! We know him and his family. We know Mary his mother. We know his younger brothers James, Joses, Judas and Simon. And his younger sisters also live here with us."

#### Mark 6:4

##### A prophet is not without honor, except

"A prophet is always honored, except" or "People always honor prophets, except those"

#### Mark 6:5

##### to lay his hands on a few sick people

Prophets and teachers would put their hands on people in order to heal them or bless them. In this case, Jesus was healing people.

#### Mark 6:7

##### he called the twelve

Here the word "called" means that he summoned the twelve to come to him.

#### Mark 6:8

##### to take nothing for their journey, except a staff

"to take only a staff for their journey"

##### no bread

"no food"

#### Mark 6:10

##### remain until you go away from there

"eat and sleep in that house until you leave that area"

#### Mark 6:11

##### as a testimony to them

"as a testimony that they did not welcome you" or "to show them that they did wrong when they did not welcome you"

#### Mark 6:12

##### They went out

"They went out to various towns"

##### repent

"stop sinning"

#### Mark 6:14

##### King Herod heard this

The word "this" refers to everything that Jesus and his disciples had been doing in various towns, including casting out demons and healing people.

##### Some were saying, "John the Baptist has been raised from the dead

"Some people were saying, 'He is John the Baptist, who God has raised from the dead" or "John the Baptist who God has made alive again"

#### Mark 6:15

##### Some others said, "He is Elijah."

"Some others said, 'He is Elijah, whom God promised to send back again.'"

#### Mark 6:16

##### whom I beheaded

"whom I commanded my soldier to behead"

##### has been raised

"has risen" or "has become alive again"

#### Mark 6:17

##### Herod sent to have John arrested and he had him bound in prison

"Herod sent his soldiers to arrest John and to bind him in prison"

##### on account of Herodias

"because of Herodias"

##### his brother Philip's wife

"the wife of his brother Philip." Herod's brother Philip is not the same Philip who was an evangelist in the book of Acts or the Philip who was one of Jesus's twelve disciples.

##### because he had married her

"because Herod had married her"

#### Mark 6:19

##### Herodias held on to anger against him and wanted to kill him

"Herodias continued to be angry at John and she wanted someone to kill him"

##### but she could not

"but she could not kill him" or "but she could not have him killed"

#### Mark 6:20

##### for Herod feared John; he knew that he was a righteous

"for Herod feared John because he knew that John was a righteous"

#### Mark 6:21

##### an opportunity came

"a convenient day" or "there was an opportune time."

##### he made a dinner for his officials ... of Galilee

"he had a banquet for his officials ... of Galilee" or "he invited his officials ... of Galilee to eat and celebrate with him"

#### Mark 6:22

##### Herodias herself

It was Herodias's own daughter who danced at the dinner.

#### Mark 6:23

##### Whatever you ask ... my kingdom

"I will give you whatever you ask me to give to you, even half of what I own and rule, if you ask for that"

#### Mark 6:25

##### on a wooden platter

"on a board" or "on a large wooden dish"

#### Mark 6:26

##### because of the oath he had made

"because of what he had sworn to the girl" or "because he had sworn to give the girl whatever she asked for"

##### and because of his dinner guests

"and because his dinner guests had heard his oath"

#### Mark 6:29

##### When his disciples

"When John's disciples"

#### Mark 6:31

##### a deserted place

a place where there are no people

##### many were coming and going

This means that people were continually coming to the apostles and then going away from them.

##### they did not even

The word "they" refers to the apostles.

#### Mark 6:33

##### on foot

The people are going on foot by land, which contrasts with how the disciples went by boat.

#### Mark 6:34

##### they were like sheep without a shepherd

Jesus compares the people to sheep who are confused when they do not have their shepherd to lead them.

#### Mark 6:35

##### When the hour was late

"When it was getting late" or "Late in the afternoon"

#### Mark 6:37

##### But he answered and said to them

"But Jesus answered and said to his disciples"

##### Can we go and buy two hundred denarii worth of bread and give it to them to eat?

"We could not buy enough bread to feed this crowd, even if we had two hundred denarii!"

##### two hundred denarii

"200 denarii." The singular form of the word "denarii" is "denarius." A denarius was a Roman silver coin worth one day's wages.

#### Mark 6:38

##### loaves

lumps of bread dough that have been shaped and baked

#### Mark 6:39

##### green grass

Describe the grass with the color word used in your language for healthy grass, which may or may not be the color green.

#### Mark 6:40

##### in groups of hundreds and fifties

"with about fifty people in some groups and about a hundred people in other groups"

#### Mark 6:41

##### looking up to heaven

This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

##### He also divided the two fish among them all

"he divided the two fish so that everyone could have some"

#### Mark 6:43

##### They took up

Possible meaning are 1) "The disciples took up" or 2) "The people took up."

#### Mark 6:44

##### There were five thousand men who ate the loaves

"So many people ate the loaves of bread; the number of just the men was five thousand"

#### Mark 6:45

##### to the other side

"to the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

##### Bethsaida

This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 6:46

##### After taking leave of them

"After saying goodbye to them" or "After they had left." Use the common words your language uses for a time when friends leave each other and expect to see each other after a few hours or days.

#### Mark 6:48

##### fourth watch

This is the time between 3 a.m. and sunrise.

#### Mark 6:49

##### a ghost

the spirit of a dead person or some other kind of spirit

#### Mark 6:51

##### They were completely amazed

"They were completely amazed at what he had done"

#### Mark 6:52

##### their hearts were hardened

"they were too stubborn to understand"

#### Mark 6:53

##### Gennesaret

This is the name of the region to the northwest of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 6:55

##### they ran throughout the whole region

"they ran throughout the whole district in order to tell others that Jesus was there"

#### Mark 6:56

##### Wherever he entered

"Wherever Jesus entered"

##### the sick

"the sick people"

##### They begged him

Possible meanings are 1) "The sick begged him" or 2) "The people begged him."

##### the edge of his garment

"the hem of his robe" or "the edge of his clothes"

## Chapter 7

#### Mark 7:2

##### that is, unwashed

"that is, with hands that they had not washed" or "that is, they had not washed their hands"

#### Mark 7:3

##### unless they wash their hands carefully

"unless they make their hands ceremonially clean"

##### elders

Jewish elders were leaders in their communities and were also judges for the people.

#### Mark 7:4

##### they hold to many other things they have received

"they follow many other traditions" or "they do many other things that they were taught to do"

##### copper vessels

"copper kettles" or "metal containers"

##### the couches upon which they eat

"benches" or "beds." At that time, the Jews would recline when eating.

#### Mark 7:5

##### Why do your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders, but eat their bread with unclean hands?

"Your disciples should not disobey the traditions of our elders by eating their bread with unclean hands."

##### bread

"food"

#### Mark 7:6

##### with their lips

"by what they say"

##### but their heart is far from me

"but they do not really love me"

#### Mark 7:8

##### You abandon the commandment of God

"You refuse to obey the commandment of God"

##### hold on to

"strictly obey"

#### Mark 7:9

##### How well you reject the commandment ... keep your tradition

"You think you have done well in how you have rejected the commandment of God so you may keep your own traditions, but what you have done is not good at all"

#### Mark 7:10

##### He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely be put to death

"The authorities must execute a person who curses his father or mother"

#### Mark 7:11

##### is Corban

"is a gift to God" or "belongs to God"

##### Whatever help you would have received from me is Corban

"I will not help you, because whatever help you would have received from me is Corban"

#### Mark 7:12

##### then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother

"then you no longer permit him to give anything to his father or his mother" or "then you permit him to give nothing to his father or his mother"

#### Mark 7:13

##### the word of God

"God's command"

##### void

canceled or done away with

##### many similar things you do

"you are doing many other things similar to this"

#### Mark 7:14

##### He called

"Jesus called"

##### understand

"try to understand what I am about to tell you"

#### Mark 7:15

##### nothing from outside of a person

"nothing from outside a person that he can eat"

##### It is what comes out of the person

"It is what comes out of a person that he says or does"

#### Mark 7:18

##### Are you also still without understanding?

"After all I have said and done, I would expect you to understand."

#### Mark 7:19

##### because ... latrine?

"You should already understand that whatever enters into a person from outside cannot defile him, because it cannot go into his heart, but it goes into his stomach and then passes out into the latrine."

##### it cannot go into his heart

"it cannot go into his inner being" or "it cannot go into his mind"

##### all foods clean

"all foods clean, meaning that people can eat any food without God considering the eater defiled"

#### Mark 7:20

##### It is that which comes out of the person that defiles him

"What defiles a person is what comes out of him"

#### Mark 7:21

##### out of the heart, proceed evil thoughts

"out of the inner being, come evil thoughts" or "out of the mind, come evil thoughts"

#### Mark 7:22

##### sensuality

not controlling one's lustful desires

##### slander

or blasphemy

#### Mark 7:23

##### come from within

"come from within a person's heart" or "come from within a person's thoughts"

#### Mark 7:25

##### had an unclean spirit

"was possessed by an unclean spirit"

##### fell down

"knelt." This is an act of honor and submission.

#### Mark 7:26

##### Syrophoenician

This is the name of the woman's nationality. She was born in the Phoenician region in Syria.

#### Mark 7:27

##### Let the children first be fed. For it is not proper ... throw it to the dogs

"Let the children of Israel first be fed. For it is not right to take the children's bread and throw it to the Gentiles, who are like dogs"

##### Let the children first be fed

"We must first feed the children of Israel"

##### proper

morally right

##### dogs

This refers to small dogs kept as pets.

#### Mark 7:29

##### you are free to go

"you may go now" or "you may go home in peace"

##### The demon has gone out of your daughter

"I have caused the evil spirit to leave your daughter"

#### Mark 7:31

##### went out again from the region of Tyre

"left the region of Tyre"

##### up into the region

"through the region"

##### Decapolis

This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 7:32

##### They brought

"And people brought"

##### who was deaf

"who was not able to hear"

##### they begged him to lay his hand on him

"they begged Jesus to put his hand on the man to heal him"

#### Mark 7:33

##### Then taking him ... privately, he

"Then Jesus took the man ... privately, and he"

##### he put his fingers into his ears

Jesus is putting his own fingers in the man's ears.

##### then he spit and touched his tongue

"then he spit on his fingers and touched the man's tongue with them"

#### Mark 7:34

##### looked up to heaven

This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

##### sighed

This means that Jesus groaned or that he let out a long deep breath that could be heard.

##### said to him

"said to the man"

##### Ephphatha

This is an Aramaic word. It should be copied into your language using your alphabet.

#### Mark 7:35

##### his ears were opened

"his ears were opened and he was able to hear" or "he was able to hear"

##### the bond of his tongue was released

"Jesus released the bond of his tongue" or "Jesus set his tongue free" or "Jesus enabled the man to speak"

#### Mark 7:36

##### But the more he ordered them, the more abundantly they proclaimed it

"But though he continually ordered them not to tell anyone, they continually proclaimed it"

##### the more abundantly

"the more widely" or "the more"

#### Mark 7:37

##### the deaf hear and the mute speak

"the deaf people hear and the mute people speak" or "people who cannot hear, hear, and people who cannot speak, speak"

## Chapter 8

#### Mark 8:2

##### they continue to be with me already for three days and have nothing to eat

"this is this third day these people have been with me, and they have nothing to eat"

#### Mark 8:3

##### they may faint

Possible meanings are "they may lose consciousness temporarily" or "they may become weak."

#### Mark 8:4

##### Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy these people?

"This place is so deserted that there is no place here for us to get enough loaves of bread to satisfy these people!"

##### loaves of bread

Loaves of bread are lumps of dough that have been shaped and baked.

#### Mark 8:6

##### He commanded the crowd to sit down on the ground.

"Jesus commanded the crowd, 'Sit down on the ground.'"

#### Mark 8:7

##### he gave thanks for them

"Jesus gave thanks for the fish"

#### Mark 8:8

##### They ate

"The people ate"

##### they picked up

"the disciples picked up"

##### the remaining broken pieces, seven large baskets

"the remaining broken pieces of bread and fish, which filled seven large baskets"

#### Mark 8:9

##### Then he sent them away

"After they ate, Jesus sent them away"

#### Mark 8:10

##### they went into the region of Dalmanutha

"they sailed around the Sea of Galilee to the region of Dalmanutha" which is the name of a place on the northwestern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 8:11

##### a sign from heaven

"a sign from God" or 2) the word "heaven" refers to the sky. Alternate translation: "a sign from the sky"

##### to test him

"to prove that God had sent him"

#### Mark 8:12

##### in his spirit

"in himself"

##### Why does this generation seek for a sign?

"This generation should not seek a sign."

##### this generation

"you and the people of this generation"

##### no sign will be given

"I will not give a sign"

#### Mark 8:13

##### he left them, got into a boat again

"he left them, got into a boat again with his disciples"

##### to the other side

"to the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

#### Mark 8:14

##### no more than one loaf

"only one loaf"

#### Mark 8:15

##### Keep watch and be on guard

"Keep watch"

##### the yeast of the Pharisees and the yeast of Herod

Jesus is comparing the Pharisees' and Herod's teachings to yeast, but you should not explain this when you translate it because the disciples themselves did not understand it.

#### Mark 8:16

##### no bread

"very little bread"

#### Mark 8:17

##### Why are you arguing about having no bread?

"You should not be thinking that I am talking about actual bread."

##### Do you still not see or understand?

"Do you not yet understand?" or "You should perceive and understand by now the things I say and do."

##### Do you have hardened hearts?

"You are so slow to understand what I mean!" or "You are unwilling to understand what I mean!"

#### Mark 8:18

##### You have eyes, do you not see? You have ears, do you not hear? Do you not remember?

"You have eyes, but you do not understand what you see. You have ears, but you do not understand what you hear. You should remember."

#### Mark 8:19

##### how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you take up

"how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating"

#### Mark 8:20

##### how many basketfuls of broken pieces of bread did you take up

"how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating"

#### Mark 8:21

##### Do you not yet understand?

"You should understand by now the things I say and do."

#### Mark 8:22

##### Bethsaida

This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

##### to touch him

"to touch him in order to heal him"

#### Mark 8:23

##### When he had spit on his eyes ... he asked him

"When Jesus had spit on the man's eyes ... Jesus asked the man"

#### Mark 8:24

##### He looked up

"The man looked up"

##### I see men who look like walking trees

"Yes, I see people! They are walking around, but I cannot see them clearly. They look like trees"

#### Mark 8:25

##### Then he again

"Then Jesus again"

##### and the man opened his eyes, his sight was restored

"restoring the man's sight, and then the man opened his eyes"

#### Mark 8:28

##### They answered him and said

"They answered him, saying,"

##### John the Baptist

"Some people say that you are John the Baptist"

##### Others say ... others

"Other people say you are ... other people say you are"

#### Mark 8:29

##### He asked them

"Jesus asked his disciples"

#### Mark 8:30

##### Jesus warned them not to tell anyone about him.

"Jesus warned them not to tell anyone that he is the Christ." or "Jesus warned them, 'Do not tell anyone that I am the Christ.'"

#### Mark 8:31

##### Son of Man

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### would be rejected by the elders and the chief priests and the scribes, and would be killed, and after three days rise up

"that the elders and the chief priests and the scribes would reject him, and that men would kill him, and that after three days he would rise up"

#### Mark 8:32

##### He spoke that message openly

Possible meanings are 1) "He said this so that people could hear him" or 2) "He said this in a way that was easy to understand."

##### began to rebuke him

"began to rebuke him for saying these things"

#### Mark 8:33

##### Get behind me, Satan

"Get Get away from me, because you are acting like Satan"

#### Mark 8:34

##### follow me

"be my disciple" or "be one of my disciples"

##### must deny himself

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

##### take up his cross, and follow me

"must obey me even to the point of suffering and dying"

##### follow me

"obey me"

#### Mark 8:35

##### For whoever wants

"For anyone who wants"

##### life

This refers to both physical life and spiritual life.

##### for my sake and for the gospel

"because he follows me and tells others the gospel"

#### Mark 8:36

##### What does it profit a person to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life?

"Even if a person gains the whole world, it will not benefit him if he forfeits his life."

##### to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life

"if he gains the whole world and then forfeits his life"

##### to gain the whole world

"to gain everything he ever wanted"

##### forfeit

To forfeit something is to lose it or to have another person take it away.

#### Mark 8:37

##### What can a person give in exchange for his life?

"There is nothing a person can give in exchange for his life." or "No one can give anything in exchange for his life."

##### What can a person give

"What can a person give to God"

#### Mark 8:38

##### ashamed of me and my words

"ashamed of me and my message"

##### in this adulterous and sinful generation

"in this generation of people who have committed adultery against God and are very sinful" or "in this generation of people who are unfaithful to God and are very sinful"

##### the Son of Man will be ashamed

"I, the Son of Man, will be ashamed"

##### when he comes

"when he comes back"

##### in the glory of his Father

When Jesus returns he will have the same glory as his Father.

##### with the holy angels

"accompanied by the holy angels"

## Chapter 9

#### Mark 9:1

##### He said to them

"Jesus said to his disciples"

##### the kingdom of God come with power

"God show himself with great power as king"

#### Mark 9:2

##### he was transfigured

"his appearance had changed" or "he appeared very different"

##### before them

"in front of them"

#### Mark 9:3

##### radiantly brilliant

"shining" or "glowing."

##### whiter than any bleacher on earth could bleach them

"whiter than any person on earth could whiten them"

#### Mark 9:4

##### Elijah with Moses appeared

"two prophets who had lived long ago, Elijah and Moses, appeared"

##### they were talking

The word "they" refers to Elijah and Moses.

#### Mark 9:5

##### Peter answered and said to Jesus

"Peter said to Jesus."

##### it is good for us to be here

It is not clear whether "us" refers only to Peter, James, and John, or if it refers to everyone there, including Jesus, Elijah, and Moses. If you can translate so that both options are possible, do so.

##### shelters

simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

#### Mark 9:6

##### they were terrified

"they were very frightened" or "they were very afraid"

#### Mark 9:7

##### came and overshadowed

"appeared and covered"

##### Then a voice came out of the cloud

"Then someone spoke from the cloud" or "Then God spoke from the cloud"

##### beloved Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### Mark 9:8

##### when they looked

Here "they" refers to Peter, James, and John.

#### Mark 9:9

##### he commanded them to tell no one ... until the Son of Man had risen

This implies that he was permitting them to tell people about what they had seen after he rose from being dead.

##### risen from the dead

"risen from death"

#### Mark 9:10

##### So they kept the matter to themselves

"So they did not tell anyone about what they had seen"

#### Mark 9:11

##### They asked him

The word "they" refers to Peter, James, and John.

##### Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?

"Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come before the Messiah comes?"

#### Mark 9:12

##### Elijah does come first to restore all things

By saying this, Jesus affirms that Elijah would come first.

##### Why then is it written ... be despised?

"But I also want you to consider what is written about the Son of Man. The scriptures say that he must suffer many things and people would hate him."

#### Mark 9:13

##### they did whatever they wanted to him

"our leaders treated him very badly, just as they wanted to do"

#### Mark 9:14

##### Connecting Statement:

When Peter, James, John, and Jesus came down from the mountain, they found the scribes arguing with the other disciples.

##### When they came to the disciples

Jesus, Peter, James, and John returned to the other disciples who had not gone with them up the mountain.

##### they saw a great crowd around them

"Jesus and those three disciples saw a great crowd around the other disciples"

##### scribes were arguing with them

The scribes were arguing with the disciples who had not gone with Jesus.

#### Mark 9:15

##### was amazed

"was amazed that Jesus had come"

#### Mark 9:17

##### He has a spirit

"He has an unclean spirit" or "He is possessed by an unclean spirit"

#### Mark 9:18

##### down, and he foams at the mouth, grinds his teeth, and becomes rigid

"down, and bubbles come out of his mouth, and he grinds his teeth and becomes stiff or rigid."

##### they could not

"they could not drive it out of him"

#### Mark 9:19

##### He answered them

"Jesus responded to the crowd"

##### Unbelieving generation

Jesus calls the crowd an unbelieving generation as he begins to respond to them.

##### how long will I have to stay with you? How long will I bear with you?

"Your unbelief tires me! I wonder how long I must bear with you."

##### bear with you

"endure you" or "put up with you"

##### Bring him to me

"Bring the boy to me"

#### Mark 9:20

##### convulsion

This is the violent shaking of a person's body that can occur when that person has no control over his body.

#### Mark 9:21

##### For how much time

"How long"

##### Since childhood

"He has been like this since he was a small child"

#### Mark 9:22

##### have pity

"have compassion"

#### Mark 9:23

##### 'If you are able'?

"You should not say to me, 'If you are able.'" or "You ask me if I am able. Of course I am able."

##### All things are possible for the one who believes

"God can do anything for people who believe in n God"

#### Mark 9:24

##### Help my unbelief

"Help me when I do not believe" or "Help me have more faith"

#### Mark 9:25

##### the crowd running to them

This means that more people were running toward where Jesus was and that the crowd there was growing larger.

##### You mute and deaf spirit

"You unclean spirit, you who are causing the boy to be unable to speak and unable to hear"

#### Mark 9:26

##### It cried out

"The unclean spirit cried out"

##### convulsed the boy greatly

"shook the boy violently"

##### came out

"came out of the boy"

##### The boy looked like one who was dead

"The boy appeared dead" or "The boy looked like a dead person"

#### Mark 9:27

##### took him by the hand and lifted him up

"grasped the boy by the hand and helped him get up"

#### Mark 9:28

##### cast it out

"cast the unclean spirit out of the boy"

#### Mark 9:29

##### This kind cannot be cast out except by prayer

"This kind of unclean spirit can be cast out only by prayer"

#### Mark 9:30

##### They went out from there

"Jesus and his disciples left that region"

#### Mark 9:31

##### for he was teaching his disciples

"for he was teaching his disciples privately"

##### The Son of Man will be given over

"Someone will give the Son of Man over"

##### into the hands of men

"into the control of men" or "so that men will be able to control him"

##### When he has been put to death, after three days he

"After they have put him to death and three days have passed, he"

#### Mark 9:32

##### they were afraid to ask him

"they were afraid to ask him what it meant"

#### Mark 9:33

##### they came to

"they arrived at."

##### were you discussing

"were you discussing with one another"

#### Mark 9:34

##### they were silent

"they were silent because they were ashamed"

##### who was the greatest

"who was the greatest among them"

#### Mark 9:35

##### If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all

"If anyone wants God to consider him to be the most important person of all, he must consider himself to be the least important of all people"

#### Mark 9:36

##### He took him in his arms

This means that he hugged the child or picked him up and placed him on his lap.

#### Mark 9:37

##### such a child

"a child like this"

##### in my name

"because he loves me" or "for my sake"

##### the one who sent me

"God, who has sent me"

#### Mark 9:38

##### John said to him

"John said to Jesus"

##### driving out demons

"driving demons out of people"

##### in your name

"by the authority of your name" or "by the power of your name"

##### he does not follow us

"he is not one of us" or "he does not walk with us"

#### Mark 9:40

##### is not against us

"is not opposing us"

##### is for us

"is trying to achieve the same goals that we are"

#### Mark 9:41

##### gives you a cup of water to drink in my name because you belong to Christ

Jesus speaks about giving someone a cup of water as an example of how one person may help another.

##### not lose

"definitely receive"

#### Mark 9:42

##### millstone

a millstone is a large, round stone used for grinding grain into flour

#### Mark 9:43

##### If your hand causes you to stumble

"If you want to do something sinful with one of your hands"

##### to enter into life maimed

"to be maimed and then to enter into life" or "to be maimed before entering into life"

##### to enter into life

"to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever"

##### maimed

"without a hand" or "missing a hand"

##### into the unquenchable fire

"where the fire cannot be put out"

#### Mark 9:45

##### If your foot causes you to stumble

"If you want to do something sinful with one of your feet"

##### to enter into life lame

"to be lame and then to enter into life" or "to be lame before entering into life"

##### to enter into life

"to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever"

##### lame

"without a foot" or "missing a foot"

##### be thrown into hell

"for God to throw you into hell"

#### Mark 9:47

##### If your eye causes you to stumble, tear it out

"If you want to do something sinful because of what you look at, tear your eye out"

##### to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye than to have two eyes

"to enter into the kingdom of God after having lived on earth with only one eye than to have lived on earth with two eyes"

##### to be thrown into hell

"for God to throw you into hell"

#### Mark 9:48

##### where their worm does not die

"where worms that eat people there do not die"

#### Mark 9:49

##### everyone will be salted with fire

"God will salt everyone with fire" or "Just as salt purifies a sacrifice, God will purify everyone by allowing them to suffer"

#### Mark 9:50

##### its saltiness

"its salty taste"

##### how can you make it salty again?

"you cannot make it salty again."

##### Have salt among yourselves

"Do good to each other, like salt adds flavor to food"

## Chapter 10

#### Mark 10:1

##### Jesus left that place

"Jesus and his disciples left Capernaum"

##### He was teaching them again

The word "them" refers to the crowds.

##### he was accustomed to do

"was his custom" or "he usually did"

#### Mark 10:3

##### What did Moses command you

"What did Moses command your ancestors about this"

#### Mark 10:4

##### a certificate of divorce

This was a paper saying that the woman was no longer his wife.

#### Mark 10:5

##### "It was because ... this law," Jesus said to them.

"Jesus said to them, 'It was because ... this law."

##### because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law

"because your ancestors had hard hearts like yours that he wrote this law"

##### your hard hearts

"your stubbornness"

#### Mark 10:7

##### For this reason

"Because of this"

##### be united to his wife

"join with his wife"

#### Mark 10:8

##### they are no longer two, but one flesh

"the two people are like one person" or "they are no longer two, but together they are one body"

#### Mark 10:9

##### Therefore what God has joined together, let no man tear apart

"Therefore since God has joined together husband and wife, let no one tear them apart"

#### Mark 10:10

##### When they were

"When Jesus and his disciples were"

##### When they were in the house

"When Jesus and his disciples were alone in the house"

##### asked him again about this

The word "this" refers to the conversation that Jesus had just had with the Pharisees about divorce.

#### Mark 10:11

##### Whoever

"Anyone who"

##### commits adultery against her

Here "her" refers to the first woman he was married to.

#### Mark 10:12

##### she commits adultery

"she commits adultery against him" or "she commits adultery against the first man"

#### Mark 10:13

##### he might touch them

"he might touch them with his hands and bless them" or "he might lay his hands on them and bless them"

##### rebuked them

"rebuked the people"

#### Mark 10:14

##### Jesus noticed it

The word "it" refers to the disciples rebuking the people who were bringing the children to Jesus.

##### was angry

Jesus was angry with the disciples.

##### Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them

"Be sure to allow the little children to come to me"

##### for the kingdom of God belongs to those who are like them

"the kingdom of God includes people who are like them" or "because only people like them are members of the kingdom of God"

#### Mark 10:15

##### as a little child

"in the same manner as a little child would"

##### will not receive the kingdom of God

"will not accept God as their king"

##### definitely not enter it

The word "it" refers to the kingdom of God.

#### Mark 10:16

##### he took the children into his arms

"he hugged the children"

#### Mark 10:17

##### to inherit eternal life

to receive eternal life

#### Mark 10:18

##### Why do you call me good?

"You do not understand what you are saying when you call me good."

##### No one is good except God alone

"The only one who is good is God"

#### Mark 10:19

##### do not testify falsely

"do not lie about someone in court"

#### Mark 10:21

##### One thing you lack

"One thing you need to do" or "There is one thing you have not yet done"

##### give it to the poor

"give the money to the poor people"

##### treasure

wealth, valuable things

#### Mark 10:22

##### had many possessions

"owned many things"

#### Mark 10:23

##### How difficult it is

"It is very difficult"

#### Mark 10:24

##### Jesus said to them again

"Jesus said to his disciples again"

##### Children, how

"My friends, how"

#### Mark 10:25

##### It is easier for a camel

"It would be easier for a camel"

##### the eye of a needle

"the hole of a needle"

#### Mark 10:26

##### They were

"The disciples were"

##### Then who can be saved?

"If that is so, then no one will be saved!"

#### Mark 10:27

##### With people it is impossible, but not with God

"It is impossible for people to save themselves, but God can save them"

#### Mark 10:28

##### Look, we have left everything and have followed you

"We have left everything behind and have followed you"

#### Mark 10:29

##### Truly I say to you, there is no one

"Truly I say to you, everyone"

##### or lands

"or plots of ground" or "or the land that he owns"

##### for my sake

"for my cause" or "for me"

##### for the gospel

"to proclaim the gospel"

#### Mark 10:30

##### this age

"the world as you know it" or "this present age"

##### with persecutions, and in the world to come, eternal life

"and even though people persecute them, in the future, they will receive eternal life"

#### Mark 10:31

##### are first will be last, and the last first

"are important will be unimportant, and those who are unimportant will be important"

##### the last first

"those who are last will be first"

#### Mark 10:33

##### the Son of Man will be given over to

"someone will hand the Son of Man to" or "they will hand the Son of Man over to"

##### They will condemn

The word "They" refers to the chief priests and the scribes.

##### give him over to the Gentiles

"betray him to the Gentiles" or "put him under the control of the Gentiles"

#### Mark 10:34

##### They will mock

"People will mock"

##### put him to death

"kill him"

##### he will rise

"he will rise from being dead"

#### Mark 10:35

##### we ... us

These words refer only to James and John.

#### Mark 10:37

##### in your glory

"when you rule in your kingdom"

#### Mark 10:38

##### You do not know

"You do not understand"

##### drink the cup which I will drink

"drink the cup of suffering that I will drink" or "drink from the cup of suffering that I will drink from"

##### be baptized with the baptism with which I will be baptized

"endure the baptism of suffering which I will suffer"

#### Mark 10:39

##### you will drink

"you will drink as well"

#### Mark 10:40

##### But who is to sit at my right hand or at my left hand is not mine to give

"But I am not the one who allows people to sit at my right hand or my left hand"

##### but it is for those for whom it has been prepared

The word "it" refers to the places to his right hand and to his left hand.

##### it has been prepared

"God has prepared it" or "God has prepared them"

#### Mark 10:41

##### heard about this

The word "this" refers to James and John asking to sit at Jesus's right and left hands.

#### Mark 10:42

##### Jesus called them

"Jesus called his disciples"

##### those who are considered rulers of the Gentiles

"those whom the Gentiles think of as their rulers"

##### dominate

have control or power over

##### exercise authority

"flaunt their authority." This means that they show or use their authority in an overbearing way.

#### Mark 10:43

##### But it is not this way among you

"But do not be like them"

##### become great

"be highly respected"

#### Mark 10:44

##### to be first

"to be the most important"

#### Mark 10:45

##### For the Son of Man did not come to be served but to serve

"For the Son of Man did not come to be served by people, but to serve people"

##### for many

"for many people"

#### Mark 10:46

##### the son of Timaeus, Bartimaeus, a blind beggar

"a blind beggar named Bartimaeus, the son of Timaeus." Bartimaeus is the name of a man. Timaeus is his father's name.

#### Mark 10:47

##### When he heard that it was Jesus

"When he heard people saying that it was Jesus"

##### Son of David

"You who are the Messiah descended from King David"

#### Mark 10:48

##### Many rebuked

"Many people rebuked"

##### all the more

"even more"

#### Mark 10:49

##### commanded him to be called.

"commanded others to call him." or "commanded them, 'Call him to come over here.'"

##### They called

The word "They" refers to the crowd.

##### Be brave

"Have courage" or "Do not be afraid"

##### He is calling for you

"Jesus is calling for you"

#### Mark 10:50

##### sprang up

"jumped up"

#### Mark 10:51

##### answered him

"answered the blind man"

##### to receive my sight

"to be able to see"

#### Mark 10:52

##### Your faith has healed you

"I am healing you because you have believed in me"

##### he followed him

"he followed Jesus"

## Chapter 1

#### Luke 1:1

##### of the things that have been accomplished among us

"about those events that have happened among us"

#### Luke 1:2

##### were eyewitnesses and servants of the word

"saw what had happened and served God by telling people his message"

#### Luke 1:3

##### I have accurately investigated

"I have carefully researched"

##### most excellent Theophilus

This phrase should use the style that your culture uses to address people of high status. Some people may prefer to put this greeting at the beginning of verse 1 and say, "To the most honorable Theophilus" or "Dear most noble Theophilus."

#### Luke 1:5

##### In the days of Herod king of Judea

"When King Herod ruled over Judea"

##### from the division of Abijah

"from the group of priests who were descendants of Abijah." All of the priests were descendants of Aaron.

#### Luke 1:6

##### before God

"in God's sight" or "in God's judgment"

##### all the commandments and statutes of the Lord

"all that the Lord had commanded and required"

#### Luke 1:7

##### they were both advanced in their days

"they had both lived many days" or "they had both lived many years" or "they were both very old"

#### Luke 1:8

##### Now it came about that Zechariah

This phrase shows that Luke is starting to tell what happened to Zechariah. Alternate translation: "Now it happened that Zechariah" or "One day Zechariah"

##### Zechariah was in God's presence, carrying out the priestly duties

"Zechariah was in God's temple, doing the work of a priest"

##### in the order of his division

"when it was his group's turn" or "when the time came for his group to serve"

#### Luke 1:9

##### the customary way

"the traditional method" or "the usual way"

##### he had been chosen by lot

A lot was a marked stone that was thrown or rolled on the ground in order to decide something. God guided the lot to show them which priest he wanted them to choose.

#### Luke 1:11

##### Now

This word marks the beginning of the action in the story.

##### appeared to him

"suddenly came to him" or "was suddenly there with Zechariah"

#### Luke 1:12

##### When Zechariah saw him

"When Zechariah saw the angel"

##### and fear fell on him

and felt afraid

#### Luke 1:13

##### your prayer has been heard

"God has heard your prayer"

##### will bear you a son

"will have a son for you" or "will give birth to your son"

#### Luke 1:14

##### at his birth

"because of his birth"

#### Luke 1:15

##### he will be great in the sight of the Lord

"he will be a very important person for the Lord" or "God will consider him to be very important"

##### he will be filled with the Holy Spirit

"he will be full of the Holy Spirit" or "the Holy Spirit will empower him" or "the Holy Spirit will guide him"

##### from his mother's womb

"even while he is in his mother's womb" or "even before he is born"

#### Luke 1:16

##### Many of the descendants of Israel will be turned to the Lord their God

"He will turn many of the descendants of Israel to the Lord their God" or "He will cause many of the people of Israel to repent and worship the Lord their God"

#### Luke 1:17

##### He will go before the face of the Lord

"He will go before the Lord" or "He will go ahead of the Lord"

##### in the spirit and power of Elijah

"with the same spirit and power that Elijah had." The word "spirit" either refers to God's Holy Spirit or to Elijah's attitude or way of thinking. Make sure that the word you use does not mean ghost or evil spirit.

##### to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children

"to persuade fathers to care about their children again" or "to cause fathers to restore their relationships with their children"

##### and the disobedient to the wisdom of the righteous

"and to persuade disobedient people to accept the wisdom of righteous people"

##### to make ready for the Lord a people prepared for him

"to make the people ready for the Lord" or "to prepare the people for the Lord"

#### Luke 1:18

##### How can I know this?

"How can I know for sure that what you said will happen?" or "What can you do to prove to me that this will happen?"

#### Luke 1:19

##### I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God

“I am Gabriel. I stand in God’s presence.” This statement shows that Gabriel was important and had authority from God.

##### I was sent to speak to you

"God sent me to speak to you"

#### Luke 1:20

##### Behold

"Pay attention"

##### you did not believe my words

"you did not believe what I said"

#### Luke 1:21

##### Now

This marks a shift in the story from what happened inside the temple to what happened outside. Alternate translation: "While that was happening" or "Meanwhile"

#### Luke 1:23

##### It came about that when

This phrase moves the story ahead to when Zechariah's time of service at the temple ended. Alternate translation: "When"

##### he went to his house

Zechariah did not live in Jerusalem, where the temple was located. He traveled to his home town.

#### Luke 1:24

##### kept herself hidden

"did not leave her house"

#### Luke 1:25

##### This is what the Lord has done for me

This refers to the fact that the Lord allowed her to become pregnant.

##### he looked at me with favor

"he showed me favor" or "he regarded me kindly" or "he was kind to me"

##### my shame

"the shame I felt." She felt ashamed because she was not able to have children.

#### Luke 1:26

##### In the sixth month

"in the sixth month of Elizabeth's pregnancy"

##### the angel Gabriel was sent from God

"God told the angel Gabriel to go"

#### Luke 1:27

##### a virgin engaged to ... Joseph

Mary's parents had agreed that Mary would marry Joseph. Joseph and Mary had not had sexual relations, but Joseph would have thought and spoken of her as his wife.

#### Luke 1:28

##### He came to her

"The angel came to Mary"

##### Greetings

This was a common greeting. It means: "Rejoice" or "Be glad."

##### you who are highly favored!

"you who have received great grace!" or "you who have received special kindness!"

#### Luke 1:29

##### she was very confused by his words and she wondered what kind of greeting this could be

Mary understood the meaning of the individual words, but she did not understand why the angel said this amazing greeting to her.

#### Luke 1:30

##### you have found favor with God

"God has decided to give you his grace" or "God is showing you his kindness"

#### Luke 1:31

##### you will conceive in your womb

"you will become pregnant"

#### Luke 1:32

##### and will be called

"and his title will be"

##### the Son of the Most High

This refers to the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### the Most High

“The Most High” is a title for God. It means that God is greater or more powerful than everyone else. Alternate translation: “the Greatest One”

##### give him the throne of his ancestor David

The throne represents the king's authority to rule. Alternate translation: "give him authority to rule as king as his ancestor David did"

#### Luke 1:33

##### the house of Jacob

"Jacob's descendants"

##### there will be no end to his kingdom

"his kingdom will never end"

#### Luke 1:34

##### How will this happen

Mary did not understand how it could happen, but she did not doubt that it would happen.

##### I have not known any man

Mary used this polite expression to say that she had not engaged in sexual activity. Alternate translation: "I am a virgin"

#### Luke 1:35

##### The Holy Spirit will overshadow you

"The Holy Spirit will cover you like a shadow." God's Spirit would supernaturally cause Mary to become pregnant even while she still remained a virgin. Make sure this does not imply any physical or sexual union—this was a miracle.

##### So the holy one to be born will be called the Son of God

"So the baby that will be born will be holy, and people will call him the Son of God" or "So the holy one who will be born will have the title Son of God"

#### Luke 1:36

##### your relative Elizabeth has also conceived a son in her old age

"your relative Elizabeth has also become pregnant with a son, even though she is very old" or "Your relative Elizabeth, even though she is old, has also become pregnant and will bear a son." Make sure it does not sound as though both Mary and Elizabeth were old.

##### the sixth month for her

"the sixth month of her pregnancy"

#### Luke 1:37

##### nothing will be impossible for God

"everything is possible for God" or "God can do anything"

#### Luke 1:38

##### I am the female servant of the Lord

"I am the Lord's servant." This shows her humility and obedience to the Lord. She was not boasting about being the Lord's servant.

##### Let it be for me according to your message

"Let this happen to me, according to your message" or "May what you have said happen to me"

#### Luke 1:39

##### Mary arose

"Mary got ready" or "Mary started out"

##### the hill country

"the hilly area" or "the mountainous part of Israel"

#### Luke 1:41

##### the baby in her womb jumped

"the baby in Elizabeth's womb moved suddenly"

#### Luke 1:42

##### cried out with a loud shout and said

The phrases "cried out" and "loud shout" mean the same thing and are used to show how excited Elizabeth was. You may want to combine them into one phrase. Alternate translation: "exclaimed loudly"

##### Blessed are you among women

"You are blessed more than any other woman"

##### the fruit of your womb

"the baby in your womb" or "the baby you will bear"

#### Luke 1:43

##### Why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

Elizabeth was surprised and very happy. Alternate translation: "How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!"

##### the mother of my Lord

It can be made clear that Elizabeth was calling Mary "the mother of my Lord" by adding the word "you." Alternate translation: "you, the mother of my Lord"

#### Luke 1:44

##### when the sound of your greeting came to my ears

"when I heard the sound of your greeting"

##### jumped for joy

"moved suddenly with joy" or "rolled over because he was so happy"

#### Luke 1:45

##### Blessed is she who believed ... that were told her from the Lord

Elizabeth is talking about Mary to Mary. Alternate translation: "Blessed are you who believed ... that were told you from the Lord"

##### Blessed is she who believed

"She is blessed because she believed" or "The Lord has blessed her because she believed"

##### there would be a fulfillment of the things that were told her from the Lord

"the things that were told her from the Lord would actually happen" or "the Lord's message to her would come true"

#### Luke 1:46

##### My soul praises

The word "soul" refers to the spiritual part of a person. Alternate translation: "My inner being praises" or "I praise"

#### Luke 1:47

##### my spirit has rejoiced

Both "soul" and "spirit" refer to the spiritual part of a person. Alternate translation: "my heart has rejoiced" or "I rejoice"

##### God my Savior

"God, the One who saves me" or "God, who saves me"

#### Luke 1:48

##### has looked at

"has looked at with concern" or "has cared about"

##### the low condition of his female servant

"the humble condition of his servant" or "his lowly servant" or "his unimportant servant"

##### from now on

"now and in the future"

##### all generations

"people in all generations"

#### Luke 1:49

##### the Mighty One has done great things

"God, the Powerful One, has done great things"

##### his name is holy

Here "name" refers to the entire person of God. Alternate translation: "he is holy"

#### Luke 1:50

##### from generation to generation

"through all generations" or "to people in every time period"

#### Luke 1:51

##### He has displayed strength with his arm

"He has shown that he is very powerful" or "He has shown his power by what he has done"

##### those who were proud about the thoughts of their hearts

"those who were proud in their thoughts" or "those who thought proudly in their hearts"

#### Luke 1:52

##### He has thrown down princes from their thrones

"He has taken away the authority of princes" or "He has made rulers stop ruling"

##### he has raised up those of low condition

"he has has made lowly people important" or "has given honor to humble people"

#### Luke 1:53

##### He has filled the hungry with good things

"He has given good food to hungry people" or "He has given poor people good things"

#### Luke 1:54

##### Israel his servant

If readers confuse this with the man named Israel, it could be translated as "his servant, the nation of Israel" or "Israel, his servants."

##### so as to remember to show mercy

Here "remember" represents doing what he promised. Alternate translation: "by remembering to show mercy" or "by continuing to show mercy"

#### Luke 1:55

##### as he said to our fathers

"just as he promised our ancestors he would do" or "because he promised our ancestors he would be merciful"

##### his descendants

"Abraham's descendants"

#### Luke 1:57

##### to deliver her baby

"to give birth to her baby"

#### Luke 1:58

##### had shown his great mercy to her

"had been very kind to her"

#### Luke 1:59

##### on the eighth day

"on the eighth day of the baby's life"

##### they came to circumcise the child

This was often a ceremony where one person circumcised the baby and friends were there to celebrate with the family. Alternate translation: "they came for the baby's circumcision ceremony"

##### after the name of his father

"his father's name" or "like his father"

#### Luke 1:61

##### who his called by this name

"who has that name"

#### Luke 1:62

##### They made signs to his father as to how he wanted him to be named

"They motioned to the baby's father to ask what name he wanted to give to the baby"

#### Luke 1:63

##### a writing tablet

"something on which to write"

##### astonished

greatly surprised or amazed

#### Luke 1:64

##### his mouth was opened and his tongue was freed

"God opened his mouth and freed his tongue" or "he was able to speak again"

#### Luke 1:65

##### Fear came on all who lived around them

"All who lived around them became afraid" or "All who lived around them were in awe of God"

##### All these matters were spread throughout all the hill country of Judea

"All these matters were spoken about throughout all the hill country of Judea" or "People talked about all these events throughout the hill country of Judea "

#### Luke 1:66

##### stored them in their hearts

"thought carefully about these matters" or "thought a lot about these events"

##### What then will this child become?

Possible meanings are "What kind of great person will this baby grow up to be?" or "What a great man this child will become!"

##### the hand of the Lord was with him

The phrase "the hand of the Lord" refers to the Lord's power. Alternate translation: "the Lord's power was with him" or "the Lord was working in him powerfully"

#### Luke 1:67

##### His father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit

See how you translated "filled with the Holy Spirit" in 1:15 and 1:41.

##### prophesied, saying

"prophesied by saying" or "prophesied, and this is what he said"

#### Luke 1:68

##### the God of Israel

"the God who reigns over Israel" or "the God whom the people of Israel worship"

#### Luke 1:69

##### He has raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David

An animal's horn is a symbol of the animal's power to defend itself. The Bible often calls a powerful person a horn. Here, to raise up someone means to bring him into existence or to enable him to act. Alternate translation: "He has brought to us someone in the house of his servant David who has power to save us"

##### in the house of his servant David

David's "house" here represents his family, specifically, his descendants. Alternate translation: "in the family of his servant David" or "who is a descendant of his servant David"

#### Luke 1:70

##### as he spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets from long ago

God speaking by the prophets' mouths represents God causing his prophets to say what he wanted them to say. Alternate translation: "as he caused his holy prophets who lived long ago to say"

#### Luke 1:71

##### salvation from our enemies

"who will save us from our enemies" or "He will save us from our enemies"

##### from the hand of all who hate us

"from the power of all who hate us" or "from the control of all who hate us"

#### Luke 1:72

##### to show mercy to our fathers

"to be merciful to our ancestors"

##### to remember his holy covenant

"to fulfill his holy covenant" or "to do what he said in his holy covenant he would do"

#### Luke 1:74

##### He swore to grant to us that we ... would serve him without fear

"He swore to make it possible for us ... to serve him without being afraid of our enemies"

##### to grant to us that we, having been delivered out of the hand of our enemies, would serve him without fear

"to rescue us from the control of our enemies and to make it possible for us to serve him without fear"

#### Luke 1:75

##### in holiness and righteousness

Possible meanings are "doing what is holy and righteous" or "being holy and righteous."

##### before him

"in his presence" or "in his sight"

#### Luke 1:76

##### you, child, will be called a prophet

"as for you, child, people will know that you are a prophet." Zechariah was speaking to his son, John.

##### of the Most High

"who serves the Most High" or "who speaks for God Most High"

##### will go before the face of the Lord

See how you translated a similar phrase in 1:17.

#### Luke 1:77

##### to give knowledge of salvation to his people by the forgiveness of their sins

"to teach God's people about salvation through the forgiveness of their sins" or "to teach God's people how God saves people by forgiving their sins"

#### Luke 1:78

##### because of the tender mercy of our God

"because our God is compassionate and merciful"

##### the sunrise from on high

"the Savior, who is like the sunrise, will come from heaven"

#### Luke 1:79

##### to shine on those

"to give spiritual light to those"

##### those who sit in darkness and in the shadow of death

Darkness can represent sin, separation from God, and the lack of spiritual truth. The shadow of death represents the threat of death. Alternate translation: "those who are in spiritual darkness and are in danger of dying"

##### to guide our feet into the path of peace

"to guide us into the path of peace" or "to teach us how to live at peace with God"

#### Luke 1:80

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Luke quickly moves from the birth of John to the beginning of John's ministry as an adult.

##### became strong in spirit

"became spiritually mature" or "strengthened his relationship with God"

##### was in the wilderness

"lived in the wilderness." Luke does not say at what age John began to live in the wilderness.

##### until the day of his public appearance to Israel

"when he began to preach in public to Israel"

## Chapter 2

#### Luke 2:1

##### Now ... it came about that

These words mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### Caesar Augustus

"King Augustus" or "Emperor Augustus." He was the first emperor of the Roman Empire.

##### sent out a decree ordering

"sent messengers with a decree ordering"

##### that a census be taken of all the people living in the world

"that they count all the people in the world and write down their names"

##### the world

Here the word "world" represents the part of the world that Caesar August ruled. Alternate translation: "the Empire" or "the Roman world"

#### Luke 2:2

##### Quirinius

This is the name of a man.

#### Luke 2:3

##### his own city

This refers to the cities where people's ancestors lived. Alternate translation: "the city in which his ancestors lived" or "the city of his ancestors"

##### to be registered for the census

"to have his name written in the register" or "to be included in the official count"

#### Luke 2:4

##### to the city of David, which is called Bethlehem

"to Bethlehem, the city of King David" or "to Bethlehem, the town where King David had lived"

##### because he was of the house and family line of David

"because Joseph was a descendant of David"

#### Luke 2:5

##### who was engaged to him

"his fiancée" or "who was promised to him." An engaged couple was considered legally married, but they would not have been physically intimate.

#### Luke 2:6

##### while they were there

"while Mary and Joseph were in Bethlehem"

##### the time came for her to deliver her baby

"it was time for her to give birth to her baby"

#### Luke 2:7

##### wrapped him in long strips of cloth

In some cultures mothers comfort their babies by wrapping them tightly in cloth or a blanket. Alternate translation: "wrapped cloths firmly around him" or "wrapped him tightly in a blanket"

##### laid him in a manger

A manger is a box or frame where people put hay or other food for animals to eat. Mary may have used dry hay as a cushion for the baby.

##### there was no room for them in the inn

"there was no space for them to stay in the guest room.

#### Luke 2:9

##### An angel of the Lord appeared to them

"An angel from the Lord came to them" or "An angel who served the Lord suddenly stood near the shepherds"

#### Luke 2:10

##### that will bring great joy to all the people

"that will make all the people very happy"

#### Luke 2:11

##### the city of David

This refers to Bethlehem.

#### Luke 2:12

##### This is the sign that will be given to you

"God will give you this sign"

##### the sign

This was either a sign that would help the shepherds recognize the baby, or it was a sign to prove that what the angel said was true.

#### Luke 2:13

##### a great multitude from heaven

"a large group of angels from heaven"

#### Luke 2:14

##### Glory to God in the highest

Possible meanings are 1) "Give honor to God in the highest place" or 2) "Give the highest honor to God."

##### may there be peace on earth among people with whom he is pleased

"may those people on earth with whom God is pleased have peace"

#### Luke 2:15

##### Let us now go

"We should go now"

#### Luke 2:17

##### they made known what had been said to them about this child

the shepherds told people what the angels had said to them about the baby

#### Luke 2:18

##### what was spoken to them by the shepherds

"what the shepherds told them"

#### Luke 2:19

##### treasuring them in her heart

Mary considered the things she heard about her son to be precious like a treasure. Alternate translation: "keeping them like treasure in her heart" or "carefully remembering them"

#### Luke 2:20

##### The shepherds returned

"The shepherds went back to the sheep"

##### glorifying and praising God

"talking about God's greatness and praising him"

#### Luke 2:21

##### When it was the end of the eighth day, when he was circumcised

"When the eight days ended and they circumcised the baby" or "Eight days after the baby was born, they circumcised him, and"

##### he was named Jesus, the name he had been given by the angel

"they named him Jesus, the name the angel had called him"

#### Luke 2:22

##### When the required number of days ... had passed

"When the number of days that God required ... had ended"

##### for their purification

"for them to become ceremonially clean"

##### they brought him up to the temple

"Mary and Joseph brought the baby up to the temple"

##### to present him to the Lord

"to bring him to the Lord"

#### Luke 2:23

##### As it is written in the law of the Lord

"They did this because Moses wrote in the law of the Lord" or "They did this because the law of the Lord says"

##### Every male who opens the womb

"The first male that a mother gives birth to" or "Every firstborn male"

#### Luke 2:25

##### Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story.

##### was righteous and devout

"did what was right and feared God" or "obeyed God's laws and feared God"

##### the consolation of Israel

"the one who would comfort the people of Israel"

##### the Holy Spirit was upon him

"the Holy Spirit was with him." God was with Simeon in a special way and gave him wisdom and direction.

#### Luke 2:26

##### It had been revealed to him by the Holy Spirit

"The Holy Spirit had shown him" or "The Holy Spirit had told him"

##### he would not see death before he had seen the Lord's Christ

"Simeon would not die before he had seen the Lord's Christ" or "he would see the Lord's Messiah before he died"

#### Luke 2:27

##### Led by the Spirit

"As the Holy Spirit directed him"

##### into the temple

"into the temple courtyard." Only priests were allowed to enter the temple building.

#### Luke 2:28

##### he took him into his arms

"Simeon took the infant Jesus into his arms" or "Simeon held Jesus in his arms"

#### Luke 2:29

##### Now let your servant depart in peace

"I am your servant; let me die in peace" or "Let me, your servant, die in peace"

##### according to your word

"as you promised"

#### Luke 2:30

##### my eyes have seen

"I have personally seen" or "I, myself, have seen"

##### your salvation

"the savior whom you sent" or "the one whom you sent to save people"

#### Luke 2:31

##### which you

Depending on how you translate the previous phrase, this may need to be changed to "whom you."

#### Luke 2:32

##### A light for revelation to the Gentiles

"This child will be like a light that reveals God to the the Gentiles"

##### and glory to your people Israel

"and will bring glory to your people Israel" or "and he will be the reason that glory will come to your people Israel"

#### Luke 2:33

##### what was said about him

"the things that Simeon said about the child"

#### Luke 2:34

##### said to Mary his mother

"said to the child's mother, Mary." Make sure it does not sound like Mary is the mother of Simeon.

##### Behold

"Look" or "Listen." By saying this, Simeon tells Mary that what he is about to say next is extremely important.

##### this child is appointed for the downfall and rising up of many people in Israel

"this child will cause many people in Israel to fall or rise"

#### Luke 2:35

##### a sword will pierce your own soul

"your sadness will be painful as though a sword pierced your soul"

##### so that the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed

"so that he may reveal the thoughts of many people" or "so that he may reveal what many people secretly think"

#### Luke 2:36

##### Phanuel

This is a man's name.

##### She was advanced in her days

"she had lived many days" or "she had lived many years" or "she was very old." See how you translated similar words in Luke 2:7.

##### after her virginity

"after she married him"

#### Luke 2:37

##### a widow for eighty-four years

Possible meanings are 1) she was a widow and was now 84 years old, or 2) she became a widow and lived another 84 years.

##### She never left the temple

"She was always at the temple" or "She never stopped going to the temple"

##### with fastings and prayers

"by abstaining from food on many occasions and by offering prayers"

#### Luke 2:38

##### she came near to them

"she approached Mary and Joseph"

##### for the redemption of Jerusalem

"for God to redeem Jerusalem" or "for the one who would rescue Jerusalem" or "for the one who would set Jerusalem free"

#### Luke 2:39

##### When they had finished everything they were required to do according to the law of the Lord

"When Joseph and Mary had finished doing everything the law of the Lord required them to do"

##### their own town of Nazareth

"the town of Nazareth, where they lived"

#### Luke 2:40

##### he was full of wisdom

"he was becoming wiser" or "he was learning what was wise"

##### the grace of God was upon him

"God blessed him" or "God was with him in a special way"

#### Luke 2:42

##### they again went up

“they again went to Jerusalem.” Jerusalem was in a region of high hills.

##### at the customary time

"at the normal time" or "as they did every year"

#### Luke 2:43

##### After they had stayed the full number of days for the feast

"After celebrating the feast for the required number of days" or "When the days for the feast ended"

#### Luke 2:44

##### They assumed

"They thought"

##### they traveled a day's journey

"they traveled one day" or "they went as far as people walk in one day"

#### Luke 2:46

##### in the temple

"in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

##### in the middle of the teachers

"among the teachers" or "together with the teachers" or "surrounded by those who taught people about God"

#### Luke 2:47

##### at his understanding

"at how much he understood" or "that he understood so much"

##### and his answers

"and at how well he answered them" or "and that he answered their questions so well"

#### Luke 2:48

##### When they saw him

"When Mary and Joseph found Jesus"

##### why have you treated us this way?

They rebuked Jesus because he had not gone with them and this had caused the to worry about him. Alternate translation: "you should not have treated us like this!" or "you should not have done this to us!"

##### Look

"Listen" or "Pay attention"

#### Luke 2:49

##### Why were you searching for me?

Jesus uses two questions to mildly rebuke his parents. Alternate translation: "You did not need to look for me."

##### Did you not know ... business?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have known ... business."

##### I had to be about my Father's business

Possible meanings are "I had to do the work my Father gave me" or "I had to be in my Father's house."

#### Luke 2:51

##### he went back home with them

"Jesus went back home with Mary and Joseph"

##### was obedient to them

"obeyed them" or "was always obeying them"

##### treasured all these things in her heart

See how you translated a similar phrase in 2:19.

#### Luke 2:52

##### to grow in wisdom and stature

"to become wiser and stronger." This refers to mental and physical growth.

##### and increased in favor with God and people

“and God and people were more and more pleased with him”

## Chapter 3

#### Luke 3:1

##### Tiberius ... Pontius Pilate ... Herod ... Philip ... Lysanias

These are the names of men.

##### Judea ... Galilee ... Iturea ... Trachonitis ... Abilene

These are names of regions or territories.

##### tetrarch

"ruler"

#### Luke 3:2

##### during the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas

"while Annas and Caiaphas were high priests"

##### the word of God came to John

"God spoke his message to John"

#### Luke 3:3

##### preaching a baptism of repentance

"and he preached that people should be baptized to show that they were repenting"

##### for the forgiveness of sins

"so that their sins would be forgiven" or "so that God would forgive their sins"

#### Luke 3:4

##### As it is written in the book of the words of Isaiah the prophet,

"This happened as Isaiah the prophet had written in the book that contains his words:" or "John fulfilled the message that the prophet Isaiah had written in his book:"

##### A voice of one crying out in the wilderness

"The voice of one crying out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone crying out in the wilderness"

##### Make ready the way of the Lord

"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents preparing to hear the Lord's message when he comes. Alternate translation: "Prepare for the Lord to come" or "Be ready for the Lord when he comes"

#### Luke 3:5

##### Every valley will be filled ... every mountain and hill will be made low

When people prepare the road for an important person who is coming, they make the road level. This is part of the image started in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "They will fill in every valley ... they will level every mountain and hill" or "They will fill in every low place in the road ... they will remove every high place in the road"

#### Luke 3:6

##### will see the salvation of God

"will see how God saves people" or "will learn how God saves people from sin"

#### Luke 3:7

##### to be baptized by him

"for John to baptize them"

##### You offspring of vipers

Vipers are poisonous snakes that are dangerous and represent evil. Here "offspring of" means "being like." Alternate translation: "You evil poisonous snakes" or "You are evil, like poisonous snakes"

##### Who warned you ... coming?

John was rebuking the people because they wanted him to baptize them, but they did not want to stop sinning. Alternate translation: "You cannot flee from God's wrath like this!" or "You cannot escape from God's wrath just by being baptized!"

##### from the wrath that is coming

"from the punishment that God is sending" or "from God's wrath on which he is about to act"

#### Luke 3:8

##### produce fruits that are worthy of repentance

Just as a plant is expected to produce fruit that is appropriate for that kind of plant, a person who says that he has repented is expected to live righteously. Alternate translation: "produce the fruit of righteousness that shows that you have repented"

##### to say within yourselves

"saying to yourselves" or "thinking"

##### We have Abraham for our father

"Abraham is our ancestor" or "We are Abraham's descendants." If it is unclear why they would say this, you may add the implied information: "so God will not punish us."

##### to raise up children for Abraham

"to create children for Abraham"

#### Luke 3:9

##### the ax is set against the root of the trees

This is an image of the punishment that is about to begin. Alternate translation: "God is like a man who has placed his ax against the root of the trees"

##### every tree ... is chopped down and thrown into the fire

"he chops down every tree ... and throws it into the fire"

#### Luke 3:10

##### kept asking him, saying

"kept asking him and said" or "kept asking John"

#### Luke 3:11

##### answered and said to them

"answered them, saying" or "answered them" or "said"

##### should do the same

"should share it with a person who does not have food"

#### Luke 3:13

##### than you have been ordered to collect

"than the government has told you to take"

#### Luke 3:14

##### What about us? What must we do?

"What must we soldiers do?"

##### do not accuse anyone falsely

"do not say that an innocent person has done something illegal"

##### Be content with your wages

"Be satisfied with your pay"

#### Luke 3:15

##### everyone was wondering in their hearts concerning John, whether he might be the Christ

"they were all wondering in their hearts if John might be the Christ"

#### Luke 3:16

##### I baptize you with water

"I baptize you using water" or "I baptize you by means of water"

##### not worthy even to untie the strap of his sandals

"not important enough even to loosen the straps of his sandals." This was a duty of a slave. John was saying that the one who would come is so great that John was not even worthy enough to be his slave.

##### He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire

"He will baptize you using the Holy Spirit and fire" or "He will baptize you in the Holy Spirit and fire"

#### Luke 3:17

##### His winnowing fork is in his hand

John speaks of the Christ coming to judge people as being like a farmer who is ready to separate wheat seeds from chaff. Alternate translation: "He is like a farmer whose winnowing fork is in his hand"

##### winnowing fork

This is a tool for tossing wheat grains into the air to separate the wheat seed from the chaff. The heavier seed falls back down and the unwanted chaff is blown away by the wind.

##### threshing floor

The threshing floor was the place where people beat the wheat stalks so that the grains would fall off of them. Then they would winnow the grain.

##### to gather the wheat

"to gather the wheat seeds." This is the part of the wheat that is stored and used for food.

##### will burn up the chaff

The chaff is not useful for anything, so people burn it up.

#### Luke 3:18

##### With many other exhortations

"With many other strong urgings"

#### Luke 3:19

##### When Herod the tetrarch had been reproved

"When John reproved Herod the tetrarch"

##### for marrying his brother's wife Herodias

"because Herod married Herodias, his own brother's wife." This was evil because Herod's brother was still alive.

#### Luke 3:20

##### he locked John up in prison

Herod probably locked John up by ordering his soldiers to lock him up. Alternate translation: "Herod had his soldiers lock John up in prison" or "he told his soldiers to put John in prison"

#### Luke 3:21

##### General Information:

The events in verses 21 and 22 happened before John was arrested.

##### Now it came about

This phrase marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

##### when all the people were baptized

"while John baptized all the people." The phrase "all the people" refers to the people who were there with John.

##### Jesus also was baptized

"John baptized Jesus also"

##### the heavens opened

"the sky opened" or "the sky became open." This is more than a simple clearing of clouds. It might mean that a hole appeared in the sky.

#### Luke 3:22

##### the Holy Spirit in bodily form came down on him like a dove

"in physical form the Holy Spirit came down like a dove onto Jesus"

##### a voice came from heaven

"a voice from heaven said" or "God spoke to Jesus from heaven, saying"

##### my beloved Son

God was calling Jesus his own Son. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Luke 3:23

##### General Information:

Luke lists the ancestors of Jesus through the line of Joseph.

##### thirty years of age

"30 years old"

##### He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph

"It was thought that he was the son of Joseph" or "People assumed that he was the son of Joseph" or "People thought that Joseph was his father"

##### the son of Heli

"who was the Son of Heli" or "Joseph was the son of Heli" or "Joseph's father was Heli"

#### Luke 3:27

##### the son of Salathiel

The name Salathiel may be a different spelling of the name Shealtiel, which is in some versions.

#### Luke 3:38

##### Adam, the son of God

This list goes all the way back to the first man, Adam. God created Adam, and Luke indicates that God was Adam’s father.

## Chapter 4

#### Luke 4:1

##### and was led by the Spirit

"and the Spirit led him"

#### Luke 4:2

##### he was tempted by the devil

"the devil tempted Jesus" or "the devil tried to persuade him to disobey God"

##### He ate nothing

"Jesus ate nothing"

#### Luke 4:3

##### If you are the Son of God

The devil challenges Jesus to prove that he is the Son of God.

#### Luke 4:4

##### Jesus answered him, "It is written ... alone.'"

Jesus's answer shows that he would not turn the stone into bread. Alternate translation: "Jesus replied, 'I will not do that because it is written ... alone."'"

##### It is written

"The scriptures say"

##### Man does not live on bread alone

The word "bread" refers to food in general. Food is not enough to keep people alive; people need God. Jesus quotes this scripture to tell why he would not turn the stone into bread. Alternate translation: "People cannot live by only eating bread" or "It is not just food that makes a person live"

#### Luke 4:5

##### Then the devil led Jesus up ... world

"Then the devil led Jesus up to a very high place ... world." We do not know where the devil led Jesus and how he showed him all the kingdoms of the world.

##### in an instant of time

"in a moment of time" or "instantly"

#### Luke 4:7

##### it will be yours

"it will belong to you"

#### Luke 4:8

##### Jesus answered and said to him

"Jesus replied" or "Jesus said"

##### It is written

Again Jesus quoted scripture to tell why he would not do what the devil told him to do.

#### Luke 4:9

##### the very highest point

This was the corner of the temple roof. If someone fell from there, they would be seriously injured or die.

##### throw yourself down

"jump down to the ground"

#### Luke 4:10

##### For it is written

The devil is about to quote from the Psalms. He implies that if Jesus is really the Son of God, he will not be hurt if he jumps. Alternate translation: "For the scriptures say" or "You will not be hurt, because it is written"

##### He will give orders

"He" refers to God.

#### Luke 4:12

##### It is said

Jesus tells the devil why he will not do what the devil told him to do. Alternate translation: or "The scripture says" or "No, because it is said"

##### Do not put the Lord your God to the test

"Do not test the Lord your God"

#### Luke 4:13

##### had finished tempting Jesus

"had finished trying to persuade Jesus to sin"

##### he went away ... until another time

"the devil went away ... until another occasion"

#### Luke 4:14

##### in the power of the Spirit

"and the Spirit was giving him power"

##### news about him spread

"people spread the news about Jesus" or "people told other people about Jesus"

##### throughout the entire surrounding region

This refers to the areas or places around Galilee.

#### Luke 4:15

##### he was praised by all

"everyone said great things about him" or "all the people spoke about him in a good way"

#### Luke 4:16

##### where he had been raised

"where his parents had raised him" or "where he grew up" or "where he lived when he was a child"

##### as was his custom

"as he normally did." It was his usual practice to go to the synagogue on the Sabbath day.

#### Luke 4:17

##### The scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to him

"Someone gave him the scroll of the prophet Isaiah"

##### scroll of the prophet Isaiah

Isaiah had written his prophecy many years before, and someone else had copied it onto a scroll.

##### the place where it was written

"the place in the scroll with these words"

#### Luke 4:18

##### The Spirit of the Lord is upon me

"The Holy Spirit is with me in a special way"

##### he anointed me

In the Old Testament, someone would pour ceremonial oil on a person when God chose that person do a special task. Alternate translation: "he poured oil on me" or "he chose me"

##### the poor

"poor people"

##### to proclaim freedom to the captives

"to tell people who are being held captive that they can go free" or "to set free the prisoners of war"

##### recovery of sight to the blind

"to give sight to the blind" or "to make the blind able to see again"

##### to set free those who are oppressed

"to set free those whom others treat harshly"

#### Luke 4:19

##### to proclaim the year of the Lord's favor

"to tell everyone that the Lord is ready to bless his people" or "to announce that this is the year that the Lord will show his kindness"

#### Luke 4:20

##### rolled up the scroll

People closed scrolls by rolling them like tubes to protect the writing inside.

##### the attendant

This refers to a synagogue worker who brought out and put away with proper care and reverence the scrolls containing the scriptures.

##### sat down

It was customary for teachers to be seated while teaching.

##### were fixed on him

"were focused on him" or "were looking intently at him"

#### Luke 4:21

##### this scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing

"I am fulfilling what this scripture says right now while you are listening to me"

#### Luke 4:22

##### they were amazed at the gracious words which were coming out of his mouth

"They were surprised about the gracious things that he was saying."

##### Is this not the son of Joseph?

People thought that Joseph was Jesus's father. Joseph was not a religious leader, so they were surprised that his son would preach what he did. Alternate translation: "This is just Joseph's son!" or "His father is only Joseph!"

#### Luke 4:23

##### Doctor, heal yourself

If someone claims to be a doctor, some people might believe it only if he can heal himself. Jesus was saying that the people in Nazareth would not believe that he is a prophet. Instead they would challenge him to prove it by showing them some miracles.

#### Luke 4:24

##### Truly I say to you

"It is certainly true" or "I am telling you the truth." Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance, truth, and accuracy of the statement that follows.

##### no prophet is received in his own hometown

"people in a prophet's hometown do not accept him" or "people do not believe a prophet who comes from their own town."

#### Luke 4:25

##### during the time of Elijah

"when Elijah was prophesying in Israel"

##### when the sky was shut up

"when no rain fell down from the sky" or "when there was no rain at all"

##### a great famine came upon all the land

"there was a serious lack of food in all the land"

#### Luke 4:26

##### to Zarephath in Sidon, to a widow living there

The people of Sidon were Gentiles. Alternate translation: "to a Gentile widow living in the town of Zarephath in Sidon"

#### Luke 4:27

##### none of them were cleansed except Naaman the Syrian

"the only one of them who was cleansed was Naaman the Syrian" or "the only one of them whom God cleansed was Naaman from the country of Syria"

##### were cleansed

People who had leprosy were considered to be unclean. When they were healed from leprosy, they were clean. Alternate translation: "were healed"

##### Naaman the Syrian

"the Gentile Naaman from Syria." Namaan was a man.

#### Luke 4:28

##### All the people in the synagogue were filled with rage when they heard these things

The people were very angry when Jesus spoke about God helping Gentiles instead of Jews.

#### Luke 4:31

##### Then he went down to Capernaum, a city in Galilee

"Then Jesus went down to Capernaum, another city in Galilee." Capernaum and Nazareth are both in Galilee. Capernaum is lower in elevation than Nazareth.

#### Luke 4:32

##### astonished

greatly surprised, greatly amazed

#### Luke 4:33

##### who had the spirit of an unclean demon

"who was possessed by an unclean demon" or "who was controlled by an evil spirit"

##### he cried out with a loud voice

"he shouted loudly"

#### Luke 4:34

##### What do we have to do with you

The demon was challenging Jesus. Alternate translation: "What do we have in common with you" or "What right do you have to bother us"

##### What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth?

This challenge could be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "We have nothing to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth!" or "You have no right to bother us, Jesus of Nazareth!"

#### Luke 4:35

##### Jesus rebuked the demon, saying

"Jesus scolded the demon, saying" or "Jesus sternly said to the demon"

#### Luke 4:36

##### What kind of words are these?

The people were expressing how amazed they were that Jesus had the authority to command demons to leave a person. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "These words are amazing!" or "His words are amazing!"

##### He commands the unclean spirits with authority and power

"He has authority and power to command the unclean spirits"

#### Luke 4:38

##### was suffering with a high fever

"was very sick with a high fever"

##### pleaded with him on her behalf

"asked Jesus to help her" or "begged Jesus to help her"

#### Luke 4:39

##### So he stood over her

"So he went to her and leaned over her"

##### rebuked the fever, and it left her

"spoke sternly to the fever, and it left her" or "commanded the fever to leave her, and it did" or "commanded her skin to become cool, and did"

##### started serving them

"started to prepare food for them"

#### Luke 4:40

##### laid his hands on everyone of them

"placed his hands on everyone of them" or "touched each of them"

#### Luke 4:41

##### crying out and saying

"screaming" or "shouting." These were probably cries of fear or anger.

#### Luke 4:42

##### When daybreak came

"At sunrise" or "At dawn"

##### a solitary place

"a deserted place" or "a place where there were no people"

#### Luke 4:43

##### to many other cities

"to the people in many other cities"

##### this is the reason I was sent here

"this is what God sent me here to do"

#### Luke 4:44

##### throughout Judea

Since Jesus was in Galilee, the term "Judea" here probably refers to the entire region where the Jews lived at that time.

## Chapter 5

#### Luke 5:1

##### Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### listening to the word of God

"listening to Jesus teaching them the word of God"

#### Luke 5:2

##### washing their nets

They were cleaning their fishing nets in order to use them again to catch fish.

#### Luke 5:3

##### asked him to put it out in the water a short distance from the land

"asked Simon to move the boat a short distance from the land"

##### he sat down and taught the people out of the boat

"Jesus sat down and taught the people from the boat" or "he taught the people while he sat in the boat." The people were on the shore.

#### Luke 5:4

##### let down your nets for a catch

"put your nets down into the water to catch fish"

#### Luke 5:5

##### at your word

"because you have told me to do this"

#### Luke 5:7

##### motioned

They were too far from shore to call, so they made gestures, probably by waving their arms.

##### so that they began to sink

"and the boats began to sink down into the water"

#### Luke 5:8

##### fell down at Jesus' knees

Possible meanings are 1) "knelt down before Jesus" or 2) "bowed down at Jesus' feet" or 3) "lay down on the ground at Jesus' feet." Peter did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

##### a sinful man

The word here for "man" means "adult male" and not the more general "human being."

#### Luke 5:9

##### at the catch of fish which they had taken

"at how many fish they had caught" or "at the large number of fish they had caught"

#### Luke 5:10

##### partners with Simon

"Simon's partners in the fishing business"

##### you will catch men

"you will fish for people" or "you will gather people for me" or "you will bring people to be my disciples." The men were fishermen. Jesus spoke of gathering people to follow him as if they would be fishing.

#### Luke 5:12

##### It came about

This phrase marks a new event in the story.

##### a man full of leprosy

"a man who was covered with leprosy." Leprosy was a skin disease.

##### he fell on his face

"he knelt and touched the ground with his face" or "he bowed down to the ground"

##### you can make me clean

The man was ceremonially unclean because of his skin disease. He wanted to be healed. Alternate translation: "please make me clean, because you are able" or "you can heal me so I will be clean"

#### Luke 5:13

##### Be clean

By giving the command, Jesus healed and cleansed them man. "Be healed"

##### the leprosy left him

"he no longer had leprosy"

#### Luke 5:14

##### He instructed him to tell no one but told him, "Go on your way

"Jesus said, 'Do not tell anyone, but go on your way"

##### offer a sacrifice for your cleansing

The law required a person to make a specific sacrifice after they were healed. This allowed the person to be ceremonially clean and able to again participate in religious rituals.

##### for a testimony

"as proof of your healing"

#### Luke 5:15

##### the report about him spread even farther

"the news about Jesus went out even farther" or "people kept telling the news about Jesus in other places"

#### Luke 5:16

##### the deserted places

"lonely places" or "places where there were no other people"

#### Luke 5:18

##### mat

sleeping pad or bed or stretcher

##### was paralyzed

"could not move himself"

#### Luke 5:19

##### they went up to the housetop

Houses had flat roofs, and some houses had a ladder or staircase outside to make it easy to go up there. Alternate translation: "they went up to the flat roof of the house"

#### Luke 5:20

##### Seeing their faith, Jesus said

"When Jesus saw that they believed that he could heal the man, he said to the man"

##### Man

This is a general word that people used when speaking to a man whose name they did not know. It was not rude, but it also did not show special respect. Some languages might use a word like "friend" or "sir."

##### your sins are forgiven you

"you are forgiven" or "I forgive your sins"

#### Luke 5:21

##### question this

"discuss this" or "reason about this"

##### Who is this who speaks blasphemies?

This shows how shocked and angry they were at what Jesus said. Alternate translation: "This man is blaspheming God!" or "He blasphemes God by saying that!"

##### Who can forgive sins but God alone?

This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one can forgive sins but God alone!" or "God is the only one who can forgive sins!"

#### Luke 5:22

##### Why are you questioning this in your hearts?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not argue about this in your hearts." or "You should not doubt that I have the authority to forgive sins."

##### in your hearts

Here, "hearts" refers to people's minds or inner beings.

#### Luke 5:23

##### Which is easier to say, 'Your sins are forgiven you' or to say 'Get up and walk'?

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "You may think that it is easier to say 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up and walk.'"

#### Luke 5:24

##### you may know

Jesus was speaking to the scribes and Pharisees.

##### the Son of Man has authority

Jesus was referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, have authority"

##### I tell you

Jesus was saying this to the paralyzed man.

#### Luke 5:25

##### he got up

"the man stood up"

#### Luke 5:26

##### They were filled with fear

"They were very afraid" or "They were filled with awe"

##### extraordinary things

"amazing things" or "strange things"

#### Luke 5:27

##### Follow me

To "follow" someone is to become that person's disciple. Alternate translation: "Be my disciple" or "Come, follow me as your teacher"

#### Luke 5:29

##### were reclining at the table

It was customary to lie on a couch while eating at a feast and to prop oneself up with the left arm on some pillows. Alternate translation: "were eating at the table"

#### Luke 5:30

##### to his disciples

"to Jesus's disciples"

##### Why do you eat ... sinners?

The Pharisees and scribes express their disapproval that Jesus's disciples are eating with sinners. Alternate translation: "You should not eat ... sinners!"

##### sinners

people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

#### Luke 5:31

##### People who are well ... sick

Jesus uses this proverb to begin to tell them that he calls sinners to repentance the way a physician calls sick people to be healed.

##### only those who are sick

"only those who are sick need a physician"

##### a physician

"a doctor"

#### Luke 5:32

##### I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance

"I did not come to call righteous people to repent. I came to call sinners to repent"

#### Luke 5:33

##### They said to him

"The religious leaders said to Jesus"

#### Luke 5:34

##### Can anyone make the wedding attendants of the bridegroom fast while the bridegroom is still with them?

Jesus uses this question to cause the people to think about something they already know. Fasting is a sign of sadness. People do not do this when the bridegroom is with them. Alternate translation: "No one tells the wedding attendants of the bridegroom to fast while he is still with them."

##### wedding attendants

"guests" or "friends." These are friends who celebrate with a man who is getting married.

#### Luke 5:35

##### the days will come when

"soon" or "some day"

##### the bridegroom will be taken away from them

"people will take the bridegroom away from them" or "the bridegroom will have to go away from them"

#### Luke 5:36

##### No one tears ... and uses it to mend... If he does that ... he will tear

"People never rip ... and use it to repair ... If they do that ... they will tear"

##### will not fit with

"will not match" or "will not be the same as"

#### Luke 5:37

##### new wine

"grape juice." This refers to wine that has not yet fermented.

##### wineskins

These were bags made out of animal skins. Alternate translation: "wine bags" or "bags made of skin"

##### the new wine will burst the skins

When the new wine would ferment and expand, it would break the old skins because they could no longer stretch out.

##### the wine will be spilled

"the wine will spill out of the bags"

#### Luke 5:38

##### fresh wineskins

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags"

#### Luke 5:39

##### wants the new

"wants the new wine"

##### The old is better

"The old wine is better"

## Chapter 6

#### Luke 6:1

##### Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### grainfields

These are large sections of land where people had scattered wheat seed to grow wheat.

##### heads of grain

These are the topmost parts of the grain plant, which is a kind of large grass. The heads hold the mature, edible seeds of the plant.

##### rubbing them between their hands

"rubbing the husks off with their hands." They were rubbing off the outer husks so they could eat the seeds.

#### Luke 6:2

##### Why are you doing something that is not lawful to do on the Sabbath day?

The Pharisees considered even rubbing a handful of grain to be unlawful work. Alternate translation: "Why are you working on the Sabbath when it is against the law?"

#### Luke 6:3

##### Have you not even read what David did ... him?

Jesus is rebuking the Pharisees for not learning from the scriptures. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should learn from what you have read about what David did ... him!" or "Certainly you have read what David did ... him!"

#### Luke 6:4

##### the bread of the presence

This is the sacred bread that priests placed before God in the tabernacle. It represented God's presence. Alternate translation: "the bread of God's presence" or "the sacred bread"

#### Luke 6:5

##### The Son of Man is

Jesus was referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am"

#### Luke 6:6

##### hand was withered

The man's hand was damaged in such a way that he could not stretch it. It may have been almost closed into a fist, making it look small and wrinkled.

#### Luke 6:7

##### were watching him closely

"were watching Jesus carefully"

##### so that they might find

"because they wanted to find"

#### Luke 6:9

##### to them

"to the scribes and Pharisees"

##### I ask you, is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good or to do harm, to save a life or to destroy it?

Jesus asks this question so that the Pharisees would have to admit that he is right to heal on the Sabbath.

##### to do good or to do harm

"to help someone or to harm someone"

#### Luke 6:10

##### Stretch out your hand

"Hold out your hand" or "Extend your hand"

##### was restored

was healed

#### Luke 6:12

##### in those days

"around that time" or "not long after" or "one day around then"

##### he went out

"Jesus went out"

#### Luke 6:13

##### When it was day

"When it was morning" or "The next day"

##### whom he also named apostles

"whom he also made apostles" or "and he appointed them to be apostles"

#### Luke 6:14

##### his brother Andrew

"Simon's brother Andrew"

#### Luke 6:15

##### the Zealot

Possible meanings are 1) this title shows he was part of the group of people who wanted to free the Jewish people from Roman rule. Alternate translation: "the patriot" or "the nationalist" or 2) this shows that he was zealous for God to be honored. Alternate translation: "the passionate one"

#### Luke 6:16

##### became a traitor

"later betrayed his friend" or "later turned Jesus over to enemies"

#### Luke 6:18

##### to be healed

"for Jesus to heal them"

##### People who were troubled with unclean spirits were also healed

"Jesus also healed people who were troubled with unclean spirits" or "Jesus also healed people whom unclean spirits were bothering"

#### Luke 6:19

##### power to heal was coming out from him

"he had power to heal people" or "he was using his power to heal people"

#### Luke 6:20

##### Blessed are you who are poor

"You who are poor receive God's favor" or "You who are poor benefit"

##### for yours is the kingdom of God

"the kingdom of God belongs to you" or "you are a citizen in God's kingdom" or "God is your king" or "God is your ruler"

#### Luke 6:21

##### you will laugh

"you will laugh with joy" or "you will be joyful"

#### Luke 6:22

##### because of the Son of Man

"because you associate with the Son of Man" or "because they reject me, the Son of Man"

#### Luke 6:23

##### in that day

"when they do those things" or "when that happens"

##### leap for joy

"jump with joy" or "be very happy"

#### Luke 6:24

##### woe to you

"how terrible it is for you" or "trouble will come to you." This indicates that God's anger is directed at them, or that something bad will happen to them.

##### your comfort

"what comforts you" or "what satisfies you" or "what makes you happy"

#### Luke 6:25

##### who are full now

"whose stomachs are full now"

#### Luke 6:26

##### when all men speak well of you

"when everyone says good things about you"

##### that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets

"their ancestors also spoke well of the false prophets"

#### Luke 6:27

##### love ... do good

Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

#### Luke 6:28

##### Bless ... pray

Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

#### Luke 6:29

##### To him who strikes you on the cheek

"If anyone hits you on one side of your face"

##### offer him also the other

"turn your face so that he can strike the other cheek too"

##### do not withhold

"do not prevent him from taking"

#### Luke 6:30

##### Give to everyone who asks you

"If anyone asks you for something, give it to him"

##### do not ask him to give

"do not require him to give" or "do not demand that he give"

#### Luke 6:31

##### As you want people to do to you, you should do the same to them

"You should do to people the same as what you want them to do to you" or "Treat people they way you want them to treat you"

#### Luke 6:32

##### what reward is there for you?

"what reward will you receive?" This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "you will not receive any reward for that."

#### Luke 6:34

##### people from whom you hope to be repaid

"people who you expect will repay you" or "people who you believe will repay you"

#### Luke 6:35

##### expecting nothing in return

"not expecting the person to return what you have given him" or "not expecting the person to give you anything"

##### your reward will be great

"you will receive a great reward" or "you will receive good payment" or "you will get good gifts because of it"

##### you will be sons of the Most High

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to human sons or children.

#### Luke 6:36

##### your Father

This refers to God. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Luke 6:37

##### Do not judge ... Do not condemn

"Do not judge people ... Do not condemn people"

##### and you

"and as a result you"

##### you will not be judged

Jesus does not say who will not judge. Possible meanings are 1) "God will not judge you" or 2) "no one will judge you"

##### you will be forgiven

Jesus does not say who will forgive. Possible meanings are 1) "God will forgive you" or 2) "people will forgive you"

#### Luke 6:38

##### it will be given to you

Jesus does not say who will give. Alternate translation: "and you will receive"

##### A good amount

"A generous amount" or "A large amount"

##### pressed down, shaken together and spilling over

These phrases emphasize that a great amount will be given. It will be like when someone puts a lot of grain into a container and he presses it down and shakes it so that it will fit. But even then there is so much grain that it spills over the top of the container.

##### it will be measured back to you

Jesus does not say who will measure things back to person. Alternate translation "they will measure things back to you"

#### Luke 6:39

##### Can a blind person guide another blind person?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "We know that a blind person cannot guide another blind person."

##### If he did

"If a blind person guides another blind person"

#### Luke 6:40

##### everyone when he is fully trained

"every disciple who has been trained well" or "every student whose teacher has fully taught him"

#### Luke 6:41

##### Why do you look ... brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye?

Jesus challenges the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "Do not look ... brothers eye while you ignore the log that is in your own eye."

##### tiny piece of straw

"speck" or "splinter" or "bit of dust." Use a word for the smallest thing that commonly falls into a person's eyes.

##### brother

Here "brother" refers to a fellow Jew or a fellow believer in Jesus.

##### log

"beam" or "plank"

#### Luke 6:42

##### How can you say ... your own eye?

This can be translated as a statement or a command. Alternate translation: "You should not say ... your own eye."

#### Luke 6:43

##### good tree

"healthy tree"

##### rotten fruit

"bad fruit" or "decaying fruit"

#### Luke 6:44

##### each tree is known

"people know the type of tree" or "people recognize a tree"

##### thornbush

a plant or shrub that has thorns

##### briar bush

a vine or shrub that has thorns

#### Luke 6:45

##### The good man

"A good person." The word "good" here means righteous or moral. The word "man" here refers to a person, male or female.

##### the good treasure of his heart

This represents a person's good thoughts and attitudes. Alternate translation: "the good things he keeps inside himself"

##### produces what is good

This represents the good person saying and doing good things. Alternate translation: "brings out what is good"

##### out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks

"whatever fills his heart will come out when he speaks" or "what he thinks in his heart affects what he says with his mouth"

#### Luke 6:46

##### "Why do you call me, 'Lord, Lord,' and yet you do not obey the things that I say?

This can be translated as a statement or a command." Alternate translation: "You call me Lord, Lord,' yet you do not obey the things that I say." or "Do not call me ' 'Lord, Lord,' and neglect to obey what I say."

#### Luke 6:47

##### Every person who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them, I will tell you what he is like

"I will tell you what every person is like who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them"

#### Luke 6:48

##### dug down deep in the ground and built the house's foundation on solid rock

Some cultures may not be familiar with this process of building a stable house. Alternate translation: "who worked hard and built a stable house"

##### the torrent of water flowed against that house

"the fast-moving water crashed against the house" or "the river beat on the house"

##### could not shake it

Possible meanings are 1) "could not cause the house to shake" or 2) "could not destroy the house."

##### because it had been well built

"because the man had built it well"

#### Luke 6:49

##### who built a house on top of the ground without a foundation

If people would not understand this, it can be expressed in a more general way. Alternate translation: "who did not build his house properly" or "who did not make his house strong"

##### the ruin of that house was complete

"that house was completely destroyed"

## Chapter 7

#### Luke 7:1

##### in the hearing of the people

"to the people who were listening to him" or "to the people who were there" or "for the people to hear"

#### Luke 7:2

##### who was highly regarded by him

"whom the centurion valued" or "whom he respected"

#### Luke 7:4

##### asked him earnestly

"pleaded with him" or "begged him"

##### He is worthy

"The centurion is worthy"

#### Luke 7:5

##### our nation

"our people." This refers to the Jewish people.

#### Luke 7:6

##### continued on his way

"went along"

##### do not trouble yourself

The centurion was speaking politely to Jesus. Alternate translation: "do not trouble yourself by coming to my house" or "I do not wish to bother you"

##### to come under my roof

"to come into my house"

#### Luke 7:7

##### just say a word

The servant understood that Jesus could heal the servant just by speaking. Alternate translation: "just give the order" or "just give the command"

#### Luke 7:8

##### I also am a man who is under authority

"I also have someone over me that I must obey"

##### under me

"under my authority"

#### Luke 7:9

##### I say to you

Jesus said this to emphasize the surprising thing that he was about to tell them.

##### not even in Israel have I found such faith.

Jesus expected Jewish people to have this kind of faith, but they did not. He did not expect Gentiles to have this kind of faith, yet this man did. Alternate translation: "I have not found any Israelite who trusts me as much as this Gentile does!"

#### Luke 7:10

##### those who had been sent

"the people whom the Roman officer had sent to Jesus"

#### Luke 7:12

##### a man who had died was being carried out

"people were carrying out of the city a man who had died"

##### carried out, the only son of his mother (who was a widow), and a rather large crowd

"carried out. He was his mother's only son, and she was a widow. A rather large crowd"

#### Luke 7:13

##### was deeply moved with compassion for her

"felt very sorry for her"

#### Luke 7:14

##### he went up

"he went forward" or "he approached the dead man"

##### the wooden frame on which they carried the body

This was a stretcher or bed that they used to move the body to the burial place.

##### arise

get up"

#### Luke 7:15

##### The dead man

It may be necessary to make it clear that the man was not still dead. Alternate translation: "The man who had been dead"

#### Luke 7:16

##### fear overcame all of them

"fear filled all of them" or "they all became very afraid"

##### A great prophet has been raised among us

"A great prophet has appeared among us" or "A great prophet has come up among us"

##### God has looked upon his people

"God has cared for his people"

#### Luke 7:17

##### This news about Jesus spread

"People spread this news about Jesus" or "People told others this report about Jesus"

#### Luke 7:18

##### told him

"told John"

#### Luke 7:20

##### the men said, "John the Baptist has sent us to you to say, 'Are you ... or should we look for another?'"

This sentence can be reworded so that it only has one direct quote. Alternate translation: "the men said that John the Baptist had sent them to him to ask, 'Are you the one who is coming, or should we look for another?'" or "the men said, 'John the Baptist has sent us to you to ask if you are the one who is coming, or if we should look for another.'"

#### Luke 7:21

##### In that hour

"At that time"

##### and from evil spirits

"and he healed people from evil spirits" or "and he set people free from evil spirits"

#### Luke 7:22

##### said to them

"said to John's messengers" or "said to the men that John sent"

##### the poor are being told the good news

"poor people are hearing the good news"

#### Luke 7:23

##### The person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions is blessed

"God blesses the person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions"

##### The person who does not ... is blessed

"Whoever does not ... is blessed" or "People who do not ... are blessed."

#### Luke 7:24

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to speak to the crowd about John the Baptist. He asks questions to lead them to think about what John is really like.

##### What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

"Did you go out to the desert to see a reed shaken by the wind? Of course not!" or "Surely you did not go out to the desert see a reed being shaken by the wind!"

##### A reed shaken by the wind

"Someone who is like a reed shaken by the wind"

#### Luke 7:25

##### But what did you go out to see? A man dressed in soft clothes?

"Did you go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes? Of course not!" or "You certainly did not go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes!"

##### dressed in soft clothes

This refers to expensive clothing. Normal clothing was rough. Alternate translation: "wearing luxurious clothing"

##### kings' palaces

A palace is a large, expensive house that a king lives in.

#### Luke 7:26

##### But what did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I say to you

"Did you go out to see a prophet? Yes, I say to you," or "But you actually went out to see a prophet"

##### and more than a prophet

"and not just an ordinary prophet" or "and he is more important than a prophet"

#### Luke 7:27

##### This is he of whom it is written

"John is the one the prophet wrote about long ago"

##### before your face

"in front of you" or "to go ahead of you"

##### your ... your ... you

The words "your" and "you" are singular because God was speaking to the Messiah in the quotation.

#### Luke 7:28

##### I say to you

Jesus is speaking to the crowd, so "you" refers to the crowd.

##### among those born of women

"among those to whom a woman has given birth." This refers to all people. Alternate translation: "of all the people who have ever lived"

##### none is greater than John

"John is the greatest"

##### the one who is least in the kingdom of God is greater than he is

"whoever is least important in the kingdom of God is greater than John"

#### Luke 7:29

##### because they had been baptized with the baptism of John

"because they had let John baptize them" or "because John had baptized them"

#### Luke 7:30

##### rejected God's purpose for themselves

"rejected what God wanted them to do" or "chose to disobey what God told them"

##### they had not been baptized by John

"they did not let John baptize them" or "they rejected John's baptism"

#### Luke 7:31

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the people about John the Baptist.

##### To what, then, can I compare the people of this generation? What are they like?

Jesus uses these questions to introduce a comparison. They can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is what I compare this generation to. This is what they are like."

##### the people of this generation

"the people who are alive now"

#### Luke 7:32

##### and you did not dance

"but you did not dance to the music"

##### and you did not cry

"but you did not cry with us"

#### Luke 7:33

##### eating no bread

If your language does not have a word for bread, you could translate it with a more general expression. Alternate translation: "not eating ordinary food"

##### you say, 'He has a demon.'

"you say that he has a demon"

#### Luke 7:34

##### The Son of Man came

"I, the Son of Man, came"

##### you say, 'Look, he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!'

"you accuse him of eating and drinking too much and of being a friend of tax collectors and sinners." or "you say that I am a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors sinners."

##### he is a gluttonous man

"he is a greedy eater" or "he continually eats too much food"

#### Luke 7:35

##### wisdom is justified by all her children

This appears to be a proverb that Jesus applied to this situation, probably to teach that wise people would understand that the people should not have rejected Jesus and John.

#### Luke 7:36

##### reclined at the table to eat

"sat down at the table to eat." It was the custom at a relaxed meal for men to eat while lying down comfortably around the table.

#### Luke 7:37

##### who was a sinner

"who lived a sinful lifestyle" or "who had a reputation for living a sinful life."

##### an alabaster jar of perfumed oil

"a jar made of soft stone with perfume in it"

#### Luke 7:38

##### anointed them with perfumed oil

"poured perfume on them"

#### Luke 7:39

##### he thought to himself, saying

"he said to himself"

##### If this man were a prophet, then he would know who and what type of woman is touching him, that she is a sinner

The Pharisee thought that Jesus was not a prophet because he allowed the sinful woman to touch him.

#### Luke 7:40

##### Simon

This was the name of the Pharisee who invited Jesus into his home. This was not Simon Peter.

#### Luke 7:41

##### A certain moneylender had two debtors

"Two men owed money to a certain moneylender"

##### five hundred denarii

"five hundred silver coins" or "five hundred days' wages"

##### and the other fifty

"and the other debtor owed fifty denarii"

#### Luke 7:42

##### he forgave them both

"he forgave their debts" or "he canceled their debts"

#### Luke 7:43

##### I suppose

Simon was cautious about his answer. Alternate translation: "Probably"

##### You have judged correctly

"You are right"

#### Luke 7:44

##### Jesus turned to the woman

Jesus directed Simon's attention to the woman by turning to her.

##### You gave me no water for my feet

"You did not give me water for my feet." It was a basic responsibility of a host to provide water and a towel for guests to wash and dry their feet after walking on dusty roads.

##### she has wet my feet with her tears and wiped them with her hair

The woman used her tears and hair in place of the missing water and towel.

#### Luke 7:45

##### You did not give me a kiss

"You did not greet me with a kiss." A good host in that culture would greet his guests with a kiss on the cheek. Simon did not do this.

##### did not stop kissing my feet

The woman kissed the feet of Jesus rather than his cheek as a sign of extreme repentance and humility.

#### Luke 7:46

##### You did not anoint my head with oil

"You did not put oil on my head" or "You did not welcome me by anointing my head with oil." The custom was for the host to welcome an honored guest by putting oil on his head.

##### she has anointed my feet

The woman greatly honored Jesus by doing this. She demonstrated humility by anointing his feet instead of his head.

#### Luke 7:47

##### her sins, which were many, have been forgiven

"God has forgiven her many sins"

##### for she loved much

Her love was the evidence that her sins were forgiven. Some languages require that the object of "love" be stated. Alternate translation: "for she greatly loves the one who forgave her"

##### the one who is forgiven little, loves little

"anyone who is forgiven for only a few things loves little"

#### Luke 7:48

##### Your sins are forgiven

"You are forgiven" or "I forgive your sins"

#### Luke 7:49

##### Those reclining together

"The people who were reclining together around the table" or "The people who were at the table"

##### Who is this that even forgives sins?

The religious leaders knew that only God could forgive sins, but they did not believe that Jesus was God. This question was probably an accusation. Alternate translation: "Who is this man who claims to forgive sins?” or “This man says that he forgives sins. Who does he think he is?”

#### Luke 7:50

##### Your faith has saved you

"Because of your faith, you are saved" or "Because you believe, God has saved you"

##### Go in peace

This is a way of saying good-bye while giving a blessing at the same time. Alternate translation: "May you have peace as you go"

## Chapter 8

#### Luke 8:1

##### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark a new part of the story.

##### The twelve

"His twelve disciples" or "His twelve apostles"

#### Luke 8:2

##### who had been healed of evil spirits and diseases

"whom Jesus had set free from evil spirits and healed of diseases"

##### Mary who was called Magdalene, from whom seven demons had been driven out

"Mary, whom people called Magdalene, and from whom Jesus had driven out seven demons"

#### Luke 8:3

##### Joanna ... Susanna

They were two of the "certain women" mentioned in verse 2.

##### Joanna, the wife of Chuza, Herod's manager

"Joanna, the wife of Herod's manager, Chuza." Joanna was Chuza's wife, and Chuza was Herod's manager.

##### provided for their needs

"provided what they needed" or "supported Jesus and his twelve disciples"

#### Luke 8:4

##### were coming to him

"were coming to Jesus"

#### Luke 8:5

##### A farmer went out to sow his seed

"A farmer went out to scatter some seed in a field" or "A farmer went out to scatter some seeds in a field"

##### some fell

"some of the seed fell" or "some of the seeds fell"

##### it was trampled underfoot

"people walked on it" or "people walked on them"

##### the birds of the sky devoured it

"the birds ate all of the seed" or "birds flew down and ate all of the seeds"

#### Luke 8:6

##### it withered away

"each plant became dry and shriveled up" or "the plants became dry and shriveled up"

##### it had no moisture

"it did not have enough water" or "they were too dry"

#### Luke 8:7

##### choked it

The thorn plants took all the nutrients, water, and sunlight, so the farmer's plants could not grow well.

#### Luke 8:8

##### produced a crop

"grew a harvest" or "grew more seeds"

##### a hundred times greater

"a hundred times greater than the seed that he sowed"

##### Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear

Jesus is saying that what he has just said is important, and people may need to take some effort to understand it. Alternate translation: "Let the one who has ears to hear listen" or "If anyone can hear, let him listen and understand" or "If you have ears to hear, then listen"

#### Luke 8:10

##### The knowledge ... of the kingdom of God has been given to you

"God has given to you the knowledge ... of the kingdom of God" or "You have received the knowledge ... of the kingdom of God"

##### the secrets of the kingdom of God

These are truths that have been hidden, but Jesus is now revealing them.

##### for others

"for other people." This refers to the people who rejected the teaching of Jesus and did not follow him.

##### seeing they may not see

"though they see, they will not perceive" or "though they see things, they will not understand them" or "though they see things happen, they will not understand what they mean"

##### hearing they may not understand

"though they hear, they will not understand" or "though they hear instruction, they will not understand the truth." This is a quote from the prophet Isaiah.

#### Luke 8:11

##### The seed is the word of God

"The seed is the message from God"

#### Luke 8:12

##### The ones along the road

"The seeds that fell along the path"

##### are those who have heard

"represent people who have heard" or "show what happens to people who have heard"

##### the devil comes and takes away the word from their hearts

"the devil comes and takes away the message of God from their thoughts"

#### Luke 8:14

##### The seeds that fell among the thorns are people

"The seeds that fell among the thorns represent people"

##### they are choked by the cares and riches and pleasures of this life

"the cares and riches and pleasures of this life choke them"

##### the cares

"the things that people worry about"

##### pleasures of this life

"things in this life that people enjoy"

##### and their fruit does not mature

"and they do not bear ripe fruit" or "and, like a plant that does not produce mature fruit, they do not produce good works"

#### Luke 8:15

##### the seed that fell on the good soil, these are the ones

"the seed that fell on the good soil represents the people"

##### bear fruit with patient endurance

"produce fruit by enduring patiently" or "produce fruit by continued effort"or "like healthy plants that produce good fruit, they produce good works by persevering"

#### Luke 8:16

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues with another parable.

#### Luke 8:17

##### nothing is hidden that will not be made known

"everything that is hidden will be made known"

##### nor is anything secret that will not be known and come into the light

"and everything that is secret will be made known and will come into the light"

#### Luke 8:18

##### to the one who has, more will be given to him

"whoever has understanding will be given more understanding" or "God will enable those who believe the truth to understand even more"

##### the one who does not have, even what he thinks he has will be taken away from him

"whoever does not have understanding will lose even the understanding he thinks he has" or "God will cause those who do not believe the truth not to understand even the little that they think they have understood"

#### Luke 8:20

##### He was told

"People told him" or "Someone told him"

#### Luke 8:21

##### My mother and my brothers are those who hear the word of God and do it

The people who were coming to listen to Jesus were as important to him as his own family was. Alternate translation: "Those who hear the word of God and obey it are like a mother and brothers to me"

#### Luke 8:22

##### They set sail

"They started sailing" or "They started their trip"

#### Luke 8:23

##### he fell asleep

"Jesus began to sleep"

##### their boat was filling with water

The strong winds caused high waves, and the water went into the boat.

#### Luke 8:24

##### the raging of the water

"the violent waves"

##### they ceased

"the wind and the waves stopped" or "they became still"

#### Luke 8:25

##### Where is your faith?

Jesus rebukes them mildly because they do not trust him to take care of them. This can be worded as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have faith!" or "You should trust me!"

##### Who then is this, that he commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him?

This question expresses shock and confusion over how Jesus is able to control the storm. Alternate translation: "What kind of man is this? He commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him!"

#### Luke 8:26

##### the region of the Gerasenes

The Gerasenes were people from the city called Gerasa.

#### Luke 8:27

##### a certain man from the city who had demons

"a certain man from the city, and this man had demons"

##### who had demons

"who was controlled by demons" or "whom demons controlled"

##### tombs

These are places where people put dead bodies. They may have been caves or small buildings that the man could use for shelter.

#### Luke 8:28

##### he cried out

"he screamed" or "he shrieked"

##### fell down before him

"he knelt before Jesus" or "lay down before Jesus." He did not fall accidentally.

##### he said with a loud voice

"he said loudly" or "he shouted out"

##### What have you to do with me

"Why are you bothering me"

##### Son of the Most High God

It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Luke 8:29

##### many times it had seized him

"many times it had taken control of the man" or "many times it had gone into him." This tells about what the demon had done many times before Jesus met the man.

##### though he was bound ... and kept under guard

"though the people had bound him ... and guarded him"

##### he would be driven by the demon into the wilderness

"the demon would make him go into the wilderness"

#### Luke 8:30

##### Legion

A legion is a large number of soldiers or people. Alternate translation: "Battalion" or "Brigade" or "Army"

#### Luke 8:31

##### They kept begging him

"The demons kept begging Jesus"

#### Luke 8:32

##### was there feeding on the hillside

"was nearby eating grass on the hill"

#### Luke 8:33

##### rushed

ran very fast

#### Luke 8:35

##### found the man from whom the demons had gone out

"saw the man whom the demons had left"

##### in his right mind

"sane" or "behaving normally"

#### Luke 8:36

##### those who had seen it

"those who had seen what had happened"

##### the man who had been possessed by demons had been healed

"Jesus had healed the man whom demons had possessed" or "Jesus had healed the man whom demons had controlled"

#### Luke 8:37

##### the region of the Gerasenes

"that area of the Gerasenes" or "the area where the Gerasene people lived." See how you translated this in 8:26

##### they were overwhelmed with great fear

"they were very afraid"

##### and returned

"and returned across the lake" or "to go back to the other side of the lake"

#### Luke 8:39

##### give a full account of what God has done for you

"tell them everything about what God has done for you"

#### Luke 8:41

##### fell down at Jesus' feet

Possible meanings are 1) "bowed down at Jesus' feet" or 2) "lay down on the ground at Jesus' feet." Jairus did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

#### Luke 8:42

##### was dying

"was about to die"

##### As Jesus was on his way

"As Jesus went with him"

##### the crowds of people pressed together around him

"the people were crowding tightly around Jesus"

#### Luke 8:43

##### had been bleeding

"had a flow of blood." She was probably bleeding from her womb even when it was not the normal time for it. Some cultures may have a polite way of referring to this condition.

##### and could not be healed by anyone

"but no one could heal her"

#### Luke 8:44

##### touched the edge of his coat

"touched the fringe of his robe." Jewish men wore tassels on the edges of their robes. This is probably what she touched.

#### Luke 8:46

##### Someone did touch me

It may be helpful to distinguish this intentional touch from the accidental touches of the crowd. Alternate translation: "Someone deliberately touched me"

##### I know that power has gone out from me

Jesus did not lose power or become weak, but his power healed the woman. Alternate translation: "I know that healing power went out from me" or "I know that my power healed someone"

#### Luke 8:47

##### that she could not escape notice

"that she could not prevent people from noticing her" or "that she could not keep it a secret that she was the one who had touched Jesus"

##### she came trembling

"she came trembling with fear"

##### fell down before him

Possible meanings are 1) "bowed down in front of Jesus" or 2) "lay down on the ground at Jesus's feet." She did not fall accidentally. This was a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

#### Luke 8:48

##### Daughter

This was a kind way of speaking to a woman. Your language may have another way of showing this kindness.

##### your faith has made you well

"because of your faith, you have become well" or "because you believe, you are healed"

##### Go in peace

This is a way of saying "Goodbye" and giving a blessing at the same time. Alternate translation: "As you go, do not worry anymore" or "May God give you peace as you go"

#### Luke 8:49

##### the synagogue leader

This refers to Jairus (Luke 8:41).

#### Luke 8:50

##### she will be healed

"she will be well" or "she will live again"

#### Luke 8:51

##### When he came to the house

"When they came to the house." Jesus went there with Jairus. Some of Jesus's disciples also went with them.

##### he allowed no one to enter with him

"Jesus did not allow anyone to go inside with him"

#### Luke 8:53

##### began to mock him, knowing that she was dead

"laughed at him because they knew that the girl was dead"

#### Luke 8:54

##### he took her by the hand

"Jesus took hold of the girl's hand"

#### Luke 8:55

##### Her spirit returned

"Her spirit returned to her body" or Her life returned" or "She became alive again"

#### Luke 8:56

##### to tell no one

"not to tell anyone"

## Chapter 9

#### Luke 9:1

##### He called

"Jesus called"

##### power and authority

Jesus gave them both the ability and the right to heal people.

##### to drive out all demons

"over all demons" or "to make all demons go away"

#### Luke 9:2

##### sent them out

"sent them to various places" or "told them to go"

##### to preach the kingdom of God

“to preach about the kingdom of God” or “to teach people about how God was going to show himself as king”

#### Luke 9:3

##### He said to them

"Jesus said to the twelve" or "Before they left, Jesus said to them"

##### Take nothing

"Do not take anything with you" or "Do not bring anything with you"

##### staff

a large stick that people use for balance when climbing or walking on uneven ground, as well as for defense against people who might attack them

##### wallet

a bag a traveler uses for carrying what he needs on a journey

##### bread

This is here used as a general reference to "food."

#### Luke 9:4

##### until you leave

"until you leave that town" or "until you leave that place"

#### Luke 9:5

##### Wherever they do not receive you, when you leave

"Here is what you should do in any town where the people do not receive you: When you leave"

##### shake off the dust from your feet as a testimony against them

Doing this would show that the preachers rejected the people of that town. They did not want even the dust of that town to remain on them.

#### Luke 9:6

##### they departed

"they left the place were Jesus was"

##### healing everywhere

"healing people wherever they went"

#### Luke 9:7

##### Now Herod

The word "Now" marks a pause in the main story. In verses 7-9, Luke tells about Herod.

##### Herod the tetrarch

This refers to Herod Antipas, who was the ruler of one-fourth of Israel.

##### he was perplexed

"he was confused" or "he could not understand"

##### it was said by some

"some people said"

#### Luke 9:8

##### still others that one of the prophets of long ago had risen

"still others said that one of the prophets of long ago had risen"

#### Luke 9:9

##### I beheaded John. Who is this

"It cannot be John because I had his head cut off. So who is this man"

##### And so he tried to see him

"And so he tried to see Jesus"

#### Luke 9:10

##### When the apostles returned

"When the apostles came back to where Jesus was"

##### they told him

"they told Jesus"

#### Luke 9:12

##### the day was about to come to an end

"the day was about to end" or "it was near the end of the day"

##### an isolated place

"a remote place" or "a place where no one lives"

#### Luke 9:13

##### five loaves of bread

A loaf of bread is a lump of dough that is shaped and baked.

##### two fish—unless we go and buy food for all these people

"two fish. In order to feed all these people, we would have to go and buy food"

#### Luke 9:14

##### Have them sit down

"Tell them to sit down"

#### Luke 9:16

##### Taking the five loaves

"Jesus took the five loaves of bread"

##### he blessed them

"he blessed the bread and fish"

##### to set before the crowd

"to pass out to to crowd" or "to give to the crowd"

#### Luke 9:17

##### and were satisfied

"and had enough" or "and were content"

#### Luke 9:18

##### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event.

##### praying by himself

"praying alone." The disciples were with Jesus, but he was praying privately.

#### Luke 9:19

##### John the Baptist

"They say you are John the Baptist"

##### that one of the prophets from long ago has risen

"that you are one of the prophets from long ago and have risen from the dead"

#### Luke 9:20

##### Then he said to them

"Then Jesus said to his disciples"

#### Luke 9:21

##### he warned and instructed them to tell this to no one

"he strongly warned them not to tell anyone"

#### Luke 9:22

##### The Son of Man must suffer ... and he will be killed

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man must suffer ... and I will be killed"

##### and be rejected by the elders and chief priests and scribes

"and the elders, chief priests, and scribes will reject him"

##### he will be killed

"they will kill him"

##### on the third day

"on the third day of his death" or "on the third day after his death"

##### be raised

"God will make him alive again" or "he will live again"

#### Luke 9:23

##### to come after me

"to be my disciple" or "to be one of my disciples"

##### must deny himself

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

##### and take up his cross daily and follow me

"and carry his cross and follow me every day" or "and obey me every day even to the point of suffering and dying"

#### Luke 9:25

##### What profit is there for a person to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It will not benefit someone at all to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself."

##### to gain the whole world

"to get everything in the world"

##### lose or forfeit himself

"ruin himself or give up his life"

#### Luke 9:26

##### my words

"what I say" or "what I teach"

##### of him will the Son of Man be ashamed

"the Son of Man will also be ashamed of him"

##### the Son of Man ... when he comes in his own glory

Jesus was speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man ... when I come in my own glory"

##### the Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Luke 9:27

##### But truly I say to you

Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

##### there are some standing here who will not taste death before they see

Jesus was speaking to the people he was talking about. Alternate translation: "some of you who are standing here will not experience death before you see"

##### will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God

"will see the kingdom of God before they die" or "will see the kingdom of God before you die"

#### Luke 9:30

##### Behold

The word "Behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. Alternate translation: "Suddenly"

#### Luke 9:31

##### who appeared in glory

"and they appeared in glorious splendor" or "and they were shining brightly"

##### his departure

"his leaving" or "how Jesus would leave this world"

#### Luke 9:32

##### were heavy with sleep

"were very sleepy"

##### they saw his glory

"they saw brilliant light coming from Jesus" or "they saw very bright light coming out of Jesus"

#### Luke 9:33

##### As they were going away

"As Moses and Elijah were going away"

##### shelters

simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

#### Luke 9:34

##### As he was saying this

"While Peter was saying these things"

##### they were afraid

They were not afraid of clouds. This was some kind of unusual fear came over them with this cloud. Alternate translation: "they were terrified"

##### they entered into the cloud

This can be expressed in terms of what the cloud did. Alternate translation: "the cloud surrounded them"

#### Luke 9:35

##### A voice came out of the cloud, saying

The voice belonged to God. Alternate translation: "God spoke to them from the cloud, saying"

##### my Son

Jesus is the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### the one who is chosen

"the one whom I have chosen" or "I have chosen him"

#### Luke 9:36

##### Jesus was found alone

"they saw that Jesus was alone." Moses and Elijah were not with Jesus.

#### Luke 9:38

##### Behold, a man from the crowd cried out

The word "behold" alerts us to the new person. Alternate translation: "Now there was a man in the crowd who cried out"

#### Luke 9:39

##### he foams at the mouth

"foam comes out of his mouth." When a person has a seizure, he can have trouble breathing or swallowing. This causes white foam to form around his mouth.

#### Luke 9:41

##### You unbelieving and perverse generation

"You unbelieving and corrupt people." Jesus says this to the crowd that has gathered.

##### how long must I be with you and put up with you?

Jesus expresses his sadness that the people do not believe. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have been with you so long, yet you do not believe. I wonder how long I must put up with you."

##### Bring your son here

Jesus is speaking to the father who addressed him.

#### Luke 9:43

##### everything he was doing

"everything Jesus was doing"

#### Luke 9:44

##### Let these words go deeply into your ears

"Listen carefully and remember"

##### The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men

Jesus is the Son of Man. Here "hands" refers to power or control. Alternate translation: "Someone will betray the Son of Man and put him under the control of men" or "Someone will betray me, the Son of Man, and put me into the hands of my enemies"

#### Luke 9:45

##### It was hidden from them

"It was a mystery to them"

#### Luke 9:46

##### among them

"among the disciples"

#### Luke 9:47

##### knowing the reasoning in their hearts

"knowing the reasoning in their minds" or "knowing what they were thinking"

#### Luke 9:48

##### in my name

"because of me"

##### the one who sent me

"God, who sent me"

#### Luke 9:49

##### John answered

"In reply, John said" or "John replied to Jesus"

##### forcing out demons in your name

"forcing out demons by using your name" or "using your name to make demons go away"

#### Luke 9:50

##### whoever is not against you is for you

"if someone is not working against you, he is working with you"

#### Luke 9:51

##### When the days drew near for him to be taken up

"When the time was coming for Jesus to go up to heaven"

##### he set his face

"he firmly decided" or "he made up his mind"

#### Luke 9:52

##### to prepare everything for him

"to make arrangements for his arrival"

#### Luke 9:53

##### did not welcome him

"did not want him to stay"

#### Luke 9:54

##### saw this

"saw that the Samaritans did not receive Jesus"

#### Luke 9:55

##### he turned and rebuked them

"Jesus turned and rebuked James and John"

#### Luke 9:57

##### someone

This was not one of the disciples.

#### Luke 9:58

##### Foxes

These are land animals similar to small dogs. They sleep in a den or a burrow in the ground.

##### birds in the sky

"birds that fly in the air"

##### the Son of Man has ... his head

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, have ... my head"

##### nowhere to lay his head

"nowhere to rest his head" or "nowhere to sleep"

#### Luke 9:59

##### first let me go and bury my father

“before I do that, let me go and bury my father.” It is not clear whether the man’s father has already died or if the man wants to stay until his father dies. The main point is that he wants to do something else first before he follows Jesus.

#### Luke 9:60

##### Leave the dead to bury their own dead

Here "the dead" refers to people who are spiritually dead and do not respond to God. Alternate translation: "let spiritually dead people bury their own people who have died." The main point is that a disciple must not let anything delay him from following Jesus.

#### Luke 9:62

##### No one ... looks back, is fit for the kingdom of God

"Anyone who ... looks back is not fit for the kingdom of God."

##### No one who puts his hand to the plow and looks back

"No one who starts to plow his field and looks back"

##### is fit for the kingdom of God

"is useful for the kingdom of God" or "is suitable for the kingdom of God"

## Chapter 10

#### Luke 10:1

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new event in the story.

##### seventy

Some versions say "seventy-two." You may want to include a footnote that says that.

##### sent them out two by two

"sent them out in groups of two" or "sent them out with two people in each group"

#### Luke 10:2

##### The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few

"There is a big crop, but not enough workers to bring it in." Jesus means there are many people ready to enter God's kingdom, but there are not enough disciples to go and teach the people.

#### Luke 10:3

##### Go on your way

"Go to the cities" or "Go to the people"

##### I send you out as lambs in the midst of wolves

Wolves attack and kill young sheep. In the same way, some people will want to harm the disciples. Alternate translation: "I send you out, and some people will try to harm you like wolves that attack young sheep"

#### Luke 10:4

##### greet no one on the road

"do not greet anyone on the road." Jesus was telling them to go quickly to the towns and do this work. He was not telling them to be rude.

#### Luke 10:5

##### May peace be on this house

Here "house" refers to those who live in the house. Alternate translation: "May the people in this household receive peace"

#### Luke 10:6

##### a son of peace

"a peaceful person"

##### your peace will rest upon him

"he will have the peace you bless him with"

##### if not

"if there is no person of peace there" or "if the owner of the house is not a peaceful person"

##### it will return to you

"you will have that peace"

#### Luke 10:7

##### Remain in that same house

Jesus was saying that they should sleep at the same house every night they were there. Alternate translation: "Continue to sleep at that house"

##### for the laborer is worthy of his wages

The men Jesus was sending to the towns would be teaching and healing people, so the people in those towns should provide them with a place to stay and food.

##### Do not move around from house to house

"Do not sleep at a different house each night"

#### Luke 10:8

##### and they receive you

"if they welcome you"

##### eat what is set before you

"eat whatever food they give you"

#### Luke 10:9

##### the sick

"the sick people"

##### The kingdom of God has come close to you

Possible meanings are "God will soon rule everywhere as king" or "The proof that God is reigning is all around you."

#### Luke 10:10

##### and they do not receive you

"and the people reject you"

#### Luke 10:11

##### Even the dust from your town that clings to our feet we wipe off against you

This is a symbolic action to show that they reject the people of the city. Alternate translation: "Just as you rejected us, we reject you. We even reject the dust from your town that clings to our feet"

#### Luke 10:12

##### on that day

"on judgment day" or "on the day when God judges all people"

##### it will be more tolerable for Sodom than for that town

"it will be easier for the people of Sodom than it will be for the people of that town" or "God will judge the people of that town more severely than he will judge the people of Sodom"

#### Luke 10:13

##### Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida!

"How terrible it will be for you, Chorazin! How terrible it will be for you, Bethsaida!" or "Trouble will come to you, people of Chorazin and Bethsaida!" Chorazin and Bethsaida were towns.

##### If the mighty works which were done in you had been done in Tyre and Sidon

"If someone had performed the miracles for the people of Tyre and Sidon that I performed for you"

##### sitting in sackcloth and ashes

"wearing sackcloth and sitting in ashes." This was a way for people to show that they were very sorry for their sins.

#### Luke 10:14

##### at the judgment

"when God judges everyone"

#### Luke 10:15

##### You, Capernaum

"You people of Capernaum." Capernaum was a town.

##### do you think you will be exalted to heaven?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the people of Capernaum for their pride. Alternate translation: "Do not think that you will be lifted up to heaven!" or "Do not think that God will honor you in heaven!"

##### you will be brought down to Hades

"you will go down to Hades" or "God will send you to Hades"

#### Luke 10:16

##### General Information

In verse 16 the word "you" refers to the seventy people that Jesus was sending to the towns to heal people and preach.

##### The one who listens to you listens to me

"When someone listens to you, it is as if they were listening to me"

##### the one who rejects you rejects me

"when someone rejects you, it is as if they were rejecting me"

##### the one who rejects me rejects the one who sent me

"when someone rejects me, it is as if they were rejecting God, who sent me"

#### Luke 10:17

##### seventy

Some versions say “seventy-two.” You may want to include a footnote that says that.

##### in your name

Here "name" refers to Jesus's power and authority. Alternate translation: "because of your name" or "when we spoke with your power and authority"

#### Luke 10:18

##### I was watching Satan fall from heaven as lightning

Jesus recognized that God was defeating Satan when the 70 disciples were preaching.

#### Luke 10:19

##### authority to tread on serpents and scorpions

"authority to trample on snakes and crush scorpions." Scorpions are small animals with two claws and a poisonous stinger on their tail. Serpents and scorpions in this verse might represent evil spirits.

##### over all the power of the enemy

"I have given you authority to crush the power of the enemy" or "I have given you authority to defeat the enemy." The enemy is Satan.

#### Luke 10:20

##### your names are engraved in heaven

"God has written your names in heaven" or "your names are on the list of the citizens of heaven"

#### Luke 10:21

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### Lord of heaven and earth

"Lord over everyone and everything in heaven and earth"

##### the wise and understanding

"wise and understanding people" or "people who think they are wise and understanding"

##### those who are untaught, like little children

"little children" or "those who are like little children"

##### for so it was well pleasing in your sight

"for it pleased you to do this"

#### Luke 10:22

##### All things have been entrusted to me from my Father

"My Father has handed everything over to me"

##### Father ... the Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. When Jesus says, "the Son," he is referring to himself. It is best to translate these words with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### no one knows who the Son is except the Father

"the only one who knows who the Son is, is the Father"

##### no one knows who the Father is except the Son and those ... him

The only one who knows who the Father is, is the Son and those ... him"

##### those to whom the Son chooses to reveal him

"whoever the Son chooses to show the Father to"

#### Luke 10:23

##### Blessed are those who see the things that you see

"How good it is for those who see the things that you see me doing"

#### Luke 10:24

##### the things that you hear

"the things that you have heard me say"

#### Luke 10:25

##### Behold, an expert in the law

The word "Behold" alerts us to a new event and a new person in the story.

##### so that he might test him

"to challenge Jesus"

#### Luke 10:26

##### What is written in the law? How do you read it?

Jesus uses these questions to test the teacher's knowledge. Alternate translation: "Tell me what Moses wrote in the law and what you think it means."

##### How do you read it?

"What have you read in it?" or "What do you understand it to say?"

#### Luke 10:27

##### You will love ... your neighbor as yourself

"You must love ... your neighbor as yourself"

##### and your neighbor as yourself

"and you must love your neighbor as much as you love yourself"

#### Luke 10:29

##### But he, desiring to justify himself, said

"But the expert in the law wanted to find a way to justify himself, so he said" or "But wanting to appear righteous, the expert in the law said"

##### Who is my neighbor?

The man wanted to know whom he was required to love. Alternate translation: "Which people are my neighbors that I should love them?"

#### Luke 10:30

##### He fell among robbers, who

"He was surrounded by robbers, who" or "Some robbers attacked him. They"

##### stripped him of his belongings

"took everything he had" or "stole all his things"

##### half dead

"almost dead"

#### Luke 10:31

##### and when he saw him

"and when the priest saw the injured man" or "but when he saw him." A priest is a very religious person, so Jesus's listeners would expect the priest to help the man.

##### he passed by on the other side

The priest did not help the man. Alternate translation: "he did not help the man but walked past him on the other side of the road"

#### Luke 10:32

##### a Levite ... the other side

The Levites served God in the temple. Jesus’s listeners would have expected the Levite to help the man.

#### Luke 10:33

##### a certain Samaritan

The Jews hated the Samaritans and would have assumed that the Samaritan would not help the injured Jewish man.

##### When he saw him

"When the Samaritan saw the injured man"

##### he was moved with compassion

"he felt sorry for him"

#### Luke 10:34

##### bound up his wounds, pouring oil and wine on them

He would have put the oil and wine on the wounds first to help them heal. Alternate translation: "he put wine and oil on the wounds and wrapped them with cloth"

##### his own animal

"his own pack animal." This was an animal that he used to carry heavy loads. It may have been a donkey.

#### Luke 10:35

##### two denarii

"two silver coins"or "two day's wages." "Denarii" is the plural of "denarius."

##### the host

"the innkeeper" or "the person who took care of the inn"

##### whatever extra you spend, when I return, I will repay you

"when I return, I will repay you whatever extra amount you spend"

#### Luke 10:36

##### Which of these three do you think was a neighbor ... robbers?

"What do you think? Which of these three men was a neighbor ... robbers?"

##### was a neighbor

"showed himself to be a true neighbor"

##### to him who fell among the robbers

"to the man whom the robbers attacked"

#### Luke 10:37

##### He said

"The expert in the law said"

##### Go and do the same

"In the same way, go and show mercy to anyone else who needs help"

#### Luke 10:38

##### as they were traveling along

"as Jesus and his disciples were traveling along"

#### Luke 10:39

##### sat at the Lord's feet

This was the normal and respectful position for a learner at that time. Alternate translation: "sat on the floor near Jesus"

##### heard his word

"listened to him teach"

#### Luke 10:40

##### overly busy

"very busy" or "too busy"

##### do you not care ... alone?

Martha is complaining that the Lord is allowing Mary to sit listening to him when there is so much work to do. Alternate translation: "it seems like you do not care ... alone."

#### Luke 10:42

##### which will not be taken away from her

"and no one will take it away from her"

## Chapter 20

#### Luke 20:1

##### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### in the temple

"in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

#### Luke 20:4

##### Was it from heaven or from men

Jesus asks this question so the Jewish leaders will have to tell what they think to all who are listening. Alternate translation: "Do you think John's authority to baptize people came from heaven or from men" or "Was it God who told John to baptize people, or did people tell him to do it"

##### from heaven

Jewish people often used the word "heaven" to refer to God.

#### Luke 20:5

##### They reasoned

"They discussed" or "They considered their answer"

##### with themselves

"among themselves" or "with each other"

##### If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say

"If we say that John's authority is from heaven, Jesus will say"

#### Luke 20:6

##### if we say, 'From men,'

"if we say that John's authority is from men,"

##### will stone us

"will kill us by throwing stones at us"

#### Luke 20:7

##### they answered that they did not know where it came from.

"they said, 'We do not know where it came from.'"

##### where it came from

"where John's baptism came from" or "where John's authority to baptize came from" or "who authorized John to baptize people"

#### Luke 20:8

##### Neither will I tell you

"And I will not tell you." Jesus knew they were not willing to tell him the answer, so he responded in the same manner. Alternate translation: "Just as you will not tell me, I will not tell you"

#### Luke 20:9

##### rented it out to vine growers

"allowed some vine growers to use it in exchange for payment" or "allowed some vine growers to use it and pay him later." Payment might be in the form of money or a portion of the harvest.

##### vine growers

These are people who tend grape vines and grow grapes. Alternate translation: "grape farmers"

#### Luke 20:10

##### At the appointed time

"When the time came" or "At harvest time"

##### of the fruit of the vineyard

"some of the grapes" or "some of what they produced in the vineyard"

##### sent him away empty-handed

"sent him away without paying him" or "sent him away without anything"

#### Luke 20:11

##### beat him

"beat that servant"

##### treated him shamefully

"humiliated him"

#### Luke 20:12

##### yet a third

"even a third servant"

##### wounded him

"injured that servant"

##### threw him out

"threw him out of the vineyard"

#### Luke 20:13

##### What will I do?

The vineyard owner thought carefully about what he was going to do. Alternate translation: “This is what I will do:”

#### Luke 20:14

##### when the vine growers saw him

"when the farmers saw the owner's son"

##### Let us kill him

They were not asking permission. The said this to encourage each other to kill the son.

#### Luke 20:15

##### What then will the lord of the vineyard do to them?

Jesus uses a question to get his listeners to pay attention to what the owner of the vineyard will do. Alternate translation: "So now, listen to what the lord of the vineyard will do to them."

#### Luke 20:16

##### When they heard it

"When the people heard what Jesus said"

##### May it never be

"May it never happen"

#### Luke 20:17

##### But Jesus looked at them

"But Jesus stared at them" or "But he looked straight at them." He did this to hold them accountable to understand what he was saying.

##### What is the meaning of that which is written: 'The stone ... cornerstone'?

Jesus uses a question to teach the crowd. Alternate translation: "You should be able to understand that which is written: 'The stone ... cornerstone.'"

##### that which is written

"this scripture." Jesus quoted a scripture that prophesied about the Messiah.

##### The stone that the builders rejected

"The stone that the builders said was not good enough to use for building." In those days people used stones to build the walls of houses and other buildings.

##### the cornerstone

"the chief stone of the building" or "the most important stone of the building"

#### Luke 20:18

##### will be broken to pieces

"will break up into pieces"

##### and the one on whom it falls will be crushed

"and that stone will crush whomever it falls on"

#### Luke 20:19

##### sought to lay hands on him

"looked for a way to arrest Jesus"

##### they were afraid of the people

This is the reason that they did not arrest Jesus right away. The people respected Jesus, and the religious leaders were afraid of what the people might do if they arrested him.

#### Luke 20:20

##### that they might find fault with his speech

"so that the spies might accuse Jesus of saying something bad"

##### so as to deliver him up to the rule and to the authority of the governor

"so that they could hand him over to the governor to judge him"

#### Luke 20:21

##### They asked him

"The spies asked Jesus"

##### Teacher, we know ... way of God

The spies were trying to deceive Jesus. They did not believe these things about Jesus.

##### are not partial to anyone

Possible meanings are "you tell the truth even if important people do not like it" or "you do not favor one person over another"

#### Luke 20:22

##### Is it lawful ... or not?

They hoped that Jesus would say either "yes" or "no." If he said "yes," then the Jewish people would be angry with him for telling them to pay taxes to a foreign government. If he said "no," then the religious leaders could tell the Romans that Jesus was teaching the people to break the Roman laws.

##### Is it lawful

They were asking about God's law, not about Caesar's law. Alternate translation: "Does our law permit us"

##### to Caesar

Caesar was the ruler of the Roman government. Alternate translation: "to the Roman Emperor"

#### Luke 20:23

##### But Jesus understood their craftiness

"But Jesus understood how tricky they were" or "But Jesus saw that they were trying to trap him"

#### Luke 20:24

##### a denarius

This is a Roman silver coin worth a day's wages.

##### Whose image and name is on it?

Jesus uses a question to respond to those who were trying to trick him. Alternate translation: "Tell me, whose picture and name do you see on it?"

#### Luke 20:25

##### and to God the things that are God's

"and give to God the things that belong to God"

#### Luke 20:26

##### They were not able to find fault with what he had said

"The spies could not find anything wrong with what Jesus said"

##### but marveling at his answer, they were silent

"but they were amazed at his answer and did not say anything"

#### Luke 20:27

##### When some of the Sadducees came to him, the ones who say that there is no resurrection

The Sadducees did not believe that people will rise from the dead. Alternate translation: "When some of the Sadducees, people who say that there is no resurrection, came to him"

#### Luke 20:28

##### if a man's brother dies, having a wife, and being childless

"if a man's brother dies when he has a wife but does not have children" or "if a man's brother has a wife and no children and that brother dies"

##### the man should take the brother's wife

"the man should marry his dead brother's widow"

##### and raise up children for his brother

"and have children for his brother" or "and produce children for his brother"

#### Luke 20:29

##### There were seven brothers

This may have happened, but it is probably a story that the Saducees made up to test Jesus.

##### the first

"the first brother"

##### died childless

"died without having any children" or "died, but did not have any children"

#### Luke 20:30

##### the second as well

The Sadducees kept the story short by not repeating many of the details. Alternate translation: "the second brother took her as his wife, and the same thing happened" or "the second brother married that woman, and he also died without having any children"

#### Luke 20:31

##### and in the same way the seven also left no children and died

"and in the same way the rest of the seven brothers married her and died without having any children"

#### Luke 20:33

##### In the resurrection

"When people are raised from the dead" or "When dead people become alive again"

#### Luke 20:34

##### The sons of this age

"The people of this world" or "The people of this time." This is in contrast with those in heaven or the people who live after the resurrection.

##### marry and are given in marriage

In that culture, they spoke of men marrying women and women being given in marriage to their husband. Alternate translation: "marry" or "get married"

#### Luke 20:35

##### those who are regarded as worthy in that age

"the people in that time whom God will consider to be worthy"

##### to receive the resurrection from the dead

"to be raised from the dead" or "to rise from death" or "to become alive again"

#### Luke 20:36

##### Neither can they die anymore

This is after the resurrection. Alternate translation: "They will not be able to die anymore"

##### are sons of God, being sons of the resurrection

"are children of God because he has raised them from the dead"

#### Luke 20:37

##### But that the dead are raised, even Moses showed, in the place concerning the bush

The word "even" is here because the Sadducees did not expect Moses to have written that the dead are raised. Alternate translation: "But even Moses, in the scripture concerning the bush, showed that the dead are raised"

##### that the dead are raised

"that God raises people from the dead" or "that God causes the dead to live again"

##### in the place concerning the bush, where he calls the Lord the God of Abraham

"in the scripture about the burning bush, where he wrote about the Lord being the God of Abraham"

##### the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob

"the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob." They all worshiped the same God.

#### Luke 20:38

##### Now

This word marks a switch in Jesus's teaching. He was telling about Moses. Now he explains why what Moses said was important.

##### he is not the God of the dead, but of the living

"the Lord is not the God of dead people; he is the God of living people". Since these living people died physically, they must still be alive spiritually.

##### because all live to him

"because in God's sight they all are still alive" or "because they live in God's presence"

#### Luke 20:39

##### Some of the scribes answered

"Some of the scribes said to Jesus." There were scribes present when the Sadducees were questioning Jesus.

#### Luke 20:40

##### they did not dare ask him any more questions

"they were afraid to ask him any more questions" or "they did not risk asking him any more questions." Perhaps they realized that they did not know as much as Jesus did.

#### Luke 20:41

##### How do they say ... son?

"Why do people say ... son?" Jesus uses a question to make the scribes think about who the Messiah is. Alternate translation: "Let's think about them saying ... son." or "I will talk about them saying ... son."

##### David's son

"King David's descendant." The word "son" is used here to refer to a descendant. In this case it refers to the one who would reign over God's kingdom.

#### Luke 20:42

##### The Lord said to my Lord

This is a quotation from the book of Psalms which says "Yahweh said to my Lord." But the Jews stopped saying "Yahweh" and often said "Lord" instead. Alternate translation: "The Lord God said to my Lord"

##### my Lord

David was referring to the Christ as "my Lord."

##### Sit at my right hand

Sitting at the right hand of God is symbolic of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me"

#### Luke 20:43

##### until I make your enemies your footstool

God speaks of the Messiah's enemies as if they were furniture on which the Messiah would rest his feet. God would conquer the enemies. Alternate translation: "until I make your enemies like a footstool for you"

#### Luke 20:44

##### David therefore calls the Christ 'Lord,'

David recognized that the Christ was greater than David.

##### so how is he David's son?

"so how can the Christ be David's son?" or "This shows that the Christ is not merely a son of David"

#### Luke 20:46

##### Beware of

"Be on guard against"

##### who desire to walk in long robes

Long robes would show that they were important. Alternate translation: "who like to walk around wearing their important robes"

#### Luke 20:47

##### They also devour widows' houses

"They also eat up widows' houses." Jesus speaks of the scribes as if they were hungry animals. Alternate translation: "They also take widows' houses from them"

##### for a show they make long prayers

"they make long prayers so that people will see them"

##### Men like this will receive greater condemnation

"They will receive a more severe judgment" or "God will certainly punish them more severely"

## Chapter 1

#### John 1:1

##### In the beginning

This refers to the very earliest time before God created the heavens and the earth.

##### the Word

This refers to Jesus. Translate as "the Word" if possible. If "Word" is feminine in your language, it could be translated as "the one who is called the Word."

#### John 1:3

##### All things were made through him

"God made all things through him"

##### without him there was not one thing made that has been made

"God did not make anything without him" or "with him there was every thing made that has been made" or "God made with him every thing that God has made"

#### John 1:4

##### In him was life, and the life was the light of men

"He is the one who caused everything to live. And he revealed to people what is true about God"

##### In him

Here "him" refers to the one who is called the Word.

##### life

Here use a general term for "life." If you must be more specific, translate as "spiritual life."

#### John 1:5

##### The light shines in the darkness, and the darkness did not overcome it

"The truth is like a light shining into a dark place, and no one in the dark place could put out the light"

#### John 1:7

##### testify about the light

"show how Jesus is like the true light of God"

#### John 1:9

##### The true light

Here light represents Jesus as the one who both reveals the truth about God and is himself that truth.

#### John 1:10

##### the world did not know him

"the people did not know who he really was"

#### John 1:11

##### He came to his own, and his own did not receive him

"He came to his own fellow countrymen, and his own fellow countrymen did not accept him either"

#### John 1:12

##### believed in his name

"believed in him"

##### he gave the right

"he gave them the authority" or "he made it possible for them"

##### children of God

The word "children" is a metaphor that represents our relationship to God, which is like children to a father.

#### John 1:14

##### The Word

This refers to Jesus. Translate as "the Word" if possible. See how you translated this in John 1:1.

##### became flesh

"became human" or "became a human being"

##### the one and only who came from the Father

"the unique Son of the Father" or "the only Son of the Father"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 1:15

##### He who comes after me

John is speaking about Jesus. The phrase "comes after me" means that John's ministry has already started and Jesus's ministry will start later.

##### is greater than I am

"is more important than I am" or "has more authority than I have"

##### for he was before me

Jesus is greater and more important than John because he is God the Son, who has always been alive.

#### John 1:16

##### grace after grace

"blessing after blessing"

#### John 1:18

##### the only God

"the only Son, who is himself God"

##### the only God

"the only begotten God" or "the only begotten Son, who is himself God" or "the only Son who proceeds from God and is himself God"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 1:19

##### the Jews sent

"the Jewish leaders sent"

#### John 1:20

##### He confessed—he did not deny, but confessed

This means that John was telling the truth and was strongly stating that he was not the Christ. Your language may have a different way of doing this.

#### John 1:21

##### What are you then?

"What then is the case, if you are not the Messiah?" or "What then is going on?" or "What then are you doing?"

#### John 1:22

##### they said to him

"the priests and Levites said to John"

#### John 1:23

##### He said

"John said"

##### I am a voice, crying in the wilderness

"I am the one calling out in the wilderness"

##### Make the way of the Lord straight

"Prepare yourselves for the Lord's arrival the same way that people prepare the road for an important person to use"

#### John 1:27

##### who comes after me

John is speaking about Jesus. The phrase "comes after me" means that John's ministry has already started and Jesus's ministry will start later.

##### me, the strap of whose sandal I am not worthy to untie

"me, whom I am not worthy to serve in even the most unpleasant way" or "me. I am not even worthy to untie the strap of his sandal"

#### John 1:29

##### Lamb of God

Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins.

##### world

The word "world" refers to all the people in the world.

#### John 1:32

##### like a dove

Possible meanings: 1) the Spirit descended in the form of a dove or 2) the Spirit descended in the way a dove descends.

##### heaven

The word "heaven" refers to the "sky."

#### John 1:33

##### The one on whom

"The one upon whom"

##### he is the one who will baptize with the Holy Spirit

"he is the one who will baptize in the Holy Spirit"

#### John 1:34

##### the Son of God

Some copies of this text say "Son of God"; others say "chosen one of God."

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### John 1:35

##### Again, the next day

This is another day. It is the second day that John sees Jesus.

#### John 1:39

##### tenth hour

"hour 10." This phrase indicates a time in the afternoon, before dark, at which it would be too late to start traveling to another town, possibly around 4 p.m.

#### John 1:42

##### son of John

This is not John the Baptist. "John" was a very common name.

#### John 1:46

##### Nathaniel said to him

"Nathaniel said to Philip"

##### Can any good thing come out of Nazareth?

"No good thing can come out of Nazareth!"

#### John 1:47

##### in whom is no deceit

"a completely truthful man"

#### John 1:49

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### John 1:50

##### Because I said to you, 'I ... tree,' do you believe?

"You believe only because I said, 'I ... tree'!"

#### John 1:51

##### Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true.

## Chapter 2

#### John 2:1

##### Three days later

Most interpreters read this as on the third day after Jesus called Philip and Nathaniel to follow him.

#### John 2:2

##### Jesus and his disciples were invited to the wedding

"Someone invited Jesus and his disciples to the wedding"

#### John 2:4

##### Woman

This refers to Mary. If it is impolite for a son to call his mother "woman" in your language, use another word that is polite, or leave it out.

##### why do you come to me?

"this has nothing to do with me." or "you should not tell me what to do."

##### My time has not yet come

"It is not yet the right time for me to perform a mighty act"

#### John 2:6

##### two to three metretes

"75 to 115 liters"

#### John 2:7

##### to the brim

This means "to the very top" or "completely full."

#### John 2:8

##### the head waiter

This refers to the person in charge of the food and drink.

#### John 2:10

##### drunk

unable to tell the difference between cheap wine and expensive wine because of drinking too much alcohol

#### John 2:11

##### Cana

This is a place name.

##### revealed his glory

"showed his power"

#### John 2:12

##### went down

This indicates that they went from a higher place to a lower place. Capernaum is northeast of Cana and is at a lower elevation.

##### his brothers

The word "brothers" includes both brothers and sisters. All Jesus's brothers and sisters were younger than he was.

#### John 2:13

##### went up to Jerusalem

This indicates that he went from a lower place to a higher place. Jerusalem is built on a hill.

#### John 2:14

##### were sitting there

The next verse makes it clear that these people are in the temple courtyard. That area was intended for worship and not for commerce.

##### sellers of oxen and sheep and pigeons

People are buying animals in the temple courtyard to sacrifice them to God.

##### money changers

Jewish authorities required people who wanted to buy animals for sacrifices to exchange their money for special money from the "money changers."

#### John 2:15

##### So

This word marks an event that happens because of something else that has happened first. In this case, Jesus has seen the money changers sitting in the temple.

#### John 2:16

##### Stop making the house of my Father a marketplace

"Stop buying and selling things in my Father's house"

##### the house of my Father

This is a phrase Jesus uses to refer to the temple.

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 2:17

##### your house

This term refers to the temple, God's house.

##### consume

Jesus's love for the temple is like a fire that burns within him.

#### John 2:18

##### sign

This refers to an event that proves something is true.

##### these things

This refers to Jesus's actions against the money changers in the temple.

#### John 2:19

##### Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up

"If you destroy this temple, I will rebuild it in three days"

#### John 2:20

##### you will raise it up in three days?

"you will rebuild it in three days?" or "you cannot possibly rebuild it in three days!"

#### John 2:23

##### Now when he was in Jerusalem

The word "now" introduces us to a new event in the story.

##### believed in his name

"believed in him" or "trusted in him"

##### the signs that he did

Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

#### John 2:25

##### about man, for he knew what was in man

"about people, for he knew what was in people"

## Chapter 3

#### John 3:1

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story and to introduce Nicodemus.

#### John 3:3

##### Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true. See how you translated this in John 1:51

##### born again

"born from above" or "born of God"

##### he cannot see the kingdom of God

Possible meanings of seeing the kingdom of God are 1) seeing the place God rules over or 2) knowing what God's kingdom is like or 3) belonging to the kingdom of God.

#### John 3:4

##### How can a man be born when he is old?

"A man certainly cannot be born again when he is old!"

##### He cannot enter a second time into his mother's womb and be born, can he?

"Certainly, he cannot enter a second time into his mother's womb!

##### womb

the part of a woman's body where a baby grows

#### John 3:5

##### born of water and the Spirit

There are two possible meanings: 1) "baptized in water and in the Spirit" or 2) "born physically and spiritually"

##### he cannot enter into the kingdom of God

"he cannot belong to the kingdom of God"

#### John 3:8

##### The wind blows wherever it wishes

"The Holy Spirit is like a wind that blows wherever it wants"

#### John 3:9

##### How can these things be?

"This cannot be!" or "This is not able to happen!"

#### John 3:10

##### Are you a teacher of Israel, and yet you do not understand these things?

"You are a teacher of Israel, so I am surprised you do not understand these things!" or "You are a teacher of Israel, so you should understand these things!"

#### John 3:11

##### you do not accept

The word "you" is plural and refers either the Pharisees or to the Jewish leaders or to the Jews in general.

##### we speak

When Jesus said "we," he was not including Nicodemus.

#### John 3:12

##### I told you ... you do not believe ... how will you believe if I tell you

In all three places "you" is plural and refers to Jews in general.

##### how will you believe if I tell you about heavenly things?

"you certainly will not believe if I tell you about spiritual things!"

#### John 3:13

##### No one has ascended into heaven except he who descended from heaven

"The only one who has ascended into heaven is he who descended from heaven"

#### John 3:14

##### Just as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up

Some people will "lift up" Jesus just as Moses "lifted up" the bronze serpent in the place where Moses and the Israelites walked around for forty years.

#### John 3:16

##### God so loved the world

Here "world" refers to everyone in the world.

##### loved

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

#### John 3:17

##### For God did not send the Son into the world in order to condemn the world, but in order to save the world through him

God""'s real reason for sending his Son into the world was to save it"

##### to condemn

"to punish." Usually "punish" implies that the person who has been punished is then accepted by God. When a person is condemned, he is punished but never accepted by God.

#### John 3:18

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### John 3:19

##### The light has come into the world

"The one who is like a light has revealed God's truth to all people" or "I, who am like a light, have come into the world"

##### men loved the darkness

Here "darkness" means evil.

#### John 3:20

##### so that his deeds will not be exposed

"so that the light will not show the things he does" or "so that the light does not make clear his deeds"

#### John 3:21

##### plainly seen that his deeds

"people may clearly see his deeds" or "everyone may clearly see the things he does"

#### John 3:22

##### After this

This refers to after Jesus had spoken with Nicodemus.

#### John 3:23

##### Aenon

This word means "springs," as of water.

##### Salim

a village or town next to the Jordan River

##### were being baptized

"John was baptizing them" or "he was baptizing them"

#### John 3:25

##### Then there arose a dispute between some of John's disciples and a Jew

"Then John's disciples and a Jew began to fight with each other using words"

#### John 3:26

##### you have testified, look, he is baptizing,

"you have testified, 'Look! He is baptizing,'" or "you have testified. 'Look at that! He is baptizing,'"

#### John 3:27

##### A man cannot receive anything unless

"Nobody has any power unless"

##### it has been given to him from heaven

"God has given it to him"

#### John 3:28

##### You yourselves

"You all" or "All of you"

##### I have been sent before him

"God sent me to arrive before him"

#### John 3:29

##### The bride belongs to the bridegroom

Jesus is like the "bridegroom" and John is like the friend of the "bridegroom."

##### This, then, is my joy made complete

"So then I rejoice greatly" or "So I rejoice much"

##### my joy

The word "my" refers to John the Baptist, the one who is speaking.

#### John 3:30

##### He must increase

"He" refers to the bridegroom, Jesus, who will continue to grow in importance.

#### John 3:31

##### He who comes from above is above all

"He who comes from heaven is more important than anyone else"

##### He who is from the earth is from the earth and speaks about the earth

"He who is born in this world is like everyone else who lives in the world and he speaks about what happens in this world"

#### John 3:32

##### He testifies about what he has seen and heard

"The one from heaven tells about what he has seen and heard in heaven"

##### no one accepts his testimony

"very few people believe him"

#### John 3:33

##### He who has received his testimony

"Anyone who believes what Jesus says"

##### has confirmed

"proves" or "agrees"

#### John 3:34

##### For the one whom God has sent speaks

"This Jesus, whom God has sent to represent him, speaks"

##### For he does not give the Spirit by measure

"For he is the one to whom God gave all the power of his Spirit"

#### John 3:35

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### given ... into his hand

This means to be put in his power or control.

#### John 3:36

##### He who believes

"A person who believes" or "Anyone who believes"

##### the wrath of God stays on him

"God will continue to punish him"

## Chapter 4

#### John 4:1

##### Now when Jesus knew that the Pharisees had heard that he was making and baptizing more disciples than John

"Now Jesus was making and baptizing more disciples than John. When he knew that the Pharisees had heard that he was doing this"

#### John 4:2

##### Jesus himself was not baptizing

It was not Jesus who was baptizing, but his disciples.

#### John 4:3

##### he left Judea and went back again to Galilee

When Jesus knew that the Pharisees learned what he was doing, he left Judea and went back again to Galilee"

#### John 4:8

##### For his disciples had gone

He did not ask his disciples to draw water for him because they had gone.

#### John 4:9

##### Then the Samaritan woman said to him

The word "him" refers to Jesus.

##### How is it that you, being a Jew, are asking me, being a Samaritan woman, for something to drink?

"I cannot believe that you, being a Jew, are asking me, a Samaritan woman, for a drink!"

##### have no dealings with

"do not associate with"

#### John 4:10

##### living water

“Living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit, who works in a person to transform and bring new life.

#### John 4:12

##### You are not greater, are you, than our father Jacob ... livestock?

You are not greater than our father Jacob ... livestock!"

##### our father Jacob

"our ancestor Jacob"

##### drank from it

"drank water that came from it"

#### John 4:13

##### will be thirsty again

"will need to drink water again"

#### John 4:14

##### the water that I will give him will become a fountain of water in him

"the water that I will give him will become like a spring of water in him"

##### eternal life

Here "life" refers to the "spiritual life" that only God can give.

#### John 4:15

##### Sir

In this context, the Samaritan woman is addressing Jesus as "Sir," which is a term of respect or politeness.

##### draw water

"get water" or "pull water up from the well" using a container and rope

#### John 4:17

##### You have said correctly

Jesus is acknowledging that what she had said was strictly true but was hiding a fact about her that she expected Jesus to disapprove of. He was saying neither that it was a good thing that she had no husband nor that her answer showed that she was morally good.

#### John 4:18

##### What you have said is true

Jesus said this to emphasize the words "You are right in saying, 'I have no husband'" in verse 17. He wanted the woman to know that he knew she was telling the truth.

#### John 4:19

##### I see that you are a prophet

"I can understand that you are a prophet"

#### John 4:20

##### Our fathers

"Our forefathers" or "Our ancestors"

#### John 4:21

##### Believe me

To believe someone is to acknowledge what the person has said is true.

##### you will worship the Father

Eternal salvation from sin comes from God the Father, who is Yahweh, the God of the Jews.

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 4:22

##### You worship what you do not know. We worship what we know

Jesus means that God revealed himself and his commands to the Jewish people, not to the Samaritans. Through the Scriptures the Jewish people know who God is better than the Samaritans.

##### salvation is from the Jews

Eternal salvation from sin comes from God the Father, who is Yahweh, the God of the Jews.

#### John 4:23

##### However, the hour is coming, and is now here, when true worshipers will

"However, it is now the right time for true worshipers to"

##### the Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### in spirit and truth

"with the Spirit's help in thinking correctly of what is true about God"

#### John 4:25

##### I know that the Messiah ... Christ

Both of these words mean "God's promised king."

##### he will explain everything to us

"he will tell us everything we need to know"

#### John 4:27

##### Now they were wondering why he was speaking with a woman

It was very unusual for a Jew to speak with a woman he did not know, especially if that woman was a Samaritan.

##### no one said, "What ... looking for?" or "Why ... her?"

Possible meanings are 1) "no one asked Jesus, 'What ... looking for?' or 'Why ... her?'" or 2) "no one asked the woman, 'What ... looking for?' or asked Jesus, 'Why ... her?'"

#### John 4:29

##### Come, see a man who told me everything that I have ever done

"Come see a man who knows very much about me, even though I have never met him before"

##### This could not be the Christ, could it?

The woman is not sure that Jesus is the Christ, so she asks a question that expects "no" for an answer, but she also asks a question instead of making a statement because she wants the people to decide for themselves.

#### John 4:31

##### In the meantime

"While the woman was going into town"

#### John 4:32

##### I have food to eat that you do not know about

Here Jesus is not talking about literal "food," but is preparing his disciples for a spiritual lesson in John 4:34.

#### John 4:33

##### No one has brought him anything to eat, have they?

"Surely no one brought him any food while we were in town!"

#### John 4:34

##### My food is to do the will of him who sent me and to complete his work

"Just as food satisfies a hungry person, obeying God's will is what satisfies me"

#### John 4:35

##### Do you not say

"Is this not one of your popular sayings"

##### look up and see the fields, for they are already ripe for harvest

"look up and see the the people! They are ready to believe my message, like crops in the fields that are ready for people to harvest them"

#### John 4:36

##### and gathers fruit for everlasting life

"and the people who believe the message and receive eternal life are like the fruit that a harvester gathers"

#### John 4:37

##### One sows, and another reaps

"One person plants the seeds, and another person reaps the crops"

#### John 4:38

##### you have entered into their labor

"you are now joining in their work"

#### John 4:39

##### believed in him

To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. Here this also means that they believed he was the Son of God.

##### He told me everything that I have done

"He told me many things about my life"

#### John 4:41

##### his word

"his message"

#### John 4:42

##### world

"all the believers in the world"

#### John 4:44

##### a prophet has no honor in his own country

"people do not show respect or honor to a prophet of their own country" or "a prophet is not respected by the people in his own community"

#### John 4:45

##### at the festival

Here the festival is the Passover.

#### John 4:46

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here the author starts a new part of the story. If you have a way of doing this in your language, you may consider using it.

##### royal official

someone who is in the service of the king

#### John 4:48

##### Unless you see signs and wonders, you will not believe

"You will believe only if you see a signs and wonders"

#### John 4:50

##### believed the word

"believed the message"

#### John 4:51

##### While

This word is used to mark two events that are happening at the same time. As the official was going home, his servants were coming to meet him on the road.

#### John 4:54

##### sign

Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

## Chapter 5

#### John 5:1

##### there was a Jewish festival

"the Jews were celebrating a festival"

##### went up to Jerusalem

Jerusalem is located on the top of a hill. Roads to Jerusalem went up and down smaller hills. If your language has a different word for going up a hill than for walking on level ground, you may use it here.

#### John 5:2

##### pool

This was a hole in the ground that people filled with water. Sometimes they lined the pools with tiles or other stonework.

##### Bethesda

a place name

##### roofed porches

roofed structures with at least one wall missing and attached to buildings

#### John 5:6

##### he realized

"he understood" or "he found out"

##### he said to him

"Jesus said to the paralyzed man"

#### John 5:7

##### Sir, I do not have

Here the word "sir" is a polite form of address.

##### when the water is stirred up

"when the angel moves the water"

##### another steps down before me

"someone else always goes down the steps into the water before me"

#### John 5:8

##### Get up

"Stand up"

##### take up your bed, and walk

"pick up your sleeping mat, and walk"

#### John 5:9

##### the man was healed

"the man became healthy again"

#### John 5:10

##### So the Jews said to him

The Jews (especially the leaders of the Jews) became angry when they saw the man carrying his mat on the Sabbath because it is God's day of rest.

#### John 5:11

##### He who made me healthy

"The man who made me well"

#### John 5:12

##### They asked him

"The Jewish leaders asked the man who was healed"

#### John 5:14

##### Jesus found him

"Jesus found the man he had healed"

#### John 5:16

##### the Jews

"the Jewish leaders"

#### John 5:17

##### is working

This refers to doing labor, including anything that is done to serve other people.

##### My Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 5:18

##### making himself equal to God

"saying that he was like God" or "saying that he had as much authority as God"

#### John 5:19

##### Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true. See how you translated this in John 1:51.

##### whatever the Father is doing, the Son does in the same way

Jesus, as the Son of God, followed and obeyed his Father's leadership on earth, because Jesus knew the Father loved him.

##### Son ... Father

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### John 5:20

##### you will be amazed

"you will be surprised" or "you will be shocked"

##### loves

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

#### John 5:21

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

##### life

This refers to "spiritual life."

#### John 5:22

##### For the Father judges no one, but he has given all judgment to the Son

The word "for" marks a comparison. The Son of God carries out judgment for God the Father.

#### John 5:23

##### honor the Son just as ... the Father. The one who does not honor the Son does not honor the Father

God the Son must be honored and worshiped just like God the Father. If we fail to honor God the Son, then we also fail to honor God the Father.

#### John 5:24

##### he who hears my word

"anyone who hears my message"

##### will not be condemned

"he will not receive condemnation" or "God will not condemn him"

#### John 5:25

##### the dead will hear the voice of the Son of God, and those who hear will live

The voice of Jesus, the Son of God, will raise dead people from the grave.

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### John 5:26

##### For just as the Father has life in himself, so he has also given to the Son so that he has life in himself

The word "For" marks a comparison. The Son of God has the power to give life, just as the Father does.

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### life

This means spiritual life.

#### John 5:27

##### Father ... Son of Man

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### the Father has given the Son authority to carry out judgment

The Son of God has the authority of God the Father to judge.

#### John 5:28

##### Do not be amazed at this

"This" refers to the fact that Jesus, as the Son of Man, has the power to give eternal life and to carry out judgment.

##### hear his voice

"hear my voice"

#### John 5:29

##### to the resurrection of life

"will rise to live" or "will rise and live"

##### to the resurrection of judgment

"will rise to be judged" or "will rise and be judged"

#### John 5:30

##### the will of him who sent me

The word "him" refers to God the Father.

#### John 5:32

##### There is another who testifies about me

"There is someone else who tells people about me"

##### the testimony that he gives about me is true

"what he tells people about me is true"

#### John 5:34

##### the testimony that I receive is not from man

"I do not need people's testimony"

##### that you might be saved

"so God can save you"

#### John 5:35

##### John was a lamp that was burning and shining, and you were willing to rejoice in his light for a while

"John taught you about God and this was like a lamp shining its light. And for a while what John said made you happy"

#### John 5:36

##### the works that the Father has given me to accomplish ... that the Father has sent me

God the Father has sent God the Son, Jesus, to earth. Jesus completes what the Father gives him to do.

##### the very works that I do, testify about me that the Father has sent me

"what I do, shows the people that God has sent me"

#### John 5:37

##### The Father who sent me has himself testified

This emphasizes that it is the Father, not someone less important, who has testified.

#### John 5:38

##### You do not have his word remaining in you

"You do not live according to his word" or "You do not obey his word"

#### John 5:39

##### in them you have eternal life

"you will find eternal life if you read them" or "the scriptures will tell you how you can have eternal life"

#### John 5:40

##### you are not willing to come to me

"you refuse to believe my message"

#### John 5:41

##### receive glory

"accept praise"

#### John 5:42

##### you do not have the love of God in yourselves

This can mean 1) "you really do not love God" or 2) "you have really not received God's love."

#### John 5:43

##### in my Father's name

"with my Father's authority"

##### receive

welcome as a friend

##### If another should come in his own name

"If another should come in his own authority"

#### John 5:44

##### How can you believe, you who accept glory ... God?

"There is no way you can believe because you accept glory ... God!"

##### believe

This means to trust in Jesus.

##### accept glory ... seeking the glory

"accept praise ... seeking the praise"

#### John 5:45

##### in whom you have hoped

"whom you expect to help you" or "whom you trust to defend you before the Father you"

#### John 5:47

##### If you do not believe his writings, how are you going to believe my words?

"You do not believe his writings, so you will never believe what I say"

## Chapter 6

#### John 6:1

##### After these things

The phrase "these things" refers to the events in John 5:1-46 and introduces the event that follows.

##### Jesus went away

"Jesus traveled by boat with his disciples"

#### John 6:2

##### signs

This refers to the miracles that are used as evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over everything.

#### John 6:4

##### Now the Passover, the Jewish festival, was near

John briefly stops telling about the events in the story in order to give background information about when the events happened.

#### John 6:6

##### But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do

John briefly stops telling about the events in the story in order to explain why Jesus asked Philip where to buy bread.

##### for he himself knew

Jesus knew what he would do.

#### John 6:7

##### Two hundred denarii worth of bread

"The amount of bread that costs two hundred days' wages"

#### John 6:9

##### what are these among so many?

"these few loaves and fishes are not enough to feed so many people!"

#### John 6:10

##### So the men sat down, about five thousand in number

While the crowd probably included women and children in John 6:4-5, here John is counting only the men.

#### John 6:11

##### giving thanks

Jesus prayed to God the Father and thanked him for the fish and the loaves.

##### he gave it

"Jesus and his disciples gave it"

#### John 6:13

##### they gathered

"the disciples gathered"

#### John 6:14

##### this sign

Jesus feeding the 5,000 people with five barley loaves and two fish

##### the prophet

the special prophet who Moses said would come into the world

#### John 6:19

##### they had rowed

Boats usually had two, four, or six people rowing with rowers on each side working together. Your culture may have different ways of making a boat go across a large body of water.

##### about twenty-five or thirty stadia

"about five or six kilometers"

#### John 6:21

##### they were willing to receive him into the boat

"they gladly received him into the boat"

#### John 6:22

##### the sea

"the Sea of Galilee"

##### there was no other boat there except the one

"there was only that one boat there"

#### John 6:23

##### boats that came from Tiberias

The next day, after Jesus fed the people, some boats with people from Tiberius came to see Jesus.

#### John 6:26

##### Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true.

#### John 6:27

##### eternal life which the Son of Man will give you, for God the Father has set his seal on him

God the Father has given his approval to Jesus, the Son of Man, to give eternal life to those who believe in him.

##### Son of Man ... God the Father

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### John 6:31

##### Our fathers

"Our forefathers" or "Our ancestors"

##### heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

#### John 6:32

##### it is my Father who is giving you the true bread from heaven

"the Father gives to you the Son as the true bread from heaven"

#### John 6:33

##### gives life to the world

"gives spiritual life to the world"

##### the world

Here, the "world" refers to all of the people in the world who trust in Jesus.

#### John 6:35

##### I am the bread of life

"Just as food keeps you alive physically, I can give you spiritual life"

##### believes in

This means to believe that Jesus is the Son of God, to trust him as Savior, and to live in a way that honors him.

#### John 6:37

##### Everyone whom the Father gives me will come to me

God the Father and God the Son will save forever those who believe in Jesus.

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### he who comes to me I will certainly not throw out

"I will keep everyone who comes to me"

#### John 6:38

##### him who sent me

"my Father, who sent me"

#### John 6:39

##### I would lose not one of all those

"I should keep all of them"

##### will raise them up

"will cause them to live again"

#### John 6:41

##### grumbled

talked unhappily

##### I am the bread

"I am the one who is like true bread"

#### John 6:42

##### Is not this Jesus son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know?

"This is just Jesus, the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know!

##### How then does he now say, 'I have come down from heaven'?

"He is lying when he says that he came from heaven!"

#### John 6:44

##### raise him up

"cause him to live again"

##### draws

This can mean 1) "pulls" or 2) "attracts."

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 6:45

##### It is written in the prophets

"The prophets wrote"

##### Everyone who has heard and learned from the Father comes to me

Those who truly learn from God the Father believe in Jesus, who is God the Son.

#### John 6:46

##### Not that anyone has seen the Father, except he who is from God—he has seen the Father

"I am not saying that anyone has seen the Father. Only he who is from God-he has seen the Father"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 6:47

##### he who believes has eternal life

God gives "eternal life" to those who trust in Jesus, the Son of God.

#### John 6:48

##### I am the bread of life

"Just like food that keeps you alive physically, I can give you spiritual life that lasts forever"

#### John 6:49

##### Your fathers

"Your forefathers" or "Your ancestors"

##### died

This refers to physical death.

#### John 6:50

##### This is the bread

"I am like the true bread"

##### not die

"live forever." Here the word "die" refers to spiritual death.

#### John 6:51

##### living bread

This means "the bread that causes people to live"

##### for the life of the world

"that will give life to all the people in the world"

#### John 6:52

##### How can this man give us his flesh to eat?

"There is no way that this man can give us his flesh to eat!"

#### John 6:53

##### eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood

Here, the phrases "eat the flesh" and "drink his blood" shows how trusting in Jesus, the Son of Man, is like receiving spiritual food and drink. However, the Jews did not understand this.

##### you will not have life in yourselves

"you will not receive eternal life"

#### John 6:54

##### raise him up

"cause him to live again"

##### at the last day

"on the day when God judges everyone"

#### John 6:55

##### my flesh is true food ... my blood is true drink

The phrases "true food" and "true drink" means Jesus gives life to those who trust in him. However, the Jews did not understand this.

#### John 6:56

##### remains in me, and I in him

"has a close relationship with me"

#### John 6:57

##### so he who eats me

The phrase "eats me" means to trust Jesus. However, the Jews did not understand this.

##### living Father

Possible meanings are 1) "the Father who gives life" or 2) "the Father who is alive."

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 6:58

##### This is the bread that has come down from heaven

"I am the bread that has come down from heaven"

##### He who eats this bread will live forever

"He who eats me, the bread, will live forever"

##### He who eats this bread

Here "eats this bread" means to trust Jesus. However, the Jews did not understand this.

##### the fathers

"the forefathers" or "the ancestors"

#### John 6:59

##### Jesus said these things in the synagogue ... in Capernaum

Here John gives background information about when this event happened.

#### John 6:60

##### who can hear it?

"no one can understand it!" or "it is too hard to understand!"

#### John 6:61

##### Does this offend you?

"Does this shock you?" or "Does this upset you?"

#### John 6:62

##### Then what if you should see the Son of Man going up to where he was before?

"Then you will not know what to think when you see me, the Son of Man, going up into heaven!"

#### John 6:63

##### profits

The word "profit" means to cause good things to happen.

##### The words that I have spoken to you

"What I have told you"

##### are spirit, and they are life

Possible meanings are 1) "are about the Spirit and eternal life" or 2) "are from the Spirit and give eternal life" or 3) "are about spiritual things and life."

#### John 6:64

##### For Jesus knew from the beginning who were the ones ... who it was who would betray him

Here John gives background information about what Jesus knew would happen.

#### John 6:65

##### no one can come to me unless it is granted to him by the Father

Whoever wants to believe must come to God through the Son. Only God the Father allows people to come to Jesus.

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### come to me

"follow me and receive eternal life"

#### John 6:66

##### no longer walked with him

They no longer wanted to hear what he had to say.

##### his disciples

Here "his disciples" refers to the general group of people who followed Jesus.

#### John 6:67

##### the twelve

"the twelve disciples"

#### John 6:68

##### Lord, to whom would we go?

"Lord, we could never follow anyone but you!"

#### John 6:70

##### Did not I choose you, the twelve, and one of you is a devil?

"I chose you all myself, yet one of you is a servant of Satan!"

## Chapter 7

#### John 7:1

##### After these things

These words tell the reader that the writer will begin talking about a new event. "After he finished speaking with the disciples"

##### the Jews were seeking to kill him

"the Jewish leaders were making plans to kill him"

#### John 7:2

##### Now the Jewish Festival of Shelters was near

"Now the time for the festival of the Jews was near" or "Now it was almost time for the Jewish festival of Shelters"

#### John 7:3

##### brothers

This refers to the actual younger brothers of Jesus, the sons of Mary and Joseph.

##### the works that you do

The word "works" refers to the miracles that Jesus had performed.

#### John 7:4

##### the world

"all people" or "everyone"

#### John 7:5

##### his brothers

"his younger brothers"

#### John 7:6

##### My time has not yet come

"It is not the right time for me to end my work"

##### your time is always ready

"any time is good for you"

#### John 7:7

##### The world cannot hate you

"The people in the world cannot hate you"

##### I testify about it that its works are evil

"I tell them that what they are doing is evil"

#### John 7:8

##### my time has not yet been fulfilled

"It is not the right time for me to go to Jerusalem"

#### John 7:10

##### he also went up

Jerusalem is at a higher elevation than Galilee where Jesus and his brothers were previously.

#### John 7:11

##### The Jews were looking for him

"The Jewish leaders were looking for Jesus"

#### John 7:12

##### he leads the crowds astray

"he deceives the people"

#### John 7:13

##### the Jews

"the Jewish leaders"

#### John 7:15

##### How does this man know so much?

"It is amazing how much he knows about the scriptures!"

#### John 7:16

##### but is of him who sent me

"but comes from God, the one who sent me"

#### John 7:18

##### but whoever seeks the glory of him who sent him, that person is true, and there is no unrighteousness in him

"when a person only seeks to honor the one who sent him, that person is speaking the truth. He does not lie"

#### John 7:19

##### Did not Moses give you the law?

"It was Moses who gave you the law"

##### keeps the law

"obeys the law"

##### Why do you seek to kill me?

"You break the Law yourselves and yet you want to kill me!"

#### John 7:20

##### You have a demon

"This shows that you are crazy, or maybe a demon is controlling you!"

##### Who seeks to kill you?

"No one is trying to kill you!"

#### John 7:21

##### one work

"one miracle" or "one sign"

##### you all marvel

"you all are shocked"

#### John 7:22

##### on the Sabbath you circumcise a man

"you circumcise a male baby on the on the Jewish Day of Rest. That is working too"

#### John 7:23

##### If a man receives circumcision on the Sabbath so that the law of Moses is not broken

"If you circumcise a male baby on the Sabbath so that you do not break the law of Moses"

##### why are you angry with me because I made a man completely healthy on the Sabbath?

"you should not be angry with me because I made a man completely well on the Jewish Day of Rest"

#### John 7:24

##### Do not judge according to appearance, but judge righteously

"Stop judging people according to what you see! Be more concerned with what is right according to God"

#### John 7:25

##### Is not this the one they seek to kill?

"This is Jesus whom they are seeking to kill!"

#### John 7:26

##### they say nothing to him

"they say nothing to oppose him"

##### It cannot be that the rulers indeed know that this is the Christ, can it?

"Maybe they have decided that he is truly the Messiah!"

#### John 7:28

##### cried out

"spoke in a loud voice"

##### in the temple

"in the temple courtyard"

##### You both know me and know where I come from

"You all know me and you think you know where I come from"

##### of myself

"on my own authority."

##### he who sent me is true

"God is the one who sent me and he is true"

#### John 7:30

##### his hour had not yet come

"it was not the right time to arrest him"

#### John 7:31

##### When the Christ comes, will he do more signs than what this one has done?

"When the Christ comes, surely he will not be able to do more signs than this man has done!"

##### signs

This refers to the miracles that prove that Jesus is the Christ.

#### John 7:33

##### I am still with you for a short amount of time

"I will remain with you for only a short period of time"

##### then I go to him who sent me

Here Jesus refers to God the Father, who sent him.

#### John 7:34

##### where I go, you will not be able to come

"you will not be able to come to the place where I am"

#### John 7:35

##### The Jews therefore said among themselves

"The Jewish leaders said among themselves"

##### the dispersion

This refers to the Jews that were spread all across the Greek world, outside of Palestine.

#### John 7:36

##### What is this word that he said

"What is he talking about when he said"

#### John 7:37

##### great day

It is "great" because it is the last, or most important, day of the festival.

##### If anyone is thirsty

"Anyone who desires the things of God like a thirsty man desires water"

##### let him come to me and drink

"let him come to me and quench his spiritual thirst"

#### John 7:38

##### He who believes in me, just as the scripture says

"As the scripture says about anyone who believes in me"

##### rivers of living water will flow

"spiritual life will flow like rivers of water"

##### living water

Possible meanings are 1) "water that gives life" or 2) "water that causes people to live."

##### from his belly

"from inside of him" or "from his heart"

#### John 7:39

##### But he

Here "he" refers to Jesus.

##### the Spirit had not yet been given

"the Spirit had not yet come to live in the believers"

##### because Jesus was not yet glorified

Here the word "glorified" refers to the time when God would honor the Son after his death and resurrection.

#### John 7:40

##### This is indeed the prophet

"This is indeed the prophet who is like Moses that we have been waiting for"

#### John 7:41

##### Does the Christ come from Galilee?

"The Christ cannot come from Galilee!"

#### John 7:42

##### Have the scriptures not said that the Christ will come from the descendants of David and from Bethlehem, the village where David was?

"The scriptures teach that Christ will come from the line of David and from Bethlehem, the village where David lived!"

##### Have the scriptures not said ... was?

"Did the prophets not write in the scriptures ... was?" or "The prophets wrote in the scriptures ... was."

#### John 7:43

##### So there arose a division in the crowds because of him

The crowds could not agree about who or what Jesus was.

#### John 7:44

##### but no one laid hands on him

"but no one grabbed him to arrest him"

#### John 7:45

##### the officers

"the temple guards"

#### John 7:46

##### Never has anyone spoken like this

"We have never heard anyone say such amazing things as this man!"

#### John 7:47

##### So the Pharisees answered them

"Because they said that, the Pharisees answered the officers"

##### Have you also been deceived?

"You have been deceived too!"

#### John 7:48

##### Have any of the rulers believed in him, or any of the Pharisees?

"None of the rulers or Pharisees have believed in him!"

#### John 7:49

##### the law

This is a reference to the law of the Pharisees and not the law of Moses.

##### But this crowd that does not know the law, they are cursed

"As for this crowd that does not know the law, God will cause them to perish!"

#### John 7:51

##### Does our law judge a man ... does?

"Do we judge a man ... does?" or "We do not judge a man ... does."

#### John 7:52

##### Are you also from Galilee?

"You must also be one of those inferior persons from Galilee!"

##### Search and see

"Search carefully and read what is written in the Scriptures"

##### no prophet comes from Galilee

This probably refers to the belief that Jesus was born in Galilee.

## Chapter 8

#### John 8:2

##### all the people

This is a general way of speaking. It means "many people."

#### John 8:3

##### General Information:

While some texts have 7:53-8:11, the best and earliest texts do not include them.

##### The scribes and the Pharisees brought

"Some scribes and Pharisees brought" or "Some men who taught the Jewish laws and some who were Pharisees brought"

##### a woman caught in the act of adultery

"a woman whom they had found committing adultery"

#### John 8:5

##### such people

"people like that" or "people who do that"

##### what do you say about her?

"so you tell us. What should we do about her?"

#### John 8:6

##### to trap him

This means to use a trick question.

##### so that they might have something to accuse him about

"so that they could accuse him of saying something wrong" or "so that they could accuse him of not obeying the law of Moses or the Roman law"

#### John 8:7

##### When they continued

The word "they" refers to the scribes and Pharisees.

##### The one among you who has no sin

"The one among you is has never sinned" or "If any one of you has never sinned"

##### let him

"let that person"

#### John 8:10

##### Woman, where are your accusers

When Jesus called her "woman," he was not trying to make her feel insignificant. If people in your language group would think that he was doing that, this can be translated without the word "Woman."

#### John 8:12

##### I am the light of the world

"I am the one who gives light to the world"

##### the world

"the people of the world"

##### he who follows me

"everyone who does what I teach" or "everyone who obeys me"

##### will not walk in the darkness

"will not live as if he were in the darkness of sin"

##### light of life

"truth that brings eternal life"

#### John 8:13

##### You testify about yourself

"You are just saying these things about yourself"

##### your testimony is not true

"you cannot be your own witness" or "what you say about yourself may not be true"

#### John 8:14

##### Even if I testify about myself

"Even if I say these things about myself"

#### John 8:15

##### the flesh

"human standards and the laws of men"

##### I judge no one

Possible meanings are 1) "I do not judge anyone yet" or 2) "I am not judging anyone now."

#### John 8:16

##### if I judge

Possible meanings are 1) "if I judge people" or 2) "whenever I judge people"

##### my judgment is true

Possible meanings are 1) "my judgment will be right" or 2) "my judgment is right."

##### I am not alone, but I am with the Father who sent me

Jesus, the Son of God, has authority because of his special relationship with his Father.

##### I am with the Father who sent me

"the Father who sent me also judges with me" or "the Father who sent me judges as I do"

##### the Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 8:17

##### Yes, and in your law

The word "Yes" shows that Jesus is adding to what he was saying before.

##### it is written

"Moses wrote"

##### the testimony of two men is true

"if two men say the same thing, then people know it is true"

#### John 8:18

##### I am he who testifies about myself

"I give evidence to you about myself"

##### the Father who sent me testifies about me

"my Father who sent me also brings evidence about me. So you should believe that what we tell you is true"

##### the Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 8:19

##### You know neither me nor my Father; if you had known me, you would have known my Father also

Jesus indicates that to know him is to also know the Father. Both Father and Son are God. "Father" and "Son" are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### John 8:20

##### his hour had not yet come

"it was not yet the right time for Jesus to die"

#### John 8:21

##### die in your sin

"die while you are still sinful" or "you will die while you are sinning"

##### you cannot come

"you are not able to come"

#### John 8:22

##### The Jews said

"The Jewish leaders said" or "The Jewish authorities said"

#### John 8:23

##### You are from below

"You were born in this world"

##### I am from above

"I came from heaven"

##### You are of this world

"You belong to this world"

##### I am not of this world

"I do not belong to this world"

#### John 8:24

##### you will die in your sins

"you will die without God's forgiving your sins"

##### that I AM

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is identifying himself as Yahweh, who identified himself to Moses as "I AM," or 2) Jesus expects the people to understand that he is referring to what he already has already said about himself: "I am from above."

#### John 8:26

##### these things I say to the world

"these things I say to all the people"

#### John 8:27

##### the Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 8:28

##### When you have lifted up

This refers to placing Jesus on the cross to kill him.

##### lifted up the Son of Man

Jesus used the title "Son of Man" to refer to himself. Alternate translation: "lifted me, the Son of Man, up"

##### I AM

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is identifying himself as Yahweh, who identified himself to Moses as "I AM," or 2) Jesus is saying, "I am the one I claim to be."

##### As the Father taught me, I speak these things

"I am only saying what my Father taught me to say."

#### John 8:29

##### He who sent me

The word "He" refers to God.

#### John 8:30

##### many believed in him

"many people trusted him"

#### John 8:31

##### remain in my word

"obey what I have said"

##### my disciples

"my followers"

#### John 8:32

##### the truth will set you free

"if you obey what is true about God, God will set you free"

#### John 8:33

##### how can you say, 'You will be set free'?

"We do not need to be set free!"

#### John 8:34

##### Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true.

##### is the slave of sin

"is like a slave to sin"

#### John 8:35

##### in the house forever

"as a permanent member of a family"

##### the son remains forever

"the son is a member of the family forever"

#### John 8:36

##### If I, the Son, set you free, you will be truly free

"if the Son sets you free, you will truly be able to refrain from sin"

#### John 8:37

##### my word has no place in you

"you do not accept my teachings" or "you do not allow my message to change your life"

#### John 8:38

##### I say what I have seen with my Father

"I am telling you about the things I saw when I was with my Father"

##### you also do what you heard from your father

"you also continue doing what your father has told you to do"

#### John 8:39

##### father

forefather

#### John 8:40

##### Abraham did not do this

"Abraham never tried to kill anyone who told him the true revelation from God"

#### John 8:41

##### You do the works of your father

"No! You are doing the things that your real father did"

##### We were not born in sexual immorality

"We do not know about you, but we are not illegitimate children" or "We were all born from proper marriages"

##### we have one Father: God

Here the Jewish leaders claim God as their spiritual Father. This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 8:42

##### love

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves.

#### John 8:43

##### Why do you not understand my words?

"I will tell you why you do not understand what I say!"

##### It is because you cannot hear my words

"It is because you will not accept my teachings.

#### John 8:44

##### You are of your father, the devil

"You belong to your father, Satan"

##### the father of lies

"he is the one who created all lies in the beginning"

#### John 8:46

##### Which one of you convicts me of sin?

"None of you can show that I have ever sinned!"

##### If I speak the truth

"If I say things that are true"

##### why do you not believe me?

"you have no reason for not believing in me!"

#### John 8:47

##### the words of God

"the message of God" or "the truth that comes from God"

#### John 8:48

##### The Jews

"The Jewish leaders"

##### Do we not truly say that you are a Samaritan and have a demon?

"We are certainly right in saying that you are a Samaritan and that a demon lives in you!"

#### John 8:51

##### keeps my word

"obeys my teachings" or "does what I say"

##### see death

"die spiritually"

#### John 8:52

##### Jews

"Jewish leaders"

##### If anyone keeps my word

"If anyone obeys my teaching"

##### taste death

"die"

#### John 8:53

##### You are not greater than our father Abraham who died, are you?

"You are certainly not greater than our father Abraham who indeed died!"

##### father

forefather

##### Who do you make yourself out to be?

"You should not think that you are so important!"

#### John 8:54

##### it is my Father who glorifies me—about whom you say that he is your God

"it is my Father who honors me, and you say that he is your God"

#### John 8:55

##### keep his word

"I obey what he says to do"

#### John 8:56

##### my day

"what I would do during my life"

##### he saw it and was glad

"he foresaw my coming through God's revelation and he rejoiced"

#### John 8:57

##### The Jews said to him

"The Jewish leaders said to him"

##### You are not yet fifty years old, and you have seen Abraham?

"You are less than fifty years old. You could not have seen Abraham!"

#### John 8:58

##### I AM

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is identifying himself as Yahweh, who identified himself to Moses as "I AM," or 2) Jesus is saying, "before Abraham existed, I existed."

#### John 8:59

##### Then they picked up stones to throw at him

"Then they picked up stones to kill him because he claimed to be equal with God"

## Chapter 9

#### John 9:1

##### as Jesus passed by

"as Jesus and his disciples passed by"

#### John 9:2

##### who sinned, this man or his parents, so that he was born blind?

"Teacher, we know that sin causes a person to be blind. Whose sin caused this man to be born blind? Did this man himself sin, or was it his parents who sinned?"

#### John 9:5

##### in the world

"living among the people of this world"

##### the light of the world

"the one who shows what is true, just as light allows people to see what is in the darkness"

#### John 9:6

##### made mud with the saliva

"and used his fingers to mix the dirt and saliva to make mud"

#### John 9:7

##### which is translated "Sent"

"which means 'Sent'"

#### John 9:8

##### Is not this the man that used to sit and beg?

"This man is the one who used to sit and beg!"

#### John 9:14

##### Sabbath day

"Jewish Day of Rest"

#### John 9:16

##### he does not keep the Sabbath

This means Jesus does not obey the law about doing no work on the Jewish Day of Rest.

##### How can a man who is a sinner do such signs?

"A sinner can not do such signs!"

##### signs

This is another word for miracles. "Signs" give evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

#### John 9:18

##### Now the Jews still did not believe

"Now the Jewish leaders still did not believe"

#### John 9:22

##### they were afraid of the Jews

"they were afraid of what the Jewish leaders might do to them"

##### would confess him to be the Christ

"would say that Jesus is the Christ"

##### he would be thrown out of the synagogue

"he would not be allowed to go into the synagogue" or "he would no longer belong to the synagogue"

#### John 9:24

##### Give glory to God

"In the presence of God, tell the truth" or "Speak the truth before God"

##### this man

This refers to Jesus.

#### John 9:25

##### that man

This refers to the man who had been blind.

#### John 9:27

##### Why do you want to hear it again?

"I am surprised that you want to hear again what happened to me!"

##### You do not want to become his disciples too, do you?

"It sounds like you also want to become his disciples!"

#### John 9:28

##### You are his disciple

"You are following Jesus!"

##### but we are disciples of Moses

"but we are following Moses"

#### John 9:29

##### We know that God has spoken to Moses

"We are sure that God has spoken to Moses"

##### we do not know where this one is from

"we do not know where he comes from or where he gets his authority"

#### John 9:30

##### that you do not know where he is from

"that you do not know where he gets his authority"

#### John 9:31

##### does not listen to sinners ... he listens to him

"does not answer the prayers of sinners ... God answers his prayers"

#### John 9:32

##### Since the world began

"Since the beginning of time" or "As far back as anyone can remember"

##### it has never been heard that anyone opened

"no one has ever heard of anyone who healed a man who was blind from birth"

#### John 9:33

##### If this man were not from God, he could do nothing

"Only a man from God could do something like that"

#### John 9:34

##### You were completely born in sins, and you are teaching us?

"You were born as a result of your parents' sins. You are not qualified to teach us!"

##### they threw him out

"they threw him out of the synagogue"

#### John 9:35

##### believe in the Son of Man

This means to "believe in Jesus," to believe that he is the Son of God, to trust him as Savior, and live in a way that honors him.

##### the Son of Man

Here the reader needs to understand that Jesus was speaking as if "the Son of Man" were another person. The man who had been born blind did not realize that Jesus was speaking of himself when he spoke of "the Son of Man." You should translate so that the man does not learn that Jesus is the Son of Man until verse 37.

#### John 9:39

##### came into this world

"came to live among the people of this world"

##### so that those who do not see may see

"so that those who do not see spiritually may see spiritually"

##### so that those who see

"so that those who think that they see spiritually"

##### may become blind

"may never see spiritually"

#### John 9:40

##### and asked him, "Are we also blind?"

"and said to him, 'Are you saying that we are blind?'" or "and said to him, 'You seem to be saying that we, too, are blind.'"

#### John 9:41

##### If you were blind, you would have no sin

"If you truly were spiritually blind, you would not be guilty of your sin"

##### but now you say, 'We see,' so your sin remains

"but since you think that you understand spiritual truth, you remain guilty of your sin"

## Chapter 10

#### John 10:1

##### sheep pen

This is a fenced area where a shepherd keeps his sheep.

#### John 10:3

##### The gatekeeper opens for him

"The gatekeeper opens the gate for the shepherd"

##### The gatekeeper

This is a hired man who watches the gate of the sheep pen at night while the shepherd is away.

##### The sheep hear his voice

"The sheep hear the shepherd's voice"

#### John 10:4

##### he goes ahead of them

"he walks in front of them"

##### for they know his voice

"because they recognize his voice"

#### John 10:6

##### they did not understand

Possible meanings: 1) "the disciples did not understand" or 2) "the crowd did not understand."

##### this parable

The "sheep" represent those who follow Jesus, and the "strangers" are the Jewish leaders, including the Pharisees, who try to deceive the people.

#### John 10:7

##### I am the gate of the sheep

"I am like the gate that the sheep use to enter into the sheepfold"

#### John 10:8

##### Everyone who came before me

"All of the teachers who came without my authority"

##### a thief and a robber

Jesus calls those teachers "a thief and a robber" because their teachings were false, and they were trying to lead God's people while not understanding the truth. As a result, they deceived the people.

#### John 10:9

##### I am the gate

"I myself am like that gate"

##### pasture

The word "pasture" means a grassy area where sheep eat.

#### John 10:10

##### does not come except to steal and kill and destroy

"comes only to steal, kill, and destroy the sheep"

##### so that they will have life

"so that they will really live, lacking nothing"

#### John 10:11

##### I am the good shepherd

"I am like a good shepherd"

##### lays down his life

"dies"

#### John 10:12

##### The hired servant

"The one who is like a hired servant"

##### abandons the sheep

Like a hired servant who abandons the sheep, Jesus says that the Jewish leaders and teachers do not care for God's people.

#### John 10:13

##### does not care for the sheep

Jesus says that the Jewish leaders and teachers are like a hired servant who abandons the sheep, and they do not care for God's people.

#### John 10:14

##### I am the good shepherd

"I am like a good shepherd"

#### John 10:15

##### The Father knows me, and I know the Father

God the Father and God the Son know each other unlike anyone else knows them. This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### I lay down my life for the sheep

"I die for the sheep"

#### John 10:16

##### I have other sheep

Here "other sheep" refers to followers of Jesus who are not Jews.

##### one flock and one shepherd

All of Jesus's followers, Jews and non-Jews, will be like one flock of sheep. He will be like a shepherd who cares for all of them.

#### John 10:17

##### This is why the Father loves me: I lay down my life

God's eternal plan was for God the Son to give his life to pay for the sins of humanity. Jesus's death on the cross reveals the intense love of the Son for the Father and of the Father for the Son.

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### loves

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

##### I lay down my life so that I may take it again

"I allow myself to die in order that I may bring myself back to life"

#### John 10:18

##### I lay it down of myself

"I myself lay it down"

##### I have received this command from my Father

"This is what my Father has commanded me to do." The word "Father" is an important title for God.

#### John 10:20

##### Why do you listen to him?

"Do not listen to him!"

#### John 10:21

##### Can a demon open the eyes of the blind?

"Certainly a demon cannot cause a blind man to see!" or "Certainly a demon cannot give sight to blind people!"

#### John 10:22

##### It was winter

Winter is the coldest time of the year. You may use your language's term for the coldest season if your reader understands that in Israel this was in December, not in June.

##### Festival of the Dedication

This is an eight-day winter holiday Jews use to remember a miracle where God made a small amount of oil remain lit in a lampstand for eight days. They lit the lampstand to dedicate the Jewish temple to God. To dedicate something is to promise to use it for a special purpose.

#### John 10:23

##### Jesus was walking in the temple

"Jesus was walking in the temple courtyard"

##### porch

This is a structure attached to the entrance of a building; it has a roof and it may or may not have walls.

#### John 10:24

##### Then the Jews surrounded him

"Then the Jewish leaders surrounded him"

##### hold us doubting

"keep us wondering" or "keep us from knowing for sure"

#### John 10:25

##### in the name of my Father

"through my Father's power" or "with my Father's power"

##### these testify concerning me

"these offer proof concerning me"

#### John 10:26

##### not my sheep

"not my followers" or "not my disciples"

#### John 10:27

##### My sheep hear my voice

"Just as sheep obey the voice of their true shepherd, my followers heed my voice"

#### John 10:28

##### no one will snatch them out of my hand

"no one will steal them away from me" or "they will remain secure forever in my care"

#### John 10:29

##### My Father, who has given them to me

The word "Father" is an important title for God.

##### snatch them out of the hand of the Father

"steal them from my Father"

#### John 10:30

##### I and the Father are one

"I and the Father are completely united" or "I and the Father are exactly alike"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### John 10:31

##### Then the Jews took up stones again

"Then the Jewish leaders started picking up stones again"

#### John 10:32

##### Jesus answered them, "I have shown you many good works from the Father

Jesus performed the miracles by the power of God. The word "Father" is an important title for God.

##### For which of those works are you stoning me?

This question uses irony. Jesus knows the Jewish leaders do not want to stone him because he has done good works.

#### John 10:33

##### The Jews answered him

"The Jewish opponents replied" or "The Jewish leaders answered him"

##### making yourself God

"claiming to be God"

#### John 10:34

##### Is it not written in your law, 'I said, "You are gods"'?

"You should already know that it is written in your law, 'I said, "You are gods."'"

##### You are gods

Here Jesus quotes a scripture where God calls his followers "gods," perhaps because he has chosen them to represent him on earth.

#### John 10:35

##### the word of God came

"God spoke his message"

##### the scripture cannot be broken

Possible meanings are 1) "no one can change the scripture" or 2) "the scripture will always be true."

#### John 10:36

##### do you say to him whom the Father set apart and sent into the world, 'You are blaspheming,' because I said, 'I am the Son of God'?

"you should not say to the very one whom the Father set apart to send into the world, 'You are blaspheming,' when I say that I am the Son of God!"

##### You are blaspheming

"You are insulting God." Jesus's opponents understood that when said that he is the Son of God, he was implying that he is equal with God.

##### Father ... Son of God

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### John 10:37

##### believe me

Here the word "believe" means to accept or trust what Jesus said is true.

#### John 10:38

##### believe in the works

Here "believe in" is to acknowledge that the works Jesus does are from the Father.

##### the Father is in me and that I am in the Father

"my Father and I are completely joined together as one"

#### John 10:39

##### went away out of their hand

"got away from them again"

#### John 10:40

##### beyond the Jordan

"to the east side of the Jordan River"

##### he stayed there

"Jesus stayed there for several days"

#### John 10:41

##### John indeed did no signs, but all the things that John has said about this man are true

"It is true that John did no signs, but he certainly did speak the truth about this man, who does signs."

##### signs

These are miracles that prove that something is true or that give someone credibility.

#### John 10:42

##### believed in

Here "believed in" means accepted or trusted what Jesus said was true.

## Chapter 20

#### John 20:1

##### first day of the week

"Sunday"

##### she saw the stone rolled away

"she saw that someone had rolled away the stone"

#### John 20:2

##### disciple whom Jesus loved

This phrase appears to be the way that John refers to himself throughout his book. Here the word "love" refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

##### They took away

The author uses the word "they" here to show that Mary Magdalene did not know who took the Lord away. She was probably thinking of the Jews or Romans, but it would be best to translate using your language's way of leaving the actor or actors unknown.

##### the Lord ... laid him

"the Lord's dead body ... laid it"

#### John 20:3

##### the other disciple

John is referring to himself here as "the other disciple," rather than including his name.

#### John 20:5

##### linen cloths

These were the burial cloths that people had used to wrap the body of Jesus.

#### John 20:7

##### cloth that had been on his head

"cloth that someone had used to cover Jesus's face"

##### but was folded up in a place by itself

"but someone had folded it and put it aside, separate from the linen cloths"

#### John 20:8

##### he saw and believed

"he saw these things and now believed that Jesus had risen from the dead"

#### John 20:9

##### they still did not know the scripture

These words refer to the disciples. Possible meanings are 1) they did not know that that scripture exists or 2) they did not understand that that scripture said that Jesus would come alive again.

##### rise

become alive again

##### the dead

All those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld.

#### John 20:10

##### went back home again

"went back to where they were staying in Jerusalem"

#### John 20:12

##### She saw two angels in white

"She saw two angels dressed in white clothing"

#### John 20:13

##### Because they took away my Lord, and I do not know where they have put him

"Because they took away the body of my Lord, and I do not know where they have put it"

#### John 20:15

##### if you have taken him away, tell me where you have put him, and I will take him away

"if you have taken his dead body away, tell me where you have put it, and I will take it away"

#### John 20:16

##### Rabboni

The word "Rabboni" means "teacher" in Aramaic.

##### Aramaic

This was the language that the Jews in Judea spoke among themselves. Some translations say "Hebrew," following the form of the Greek word.

#### John 20:17

##### brothers

Jesus used the word "brothers" to refer to his disciples.

##### I will go up to my Father and your Father, and my God and your God

"I am about to return to heaven to be with my Father and your Father, to the one who is my God and your God"

#### John 20:18

##### Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples

"Mary Magdalene went to where the disciples were and told them"

#### John 20:19

##### that day, the first day of the week

This refers to Sunday.

##### the doors being locked where the disciples were

"the disciples had locked the doors where they were"

##### for fear of the Jews

"because they were afraid that the Jewish leaders might arrest them"

##### Peace to you

This is a common greeting that means "May God give you peace" .

#### John 20:23

##### they are forgiven

"God will forgive them"

##### whoever's sins you keep back

"If you do not forgive another's sins"

##### they are kept back

"God will not forgive them"

#### John 20:24

##### Didymus

This is a male name that means "twin."

#### John 20:25

##### disciples later said to him

The word "him" refers to Thomas.

##### Unless I see ... his side, I will not believe

"I will believe only if I see ... his side"

##### in his hands ... into his side

The word "his" refers to Jesus.

#### John 20:26

##### his disciples

The word "his" refers to Jesus.

##### while the doors were closed

"when they had locked the doors"

#### John 20:27

##### Do not be unbelieving, but believe

"This is what is most important for you to do: you must believe"

##### believe

"put your trust in me"

#### John 20:29

##### you have believed

"you have believed that I am alive"

##### Blessed are those

This means "God gives great happiness to those."

##### who have not seen

"who have not seen me alive"

#### John 20:30

##### signs

The word "signs" refers to miracles that show that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

##### signs that have not been written in this book

"signs that the author did not write about in this book"

#### John 20:31

##### but these have been written

"but the author wrote about these signs"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

##### life in his name

"you may have life because of Jesus"

##### life

This refers to spiritual life.

## Chapter 1

#### Acts 1:1

##### The former account I wrote

The "former account" is the Gospel of Luke.

##### Theophilus

Luke wrote this book to a man named Theophilus. Some translations follow their own culture's way of addressing a letter and write "Dear Theophilus" at the beginning of the sentence. Theophilus means "friend of God"

#### Acts 1:2

##### until the day that he was taken up

"until the day on which God took him up to heaven" or "until the day that he ascended into heaven"

#### Acts 1:3

##### After his suffering

This refers to Jesus's suffering and death on the cross.

##### he presented himself alive to them

Jesus appeared to his apostles and to many other disciples.

#### Acts 1:4

##### the promise of the Father, about which he said

"the Holy Spirit, whom the Father promised to send, about whom Jesus said"

#### Acts 1:5

##### John indeed baptized with water ... baptized with the Holy Spirit

Jesus contrasts how John baptized people in water with how God would baptize believers in the Holy Spirit.

##### you will be baptized

"God will baptize you"

#### Acts 1:6

##### is this the time you will restore the kingdom to Israel

"will you now make Israel a great kingdom again"

#### Acts 1:7

##### the times or the seasons

"the exact time"

#### Acts 1:8

##### you will receive power ... and you will be my witnesses

"God will empower you ... to be my witnesses"

##### to the ends of the earth

Possible meanings are 1) "all over the world" or 2) "to the places on earth that are farthest away"

#### Acts 1:9

##### as they were looking up

"as they were looking up at the sky"

##### he was raised up

"he rose up into the sky" or "God raised him up into the sky"

##### a cloud hid him from their eyes

"a cloud blocked their view so that they could no longer see him"

#### Acts 1:11

##### will return in the same manner

Jesus ascended into the sky, through the clouds, and the clouds hid him. He will return from the sky, through (or on) the clouds, and people will be able to see him.

#### Acts 1:12

##### Then they returned

"The apostles returned"

##### a Sabbath day's journey

"about one kilometer away"

#### Acts 1:13

##### the upper chamber

"the room on the upper level of the house"

#### Acts 1:14

##### They all were devoted ... to prayer

They all spent much time ... praying

##### with one purpose

The phrase "with one purpose" translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 1:15

##### In those days

"During that time"

##### names

"people"

##### in the midst of the brothers

Here the word "brothers" refers to fellow believers and includes both men and women.

#### Acts 1:16

##### it was necessary that the scripture should be fulfilled

"the things that we read about in scripture had to take place"

##### by the mouth of David

"through the words of David"

#### Acts 1:18

##### Now this man

The words "this man" refers to Judas Iscariot.

##### the earnings he received for his wickedness

The words "his wickedness" refer to Judas Iscariot's betraying Jesus to the people who killed him.

##### there he fell headfirst, and his body burst open, and all his intestines poured out

This suggests that Judas fell from a high place, rather than just falling down. The fall was severe enough to cause his body to burst open. Other passages of scripture mention that he hanged himself.

#### Acts 1:19

##### Field of Blood

When the people living in Jerusalem heard of the way in which Judas died, they renamed the field.

#### Acts 1:20

##### Let his field be made desolate

Possible meanings are 1) that the word "field" refers to the field where Judas died or 2) that the word "field" refers to Judas's dwelling place and is a metaphor for his family line.

##### be made desolate

"become empty"

#### Acts 1:21

##### It is necessary, therefore

Based on the scriptures that he quoted and on what Judas had done, Peter tells the group what they must do.

##### the Lord Jesus went in and out among us

"the Lord Jesus lived among us"

#### Acts 1:22

##### beginning from the baptism of John

Possible meanings: 1) "beginning from when John baptized Jesus" or 2) "beginning from when John baptized people"

##### to the day that he was taken up from us

"until the day when Jesus left us and rose up to heaven" or "until the day that God took him up from us"

##### become a witness with us of his resurrection

"must begin to testify with us about his resurrection"

#### Acts 1:23

##### They put forward two men

"They proposed two men who fulfilled the requirements that Peter listed"

##### Joseph called Barsabbas, who was also called Justus

"Joseph, whom people also called Barsabbas and Justus"

#### Acts 1:24

##### They prayed and said

"The believers prayed together and one of the apostles said"

##### You, Lord, know the hearts of all people

"You, Lord, know the thoughts and motives of everyone"

#### Acts 1:25

##### to take the place in this ministry and apostleship

"to take Judas's place in this apostolic ministry" or "to take Judas's place in serving as an apostle"

##### from which Judas turned away

"which Judas stopped fulfilling"

##### to go to his own place

"to go where he belongs"

#### Acts 1:26

##### They cast lots for them

The apostles cast lots to decide between Joseph and Matthias.

##### the lot fell to Matthias

The lot indicated that Matthias was the one to replace Judas.

##### he was numbered with the eleven apostles

"the believers considered him to be an apostle with the other eleven"

## Chapter 2

#### Acts 2:2

##### a sound like the rush of a violent wind came from heaven

"a sound came from heaven" or 2) "heaven" refers to the sky. Alternate translation: "a sound came from the sky"

#### Acts 2:3

##### There appeared to them tongues like fire

Possible meanings are 1) tongues that looked like they were made of fire or 2) small flames of fire that looked like tongues.

##### that were distributed, and they sat upon each one of them

This means that the "tongues like fire" spread out so that there was one on each person.

#### Acts 2:4

##### They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and

"The Holy Spirit filled all of those who were there and they"

##### speak in other tongues

They were speaking in languages that they did not already know.

##### as the Spirit gave them the ability

The Holy Spirit gave them the ability to speak; they were dependent on the Spirit to speak in different languages.

#### Acts 2:5

##### godly men

Here "godly men" refers to people who were devout in their worship of God and tried to obey all of the Jewish laws.

##### every nation under heaven

"many different nations"

#### Acts 2:6

##### When this sound was heard

"When they heard this sound"

##### the multitude

"the large crowd of people"

#### Acts 2:7

##### Really, are not all these who are speaking Galileans?

"All of these Galileans could not possibly know our languages!"

#### Acts 2:8

##### Why is it that we are hearing them, each in our own language in which we were born?

Possible meanings are 1) this is a rhetorical question that expresses how amazed they were or 2) this is a real question for which the people wanted an answer.

#### Acts 2:9

##### Parthians ... Medes ... Elamites

These are names of people groups.

##### Mesopotamia ... Judea ... Cappadocia ... Pontus ... Asia

These are names of large areas of land.

#### Acts 2:10

##### Phrygia ... Pamphylia ... Egypt ... Libya ... Cyrene

These are names of large areas of land.

#### Acts 2:11

##### Cretans ... Arabians

These are names of people groups.

##### proselytes

converts to the Jewish religion

#### Acts 2:12

##### amazed and perplexed

"surprised and confused"

#### Acts 2:13

##### They are full of new wine

"They are drunk"

##### new wine

This refers to wine that is in the process of fermentation.

#### Acts 2:14

##### stood with the eleven

All the apostles stood up in support of Peter's statement.

##### declared to them

Made a formal, important speech to them.

##### let this be known to you

"know this" or "let me explain this to you"

##### pay attention to my words

"listen carefully to what I am saying"

#### Acts 2:15

##### it is only the third hour of the day

"It is only nine o'clock in the morning." Peter expected his audience to know that people do not get drunk that early in the day.

#### Acts 2:16

##### this is what was spoken through the prophet Joel

"this is what God told the prophet Joel to write" or "this is that which the prophet Joel spoke"

#### Acts 2:17

##### It will be

"This is what will happen" or "This is what I will do"

##### I will pour out my Spirit on all flesh

"I will give my Spirit abundantly to all people"

#### Acts 2:18

##### my servants and my female servants

These words emphasize that God will pour out his Spirit on all of his servants, both men and women.

##### I will pour out my Spirit

"I will give my Spirit abundantly to all people"

#### Acts 2:20

##### The sun will be turned to darkness

"The sun will become dark"

##### the moon to blood

"the moon will be turned to blood" or "the moon will appear to be red"

##### the great and remarkable day

"the very great day"

#### Acts 2:21

##### everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved

"the Lord will save everyone who calls on him"

#### Acts 2:22

##### accredited to you by God with the mighty deeds and wonders and signs

This means that God proved that he had appointed Jesus for his mission, and proved who he was by his many miracles.

#### Acts 2:23

##### by God's predetermined plan and foreknowledge

"because God planned out and knew beforehand everything that would happen")

##### This man was handed over

Possible meanings: 1) "you handed Jesus over into the hands of his enemies" or 2) "Judas betrayed Jesus to you."

##### by the hand of lawless men

"through the actions of lawless men" or "by what lawless men did"

##### lawless men

Possible meanings are 1) the unbelieving Jews who accused Jesus of crimes or 2) the Roman soldiers who performed the execution of Jesus.

#### Acts 2:24

##### But God raised him up

"But God caused him to live again"

##### freeing him from the agonies of death

"ending the pains of death"

##### for him to be held by it

"for him to remain dead"

#### Acts 2:25

##### For David says about him, 'I saw

"For David spoke these words as if he were the Christ: 'I saw"

##### before my face

"in my presence" or "with me"

##### beside my right hand

"right beside me" or "with me to help me"

##### I should not be moved

"people will not be able to cause me trouble" or "nothing will trouble me"

#### Acts 2:26

##### my heart was glad and my tongue rejoiced

"I was glad and rejoiced"

##### my flesh will live in hope

"I will live in hope"

##### will live in hope

"will live with confidence in God" or "will confidently wait for God to rescue me"

#### Acts 2:27

##### neither will you allow your Holy One to see decay

"neither will you allow me, your Holy One, to see decay"

##### to see decay

The word "decay" refers to the decomposition of his body after death. Alternate translation: "to decay"

#### Acts 2:28

##### full of gladness with your face

"very glad when I see you" or "very glad when I am in your presence"

#### Acts 2:29

##### Brothers, it

"My fellow Jews, it"

##### he both died and was buried

"he died and people buried him"

#### Acts 2:30

##### he would set one of the fruit of his loins on his throne

"God would appoint one of David's descendants to be king in David's place"

#### Acts 2:31

##### he was neither abandoned to Hades, nor did his flesh see decay

"Neither did God abandon him to Hades nor did his flesh see decay" or "God did not abandon him to Hades, and his flesh did not see decay"

#### Acts 2:32

##### This Jesus—God raised him up

"It is this Jesus whom God raised up" or "God caused him to live again"

#### Acts 2:33

##### having been exalted to the right hand of God

"because God has exalted Jesus up to his right hand"

##### right hand of God

"Christ is in the position of God"

##### he has poured out what

"he has caused to happen these things that"

#### Acts 2:34

##### Sit at my right hand

"Sit in the place of honor beside me"

#### Acts 2:35

##### until I make your enemies the footstool for your feet

"until I make you victorious over all of your enemies"

#### Acts 2:36

##### all the house of Israel

"every Israelite"

#### Acts 2:37

##### they were pierced in their hearts, and said

"Peter's words deeply troubled their hearts, and they said"

#### Acts 2:38

##### be baptized

"allow us to baptize you"

##### in the name of Jesus Christ

"by the authority of Jesus Christ"

#### Acts 2:39

##### all who are far off

This means either 1) "all people who live far away" or 2) "all people who are far from God."

#### Acts 2:40

##### he testified and exhorted them

"he strongly urged them"

##### exhorted

"pleaded with"

##### Be saved from this perverse generation

"Be saved from the punishment that these wicked people will suffer"

##### Be saved

"Save yourselves" or "Flee" or "Escape"

#### Acts 2:41

##### they received his word

"they believed what Peter said"

##### were baptized

"people baptized them"

##### there were added in that day about three thousand souls

"about three thousand people joined the believers on that day"

#### Acts 2:42

##### the breaking of bread

"eating the Lord's Supper together"

#### Acts 2:43

##### Fear came upon every soul

"Each person felt a deep respect and awe for God"

##### many wonders and signs were done through the apostles

Possible meanings are 1) "the apostles performed many wonders and signs" or 2) "God performed many wonders and signs through the apostles"

#### Acts 2:44

##### All who believed were together

Possible meanings are 1) "All of them believed the same thing" or 2) "All who believed were together in the same place."

##### had all things in common

"shared their belongings with one another"

#### Acts 2:45

##### property and possessions

"land and things they owned"

##### distributed them to all

"distributed the proceeds to all"

##### according to the needs anyone had

They distributed the proceeds that they earned from selling their property and possessions to any believer who had a need.

#### Acts 2:46

##### they devoted themselves with one purpose in the temple

"they devoted themselves to the apostles' teaching with one purpose in the temple"

##### They also broke bread in homes

"They also ate meals together in their homes"

#### Acts 2:47

##### praising God and having favor with all the people

"praising God. All the people approved of them"

##### those who were being saved

"those whom the Lord saved"

## Chapter 3

#### Acts 3:1

##### Peter and John go into the temple

They did not go into the temple building where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: "to the temple courtyard" or "into the temple area"

#### Acts 3:2

##### a man who was lame from his mother's womb was being carried

"people were carrying a man who was unable to walk ever since he was born"

##### the temple gate called Beautiful

This was one of the gates in the high, strong wall that surrounded the temple. People sometimes gathered near the gate.

#### Acts 3:4

##### Peter, fastening his eyes upon him, with John, said

Both Peter and John looked at the man, but only Peter spoke.

##### fastening his eyes upon him

Possible meanings are 1) "looking directly at him" or 2) "looking intently at him"

#### Acts 3:5

##### The lame man looked at them

"The lame man paid close attention to them"

#### Acts 3:6

##### Silver and gold I do not have

"I do not own any silver or gold"

##### what I do have

It is understood that Peter has the ability to heal the man.

##### In the name of Jesus Christ

"With the authority of Jesus Christ"

#### Acts 3:7

##### Peter raised him up

"Peter caused him to stand"

#### Acts 3:8

##### he entered ... into the temple

"he entered ... the temple area" or "he entered ... into the temple courtyard"

#### Acts 3:10

##### noticed that it was the man

"realized that it was the man" or "recognized him as the man"

##### they were filled with wonder and amazement

"they were extremely amazed"

#### Acts 3:11

##### the porch that is called Solomon's

"Solomon's Porch." This was a covered walkway that consisted of rows of pillars that supported a roof, and which people named after king Solomon. It was in the temple courtyard.

##### greatly marveling

"extremely surprised"

#### Acts 3:12

##### When Peter saw this

Here the word "this" refers to the amazement of the people.

##### You Israelite men

"Fellow Israelites." Peter was addressing the crowd.

##### why do you marvel?

"you should not be surprised."

##### Why do you fix your eyes on us, as if we made him walk by our own power or godliness?

"Do not look at us. We did not make him walk by our own power or godliness."

#### Acts 3:13

##### rejected before the face of Pilate

"rejected in Pilate's presence"

##### when he had decided to release him

"when Pilate had decided to release Jesus"

#### Acts 3:14

##### for a murderer to be given to you

"for Pilate to release a murderer to you"

#### Acts 3:15

##### the Founder of life

This refers to Jesus. Possible meanings are 1) "the one who gives people eternal life" or 2) "the ruler of life" or 3) "the one who leads people to life"

#### Acts 3:16

##### On the basis of faith in his name

"Because of faith in his name" or 2) this is how the man was made strong.

##### On the basis of faith in his name

"Because we believed in Jesus's name"

##### his name

"his name" refers to either Jesus or for Jesus's power.

##### made this man ... strong

"made this man ... well"

##### The faith that is through Jesus

"The faith that comes from Jesus" or 2) this is faith in Jesus.

#### Acts 3:17

##### you acted in ignorance

Possible meanings are 1) that the people did not know that Jesus was the Messiah or 2) that the people did not understand the significance of what they were doing.

#### Acts 3:18

##### God foretold by the mouth of all the prophets

"God foretold by telling all of the prophets what to speak"

##### God foretold

"God spoke about ahead of time" or "God told about before they happened"

#### Acts 3:19

##### and turn

"and start obeying the Lord"

##### so that your sins may be blotted out

"so that God will forgive you for sinning against him"

#### Acts 3:20

##### times of refreshing

Possible meanings are 1) "times when God will strengthen your spirits" or 2) "times when God will revive you"

##### from the presence of the Lord

"from the Lord"

##### that he may send the Christ

"that he may again send the Christ." This refers to Christ's coming again.

##### who has been appointed for you

"whom he has appointed for you"

#### Acts 3:21

##### He is the One heaven must receive

"He is the One heaven must welcome."

##### heaven must receive until

This means that it is necessary for Jesus to remain in heaven because that is what God has planned.

##### until the time of the restoration of all things

Possible meanings are 1) "until the time when God will restore all things" or 2) "until the time when God will fulfill everything that he foretold."

##### about which God spoke from ancient times by the mouth of his holy prophets

"about which things God spoke long ago by telling his holy prophets to speak about them"

#### Acts 3:22

##### will raise up a prophet like me from among your brothers

"will cause one of your brothers to become a true prophet, and everyone will know about him"

##### your brothers

"your nation"

#### Acts 3:23

##### that prophet will be completely destroyed

"that prophet, God will completely destroy"

#### Acts 3:24

##### Yes, and all the prophets

"In fact, all the prophets."

##### from Samuel and those who came after him

"beginning with Samuel and continuing with the prophets who lived after he did"

##### these days

"these times" or "the things that are happening now"

#### Acts 3:25

##### You are the sons of the prophets and of the covenant

"You are the heirs of the prophets and heirs of the covenant"

##### In your seed

"Because of your offspring"

##### all the families of the earth will be blessed

"I will bless all the people groups in the world"

#### Acts 3:26

##### After God raised up his servant

"After God caused Jesus to become his servant and made him famous"

##### his servant

This refers to the Messiah, Jesus.

##### turning every one of you from your wickedness

"causing every one of you to stop doing wicked things" or "causing every one of you to repent from your wickedness"

## Chapter 4

#### Acts 4:1

##### came upon them

"approached them" or "came to them"

#### Acts 4:2

##### They were deeply troubled

"They were very angry." The Sadducees, in particular, would have been angry about what Peter and John were saying because they did not believe in resurrection.

##### proclaiming in Jesus the resurrection from the dead

Peter and John were saying that God would raise people from the dead in the same way as he had raised Jesus from among the dead. Translate this in a way that allows "the resurrection" to refer to both Jesus's resurrection and the general resurrection of other people.

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

#### Acts 4:3

##### They laid hands on them

"The priests, the captain of the temple, and the Sadducees arrested Peter and John"

#### Acts 4:4

##### the number of the men who believed

This refers only to men and does not include how many women or children believed.

##### was about five thousand

"grew to about five thousand"

#### Acts 4:5

##### It came about ... that

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### their rulers, elders, and scribes

This is a reference to the Sanhedrin, the Jewish ruling court, which consisted of these three groups of people.

#### Acts 4:6

##### John, and Alexander

These two men were members of the high priest's family. This is not the same John as the apostle.

#### Acts 4:7

##### By what power

"Who gave you power"

##### in what name

"by whose authority"

#### Acts 4:8

##### Then Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit, said

"God filled Peter with the Holy Spirit, and Peter said"

#### Acts 4:9

##### we are on trial today

"you are questioning us today"

##### by what means this man was healed

"by what means we have made this man well"

#### Acts 4:10

##### let it be known to you all and to all the people of Israel

"May all of you and all of the people of Israel know this"

##### in the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth

"by the power of Jesus Christ of Nazareth"

##### whom God raised from the dead

"whom God caused to live again"

#### Acts 4:11

##### Jesus Christ is the stone ... which has been made the cornerstone

Peter is quoting from the Psalms. This means that means the religious leaders, like builders, rejected Jesus, but God will made him the most important in his kingdom, as a cornerstone in a building is important.

#### Acts 4:12

##### There is no salvation in any other person

"He is the only person who is able to save"

##### no other name under heaven given among men

"no other name under heaven that God has given among men"

##### under heaven

"in the world"

##### by which we must be saved

"which can save us" or "who can save us"

#### Acts 4:13

##### the boldness of Peter and John

"how boldly Peter and John had spoken" or "how bold Peter and John were"

##### ordinary, uneducated men

The words "ordinary" and "uneducated" share similar meanings. They emphasize that Peter and John had received no formal training in Jewish law.

#### Acts 4:14

##### the man who was healed

"the man whom Peter and John had healed"

##### nothing to say against this

"nothing to say against Peter and John's healing of the man."

#### Acts 4:15

##### the apostles

This refers to Peter and John.

#### Acts 4:16

##### What should we do with these men?

"There is nothing that we can do with these men!"

##### For a remarkable sign has been done through them, and this is evident to everyone who lives in Jerusalem

"For God has done a remarkable sign through them, and many of the people who lives in Jerusalem has seen it" or "For everyone who lives in Jerusalem knows that they have done a remarkable sign"

##### sign

The miracle of healing was a sign that Peter and John were obeying God, who did the healing.

#### Acts 4:17

##### in order that it spreads no further

"in order that news of this miracle spreads no further" or "in order that no more people hear about this miracle"

##### not to speak anymore to anyone in this name

"not to speak anymore to anyone about this person, Jesus"

#### Acts 4:19

##### Whether it is proper in the sight of God

"Whether God thinks it is right"

#### Acts 4:21

##### They were unable to find any excuse to punish them

Although the Jewish leaders threatened Peter and John, they could not find a reason to punish them without causing the people to riot.

##### for what had been done

"for what Peter and John had done"

#### Acts 4:22

##### The man who had experienced this sign of healing

"The man whom Peter and John had miraculously healed"

#### Acts 4:23

##### came to their own people

"went to the other believers"

#### Acts 4:24

##### General Information:

Speaking together, the people quote a Psalm of David from the Old Testament. Here the word "they" refers to the rest of the believers, but not to Peter and John.

##### with one purpose

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 4:25

##### You spoke by the Holy Spirit through the mouth of your servant, our father David

This means that the Holy Spirit caused David to speak or write down what God said.

##### our father David

Here the word "father" refers to an ancestor.

##### Why did the Gentile nations rage, and the peoples imagine useless things?

"The Gentile nations should not have raged, and the peoples should not have imagined useless things against God"

#### Acts 4:26

##### The kings of the earth set themselves together, and the rulers gathered together against the Lord

These two lines mean basically the same thing. The two lines emphasize the combined effort of the earth's rulers to oppose God.

##### against the Lord, and against his Christ

Here the word "Lord" refers to God. In the Psalms, the word "Christ" refers to the Messiah or God's anointed one.

#### Acts 4:27

##### in this city

"this city" refers to Jerusalem.

##### your holy servant Jesus

"Jesus, who serves you faithfully"

#### Acts 4:28

##### to do all that your hand and your plan had decided

"to do all that you in your power had decided and planned they would do"

#### Acts 4:29

##### look upon their warnings

"notice how they threaten to punish us"

##### speak your word with all boldness

"speak your message boldly" or "be bold when we speak your message"

#### Acts 4:30

##### Stretch out your hand to heal and to give

"Show your power by healing people and by giving"

##### through the name of your holy servant Jesus

"through the power of your holy servant Jesus"

#### Acts 4:31

##### they were all filled with the Holy Spirit

"the Holy Spirit had filled them all" or "God had filled them all with the Holy Spirit"

#### Acts 4:32

##### were of one heart and soul

"thought the same way and wanted the same things"

##### they had everything in common

"they shared their belongings with one another."

#### Acts 4:33

##### great grace was upon them all

Possible meanings are: 1) that God was greatly blessing the believers or 2) that the people in Jerusalem held the believers in very high esteem.

#### Acts 4:34

##### all who owned title to lands or houses

"Many people who owned title to lands or houses" or "People who owned title to lands or houses"

##### the money from the things that were sold

"the money that they received from the things that they sold"

#### Acts 4:35

##### laid it at the apostles' feet

"presented it to the apostles" or "gave it to the apostles"

##### it was distributed to each one according to their need

"they distributed the money to each believer who needed it"

#### Acts 4:36

##### Son of Encouragement

"Encourager" or "one who encourages"

#### Acts 4:37

##### laid it at the apostles' feet

"presented it to the apostles" or "gave it to the apostles"

## Chapter 5

#### Acts 5:2

##### his wife also knew it

"his wife also knew that he kept back part of the sale money"

##### laid it at the apostles' feet

"presented it to the apostles" or "gave it to the apostles"

#### Acts 5:3

##### why has Satan filled your heart to lie ... land?

"you should not have let Satan fill your heart to lie ... land."

##### Satan filled your heart

Possible meanings of the metaphor are 1) "Satan completely controlled you" or 2) "Satan convinced you"

##### to lie to the Holy Spirit and to keep back part of the price

This implies that Ananias had told the apostles that he was giving the entire amount that he had received from selling his land.

#### Acts 5:4

##### While it remained unsold, did it not remain your own ... authority?

"Before you sold it, it was your own ... authority."

##### after it was sold, was it not under your authority?

"after it was sold, you had control over the money that you received."

##### Why did you put it in your heart to do this?

"You should not have thought of doing this thing." or "It is Satan who has put this activity in your heart."

#### Acts 5:5

##### fell down and breathed his last

"died and fell to the ground"

#### Acts 5:7

##### his wife came in

"Ananias' wife came in" or "Sapphira came in"

##### what had happened

"that her husband had died"

#### Acts 5:8

##### for so much

"for this much money." This refers to the amount of money that Ananias had given to the apostles.

#### Acts 5:9

##### How is it that you have agreed together to test the Spirit of the Lord?

"You should not have agreed together to test the Spirit of the Lord!"

##### to test the Spirit of the Lord

Here the word "test" means to challenge or to prove. They were trying to see if they could get away with lying to God without receiving punishment.

##### Look, the feet of the men

"Pay attention! The men" or "Listen! The footsteps of the men"

#### Acts 5:10

##### fell down at his feet

This means that when she died, she fell on the floor in front of Peter. This expression should not be confused with falling down at a person's feet as a sign of humility.

##### breathed her last

Here "breathed his last" means "breathed her final breath" and is a polite way of saying "she died."

#### Acts 5:12

##### Many signs and wonders were taking place among the people through the hands of the apostles

"The apostles performed many signs and wonders among the people"

##### signs and wonders

"supernatural events and miraculous deeds."

##### through the hands of the apostles

"through the apostles"

##### Solomon's Porch

This was a covered walkway that consisted of rows of pillars that supported a roof, and which people named after king Solomon.

#### Acts 5:13

##### none of the rest

Possible meanings are 1) the apostles were in Solomon's Porch, but the rest of the believers were afraid to join them there, or 2) all the believers were in Solomon's Porch, and the word "none" means that most of the people who were not believers were afraid to join them.

##### they were held in high esteem by the people

"the people held the believers in high esteem"

#### Acts 5:14

##### more believers were being added to the Lord

"more people were believing in the Lord"

#### Acts 5:15

##### his shadow might fall on some of them

It is implied that God would heal them if Peter's shadow touched them.

#### Acts 5:16

##### those afflicted with unclean spirits

"those whom unclean spirits had afflicted"

##### they were all healed

"God healed them all" or "the apostles healed them all"

#### Acts 5:17

##### the high priest rose up

"the high priest took action"

#### Acts 5:18

##### laid hands on

"sent soldiers to arrest"

#### Acts 5:20

##### in the temple

"in the temple courtyard"

##### all the words of this life

Possible meanings are 1) "all this message of eternal life" or 2) "the whole message of this new way of living"

#### Acts 5:21

##### sent to the prison to have the apostles brought

"sent someone to the jail to bring the apostles"

#### Acts 5:23

##### we found no one inside

"we did not find them inside" or 2) the apostles had been the only prisoners and now there were no prisoners at all in the jail.

#### Acts 5:24

##### they were much perplexed

"they were very puzzled" or "they were very confused"

##### concerning them

"concerning the words they had just heard" or "concerning these things"

##### as to what would come of it

"and what would happen as a result" or "what would happen next"

#### Acts 5:25

##### standing in the temple

"standing in the temple courtyard"

#### Acts 5:26

##### brought them back

"brought the apostles back"

##### they feared the people, that they might be stoned

"they feared that the people might stone them"

#### Acts 5:27

##### they had brought them, they set them ... interrogated them

"the captain and officers had brought the apostles, the captain and the officers set the apostles ... interrogated the apostles"

##### interrogated

questioned to find out what was true

#### Acts 5:28

##### We ... us

The speakers were referring to themselves, but not to the apostles, so these words are exclusive.

##### you ... your

These words refer to the apostles and so are plural.

##### in this name

"not to speak anymore about this person, Jesus"

##### you have filled Jerusalem with your teaching

"you have taught many people in Jerusalem about him" or "you have taught about him throughout the Jerusalem"

##### desire to bring this man's blood upon us

"desire to make us responsible for this man's death"

#### Acts 5:30

##### The God of our fathers raised up Jesus

"The God of our fathers caused Jesus to live again"

##### by hanging him on a tree

"by hanging him on a cross"

#### Acts 5:31

##### God exalted him to his right hand

"God exalted him to the place of honor beside him"

##### give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins

"give the people of Israel an opportunity to repent and have God forgive their sins"

##### Israel

The word "Israel" refers to the Jewish people.

#### Acts 5:32

##### those who obey him

"those who submit to God's authority"

#### Acts 5:34

##### Gamaliel, a teacher of the law who was honored by all the people

Luke introduces Gamaliel and provides background information about him.

##### who was honored by all the people

"whom all the people honored"

##### to take the men outside

The words "the men" refers to the apostles.

#### Acts 5:35

##### pay close attention to

"think carefully about" or "be cautious about." Gamaliel was warning them not to do something that they would later regret.

#### Acts 5:36

##### Theudas rose up

Possible meanings are 1) "Theudas rebelled" or 2) "Theudas appeared."

##### claiming to be somebody

"claiming to be somebody important"

##### He was killed

"People killed him"

##### all who had been obeying him were scattered

"all the people scattered who had been obeying him" or "all who had been obeying him went in different directions"

##### came to nothing

This means that they did not do what they had planned to do.

#### Acts 5:37

##### After this man

"After Theudas"

##### in the days of the census

"during the time of the census"

##### drew away some people after him

"caused many people to follow him" or "caused many people to join him in rebellion"

#### Acts 5:38

##### keep away from these men and let them alone

Gamaliel is telling the Jewish leaders not to punish the apostles any more and not to put them back in jail.

##### if this plan or work is of men

"if men have devised this plan or are doing this work"

##### it will be overthrown

"someone will overthrow it"

#### Acts 5:39

##### if it is of God

"if God has devised this plan or commanded these men to do this work"

##### So they were persuaded

"So Gamaliel persuaded them"

#### Acts 5:40

##### to speak in the name of Jesus

"to speak anymore in the authority of Jesus"

#### Acts 5:41

##### they were counted worthy to suffer dishonor for the Name

"God had counted them worthy to suffer dishonor for Jesus"

#### Acts 5:42

##### in the temple and from house to house

"in the temple courtyard and in different people's houses"

## Chapter 6

#### Acts 6:1

##### Now in these days

Consider how new parts of a story are introduced in your language.

##### was multiplying

"was greatly increasing"

##### Grecian Jews

These were believers who had grown up as Jews or become converts living somewhere in the Roman Empire outside of Israel and speaking Greek. Their language and culture were somewhat different from those who had grown up in Israel.

##### the Hebrews

These were believers who had grown up as Jews or become converts in Israel speaking Hebrew or Aramaic.

##### widows

A widow is a woman who has not remarried since her husband died.

##### their widows were being overlooked

"the Hebrew believers were overlooking the Grecian widows"

##### being overlooked

"being ignored" or "being forgotten." There were so many who needed help that some were missed.

##### daily distribution of help

Possible meanings are 1) the disciples used the money to buy food, which they would give to the widows, or 2) the disciples gave the money directly to the widows.

#### Acts 6:2

##### The twelve

This refers to the eleven apostles plus Matthias, who was selected in Acts 1:26

##### the multitude of the disciples

"all of the disciples" or "all the believers"

##### give up the word of God

"stop preaching and teaching the word of God"

##### serve tables

This is a phrase meaning to serve food to the people.

#### Acts 6:3

##### men of good reputation, full of the Spirit and of wisdom

Possible meanings are 1) the men have three qualities—a good reputation, being full of the Spirit, and being full of wisdom or 2) the men have a reputation for two qualities—being full of the Spirit, and being full of wisdom .

##### over this business

"to be responsible to do this task"

#### Acts 6:4

##### the ministry of the word

"the ministry of teaching and preaching the message"

#### Acts 6:5

##### Their speech pleased the whole multitude

"All the disciples liked their suggestion"

##### Stephen ... Philip, Prochorus, Nicanor, Timon, Parmenas, and Nicolaus

These are Greek names, so it seems that all of the men elected were from the Grecian Jewish group of believers

##### proselyte

a Gentile who converted to the Jewish religion

#### Acts 6:6

##### placed their hands upon them

This represented giving a blessing and imparting responsibility and authority for the work to the seven.

#### Acts 6:7

##### the word of God continued to spread

"the number of people who believed the word of God increased" or "the number of people who believed the message from God increased"

##### became obedient to the faith

"followed the teaching of the new belief"

##### the faith

Possible meanings are 1) the gospel message of trust in Jesus or 2) the teaching of the church or 3) the Christian teaching.

#### Acts 6:8

##### Stephen, full of grace and power, was doing

"God was giving Stephen power to do"

#### Acts 6:9

##### there arose some people ... Asia. These people were debating with Stephen

"some people ... Asia, began to debate against Stephen"

##### synagogue of the Freedmen

"Freedmen" were probably ex-slaves from these different locations. It is unclear if the other people listed were part of the synagogue or just participated in the debate with Stephen.

##### the Cyrenians and Alexandrians

"people from Cyrene and Alexandria." Cyrene and Alexandria were cities in Northern Africa. They were south of the Mediterranean Sea.

##### some from Cilicia and Asia

Cilicia was a city and Asia was a Roman province, both north of the Mediterranean Sea.

##### debating with Stephen

"arguing with Stephen"

#### Acts 6:10

##### not able to stand against

"could not argue against"

##### Spirit

this refers to the Holy Spirit

#### Acts 6:11

##### some men to say

"some men to lie and say"

##### blasphemous words against

"bad things about"

#### Acts 6:12

##### stirred up the people, the elders, and the scribes

"caused the people, the elders, and the scribes to be very angry at Stephen"

##### seized him

"grabbed him and held him so he could not get away"

#### Acts 6:14

##### handed down to us

"taught by our ancestors"

#### Acts 6:15

##### fixed their eyes on him

"looked intently at him" or "stared at him"

## Chapter 7

#### Acts 7:5

##### enough to set a foot on

"a very tiny piece of ground"

##### as a possession to him and to his descendants after him

"for Abraham to own and to give to his descendants"

#### Acts 7:6

##### God was speaking to him like this

"Later God told Abraham"

#### Acts 7:7

##### I will judge the nation

"I will judge the people of the nation that they will serve"

#### Acts 7:8

##### gave Abraham the covenant of circumcision

"made a covenant with Abraham to circumcise the males of his family"

#### Acts 7:9

##### the patriarchs

"the founders of our tribes" or "our ancestors." A patriarch is a man who rules a family.

##### sold him into Egypt

"sold him as a slave in Egypt"

#### Acts 7:10

##### over Egypt

"over all the people of Egypt"

##### all his household

"everything he owned"

#### Acts 7:11

##### our fathers

This refers Jacob and his sons, who were the ancestors of the Jewish people.

#### Acts 7:13

##### made himself known

Joseph revealed to his brothers his identity as their brother.

##### Joseph's family became known to Pharaoh

"Pharaoh learned that they were Joseph's family"

#### Acts 7:14

##### sent his brothers back

"sent his brothers back to Canaan" or "sent his brothers back home"

#### Acts 7:15

##### he died

"eventually Jacob died"

##### he and our fathers

"Jacob and his sons, who became our ancestors"

#### Acts 7:16

##### They were carried over ... and laid

"Jacob's descendants carried Jacob's body and his son's bodies over ... and buried them"

#### Acts 7:17

##### time of the promise approached

It was close to the time that God would fulfill his promise to Abraham.

#### Acts 7:18

##### there arose another king

"another king began to rule over the people of Egypt"

##### who did not know about Joseph

"who did not know that Joseph had helped Egypt"

#### Acts 7:20

##### very beautiful before God

Moses was very beautiful.

##### was nourished

"his parents nourished him" or "his parents cared for him"

#### Acts 7:21

##### When he was placed outside

"When his parents placed him outside" or "When they abandoned him"

##### Pharaoh's daughter ... raised him as her own son

She did for him every good thing a mother would do for her own son. Use your language's normal word for what a mother does to make sure her son becomes a healthy adult.

##### adopted him

If your language has a word for an informal procedure, not a formal legal procedure, in which one family takes a child in and raises him, you may want to use that here. Pharaoh's daughter did do for Moses what any mother would do for her child, but this involved no formal legal procedure.

##### as her own son

"as if he were her own son"

#### Acts 7:22

##### Moses was educated

"The Egyptians educated Moses"

##### mighty in his words and works

"effective in his speech and actions" or "influential in what he said and did"

#### Acts 7:23

##### it came into his heart

"it came into his mind" or "he decided"

##### visit his brothers, the descendants of Israel

"see how his own people, the children of Israel, were doing"

#### Acts 7:24

##### Seeing an Israelite being mistreated ... the Egyptian

"Seeing an Egyptian mistreating an Israelite, Moses defended and avenged the Israelite by striking the Egyptian who was oppressing him"

##### striking the Egyptian

Moses hit the Egyptian so hard that he died.

#### Acts 7:25

##### by his hand, was giving them salvation

"was giving them salvation through what he, Moses, was doing"

##### was giving them salvation

"was saving them" or "was rescuing them"

#### Acts 7:26

##### when they were fighting

"when two men of Israel were fighting"

##### make peace between them

"make them stop fighting"

##### Men, you are brothers

Moses was addressing the Israelites who were fighting.

##### why are you wronging one another?

"you should not do wrong to each other!"

#### Acts 7:27

##### Who appointed you a ruler and a judge over us?

"No one appointed you ruler or judge over us." or "You have no authority over us!"

#### Acts 7:28

##### Would you like to kill me, as you killed the Egyptian yesterday?

The man used this question to warn Moses that he and probably others knew Moses had killed the Egyptian.

#### Acts 7:30

##### When forty years were past

"Forty years after Moses fled from Egypt"

##### an angel appeared

Stephen's audience knew that God spoke through the angel.

#### Acts 7:31

##### he marveled at the sight

"because the bush was not burning up"

#### Acts 7:32

##### I am the God of your fathers

"I am the God whom your ancestors worshiped"

##### Moses trembled with fear and did not dare to look

This may mean Moses drew back in fear when he heard the voice.

#### Acts 7:33

##### Take off the sandals

God told Moses this so he would honor God.

##### for the place where you are standing is holy ground

The implied information is that where God is present, the immediate area around God is considered holy or is made holy by God.

#### Acts 7:34

##### the oppression of my people

"the way the Egyptians are oppressing my people"

##### my people

"the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob"

##### I have come down to rescue them

"will personally cause their release"

##### now come

"get ready." God uses an order here.

#### Acts 7:35

##### This Moses whom they rejected

This refers back to the events recorded in Acts 7:27-28.

##### deliverer

"rescuer"

##### by the hand of the angel ... bush

"by the action of the angel" or "by having the angel ... bush command him to return to Egypt"

#### Acts 7:36

##### during forty years

"during the 40 years that the Israelite people lived in the wilderness"

#### Acts 7:37

##### raise up a prophet

"cause a man to be a prophet"

##### from among your brothers

"from among your own people"

#### Acts 7:38

##### This is the man who was in the assembly

"This is the man Moses who was among the Israelites"

##### who received living words to give to us

"to whom God spoke living words to give to us"

##### living words

Possible meanings are 1) "a message that endures" or 2) "words that give life."

#### Acts 7:39

##### pushed him away from themselves

"they rejected him as their leader"

##### in their hearts they turned back

"they desired to turn back"

#### Acts 7:40

##### At that time

"When they decided to return to Egypt"

#### Acts 7:41

##### they made a calf

"they made a statue that looked like a calf"

##### a calf ... the idol ... the work of their hands

These phrases all refer to the same statue of the calf.

#### Acts 7:42

##### God gave them up

"God abandoned them and stopped correcting them"

##### the book of the prophets

This was apparently a collection of the writings of several of the Old Testament prophets into one scroll. It would also have included the writings of Amos.

##### Did you bring me offerings and sacrifices ... Israel?

"You did not honor me when brought offerings and sacrifices ... Israel."

##### house of Israel

"all you Israelites"

#### Acts 7:43

##### You accepted

"you carried with you from place to place"

##### tabernacle of Molech

the tent that housed the false god Molech

##### the star of the god Rephan

the star that is identified with the false god Rephan

##### the images that you made

They made statues or images of the gods Molech and Rephan in order to worship them.

##### I will carry you away beyond Babylon

"I will remove you to places even farther than Babylon." This would be God's act of judgment.

#### Acts 7:44

##### the tabernacle of the testimony

The tent that housed the ark (a box) with the 10 commandments carved in stone inside it

#### Acts 7:45

##### our fathers, under Joshua, received the tabernacle and brought it with them

"our fathers, in accordance with Joshua's instructions, received the tabernacle and brought it with them"

##### God took the land from the nations and drove them out before the face of our fathers

"God forced the nations to leave the land before the face of our fathers"

##### the nations

"the people who previously lived here"

#### Acts 7:46

##### he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob

"he might build a place where people could worship the God of Jacob")

##### the house of Jacob

Many versions read, "the God of Jacob."

#### Acts 7:48

##### made with hands

"made by people"

#### Acts 7:49

##### Heaven is my throne ... the earth is the footstool for my feet

The prophet is comparing the greatness of God's presence to how impossible it is for man to build a place for God to rest on earth since the whole earth is nothing but a place for God to rest his feet.

##### What kind of house can you build for me?

"You can not build a house adequate enough for me!"

##### what is the place for my rest?

"There is no place of rest good enough for me!"

#### Acts 7:50

##### Did my hand not make all these things?

"My hand made all these things!"

#### Acts 7:51

##### You stiff-necked people

Stephen shifts from identifying with the Jewish leaders to rebuking them.

##### uncircumcised in heart and ears

"you refuse to obey and hear"

#### Acts 7:52

##### Which of the prophets did your fathers not persecute?

"Your forefathers persecuted every prophet!"\

##### Righteous One

This refers to the Christ, the Messiah.

##### you have now become the betrayers and murderers of him also

"you have also betrayed and murdered him"

#### Acts 7:53

##### the law that angels had ordained

"the laws that God caused angels to give to our ancestors"

#### Acts 7:54

##### Now when the council members heard these things

This is the turning point; the sermon ends and the council members react.

##### they were furious in their hearts

This means that they were extremely angry.

##### ground their teeth at Stephen

"they became so angry that they ground their teeth together" or "moved their teeth back and forth as they looked at Stephen"

#### Acts 7:55

##### looked up intently into heaven

"stared up into heaven." It appears that only Stephen saw this vision and not anyone else in the crowd.

##### saw the glory of God

"saw a bright light from God"

##### and he saw Jesus standing at the right hand of God

"and he saw Jesus standing in the place of honor and authority beside God"

#### Acts 7:56

##### Son of Man

Stephen refers to Jesus by the title "Son of Man."

#### Acts 7:57

##### covered their ears

"put their hands on their ears." They did this to show that they did not want to hear any more of what Stephen said.

##### with one purpose

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 7:58

##### They forced him out of the city

"They seized Stephen and forcefully took him out of the city"

##### outer clothing

These are cloaks or robes they would wear outside to stay warm, similar in function to a jacket or coat.

##### at the feet

"in front of." They were placed there so Saul could watch them.

##### a young man

Saul was probably around 30 years old at the time.

#### Acts 7:59

##### receive my spirit

"please receive my spirit"

#### Acts 7:60

##### He knelt down

This is an act of submission to God.

##### do not hold this sin against them

"forgive them for this sin"

##### fell asleep

"died"

## Chapter 8

#### Acts 8:2

##### Devout men

"God-fearing men" or "Men who feared God"

##### made great lamentation over him

"greatly mourned his death"

#### Acts 8:3

##### drag off both men and women

"took away both men and women by force." Saul forcefully took Jewish believers out of their homes and put them into prison.

#### Acts 8:4

##### who had been scattered

"who had fled the great persecution"

##### the word

"the message about Jesus"

#### Acts 8:5

##### proclaimed to them the Christ

"told them about Jesus Christ" or "told them about Jesus the Messiah"

#### Acts 8:6

##### Crowds of people

"Many people in the city of Samaria."

##### with one mind

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 8:7

##### who were possessed

"who had them" or "who were controlled by them"

#### Acts 8:8

##### So there was much joy in that city

"So the people of the city were rejoicing"

#### Acts 8:9

##### But there was a certain man ... named Simon

This is a way of introducing a new person into the story. Your language may use different wording to introduce a new person into the story.

##### the city

"the city in Samaria"

#### Acts 8:10

##### All the Samaritans

"Many of the Samaritans" or "The Samaritans in the city"

##### from the least to the greatest

"no matter how important they were"

##### that power of God which is called Great

Possible meanings are 1) the powerful representative of God or 2) God or 3) the most powerful man or 4) an angel. Since the term is unclear, it may be best to simply translate it as "the Great power of God."

#### Acts 8:12

##### they were baptized

"Philip baptized them" or "Philip baptized the new believers"

#### Acts 8:13

##### Simon himself believed

"Simon was also one of those who believed"

##### he was baptized

"Philip baptized Simon"

#### Acts 8:14

##### Samaria

This refers to the many people who had become believers throughout the district of Samaria.

##### had received

"had believed" or "had accepted"

#### Acts 8:15

##### When they had come down

"when Peter and John had come down"

##### come down

This phrase is used here because Samaria is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

##### they prayed for them

"Peter and John prayed for the Samaritan believers"

##### that they might receive the Holy Spirit

"that the Samaritan believers might receive the Holy Spirit"

#### Acts 8:16

##### they had only been baptized

"Philip had only baptized the Samaritan believers"

##### they had only been baptized into the name of the Lord Jesus

"they had only been baptized to become disciples of the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 8:17

##### Peter and John placed their hands on them

The word "them" refers to the Samaritan people who believed Stephen's message of the gospel.

#### Acts 8:18

##### the Holy Spirit was given through the laying on of the apostles' hands

"the apostles gave the Holy Spirit by laying their hands on people"

#### Acts 8:19

##### that whoever I place my hands on might receive the Holy Spirit

"that I can give the Holy Spirit to anyone on whom I place my hands"

#### Acts 8:20

##### May your silver perish along with you

"May you and your money be destroyed"

##### the gift of God

Here this refers to the ability of a person to give the Holy Spirit by laying his hands on someone.

#### Acts 8:21

##### You have no part or allotted portion in this matter

"You may not participate in this work"

##### your heart is not right

"you are not right in your heart" or "the motives of your mind are not right"

#### Acts 8:22

##### this wickedness

"these evil thoughts"

##### he might perhaps forgive

"he may be willing to forgive"

##### for the intention of your heart

"for what you intended to do" or "for what you were thinking of doing"

#### Acts 8:23

##### in the poison of bitterness

"very envious"

##### in the bonds of unrighteousness

"because you continue sinning you are like a prisoner" or "sin has made you its prisoner"

#### Acts 8:24

##### nothing you have said may happen to me

"the things you have said may not happen to me"

#### Acts 8:25

##### testified

Peter and John told what they personally knew about Jesus to the Samaritans.

##### spoken the word of the Lord

Peter and John explained the message about Jesus to the Samaritans.

##### to many villages of the Samaritans

"to the people in many Samaritan villages"

#### Acts 8:26

##### Arise and go

"Get ready to travel"

#### Acts 8:27

##### Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### eunuch

The emphasis of "eunuch" here is about the Ethiopian's being a high government official, and also his physical state of being castrated.

##### Candace

This was a title for the queens of Ethiopia. It is similar to the way the word Pharaoh was used for the kings of Egypt.

##### He had come to Jerusalem to worship

"He had come to worship God at the temple in Jerusalem"

#### Acts 8:28

##### chariot

Possibly "wagon" or "carriage" is more fitting in this context. Chariots are normally mentioned as a vehicle for war, not as a vehicle for long-distance travel. Also, people stood to ride in chariots.

##### reading the prophet Isaiah

"reading from the book of the prophet Isaiah"

#### Acts 8:29

##### stay close to this chariot

"accompany the man in this chariot"

#### Acts 8:30

##### reading Isaiah the prophet

"reading from the book of the prophet Isaiah"

##### Do you understand what you are reading?

"Do you understand the meaning of what you are reading?"

#### Acts 8:31

##### How can I, unless someone guides me?

"I cannot understand unless someone guides me."

##### He invited

Possible meanings are that 1) he offered a sincere invitation or 2) he made a sincere request.

#### Acts 8:32

##### like a lamb before his shearer is silent

A shearer is a person who cuts the wool off the sheep so that it may be used.

#### Acts 8:33

##### In his humiliation justice was taken away from him

"He was humiliated and they did not judge him fairly" or "He allowed himself to be humbled before his accusers and he suffered injustice"

##### Who can give a full account of his descendants?

"No one will be able to speak about his descendants, for there will not be any."

##### his life was taken from the earth

"men killed him" or "men took his life from the earth"

#### Acts 8:34

##### I beg you

"Please tell me"

#### Acts 8:35

##### this scripture

"the writings of Isaiah"

#### Acts 8:36

##### they went on the road

"they continued to travel along the road"

##### What prevents me from being baptized?

"Please allow me to be baptized."

#### Acts 8:38

##### commanded the chariot to stop

"told the driver of the chariot to stop"

#### Acts 8:39

##### the Spirit of the Lord took Philip away

The words "took Philip away" imply that the Spirit took forceful, physical action, perhaps a miracle that moved Philip in an instant. The angel probably did not just suggest or even command that Philip leave the eunuch and go elsewhere.

##### the eunuch saw him no more

"the eunuch did not see Philip again"

#### Acts 8:40

##### Philip appeared at Azotus

There was no indication of Philip's traveling between where he baptized the Ethiopian and Azotus. He just suddenly disappeared along the road to Gaza and reappeared at the town of Azotus.

##### that region

This refers to the area around the town of Azotus.

##### to all the cities

"to all the cities in that region"

## Chapter 9

#### Acts 9:1

##### still speaking threats even of murder against the disciples

"still speaking threats, even to murder the disciples"

#### Acts 9:2

##### for the synagogues

"for the people in the synagogues" or "for the leaders in the synagogues"

##### if he found any people who belonged to the Way

"when he found people who followed the teachings of Jesus Christ" or "if he found people who followed the teachings of Jesus Christ"

##### he might bring them bound to Jerusalem

"Paul's purpose can be made clear by adding "so that the Jewish leaders could judge and punish them"

#### Acts 9:3

##### As he was traveling

Saul left Jerusalem and now travels to Damascus.

##### it happened that

This is an expression that marks a change in the story to show something different is about to happen.

##### there shone all around him a light out of heaven

"a light from heaven shone all around him"

##### out of heaven

Possible meanings are 1) out of heaven, where God lives or 2) out of the sky. The first meaning is preferable. Use that meaning if your language has a separate word for it.

#### Acts 9:4

##### he fell upon the ground and heard

Possible meanings are that 1) "Saul threw himself to the ground and heard" or 2) "the light caused Saul to fall to the ground, and he heard" or 3) "Saul fell to the ground the way one who faints falls, and he heard"

##### why are you persecuting me?

"You are persecuting me!" or "Stop persecuting me!"

#### Acts 9:5

##### Who are you, Lord?

Saul was not acknowledging that Jesus is the Lord. He uses that title because he understood that he spoke to someone of supernatural power.

#### Acts 9:6

##### but rise, enter into the city

"get up and go into the city Damascus"

##### it will be told you

"someone will tell you"

#### Acts 9:7

##### stood speechless, hearing the voice, but seeing no one

"stood speechless. They heard the voice, but they did not see anyone"

#### Acts 9:8

##### when he opened his eyes

This implies that he had closed his eyes because the light was too bright.

##### he could see nothing

"he could not see anything." Saul was blind.

#### Acts 9:9

##### was without sight

"was blind" or "could not see anything"

##### he neither ate nor drank

It is not stated whether he chose not to eat or drink as a form of worship, or if he had no appetite because he was too distressed from his situation. It is preferable not to specify the reason.

#### Acts 9:10

##### Now there was

This introduces Ananias as a new character.

##### He said

"Ananias said"

#### Acts 9:11

##### go to the street which is called Straight

"go to Straight Street"

##### house of Judas

This Judas was not the disciple who had betrayed Jesus. This Judas was owner of a house in Damascus where Saul was staying.

##### a man from Tarsus named Saul

"a man from the city of Tarsus named Saul" or "Saul of Tarsus"

#### Acts 9:12

##### laying his hands on him

This was a symbol of giving a spiritual blessing to Saul.

##### he might see again

"he might regain his ability to see"

#### Acts 9:13

##### your holy people in Jerusalem

"the people in Jerusalem who believe in you"

#### Acts 9:14

##### authority ... to put in bonds everyone here

It is implied that the extent of the power and authority granted Saul was limited to the Jewish people at this point in time.

##### put in bonds

Putting someone in bonds is a metonym for arresting that person. Alternate translation: "arrest"

##### calls upon your name

Here "your name" refers to Jesus.

#### Acts 9:15

##### he is a chosen instrument of mine

"I have chosen him to serve me"

##### to carry my name

"in order that he might speak about me"

#### Acts 9:16

##### for the cause of my name

This is an expression meaning "for telling people about me."

#### Acts 9:17

##### So Ananias departed, and entered into the house

"So Ananias went, and after he found the house where Saul was, he entered it"

##### Laying his hands on him

Ananias put his hands on Saul. This was a symbol of giving a blessing to Saul.

##### so that you might receive your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit

"so that you might see again and that the Holy Spirit might fill you"

#### Acts 9:18

##### something like scales fell

"something that appeared like fish scales fell"

##### he received his sight

"he was able to see again"

##### he arose and was baptized

"he got up and Ananias baptized him"

#### Acts 9:20

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Acts 9:21

##### All who heard him

"Those who heard him" or "Many who heard him"

##### Is not this the man who destroyed those in Jerusalem who called on this name?

"This is the man who destroyed those in Jerusalem who called on this name Jesus!"

#### Acts 9:22

##### causing distress among the Jews

They were distressed in the sense that they could not find a way to refute Saul's arguments that Jesus was the Christ.

#### Acts 9:23

##### the Jews

"the Jewish leaders"

#### Acts 9:24

##### But their plan became known to Saul

"But someone told their plan to Saul" or "But Saul learned about their plan"

##### They watched the gates

This city had a wall surrounding it. People could normally only enter and exit the city through the gates.

#### Acts 9:25

##### his disciples

people who believed Saul's message about Jesus and were following his teaching

##### let him down through the wall, lowering him in a basket

"used ropes to lower him in a large basket through an opening in the wall"

#### Acts 9:27

##### had spoken boldly in the name of Jesus

"had openly preached the message about Jesus"

#### Acts 9:28

##### He was with them, going in and out around Jerusalem

Here the word "He" refers to Saul, and the word "them" probably refers to the apostles and other disciples in Jerusalem.

##### in the name of the Lord Jesus

"about the Lord Jesus" or 2) "name" is a metonym for authority. Alternate translation: "under the authority of the Lord Jesus" or "with the authority that the Lord Jesus gave him"

#### Acts 9:29

##### debated with the Grecian Jews

Saul tried to reason with the Jews who spoke Greek.

#### Acts 9:30

##### the brothers

Here the words "the brothers" refer to the believers in Jerusalem.

##### brought him down to Caesarea

The phrase "brought him down" is used here because Caesarea is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

##### sent him away to Tarsus

Caesarea was a seaport. They brothers probably sent Saul to Tarsus by ship.

#### Acts 9:31

##### the church throughout all Judea, Galilee, and Samaria

This is the first use of the singular "church" to refer to more than one local congregation. Here it refers to all the believers in all the groups throughout Israel.

##### had peace

"lived peacefully." This means the persecution that started with the murder of Stephen was finished.

##### was built up

"God helped them grow" or "the Holy Spirit built them up"

##### walking in the fear of the Lord

"living in obedience to the Lord" or "continuing to honor the Lord"

##### in the comfort of the Holy Spirit

"with the Holy Spirit strengthening and encouraging them"

#### Acts 9:32

##### Now it came about

This phrase is used to mark a new part of the story.

##### throughout the whole region

This is an generalization for Peter's visiting the believers in many places in the region of Judea, Galilee, and Samaria.

##### Lydda

Lydda is a city located about 18 kilometers southeast of Joppa. This city is called Lod in the Old Testament and in modern Israel.

#### Acts 9:33

##### There he found a certain man named Aeneas

"There Peter met a man named Aeneas"

##### who had been in his bed ... was paralyzed

This is background information about Aeneas.

##### paralyzed

This means he was unable to walk. He probably was unable to move any part of his body below his waist.

#### Acts 9:34

##### make your bed

"roll up your mat"

#### Acts 9:35

##### everyone who lived in Lydda and in Sharon

"those who lived in Lydda and in Sharon" or "many people who lived in Lydda and Sharon"

##### saw the man

"saw the man whom Peter had healed"

##### and they turned to the Lord

"and they repented of their sins and started obeying the Lord"

#### Acts 9:36

##### Now there was

This introduces a new part in the story.

##### Tabitha (which is translated "Dorcas"). This woman

"Tabitha, which in the Greek language was Dorcas. This woman"

##### was full of good works and merciful deeds

"doing many good things and performed merciful deeds"

#### Acts 9:37

##### It came about in those days

"It came about while Peter was nearby"

##### washed her

This was washing to prepare for her burial.

##### they laid her in an upper room

This was a temporary display of the body during the funeral process.

#### Acts 9:38

##### they sent two men to him

"the disciples sent two men to Peter"

#### Acts 9:39

##### to the upper room

"to the upstairs room where Dorcas' body was lying"

##### all the widows

It is possible that all the widows of the town were there since it was not a large town.

##### widows

women whose husbands had died and therefore needed help

##### while she had been with them

"while she was still alive with the disciples"

#### Acts 9:40

##### put them all out of the room

"told them all to leave the room." Peter had everyone leave so he could be alone to pray for Tabitha.

#### Acts 9:41

##### gave her his hand and raised her up

Peter took hold of her hand and helped her to sit up in the bed and then stand up on the floor.

##### God's holy people and the widows

The widows were possibly also believers but are mentioned specifically because Tabitha was so important to them.

#### Acts 9:42

##### This matter became known throughout all Joppa

"People throughout all Joppa heard about this matter"

##### believed on the Lord

"believed in the gospel of the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 9:43

##### It happened that

"It came about that." This introduces the beginning of the next event in the story.

##### Simon, a tanner

"a man named Simon who made leather from animal skins"

## Chapter 10

#### Acts 10:1

##### Now there was a certain man

This was a way of introducing a new person to this part of the historical account.

##### in the city of Caesarea, Cornelius by name, a centurion of what was called the Italian Company of Soldiers

"Cornelius was from the city of Caesarea. He was an officer in charge of 60 soldiers from the Italian Company of Soldiers, in the Roman army"

#### Acts 10:2

##### a devout man

a man who wanted to do what God expected of him

##### feared God

worshiped God with deep respect and awe

##### prayed to God constantly

"prayed to God often" or "he prayed to God regularly"

#### Acts 10:3

##### the ninth hour

"three o'clock in the afternoon." This was the normal afternoon prayer time for Jews.

##### he clearly saw

"Cornelius clearly saw"

#### Acts 10:4

##### Your prayers and your alms have gone up ... into God's presence

"God is pleased by your prayers and alms. They have gone up ... to him"

#### Acts 10:6

##### a tanner

a person who makes leather from animal skins

#### Acts 10:7

##### When the angel who spoke to him had left

"When Cornelius' vision of the angel had ended."

##### a devout soldier

a soldier who wanted to do what God expected of him.

#### Acts 10:8

##### told them all that had happened

Cornelius explained his vision to his two servants and to one of his soldiers.

##### sent them to Joppa

"sent two of his two servants and the one soldier to Joppa."

#### Acts 10:9

##### about the sixth hour

"around noon"

##### up upon the housetop

The roofs of the houses were flat, and people often did many different activities on them.

#### Acts 10:10

##### a trance came on him

"he went into a trance"

##### trance

Peter saw things in his mind, not with his physical eyes.

#### Acts 10:11

##### he saw the sky open

This was the beginning of Peter's vision. It can be a new sentence.

##### let down by its four corners

"with its four corners suspended" or "with its four corners higher than the rest of it"

#### Acts 10:12

##### things that crawled on the earth

snakes and insects, as opposed to "four-footed animals"

#### Acts 10:13

##### a voice spoke to him

The person speaking is not specified. The "voice" was probably God, although it could possibly have been an angel from God.

#### Acts 10:14

##### Not so

"I will not do that"

#### Acts 10:15

##### What God has made clean

"What I, God, have made clean"

#### Acts 10:16

##### This happened three times

Possible meanings are 1) Peter heard the words "What God has made clean, you must not call defiled" three times or 2) a total of three times the sheet came down from heaven and Peter heard and responded to the voice. It would be best to translate without adding information here.

#### Acts 10:17

##### Peter was very confused

This means that Peter was having difficulty understanding what the vision meant.

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows, in this case, the two men standing at the gate.

##### stood before the gate

"stood before the gate to the house." It is implied that this house had a wall with a gate one would use to enter the property.

#### Acts 10:18

##### They called out

Cornelius' men remained outside the gate while asking about Peter.

#### Acts 10:19

##### thinking about the vision

"wondering about the meaning of the vision"

##### the Spirit

"the Holy Spirit"

##### three men are looking for you

Some ancient texts have a different number of men.

#### Acts 10:20

##### go down

"go down from the roof of the house"

##### Do not hesitate to go with them

It would be natural for Peter not to want to go with them, because they were strangers and they were Gentiles.

#### Acts 10:21

##### I am he whom you are seeking

"I am the man you are looking for"

#### Acts 10:22

##### fears God

worships God with deep respect and awe

##### all the nation of the Jews

This number of people is exaggerated with the word "all" to emphasize how widely this was known among the Jews.

#### Acts 10:23

##### So Peter invited them to come in and stay with him

The journey to Caesarea was too long for them to begin that afternoon.

##### stay with him

"be his guests"

##### some of the brothers from Joppa

This refers to believers who lived in Joppa.

#### Acts 10:24

##### On the following day

This was the next day after they left Joppa. The journey to Caesarea took longer than one day.

##### Cornelius was waiting for them

"Cornelius expected them"

#### Acts 10:25

##### when Peter entered

"when Peter entered the house"

##### fell down at his feet to worship him

"he knelt down and put his face close to Peter's feet." He did this to honor Peter.

#### Acts 10:26

##### Stand up! I too am a man

"Do not worship me! I am only a man, as you are"

#### Acts 10:28

##### it is not lawful for a Jewish man

"it is forbidden for a Jewish man." This refers to the Jewish religious law.

##### a foreigner

people who are not Jews

#### Acts 10:30

##### at the ninth hour

The normal afternoon time that the Jews pray to God.

#### Acts 10:31

##### your prayer has been heard by God

"God has heard your prayer"

#### Acts 10:32

##### call to you a man named Simon who is called Peter

"tell Simon who is also called Peter to come to you"

#### Acts 10:33

##### at once

"right away"

##### You are kind to have come

"I certainly thank you for coming"

##### we are all here

This refers to Cornelius and his family but not to Peter, so this is exclusive.

##### present in the sight of God

"present with God"

##### that you have been instructed by the Lord to say

"that the Lord has told you to say"

#### Acts 10:34

##### opened his mouth

"began to speak"

##### Truly

This means that what he is about to say is especially important to know.

##### God is not partial

"God does not favor certain people"

#### Acts 10:35

##### anyone who fears him and does what is right is acceptable to him

"he accepts anyone who fears him and does what is right"

#### Acts 10:37

##### throughout all Judea

"throughout Judea" or "in many places in Judea"

##### after the baptism that John announced

"after John preached to the people to repent and then baptized them"

#### Acts 10:38

##### God anointed him with the Holy Spirit and with power

The Holy Spirit and God's power are spoken of as if they are something that can be poured out onto a person.

##### all who were oppressed by the devil

"those who were oppressed by the devil" or "many people who were oppressed by the devil"

##### God was with him

"God was helping him."

#### Acts 10:39

##### in the country of the Jews

This refers mainly to Judea at that time.

##### hanging him on a tree

"nailing him to a wooden cross"

#### Acts 10:40

##### God raised him up

"God caused him to live again"

##### the third day

"the third day after he died"

##### caused him to be seen

"permitted many people to see him after he was raised from the dead"

#### Acts 10:41

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died.

#### Acts 10:42

##### that this is the one who has been chosen by God

"that God chose this Jesus"

##### the living and the dead

"the people who are alive and the people who are dead"

#### Acts 10:43

##### About him all the prophets testify

"All the prophets testify about Jesus"

##### everyone who believes in him receives forgiveness of sins

"God will forgive the sins of everyone who believes in Jesus because of what Jesus has done"

##### through his name

"through what Jesus has done for them"

#### Acts 10:44

##### the Holy Spirit fell

"the Holy Spirit suddenly came"

##### all of those who were listening

Here "all" refers to all the Gentiles at the house who were listening to Peter.

#### Acts 10:45

##### the gift of the Holy Spirit was poured out also

"God also poured out the Holy Spirit"

##### the gift of the Holy Spirit

That is, the Holy Spirit himself was the gift.

##### the gift

"the free gift"

##### also on the Gentiles

Here "also" refers to the fact that the Holy Spirit had already been given to the Jewish believers.

#### Acts 10:46

##### Gentiles speaking in tongues and exalting God

These were known spoken languages that caused the Jews to acknowledge that the Gentiles were indeed praising God.

##### speaking in tongues

"speaking in other languages"

#### Acts 10:47

##### Can anyone keep water from these people so they should not be baptized, these people who have received ... we?

"No one should keep water from these people! We should baptize them because they have received ... we!"

#### Acts 10:48

##### he commanded them to be baptized

"Peter commanded the Gentile believers to allow the Jewish Christians to baptize them" or "Peter commanded the Jewish Christians to baptize them"

##### be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ

"be baptized as believers in Jesus Christ"

## Chapter 20

#### Acts 20:1

##### After the uproar

"After the riot" or "Following the riot"

##### he said farewell

"he said goodbye"

#### Acts 20:2

##### had spoken many words of encouragement to them

"had greatly encouraged the believers" or "had said many things to encourage the believers"

#### Acts 20:3

##### After he had spent three months there

"After he had stayed there three months."

##### a plot was formed against him by the Jews

"the Jews formed a plot against him" or "the Jews formed a secret plan to harm him"

##### by the Jews

"by some of the Jews"

#### Acts 20:4

##### Accompanying him

"Traveling with him." Here the word "him" refers to Paul

##### Sopater ... Pyrrhus ... Secundus ... Tychicus ... Trophimus

These are names of men.

##### Berea ... Derbe

These are names of places.

##### Aristarchus ... Gaius

These are names of men.

#### Acts 20:5

##### these men had gone before us

"these men had traveled ahead of us"

##### Troas

This is the name of a place.

#### Acts 20:6

##### the days of unleavened bread

This refers to the Jewish religious feast time during the Passover season.

#### Acts 20:7

##### the next day

"when the sun came up again." If the writer was using the Jewish system of determining days, Paul was planning to travel after sunrise on "the first day of the week." If the writer was using the Greek system, Paul was planning to travel on the second day of the week.

##### to break bread

"to eat the Lord's Supper"

##### he prolonged his message

"he continued to speak"

#### Acts 20:8

##### upper room

This may have been on the third floor of the house.

#### Acts 20:9

##### In the window

This was an opening in the wall with a ledge that was wide enough on which a person could sit.

##### Eutychus

This is the name of a man.

##### who fell into a deep sleep

"who slept soundly" or "who became more and more tired until finally he was sleeping soundly"

##### third story and was picked up dead

"third story; and when they went to pick him up, they found that he was dead"

##### third story

This means two floors above the ground floor. If your culture does not count the ground floor, you may state this as the "second story."

#### Acts 20:10

##### on him ... embraced him ... he is alive

Here "him" and "he" refers to the young man, Eutychus.

##### he said

Here "he" refers to Paul.

#### Acts 20:11

##### broke bread

Bread was a common food during meals. Here "broke bread" probably means that they shared a meal with more kinds of food than just bread.

##### he left

"he went away"

#### Acts 20:12

##### the boy

This refers to Eutychus. Possible meanings are 1) he was a young man over 14 years old or 2) he was a boy between 9 and 14 years old or 3) the word "boy" implies that he was a servant or a slave.

#### Acts 20:13

##### We ourselves went

The word "ourselves" adds emphasis and separates Luke and his traveling companions from Paul, who did not travel by boat.

##### sailed away to Assos

Assos is a town located directly below present day Behram in Turkey on the coast of the Aegean sea.

##### to go by land

"to travel on land"

#### Acts 20:14

##### he met ... took him

Here "he" and "him" refer to Paul.

##### met us ... we took

Here the words "we" and "us" refer to the writer and those traveling with him, but not to the reader.

##### went to Mitylene

Mitylene is a town located in present day Mitilini in Turkey on the coast of the Aegean sea.

#### Acts 20:15

##### opposite the island

"near the island" or "across from the island"

##### the island of Chios

Chios is an island off the coast of modern day Turkey in the Aegean Sea.

##### we touched at the island of Samos

"we arrived at the island of Samos"

##### island of Samos

Samos is an island south of Chios in the Aegean Sea off the coast of modern day Turkey.

##### the city of Miletus

Miletus was a port city in western Asia Minor near the mouth of the Meander River.

#### Acts 20:16

##### For Paul had decided to sail past Ephesus

Paul sailed south past the port city of Ephesus, further south in order to land at Miletus.

##### so that he would not spend any time

"so that he would not have to remain for a time" or "so that he would not have a delay"

#### Acts 20:18

##### You yourselves

Here "yourselves" is used for emphasis.

##### I set foot in Asia

"I entered Asia"

##### how I always spent my time with you

"how I always conducted myself when I was with you"

#### Acts 20:19

##### lowliness of mind

"humility" or "humbleness"

##### with tears

"with crying as I served the Lord"

##### in trials that happened to me

"while God was testing me"

##### of the Jews

"of some of the Jews"

#### Acts 20:20

##### You know how I did not keep back from declaring to you

"You know how I was never silent, but I always declared to you"

##### from house to house

"I also taught when I was in your homes"

#### Acts 20:21

##### about repentance toward God and of faith in our Lord Jesus

"that they need to repent before God and believe in our Lord Jesus Christ"

##### our Lord Jesus

The word "our" refers to Paul and the elders to whom he is speaking.

#### Acts 20:22

##### compelled by the Spirit

"because the Spirit compels me to go there"

##### not knowing what will happen to me there

"and I do not know what will happen to me there"

#### Acts 20:23

##### chains and afflictions await me

"people will put me in prison and cause me to suffer"

#### Acts 20:24

##### if only I may finish the race and complete the ministry that I received from the Lord Jesus

"so that I may complete the work that the Lord Jesus has commanded me to do"

##### to testify to the gospel of the grace of God

"to tell people the good news about God's grace." This is the ministry that Paul received from Jesus.

#### Acts 20:25

##### I know that you all

"I know that all of you"

##### among whom I went about proclaiming the kingdom

"to whom I preached the message about God's reign as king" or "to whom I preached about how God will show himself as king"

##### will see my face no more

"will not see me anymore on this earth"

#### Acts 20:26

##### I am innocent of the blood of any man

"I am not responsible for anyone whom God judges guilty of sin because they did not trust in Jesus"

##### any man

"any person"

#### Acts 20:27

##### For I did not hold back from declaring to you

"For I certainly declared to you"

#### Acts 20:28

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true," referring to all that Paul has said so far in his speech about his leaving them.

##### the flock of which the Holy Spirit has appointed you overseers. Be careful to shepherd the church of God

"the group of believers the Holy spirit has entrusted to you. Be sure to take care of the church of God"

##### the church of God, which he purchased with his own blood

"the people Christ saved from their sins by shedding his blood on the cross"

##### his own blood

Here "blood" stands for Christ's death.

#### Acts 20:29

##### vicious wolves will come in among you and will not spare the flock

"many enemies will come among you and try to harm the community of believers"

#### Acts 20:30

##### to draw away the disciples after them

"in order to convince people who are disciples of Christ to become his disciples instead"

#### Acts 20:31

##### be on guard

"be awake and alert" or "watch out." Christian leaders being alert about anyone that may harm the community of believers is spoken of as if they were guards in an army watching out for the enemy army.

##### Remember that

"Continue to remember that" or "Do not forget that"

##### for three years I never stopped warning ... night and day

Paul taught them over the space of three years, but not necessarily every day for three years.

##### I never stopped warning ... you

"I warned ... you as often as I could"

##### with tears

Here "tears" refers to Paul's crying because of the strong emotion of concern he felt while he was warning the people.

#### Acts 20:32

##### I commit you to God and to the word of his grace

"I ask God to take care of you and to help you to keep believing the message I spoke to you about his grace"

##### which is able to build you up

"which is able to make become stronger and stronger in your faith"

##### to give you the inheritance

"God will give you the inheritance"

##### the inheritance

The blessings that God gives believers are spoken of as if they were money or property that a child inherits from his father.

#### Acts 20:33

##### I coveted no man's silver

"I did not desire someone's silver" or "I did not want for myself anyone's silver"

##### man's silver, gold, or clothing

Clothing was considered a treasure; the more you had, the richer you were.

#### Acts 20:34

##### You yourselves

The word "yourselves" is used here to add emphasis.

##### these hands served my own needs

"I worked to earn money and pay for my own expenses"

#### Acts 20:35

##### you should help the weak by laboring

"you should work so as to have money to help people who cannot earn it for themselves"

##### the weak

"weak persons" or "those who are weak"

##### the words of the Lord Jesus

Here, "words" refers to what Jesus has said.

##### It is more blessed to give than to receive

This means a person receives the favor of God and experiences more joy when he gives to other people rather than always receiving from other people.

#### Acts 20:36

##### he knelt down and prayed

It was a common custom to kneel down while praying. It was a sign of humility before God.

#### Acts 20:37

##### embraced Paul

"hugged him closely" or "put their arms around him"

##### kissed him

Kissing someone on the cheek is an expression of brotherly or friendly love in the Middle East.

#### Acts 20:38

##### they would never see his face again

"they would not see him anymore on this earth"

## Chapter 1

#### Romans 1:1

##### Paul, a servant of Jesus Christ

"I, Paul, write this letter. I am a servant of Jesus Christ." Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter.

##### Christ, called to be an apostle and set apart for the gospel of God

"Christ. God called me to be an apostle and chose me to tell people about the gospel"

#### Romans 1:2

##### which he promised beforehand

"which God promised long ago"

#### Romans 1:3

##### his Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### who was a descendant of David according to the flesh

"who is a descendant of David according to the physical nature" or "who was born a descendant of David"

#### Romans 1:4

##### he was declared with power to be the Son of God

"God declared with power that Jesus Christ is the Son of God". This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### by the resurrection from the dead

"when Jesus Christ was raised from the dead" or "by God raising him from death to life"

##### Spirit of holiness

This refers to the Holy Spirit.

#### Romans 1:5

##### we have received grace and apostleship

"God gave us grace and made us apostles" or "God gave me the privilege of being an apostle. "

##### for obedience of faith among all the nations, for the sake of his name

"in order to teach all nations to obey because of their faith in him"

#### Romans 1:7

##### To all in Rome who are beloved of God and called to be his holy people

"I am writing this letter to all of you in Rome whom God loves and has chosen to become his people"

##### Grace to you and peace

"May God give you grace and peace"

##### God our Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Romans 1:9

##### God is my witness ... of how continually I make mention of you

God sees ... how constantly I pray for you

##### in the gospel of his Son

by preaching the good news about his Son

##### his Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Romans 1:10

##### I always request in my prayers that ... I may at last be successful ... in coming to you

"Every time I pray, I ask God that ... I may finally succeed ... in coming to visit you"

##### by any means

"in whatever way God allows"

##### now by the will of God

"now, because God desires it,"

#### Romans 1:12

##### That is, I long to be mutually encouraged among you, through each other's faith, yours and mine

"I mean that I want us to encourage each other by sharing our experiences of faith in Jesus"

#### Romans 1:13

##### I do not want you to be uninformed

"I want you to know"

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### but I was hindered until now

"but until now, something has always prevented me"

##### in order to have some fruit among you, just as I have had among the rest of the Gentiles

"so that my work may bear spiritual fruit among you, just as it has among the other Gentiles

#### Romans 1:14

##### I am a debtor both to

"I am obligated both to " or "I have a duty to preach both to"

#### Romans 1:16

##### it is the power of God for salvation for everyone who believes

"it is through the gospel that God powerfully saves those who trust in Him"

##### for the Jew first and for the Greek

"for Jewish people first and also for Greek people"

#### Romans 1:17

##### For in it God's righteousness is revealed from faith to faith

"For the gospel reveals that righteousness from God is from from faith to faith

##### as it has been written

"as the Scriptures say"

##### The righteous will live by faith

"Those who are righteous will live by faith". Paul quotes from Habakkuk 2:4.

#### Romans 1:18

##### the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of people

"God reveals from heaven how angry he is with people who are ungodly and do unrighteous deeds"

##### hold back the truth

"hide the true information about God"

#### Romans 1:19

##### that which is known about God is visible to them

"they can know about God because of what they can plainly see"

##### For God has enlightened them

"For God has given them light to know what he is like"

#### Romans 1:20

##### his invisible qualities, namely his eternal power and divine nature, have been clearly seen

"people have clearly understood God's invisible qualities, namely his eternal power and divine nature"

##### namely his eternal power and divine nature

"that is, that his power is eternal and he is truly God"

##### having been discerned in the things that have been made

"because people have understood those qualities by seeing the things that God has made"

##### they are without excuse

"people do not have an excuse" or "these people can never say that they did not know"

#### Romans 1:21

##### became foolish in their thoughts

"began to think foolish things"

##### their senseless hearts were darkened

"their foolish hearts became dark with lack of understanding"

#### Romans 1:23

##### They exchanged the glory of the imperishable God for the likenesses of an image of perishable man

"They rejected the glory of the God who never dies and chose images that look like human beings, who die"

##### of birds, of four-footed beasts, and of creeping things

"or that look like birds, four-footed beasts, and animals that crawl"

#### Romans 1:24

##### God delivered them over to

"God allowed them to indulge in"

##### the lusts of their hearts for uncleanness

"the morally impure things they greatly desired"

##### for their bodies to be dishonored among themselves

"and they committed sexually immoral and degrading acts"

#### Romans 1:25

##### who worshiped and served the creation

"who worshiped and served things that God created"

#### Romans 1:26

##### God delivered them over to dishonorable lusts

"God allowed them to do all the dishonorable things they very much wanted to do"

##### exchanged natural relations for those that were unnatural

"rejected natural sexual relations and chose unnatural sexual relations"

#### Romans 1:27

##### burned in their lust for one another

"had strong sexual desire for other men"

##### committed shameless acts with men

"committed acts with men for which they should have been ashamed"

##### and received in themselves the penalty they deserved for their error

"and God punished them justly for the wrong they committed"

#### Romans 1:28

##### And just as they did not approve of having God in their awareness

"And just as they did not think it was necessary to know God"

##### he gave them up to a corrupted mind

"God allowed their immoral minds to completely control them"

##### not proper

"sinful"

#### Romans 1:29

##### They have been filled with all

"They have a strong desire for all" or "They strongly desire to do deeds of"

##### They are full of envy, murder, strife, deceit, and evil intentions

"They envy, murder, fight, deceive others and want to do evil things"

#### Romans 1:30

##### slanderers

A slanderer says false things about another person in order to damage that person's reputation.

##### inventing ways of doing evil

"thinking of new ways to do evil things to others"

#### Romans 1:32

##### They understand the ordinance of God

"They know God's judgment"

##### that those who practice such things are deserving of death

"that those who do those things deserve to die"

## Chapter 2

#### Romans 2:1

##### you person, you who judge

"any of you who judge others"

##### for in things for which you judge the other person, you condemn yourself

"because you condemn yourself in the things that you judge other people for"

#### Romans 2:2

##### But we know

Here the pronoun "we" may include those to whom Paul is writing.

##### God's judgment is according to truth when it falls on those who practice such things

"God judges rightly when he judges those who do those kinds of things"

#### Romans 2:3

##### consider this

"think about what I am going to tell you"

##### Will you escape from the judgment of God?

"You will certainly not escape God's judgment!". This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis.

#### Romans 2:4

##### Or do you think so little of the riches of his kindness, his delayed punishment, and his patience?

"You act like it does not matter that God is so kind and patient and that he is not quick does not punish.". Paul uses this question to rebuke the people who sin and yet judge others.

##### Do you not know that his kindness is meant to lead you to repentance?

"You should know that God is kind to you so that you will repent!"

#### Romans 2:5

##### But it is to the extent of your hardness and unrepentant heart

"But because you are stubborn and refuse to repent"

##### you are storing up for yourself wrath

"you are making your punishment worse". The longer they go without repenting, the more severely God will punish them.

##### on the day of wrath ... the day of the revelation of God's righteous judgment

"when God will show everyone that he is angry and that he judges all people fairly"

#### Romans 2:6

##### pay back

"give a fair reward or punishment"

##### to every person according to his actions

"to each person according to what that person has done"

#### Romans 2:7

##### who according to the perseverance of good deeds

who, by persevering and doing good deeds

##### have sought glory, honor, and incorruptibility

"have tried to get glory, honor, and the ability to never decay" or "have tried to get glory, honor, and the ability to never die"

#### Romans 2:8

##### self-seeking

"selfish" or "only concerned with what makes themselves happy"

##### wrath and fierce anger will come

"there will be wrath and fierce anger" or "God will show his terrible anger"

#### Romans 2:9

##### on every human soul that has practiced evil

"upon every person who has done evil"

##### evil, to the Jew first, and also to the Greek

"evil. He will judge the Jewish people first, and then those people who are not Jewish"

#### Romans 2:10

##### But glory, honor, and peace will come

"But God will praise, honor, and give peace"

##### good, to the Jew first, and also to the Greek

"good. God will reward the Jewish people first, and then those people who are not Jewish"

#### Romans 2:11

##### For there is no partiality with God

"For God treats all people the same"

#### Romans 2:12

##### without the law will also perish without the law

"without knowing the law of Moses will certainly still die spiritually"

##### as many as have sinned

"all those who have sinned"

#### Romans 2:13

##### it is not the hearers of the law

"it is not those who only hear the law of Moses"

##### who are righteous before God

"whom God considers righteous"

##### but it is the doers of the law

"but it is those who obey the law of Moses"

##### who will be justified

"whom God will accept"

#### Romans 2:14

##### For

This verse is the beginning of an interruption of Paul's main argument, in which he gives the reader extra information. If you have a way to mark an interruption like this in your language, you can use it here.

##### a law to themselves ... do not have the law

"have God's laws already inside them ... actually do not have the law"

##### they do not have the law

"they do not actually have the laws that God gave to Moses"

#### Romans 2:15

##### that the actions required by the law are written in their hearts

"that God has written on their hearts what the law requires them to do" or "that they know the actions that God wants them to do according to his law"

##### bears witness to them

"tells them if they are disobeying or obeying God's law"

#### Romans 2:16

##### when God will judge

"This will happen when God judges"

#### Romans 2:17

##### rest upon the law

"rely on the law of Moses"

#### Romans 2:18

##### know his will

"and know God's will"

##### because you have been instructed from the law

"because people have taught you what is right from the law" or "because you have learned from the law"

#### Romans 2:19

##### that you yourself are a guide to the blind, a light to those who are in darkness

"that because you teach the law, you yourself are like a guide to blind people, and you are like a light to people who are lost in the dark"

#### Romans 2:20

##### a teacher of little children

"you teach those who do not know the law"

##### and that you have in the law the form of knowledge and of the truth

"and you are sure you understand the truth that God has given in the law"

#### Romans 2:22

##### do you rob temples

"do you steal items from local pagan temples to sell and make a profit" or "do you keep back from the Jerusalem temple all the money that is due to God"

#### Romans 2:23

##### You who boast in the law, do you dishonor God by transgressing the law?

"It is wicked that you claim to be proud of the law while at the same time you disobey it and bring shame to God!"

#### Romans 2:24

##### the name of God is blasphemed among the Gentiles

"many Gentiles blaspheme the name of God"

##### name of God

The word "name" refers to the entirety of God, not just his name.

#### Romans 2:25

##### For circumcision is profitable to you

"I say all of this because it is good for you to be circumcised"

##### if you are a transgressor of the law

"if you do not obey the commandments found in the law"

##### your circumcision becomes uncircumcision

"it is as though you were no longer circumcised"

#### Romans 2:26

##### keeps the requirements of the law

"obeys what God commands in the law"

##### will not his uncircumcision be considered as circumcision?

"God will consider him as circumcised."

#### Romans 2:27

##### And will not the one who is naturally uncircumcised condemn you ... the law?

"The one who is not physically circumcised will condemn you ... the law."

#### Romans 2:28

##### outwardly

This refers to Jewish rituals, such as circumcision, which people can see.

##### merely outward in the flesh

This refers to the physical change to a man's body when someone circumcises him.

##### flesh

"body"

#### Romans 2:29

##### inwardly

This refers to the values and motivations of the person whom God has transformed.

##### of the heart

Here "heart" refers to the inner person.

##### in the Spirit, not in the letter

"through the work of the Holy Spirit, not because you know the Scriptures"

## Chapter 3

#### Romans 3:1

##### Then what advantage does the Jew have? And what is the benefit of circumcision?

"Some people might say, 'Then what advantage does the Jew have? And what is the benefit of circumcision?'" or "Some people might say, 'If that is true, then the Jews do not have any advantage, and there is no benefit in being circumcised.'"

#### Romans 3:2

##### It is great in every way

"But there is great advantage to being a Jew"

##### First of all

"First in order of time" or "Most certainly" or "Most importantly."

##### the Jews were entrusted with revelation from God

"God gave his words that contain his promises to the Jews"

#### Romans 3:3

##### For what if some Jews were without faith? Will their unbelief nullify God's faithfulness?

"Some Jews have not been faithful to God. We should not conclude from this that God will not fulfill his promise."

#### Romans 3:4

##### May it never be

This expression strongly denies that this could happen. You may have an expression in your language that you could use here. "That is not possible!" or "Certainly not!"

##### let God be found to be true

"God always does what he has promised"

##### even though every man is a liar

"even if every man were a liar"

##### As it has been written

"The Scriptures themselves agree with what I am saying"

##### That you might be shown to be righteous in your words, and that you might prevail when you come into judgment

"Everyone must acknowledge that what you say is true, and you will always win your case when anyone accuses you"

#### Romans 3:5

##### But if our unrighteousness shows the righteousness of God, what can we say? Can we say that God is unrighteous to bring his wrath upon us?

"Some people say that since our unrighteousness shows God's righteousness, then God is unrighteous when he punishes us."

##### to bring his wrath upon us

"to bring his punishment upon us" or "to punish us"

##### I am using a human argument

"I am saying here what some people say"

#### Romans 3:6

##### May it never be

"We must never say that God is unrighteous"

##### For then how would God judge the world?

"We all know that God will in fact judge the world!"

##### the world

"the people who live in the world"

#### Romans 3:7

##### But if through my lie the truth of God increases his glory, why am I still being judged as a sinner?

Here Paul imagines someone continuing to reject the Christian gospel. That adversary argues that his sin shows that God is righteous, so God should not declare that person guilty of sin on judgment day.

##### increases his glory

"causes people to praise God for his glory"

#### Romans 3:8

##### Why not say ... come"?

"I might as well be saying ... come!'"

##### as we are slandered as saying

"as some lie to others, claiming that this what we are saying"

##### Their condemnation is just

God will be acting justly when he condemns these enemies of Paul for telling lies about what Paul has been teaching.

#### Romans 3:9

##### What then? Are we excusing ourselves?

"We Jews should not try to imagine we are going to escape God's judgment, just because we are Jewish!"

#### Romans 3:10

##### This is as it is written

"This is as the prophets have written in the Scriptures"

#### Romans 3:11

##### there is no one who understands

"no one really understands what is right"

##### there is no one who seeks God

"no one sincerely tries to have a right relationship with God"

#### Romans 3:12

##### They have all turned away

"They have all turned away from God"

#### Romans 3:13

##### Their ... Their

The word "their" refers to the "Jews and Greeks" of Romans 3:9.

##### Their tongues have deceived

"People speak lies"

##### The poison of snakes is under their lips

"Their evil words injure people just like the poison of a venomous snake"

#### Romans 3:14

##### Their mouths are full of cursing and bitterness

"They often speak curses and cruel words"

#### Romans 3:15

##### Their feet are swift to pour out blood

"They are in a hurry to harm and murder people"

#### Romans 3:16

##### Destruction and suffering are in their paths

"They try to destroy others and cause them to suffer"

#### Romans 3:18

##### There is no fear of God before their eyes

"They refuse to give God the respect he deserves"

#### Romans 3:19

##### whatever the law says, it speaks to

"everything that the law says people should do is for"

##### the ones who are under the law

"those who must obey the law"

##### so that every mouth may be shut

"so that no people will be able to say anything valid to defend themselves"

##### the whole world held accountable to God

"that God can declare everyone in the world guilty"

#### Romans 3:20

##### flesh

Here "flesh" refers to all human beings.

##### through the law comes the knowledge of sin

"when someone knows God's law, he realizes that he has sinned"

#### Romans 3:21

##### now

The word "now" refers to the time since Jesus came to the earth.

##### apart from the law the righteousness of God has been revealed

"God has made known a way to be right with him without obeying the law"

##### to which the Law and the Prophets bear witness

"What Moses and the prophets wrote confirms this"

#### Romans 3:22

##### the righteousness of God through faith in Jesus Christ

"being right with God through trusting Jesus Christ"

##### For there is no distinction

"There is no difference at all between the Jews and the Gentiles"

#### Romans 3:23

##### come short of the glory of God

"have failed to be like God"

#### Romans 3:24

##### they are freely justified by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus

"God makes them right with himself as a free gift, because Christ Jesus sets them free"

##### they are freely justified

"they are made right with God without earning it"

#### Romans 3:25

##### in his blood

"in his death as a sacrifice for sins"

##### his disregard

Possible meanings are 1) his ignoring or 2) his forgiving.

#### Romans 3:26

##### This was to show his righteousness at this present time

"God did this to show at this present time that he is righteous"

##### so he might be just and the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus

"By this he shows that he is both just and the the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus"

##### the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus

"the one who declares everyone righteous who has faith in Jesus"

#### Romans 3:27

##### Where then is boasting? It is excluded

"So there is no way that we can boast that God favors us because we obeyed those laws. God does not allow it"

##### Through what kind of law? Of works? No, but through a law of faith

"On what grounds does God exclude boasting? Does he exclude it through a law of works? No, he excludes it through a law of faith"

##### Through what kind of law? Of works?

"Let me tell you what kind of law he excludes it through. It is not through a law of works."

#### Romans 3:28

##### a person is justified by faith

"God justifies a person because he has faith"

##### without works of the law

"even if he has done no works of the law"

#### Romans 3:29

##### Or is God the God of Jews only?

"You who are Jews certainly should not think that you are the only ones whom God will accept!"

##### Is he not also the God of Gentiles? Yes, of Gentiles also

"He will also accept non-Jews, that is, Gentiles"

#### Romans 3:30

##### he will justify the circumcision by faith, and the uncircumcision through faith

"God will make both Jews and non-Jews right with himself through their faith in Christ"

#### Romans 3:31

##### Do we then nullify the law through faith?

"Someone might say that we can ignore the law because we have faith."

##### we uphold the law

"we obey the law"

##### we

This pronoun refers to Paul, other believers, and the readers.

## Chapter 4

#### Romans 4:1

##### What then will we say that Abraham, our forefather according to the flesh, found?

"This is what Abraham our physical ancestor found."

#### Romans 4:3

##### For what does the scripture say?

"For this is what is in the scripture:"

##### "Abraham believed God and it was counted to him as righteousness"

"God considered Abraham to be a righteous person because he believed". Paul quotes Genesis 15:6.

#### Romans 4:4

##### his wage is not counted as a gift

"no one counts what his employer pays him as a gift from his employer"

##### but as what is owed

"but as what his employer owes him"

#### Romans 4:5

##### in the one who justifies

"in God, who justifies"

##### his faith is counted as righteousness

"God considers that person's faith as righteousness" or "God considers that person righteous because of his faith"

#### Romans 4:7

##### whose lawless deeds are forgiven ... whose sins are covered

"who have broken the law, but the Lord has forgiven ... whose sins the Lord has covered". See Psalm 32:1 and Psalm 32:2.

#### Romans 4:9

##### Then is this blessing pronounced only on those of the circumcision, or also on those of the uncircumcision?

"I want to show you how it is that God blesses not only those who are circumcised, but also those who are not circumcised"

##### those of the circumcision

"the Jews"

##### those of the uncircumcision

"the Gentiles"

##### Faith was counted to Abraham as righteousness

"God considered the faith of Abraham as righteousness"

#### Romans 4:10

##### How was it counted to him? Was it before or after he had been circumcised? It was not after, but before!

"This is when righteousness was counted to him: it was not after he had been circumcised, but before!"

##### How was it counted to him?

"How did God consider Abraham to be righteous?"

##### It was not after, but before

"It happened before he was circumcised, not after he was circumcised"

#### Romans 4:11

##### a seal of the righteousness that he had by faith while he was still uncircumcised

"a visible sign that God considered him righteous because he had believed in God before he was circumcised"

##### so that righteousness would be counted to them

"so that God would consider them righteous"

#### Romans 4:12

##### He is also the father of the circumcised

Here "the circumcision" refers to Jews.

##### who also walk in the footsteps of the faith that our father Abraham had

"who follow our father Abraham's example in the faith that he had" or "who have faith as our father Abraham did"

#### Romans 4:13

##### law but through the righteousness of faith

"law, but the promise came through faith, which God considers as righteousness"

#### Romans 4:14

##### heirs

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member.

##### if those who live by the law are to be the heirs

"if those who obey the law are the ones who will inherit the earth"

##### faith is made empty, and the promise does nothing

"faith has no value, and the promise is meaningless"

#### Romans 4:15

##### there is no transgression

"no one has disobeyed the law"

#### Romans 4:16

##### it is by faith

"it is by faith that we receive the promise" or "we receive the promise by faith"

##### in order that the promise may rest on grace

"so that what he promised might be a free gift"

##### those who are under the law

This refers to the Jewish people, who were obligated to obey the law of Moses.

##### those who share the faith of Abraham

"those who believe as Abraham did"

##### father of us all

Here the word "us" refers to Paul and includes all Jewish and non-Jewish believers in Christ. Abraham is the physical ancestor of the Jewish people, but he is also the spiritual father of those who have faith.

#### Romans 4:17

##### as it is written

"as someone has written in the Scriptures"

##### I have appointed you

Here the word "you" is singular and refers to Abraham.

##### calls the things that do not exist into existence

"creates everything from nothing"

#### Romans 4:18

##### In hope he believed against hope

"Even though it seemed to be impossible for him to have descendants, Abraham believed God and confidently expected"

##### according to what he had been told

"just as God said to Abraham"

##### So will your descendants be

"You will have more descendants than you can count"

#### Romans 4:21

##### He was fully convinced

"Abraham was completely sure"

##### he was also able to accomplish

"God was able to do"

#### Romans 4:22

##### Therefore this was also "counted to him as righteousness."

"Therefore God counted Abraham's belief as righteousness" or "Therefore God considered Abraham righteous because Abraham believed him"

#### Romans 4:23

##### for his sake alone

"for Abraham only"

##### it was counted to him

"God counted righteousness to him" or "God considered him righteous"

#### Romans 4:24

##### for us

The word "us" refers to Paul and includes all believers in Christ.

##### it will be counted to us who believe in him

"God will count righteousness to us who believe in him" or "God will consider us righteous if we believe in him"

##### him who raised Jesus our Lord from the dead

"him who caused Jesus our Lord to live again"

#### Romans 4:25

##### who was delivered up for our trespasses and was raised for our justification

"whom God gave over to enemies for our trespasses and whom God brought back to life so he could make us right with him"

## Chapter 5

#### Romans 5:1

##### we ... our

All occurrences of "we" and "our" refer to all believers and should be inclusive.

##### Lord

Here "Lord" means that Jesus is God.

#### Romans 5:2

##### Through him we also have our access by faith into this grace in which we stand

"Because we trust in Jesus, God allows us to come into his presence"

##### we boast in the hope of the glory of God

"we rejoice because we confidently expect to share in the glory of God"

#### Romans 5:3

##### tribulation brings about perseverance

"suffering helps us learn to endure"

#### Romans 5:4

##### Perseverance produces character

"We develop character when we endure hardship"

##### character

the desire and ability to do what is right

##### character produces hope

"character helps us to trust God"

#### Romans 5:5

##### our ... us

These words refer to all believers and should be inclusive.

##### hope does not make ashamed

"we are very confident that we will receive the things that we wait for"

##### make ashamed

"make us ashamed"

##### because the love of God has been poured into our hearts

"because he has loved us greatly" or "because God has shown us how much he loves us"

#### Romans 5:7

##### For one will hardly die for a righteous person

"It is hard to find someone who is willing to die, even for a righteous person"

##### though perhaps someone would dare to die for a good person

"but you might find someone who is willing to die for such a good person"

#### Romans 5:9

##### Much more, then, now that we are justified by his blood, we will be saved

"Now that we are justified by his blood, we will more certainly be saved"

##### now that we are justified by his blood

"now that God has made us right with himself because of the sacrificial death of Jesus on the cross"

##### saved

God forgives us and rescues us from being punished in hell for our sin.

##### the wrath of God

"God's punishment"

#### Romans 5:10

##### his Son ... his life

"God's Son ... the life of God's Son"

##### we were reconciled to God through the death of his Son

"God allowed us to have a peaceful relationship with him because his Son died for us"

##### Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### after having been reconciled

"now that God has made us his friends again"

#### Romans 5:12

##### through one man sin entered ... death entered through sin

Paul describes sin as a dangerous thing that came into the world through the actions of "one man," Adam. This sin then became an opening through which death, pictured here as another dangerous thing, also came into the world.

#### Romans 5:13

##### For until the law, sin was in the world

"People in the world sinned before God gave his law to Moses"

##### but there is no accounting for sin when there is no law

"but God recorded no sin against the law before he gave the law"

#### Romans 5:14

##### death reigned from Adam until Moses

"people continued to die from the time of Adam until the time of Moses as a consequence of their sin"

##### Moses, even over those who did not sin like Adam's disobedience, who is

"Moses. Even people whose sins were different from Adam's continued to die, Adam being"

##### who is a pattern of him who was to come

Adam was a pattern of Christ, who appeared much later. He had much in common with him.

#### Romans 5:15

##### how much more did the grace of God and the gift by the grace of the one man, Jesus Christ, abound for the many

"even more through the man Jesus Christ, who died for us all, did God kindly offer us this gift of everlasting life, although we do not deserve it"

#### Romans 5:16

##### For the gift is not like the outcome of that one man's sin

"The gift is not like the result of Adam's sin"

##### The judgment followed one trespass and brought condemnation

"After one man trespassed, God judged all people and condemned them to be punished" or "God declared that all people deserved to have him punish them because one man committed one sin"

##### but the gift followed many trespasses and brought justification

"but after people trespassed many times, God gave the gift and justified them" or "but the gift is greater because he gave it after many people had committed many sins, and by giving the gift he justified them"

#### Romans 5:17

##### trespass of the one

This refers to the sin of Adam.

##### death ruled

"everyone died"

#### Romans 5:18

##### as one trespass led to condemnation for all people

"as all people are condemned because one person sinned against God"

##### one trespass

This refers to Adam's sin.

##### condemnation for all people

"all people deserve God's punishment for sin"

##### through the one act of righteousness came justification and life for all people

"one act of righteousness allows all people to be justified and live" or "all people can be justified and live because one person did that one righteous act"

##### the one act of righteousness

This refers to Jesus's obedience to God in dying for our sins.

#### Romans 5:19

##### the many were made sinners

"many people sinned"

##### the obedience of the one

the obedience of Jesus

##### of the one will the many be made righteous

"of the one, God will make many people right with him"

#### Romans 5:20

##### the law came in

"God gave his law to Moses"

##### sin abounded

"sin increased"

##### grace abounded even more

"God continued to act even more kindly toward them, in a way that they did not deserve"

#### Romans 5:21

##### sin reigned in death ... grace might reign through righteousness for everlasting life

"as people obeyed their desire to sin and therefore had to die ... God might show grace to people and allow them to be right with him, resulting in everlasting life"

##### our Lord

Paul includes himself, his readers, and all believers.

## Chapter 6

#### Romans 6:1

##### What then will we say? Should we continue in sin so that grace may abound?

"So, what should we say about all of this? We certainly should not keep on sinning so that God will give us more and more grace!

##### we say

The pronoun "we" refers to Paul, his readers, and other people.

#### Romans 6:2

##### We who died to sin, how can we still live in it?

"We are now like dead people on whom sin has no effect! So we certainly should not keep on sinning!"

#### Romans 6:3

##### Do you not know that as many as were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death?

"Remember, when someone baptized us to show that we have a relationship with Christ, this also shows that we died with Christ on the cross!

#### Romans 6:4

##### We were buried, then, with him through baptism into death

"When someone baptized us, it is just like that person buried us with Christ in the tomb"

##### just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, so also we might walk in newness of life

"just as the Father brought Jesus back to life after he died, we might have new spiritual life and obey God"

##### the dead

All those who have died. To be raised from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

#### Romans 6:5

##### become united with him in the likeness of his death ... be united with his resurrection

"died with him ... come back to life with him". Paul compares our union with Christ to death. Those who are joined with Christ in death will share in his resurrection.

#### Romans 6:6

##### our old man was crucified with him

"our sinful person died on the cross with Jesus"

##### old man

This means the person who once was, but who does not exist now.

##### the body of sin

"our sinful nature"

##### might be destroyed

"might die"

##### we should no longer be enslaved to sin

"sin should no longer enslave us" or "we should no longer be controlled by sin"

#### Romans 6:7

##### He who has died is declared righteous with respect to sin

"When God declares a person right with him, that person is no longer controlled by sin"

#### Romans 6:8

##### we have died with Christ

Here "died" refers to the fact that believers are no longer controlled by sin.

#### Romans 6:9

##### We know that since Christ has been raised from the dead

"We know since God brought Christ back to life after he died"

##### death no longer rules over him

"He cannot ever die again"

#### Romans 6:10

##### he died once for all

Possible meanings are 1) he died once, and he will not die again, nor will anyone else need to die, or 2) it is true now and will be true for all time that he died.

#### Romans 6:11

##### consider yourselves to be

"think of yourselves as" or "see yourselves as"

##### dead to sin

"as if you were dead to the power of sin"

##### dead to sin, but alive to God

"dead to the power of sin, but living to honor God"

##### alive to God in Christ Jesus

"living to honor God through the power Christ Jesus gives you"

#### Romans 6:12

##### do not let sin rule in your mortal body

"Do not let sinful desires control you"

##### your mortal body

"you"

##### so that you obey its lusts

Obeying the mortal body's lusts would be the result of letting sin rule in the body. That is why Paul commands people not to let sin rule in their mortal body—so they do not obey its lusts.

#### Romans 6:13

##### Do not present the members of your bodies to sin, to be tools used for unrighteousness

"Do not offer yourselves to sin so that you do what is not right"

##### But present yourselves to God as those who have been brought from death to life

"But offer yourselves to God because he has given you new spiritual life" or "But offer yourselves to God as those who had died and are now alive"

##### present the members of your bodies to God as tools to be used for righteousness

"let God use you for what is pleasing to him"

#### Romans 6:14

##### Do not allow sin to rule over you

"Do not let sinful desires control what you do" or "Do not allow yourselves to do the sinful things you want to do"

##### For you are not under law

"For you are no longer bound to the law of Moses, which could not give you the power to stop sinning"

##### but under grace

"but you are bound to God's grace, which does give you the power to stop sinning"

#### Romans 6:15

##### What then? Are we to sin because we are not under law, but under grace? May it never be

"However, just because we are bound to grace instead of the law of Moses certainly does not mean we are allowed to sin"

##### May it never be

"We would never want that to happen!" or "May God help me not to do that!"

#### Romans 6:16

##### Do you not know that if you present yourselves as slaves, you are slaves to the one whom you obey?

"You should know that if you present yourselves as slaves to anyone, you are slaves to whomever you obey!"

#### Romans 6:17

##### For you were slaves of sin

"you were like slaves of sin"

##### but you have obeyed from the heart

"but you truly obeyed"

##### the pattern of teaching that you were given

"the teaching that Christian leaders gave you"

#### Romans 6:18

##### You have been made free from sin

"Christ has freed you from sin" or "You have been made free from sin's control over you"

##### you have been made slaves of righteousness

"you have been made like slaves of righteousness"

#### Romans 6:19

##### I speak like a man

"I am speaking about this in human terms" or "I am using examples from everyday life"

##### because of the weakness of your flesh

"because you do not fully understand spiritual things"

##### presented the members of your bodies as slaves to uncleanness and to lawlessness

"offered yourselves as slaves to everything that is evil and not pleasing to God"

##### present the members of your bodies as slaves to righteousness for sanctification

"offer yourselves as slaves to what is right before God so that he might set you apart and give you the power to serve him"

#### Romans 6:20

##### you were free from righteousness

"you behaved as though you did not have to do what was right"

#### Romans 6:21

##### At that time, what fruit then did you have of the things of which you are now ashamed?

"Nothing good came from those things that now cause you shame." or "You gained nothing by doing those things that now cause you shame."

#### Romans 6:22

##### But now that you have been made free from sin and are enslaved to God

"But now that you have become free from sin and have become God's slaves" or "But now that God has freed you from sin and made you his slaves"

##### But now that you have been made free from sin

"But now that God has made you able not to sin"

##### and are enslaved to God

"and God has made you able to serve him"

##### you have your fruit for sanctification

"the benefit is your sanctification" or "the benefit is that you live in a holy way"

##### The result is eternal life

"The result of all of this is that you will live forever with God"

#### Romans 6:23

##### For the wages of sin are death

"For if you continue sinning, God will punish you with spiritual death"

##### but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord

"but God gives eternal life to those who belong to Christ Jesus our Lord"

## Chapter 7

#### Romans 7:1

##### Or do you not know, brothers ... that the law rules over a person for whatever time he lives?

"So you certainly know brothers ... that people have to obey laws only while they are alive"

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

#### Romans 7:2

##### the married woman is bound by law to the husband

"according to the law, the married woman is united to the husband"

#### Romans 7:3

##### she will be called an adulteress

"God will consider her an adulteress" or "people will call her an adulteress"

##### she is free from the law

"she does not have to obey that law"

#### Romans 7:4

##### you were also made dead to the law through the body of Christ

"you also died to the law when through Christ you died on the cross"

##### to him who was raised from the dead

"to him whom God raised from the dead" or "to him whom God caused to live again"

##### we might produce fruit for God

"we might be able to do things pleasing to God"

#### Romans 7:5

##### to bear fruit for death

"which resulted in spiritual death" or "the outcome of which was our own spiritual death"

#### Romans 7:6

##### we have been released from the law

"God has released us from the law"

##### to that by which we were bound

"to the law, which bound us"

##### the letter

"the law of Moses"

#### Romans 7:7

##### May it never be

"Of course that is not true!"

##### sin

"my desire to sin"

#### Romans 7:8

##### coveting

This word includes both the desire to have what belongs to other people and wrong sexual desire.

##### apart from the law, sin was dead

"if there were no law, there would be no breaking of the law, so there would be no sin"

#### Romans 7:9

##### sin regained life

"I realized that I was sinning" or "I strongly desired to sin"

#### Romans 7:10

##### The commandment that was to bring life turned out to be death for me

"God gave me the commandment so I would live, but it killed me instead"

#### Romans 7:11

##### For sin took the opportunity through the commandment and deceived me. Through the commandment it killed me

"Because I wanted to sin, I deceived myself into thinking that I could sin and obey the commandment at the same time, but God punished me for disobeying the commandment by separating me from him"

##### took the opportunity through the commandment

Paul is comparing sin to a person who can act.

##### it killed me

"it separated me from God"

#### Romans 7:12

##### the law is holy

Possible meanings are that it is holy because 1) it comes from God or 2) it reveals God's true nature.

#### Romans 7:13

##### what is good

This refers to God's law.

##### become death to me

"cause me to die"

##### brought about death in me

"separated me from God". Paul speaks of being separated from God as if he were literally dead.

##### through the commandment

"because I disobeyed the commandment"

#### Romans 7:15

##### For what I do, I do not really understand

"I am not sure why I do some of the things that I do"

##### what I want to do, I do not do

"I do not always do what I want to do"

##### what I hate, I do

"the things that I know are not good are the things that I sometimes do"

#### Romans 7:16

##### I agree with the law that the law is good

"I agree with God that the law is good"

#### Romans 7:20

##### rather sin that lives in me

Paul speaks of "sin" as if it were alive and living inside him.

#### Romans 7:21

##### this law: When I want to do good, evil is present with me

The words "this law" refer to the natural human desire to rebel against God and disobey him. Paul calls this a law because he has observed that this is the way people live. It is not a collection of written commands.

##### evil is present with me

Paul speaks of evil here as if it were alive and living with him.

#### Romans 7:22

##### with my inner person

"with my heart" or "with my soul"

#### Romans 7:23

##### a different law

These words refer to the natural human desire to rebel against God and disobey him. Paul calls this a law because he has observed that this is the way people live. It is not a collection of written commands.

##### in the members of my body

"in my actions" or "in my behviors"

##### that new law in my mind

These words refer to the law of Moses, which was God's commands in written form.

#### Romans 7:24

##### Who will deliver me from this body of death?

"I want someone to set me free from the control of what my body desires!"

#### Romans 7:25

##### So then, I myself serve the law of God with my mind. However, with the flesh I serve the law of sin

"My mind chooses to please God by obeying the law of Moses, but my flesh chooses to disobey God and sin"

## Chapter 8

#### Romans 8:1

##### There is therefore now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus

"God will not condemn and punish those who are joined to Christ Jesus"

##### There is therefore now

"For that reason, there is now"

#### Romans 8:2

##### the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus

"God's Spirit in Christ Jesus"

##### has set you free from the law of sin and death

"has caused the law of sin and death to no longer control you"

##### the law of sin and death

"the law which causes sin and death"

#### Romans 8:3

##### For what the law was unable to do because it was weak through the flesh, God did

"For the law did not have the power to stop us from sinning, because the power of sin within us was too strong. But God did stop us from sinning"

##### through the flesh

"because of people's sinful nature"

##### He ... sent his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh ... an offering for sin ... he condemned sin

The Son of God forever satisfied God's holy anger against our sin by giving his own body and human life as the eternal sacrifice for sin.

##### Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### in the likeness of sinful flesh

"who looked like a sinful human being"

##### to be an offering for sin

"so that he could die as a sacrifice for our sins"

##### he condemned sin in the flesh

"in Christ's flesh God condemned sin" or "by Christ's death God broke the power of the sin"

#### Romans 8:4

##### we who walk not according to the flesh

"we who do not obey our sinful desires"

##### but according to the Spirit

"but who obey the Holy Spirit"

#### Romans 8:6

##### the mind set on the flesh ... the mind set on the Spirit

"the way sinful people think ... the way people who listen to the Holy Spirit think"

##### death

Here this means the separation of a person from God.

#### Romans 8:8

##### Those who are in the flesh

This refers to people who do what their sinful nature tells them to do.

#### Romans 8:9

##### in the flesh

"acting according to your sinful natures."

##### in the Spirit

"acting according to the Holy Spirit"

#### Romans 8:10

##### If Christ is in you

"If Christ lives in you through the Holy Spirit"

##### the body is dead with respect to sin

Possible meanings are 1) a person is spiritually dead to the power of sin or 2) the physical body will still die because of sin.

##### the spirit is alive with respect to righteousness

Possible meanings are 1) a person is spiritually alive because God has given him power to do what is right or 2) God will bring the person back to life after he dies because God is righteous and gives believers eternal life.

#### Romans 8:11

##### of him who raised ... from the dead lives

"of God, who caused Jesus to live again"

##### mortal bodies through his Spirit

"physical bodies through his Spirit" or "bodies, which will die someday, through his Spirit"

#### Romans 8:12

##### So then

"Because what I have just told you is true"

##### but not to the flesh to live according to the flesh

"but we are not debtors to the flesh, and we do not have to obey our sinful desires"

#### Romans 8:13

##### For if you live according to the flesh

"Because if you live only to please your sinful desires"

##### you are about to die

"you will certainly be separated from God"

##### but if by the Spirit you put to death the body's actions

"but if by the power of the Holy Spirit you stop obeying your sinful desires"

#### Romans 8:14

##### For as many as are led by the Spirit of God

"For all the people whom the Spirit of God leads"

##### sons of God

Here this means all believers in Jesus and is often translated as "children of God."

#### Romans 8:15

##### Abba, Father

"Abba" is "Father" in the Aramaic language.

#### Romans 8:17

##### heirs of God

"and we also will one day receive what God has promised us"

##### we are joint heirs with Christ

"we will also receive what God has promised us and Christ together"

##### that we may also be glorified with him

"that God may glorify us along with him"

#### Romans 8:18

##### I consider that ... are not worthy to be compared with

"I cannot compare ... with"

##### will be revealed

"God will make known"

#### Romans 8:19

##### the eager expectation of the creation waits for

Paul describes everything that God created as a person who eagerly waits for something.

##### for the revealing of the sons of God

"for the time when God will reveal his children"

##### sons of God

Here this means all believers in Jesus. You can also translate this as "children of God."

#### Romans 8:20

##### For the creation was subjected to futility

"For God caused what he had created to be unable to achieve what he intended"

##### not of its own will, but because of him who subjected it

"not because this is what the created things wanted, but because it is what God wanted"

##### in hope

"confidently expecting" or "confidently waiting"

#### Romans 8:21

##### the creation itself will be delivered

"God will save creation"

##### from slavery to decay

"from being like a slave to decay"

##### that it will be brought into the freedom of the glory of the children of God

"that it will become gloriously free from decay like the children of God"

#### Romans 8:22

##### For we know that the whole creation groans and labors in pain together even now

"For we know that everything that God created wants to be free and groans for it the way a woman giving birth groans for her baby to be born"

#### Romans 8:23

##### as we wait eagerly for our adoption, the redemption of our body

"as we wait eagerly for God to adopt us and redeem our bodies"

#### Romans 8:24

##### in this hope we were saved

"we were saved that we might trust God to do this"

##### this hope

The phrase "this hope" refers to the hope of our adoption, the redemption of our bodies (8:23).

##### Now hope that is seen is not hope

"If we already have what we hope for, that is not hope" or "If we have what we want, we would not say that we hope for it"

#### Romans 8:25

##### if we hope for what we do not see

"if we trust God for what we do not yet have"

#### Romans 8:26

##### inexpressible groans

"groanings that we cannot express in words"

#### Romans 8:27

##### He who searches out the hearts knows

"God, who knows what all our thoughts and feelings are, knows"

#### Romans 8:28

##### for those who are called

"for those whom God chose"

#### Romans 8:29

##### those whom he foreknew

"those whom he knew before he even created them"

##### he also predestined to be conformed

"he also planned in advance that they would be conformed"

##### to be conformed to the image of his Son

"that he would change them to be like his Son"

##### Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### that he might be the firstborn

"so that his Son would be the firstborn"

##### among many brothers

"among many brothers and sisters who belong to the family of God"

#### Romans 8:30

##### Those whom he predestined

"Those whom God made plans for in advance"

##### these he also justified

"these he also put right with himself"

##### these he also glorified

"these he will also glorify"

#### Romans 8:31

##### What, therefore, can we say about these things? If God is for us, who is against us?

"This is what we should know from all of this: since God is helping us, no one can defeat us."

#### Romans 8:32

##### He who did not spare his own Son

God the Father sent the Son of God, Jesus Christ, to the cross as the holy, infinite sacrifice necessary to satisfy God's infinite, holy nature against the sin of humanity. These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### but delivered him up

"but put him under the control of his enemies"

##### how will he not also with him freely give us all things?

"he will certainly and freely give us all things!"

#### Romans 8:33

##### Who will bring any accusation against God's chosen ones? God is the one who justifies

"No one can accuse us before God because he is the one who makes us right with him"

#### Romans 8:34

##### Who is the one who condemns?

"No one will condemn us!"

##### who is at the right hand of God

"who is at the place of honor beside God"

#### Romans 8:35

##### Who will separate us from the love of Christ?

"No one will ever separate us from the love of Christ!" or "Nothing will ever separate us from the love of Christ!"

##### Tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or hunger, or nakedness, or danger, or sword?

"Even if people cause us trouble, hurt us, take away our clothes and food, or kill us, they cannot separate us from the love of Christ."

##### Tribulation, or distress

These words both mean the same thing.

#### Romans 8:36

##### For your benefit

"For you"

##### we are killed all day long

"our enemies continually seek to kill us"

##### We were considered as sheep for the slaughter

"Our lives have no more value to them than the sheep they kill"

#### Romans 8:37

##### we are more than conquerors

"we have complete victory"

##### through the one who loved us

"because of Jesus, who loved us so much he was willing to die for us"

#### Romans 8:38

##### I have been convinced

"I am convinced"

##### governments

Possible meanings are 1) demons or 2) human kings and rulers.

##### nor powers

Possible meanings are 1) spiritual beings with power or 2) human beings with power.

## Chapter 9

#### Romans 9:1

##### my conscience bears witness with me in the Holy Spirit

"the Holy Spirit controls my conscience and confirms what I say"

#### Romans 9:2

##### that for me there is great sorrow and unceasing pain in my heart

"that I grieve very greatly and deeply"

##### great sorrow and unceasing pain

Paul uses these two expressions together to emphasize how great his emotions are.

#### Romans 9:3

##### For I could wish that I myself would be cursed and set apart from Christ for the sake of my brothers, my kinsmen according to the flesh

"I personally would be willing to let God curse me and keep me apart from Christ forever if that would help my fellow Israelites, my own people group, to believe in Christ"

#### Romans 9:4

##### They are Israelites

"They, like me, are Israelites. God chose them to be Jacob's descendants"

##### They have adoption, the glory

"They have God as their father, and they have the glory"

#### Romans 9:6

##### But it is not as though the word of God has failed

"We should know that God has kept his promises"

##### For it is not everyone in Israel who truly belongs to Israel

God did not make his promises to all the physical descendants of Israel (or Jacob), but to his spiritual descendants, that is, those who trust in Jesus.

#### Romans 9:7

##### Neither are all Abraham's descendants truly his children

"Nor are they all children of God just because they are Abraham's descendants"

#### Romans 9:8

##### the children of the flesh are not

"not all of Abraham's descendants are"

##### children of God

This refers to people who are spiritual descendants, those who have faith in Jesus.

##### children of the promise

This refers to people who will inherit the promises that God gave to Abraham.

#### Romans 9:9

##### this is the word of promise

"these are the words God used when he made the promise"

##### a son will be given to Sarah

"I will give Sarah a son"

#### Romans 9:10

##### our father

Paul refers to Isaac as "our father" because Isaac was the ancestor of Paul and of the Jewish believers in Rome.

##### had conceived

"had become pregnant"

#### Romans 9:11

##### for the children were not yet born and had not yet done anything good or bad

"before the children were born and before they had done anything, whether good or bad"

##### so that the purpose of God according to choice might stand

"so that what God wants to happen according to His choice will happen"

#### Romans 9:12

##### because of him

because of God

##### it was said to her, "The older will serve the younger."

"God said to Rebekah, 'The older son will serve the younger son'"

#### Romans 9:13

##### Jacob I loved, but Esau I hated

God loved Jacob much more than he loved Esau. He did not literally hate Esau.

#### Romans 9:14

##### What then will we say?

Paul is using the question to get the attention of his readers.

##### Is there unrighteousness with God?

"Is God unrighteous?" or "Is God unjust?"

##### May it never be

"That is not possible!" or "Certainly not!" This expression strongly denies that this could happen. You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here.

#### Romans 9:15

##### For he says to Moses

"For God said to Moses". (see Exodus 33:19)

#### Romans 9:16

##### it is not because of him who wills, nor because of him who runs

"it is not because of what people want or because they try hard"

##### nor because of him who runs

Paul speaks of a person who does good things in order to gain God's favor as if that person were running a race.

#### Romans 9:17

##### For the scripture says

"The scripture records that God said"

##### I ... my

God is referring to himself.

##### I raised you up

"I made you the powerful man that you are"

##### so that my name might be proclaimed

"that people might proclaim my name"

##### my name

"how great I am" or "who I am"

##### in all the earth

"wherever there are people"

#### Romans 9:18

##### whom he wishes, he makes stubborn

"God makes stubborn whomever he wishes to make stubborn."

#### Romans 9:19

##### You will say then to me

Paul is talking to the critics of his teaching as though he were only talking to one person. You may need to use the plural here.

##### Why does he still find fault? For who has ever withstood his will?

"He should not find fault with us. No one has ever been able to withstand his will."

##### he ... his

The words "he" and "his" here refer to God.

##### has ... withstood his will

"has ... stopped him from doing what he wanted to do"

#### Romans 9:20

##### Will what has been molded say to the one who molds it, "Why ... way?"

"What a person has molded should never say to the one who molds it, 'Why ... way?'"

##### Why did you make me this way?

"You should not have made me this way!"

#### Romans 9:21

##### Does the potter not have the right ... for dishonorable use?

"The potter certainlly has the right ... for dishonorable use."

#### Romans 9:22

##### containers of wrath prepared for destruction

"people to whom he would show wrath and whom he will certainly destroy"

#### Romans 9:23

##### he ... his

The words "he" and "his" here refer to God.

##### containers of mercy, which

"those to whom he would show mercy, whom"

##### the riches of his glory upon

"his glory, which is of great value, upon"

##### which he had previously prepared for glory

"whom he prepared ahead of time in order that they might live with him"

#### Romans 9:24

##### called

Here "called" means God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.

#### Romans 9:25

##### As he says also in Hosea

"As God says also in the book that Hosea the prophet wrote". (see Hosea 2:23)

##### I will call them 'my people' who were not my people

"I will choose those who were not my people to be my people"

##### her 'beloved' who was not beloved

"I will choose her whom I did not love to be one whom I love"

#### Romans 9:26

##### sons of the living God

"children of the true God". (see Hosea 1:10)

#### Romans 9:27

##### cries out

"calls out"

##### as the sand of the sea

"too many to count". (see Isaiah 10:22)

#### Romans 9:28

##### the Lord will execute his word on the earth

"the Lord will punish people on the earth as he has said he will". (see Isaiah 10:23)

#### Romans 9:29

##### us ... we

Here the words "us" and "we" refer to Isaiah and those to whom he spoke.

##### we would be like Sodom, and we would have become like Gomorrah

"God would have destroyed all of us as he destroyed the people in the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah". (see Isaiah 1:9-10 and Isaiah 13:19)

#### Romans 9:30

##### That the Gentiles

"We will say that the Gentiles"

##### who were not pursuing righteousness

"who were not trying to get righteousness" or "who were not trying to be righteous"

##### righteousness, the righteousness by faith

"righteousness because God made them right with him when they trusted in Christ"

#### Romans 9:31

##### who did pursue a law of righteousness

"who tried to be righteous by obeying a law"

##### did not arrive at that law

"could not keep that law"

#### Romans 9:32

##### Why not? Because they

"Why could they not attain righteousness? Because they"

##### by works

"by keeping the Law"

#### Romans 9:33

##### as it has been written

"as Isaiah the prophet wrote". (see Isaiah 8:14 and Isaiah 28:16)

##### in Zion

"in Israel"

##### believes in it

"believes in him."

## Chapter 10

#### Romans 10:1

##### my heart's desire

"my greatest desire"

##### is for them, for their salvation

"is that God will save the Jews"

#### Romans 10:2

##### I testify about them

"I declare truthfully about them"

#### Romans 10:3

##### For, failing to understand the righteousness that comes from God

"For because they did not know how God puts people right with himself"

##### they did not submit to God’s righteousness.

"they did not accept God's way of putting people right with himself"

#### Romans 10:4

##### For Christ is the fulfillment of the law

"For Christ completely fulfilled the law"

##### law for righteousness for everyone who believes

"law, and he makes everyone who trusts in him right before God"

#### Romans 10:5

##### the righteousness that comes from the law

"how the law makes a person right before God"

##### "The man who does these things will live by them."

"The person who perfectly obeys the law will live because the law will make him right before God"

##### will live

The words "will live" can refer to 1) eternal life or 2) mortal life in fellowship with God.

#### Romans 10:6

##### But the righteousness that comes from faith says this

"But Moses writes this about how faith makes a person right before God". (see Deuteronomy 30:12-14)

##### Do not say in your heart

"Do not say to yourself"

##### Who will ascend into heaven?

"No one is able to go up to heaven"

##### that is, to bring Christ down

"in order that they might have Christ come down to earth"

#### Romans 10:7

##### Who will descend into the abyss?

"No person can go down and enter the place where the spirits of dead persons are."

##### the dead

All those who have died. To be brought up from among them is to become alive again.

#### Romans 10:8

##### But what does it say?

"But this is what Moses says". (see Deuteronomy 30:14)

##### The word is near you, in your mouth and in your heart

"You have heard the message. You know how to speak it, and you know what it means"

##### the word of faith

"God's message that tells us that we must believe in him"

#### Romans 10:9

##### if with your mouth you confess Jesus as Lord

"if you confess that Jesus is Lord"

##### believe in your heart

"believe in your mind" or "truly believe"

##### raised him from the dead

"caused him to live again"

##### you will be saved

"God will save you"

#### Romans 10:10

##### For with the heart one believes and has righteousness, and with the mouth one confesses and is saved

"For it is with the mind that a person trusts and is right before God, and it is with the mouth that a person confesses so that God saves him"

#### Romans 10:11

##### For scripture says

"For Isaiah wrote in the scripture". (see Isaiah 28:16)

#### Romans 10:13

##### For everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved

"The Lord will save everyone who trusts in him"

#### Romans 10:14

##### How then can they call on him in whom they have not believed?

"Those who do not believe in God cannot call on him!"

##### How can they believe in him of whom they have not heard?

"And they cannot believe in him if they have not heard his message!" or "And they cannot believe in him if they have not heard the message about him!"

##### believe in

trust and desire to obey

##### How can they hear without a preacher?

"And they cannot hear the message if someone does not tell them!"

#### Romans 10:15

##### How beautiful are the feet of those who proclaim good news

"How beautiful are even the feet of those who proclaim good news" or "It is wonderful when messengers go and tell others the good news". (see Isaiah 52:7 and Nahum 1:15)

#### Romans 10:16

##### not all of them obeyed

Here "they" refers to the Jews. "not all of the Jews obeyed"

##### Lord, who has believed our report?

"Lord, so many of them do not believe our message!". (see Isaiah 53:1)

#### Romans 10:17

##### So faith comes from hearing

"So a person believes in Christ by hearing the message about Christ"

##### and hearing by the word of Christ

"and a person hears the message by someone preaching the message about Christ"

#### Romans 10:18

##### But I say, "Did they not hear?" Yes, most certainly

"But, I say the Jews certainly have heard the message about Christ"

##### Their sound has gone out into all the earth, and their words to the ends of the world.

"As the Scriptures record, 'The sun, moon, and the stars are proof of God's power and glory, and everyone in the world sees them and knows the truth about God.'". (see Psalm 19:4)

#### Romans 10:19

##### Moreover, I say, "Did Israel not know?"

"Again I tell you the people of Israel did know the message."

##### First Moses says, "I will provoke you ... I will stir you up

"First Moses says that God will provoke you ... God will stir you up". (see Deuteronomy 32:21)

##### by what is not a nation

"by those you do not consider to be a real nation" or "by people who do not belong to any nation"

##### By means of a nation without understanding

"By a nation with people who do not know me or my commands"

##### I will stir you up to anger

"I will cause you to become angry"

#### Romans 10:20

##### I was found by those who did not seek me

"Even though the Gentile people will not look for me, they will find me". (see Isaiah 65:1)

##### I appeared

"I made myself known"

##### he says

"He" refers to God, who is speaking through Isaiah.

#### Romans 10:21

##### All the day long I

This phrase is used to emphasize God's continual effort. "I continually"

##### I reached out my hands to a disobedient and stubborn people

"I tried to welcome you and to help you, but you refused my help and continued to disobey". (see Isaiah 65:2)

## Chapter 1

#### 1 Corinthians 1:1

##### Paul

"I, Paul"

##### Sosthenes our brother

"Sosthenes, the brother you and I know"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:2

##### to the church of God at Corinth

"am writing this letter to you in Corinth who believe in God"

##### those who have been sanctified in Christ Jesus

"to those whom Christ Jesus has set apart for God"

##### called to be holy people

"whom God has called to be holy people"

##### together with all those in every place who call on the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

this phrase tells who else is called to be holy, or this phrase tells who else this letter is written to

##### who call on the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

"who call on the Lord Jesus Christ"

##### their Lord and ours

The word "ours" includes Paul's audience. Jesus is the Lord of Paul and the Corinthians and all the churches.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:3

##### General Information:

Paul and Sosthenes wrote this letter to the Christians. Such words as "you" and "your" refer to Paul's audience and so are plural.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:4

##### because of the grace of God that Christ Jesus gave to you

"because Christ Jesus has made it possible for God to be kind to you"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:5

##### He has made you rich

"Christ has made you rich" or "God has made you rich."

##### made you rich in every way

"made you rich with all kinds of spiritual blessings"

##### in all speech...all knowledge

God has enabled you to understand and tell others about God's message in many ways.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:6

##### the testimony about Christ has been confirmed as true among you

"you saw for yourselves that what we had said about Christ was true"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:7

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true,"

##### you lack no spiritual gift

"you have every spiritual gift"

##### the revelation of our Lord Jesus Christ

"the time when God will reveal the Lord Jesus Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:9

##### God is faithful, who called ... our Lord

"God, who called ... our Lord, will do everything he has said he will do"

##### his Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:10

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### through the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

"by means of our Lord Jesus Christ"

##### that you all agree

"that you live in harmony with one another". Paul reminds the Corinthian believers that they are to live in unity with each other and that the message of the cross of Christ, not baptism by people, is what saves.

##### that there be no divisions among you

"that you do not divide into separate groups among yourselves"

##### be joined together with the same mind and by the same purpose

"live in unity, agree with other, and work together to accomplish the same things"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:11

##### Chloe's people

This refers to family members, servants, and others who are part of the household of which Chloe, a woman, is the head.

##### there are factions among you

"you are in groups that quarrel one with another"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:13

##### Is Christ divided?

"Christ is certainly not divided!" or "There is only one Christ!"

##### Was Paul crucified for you?

"It certainly was not Paul whom they put to death on the cross for your salvation!"

##### Were you baptized into the name of Paul?

"It was not into the name of Paul that people baptized you!"

##### into the name of Paul

"by Paul's authority"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:14

##### I baptized none of you, except

"among you I baptized only"

##### Crispus and Gaius

Crispus was a synagogue ruler who became a Christian and Gaius traveled with the Apostle Paul.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:15

##### This was so that no one would say that you were baptized into my name

"For some of you might have claimed that I baptized you to make you my disciples"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:16

##### the household of Stephanas

This refers to the family members and slaves in the house where Stephanas, a man, was the head.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:17

##### Christ did not send me to baptize

This means that baptism was not the primary goal of Paul's ministry.

##### not with clever speech, in order that the cross of Christ would not be emptied of its power

"not with clever speech, because clever speech would empty the cross of its power"

##### in order that the cross of Christ would not be emptied of its power

"in order that people might recognize God's power to save them through Jesus's death on the cross" or "because clever speech would distract people from God's power as shown in the cross"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:18

##### the message about the cross

"the preaching about the crucifixion" or "the message of Christ's dying on the cross"

##### is foolishness

"is senseless" or "is silly"

##### to those who are perishing

"to those who are dying." This refers to dying in rebellion against God.

##### it is the power of God

"it is God working powerfully in us"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:19

##### I will set aside the understanding of the intelligent

"I will confuse intelligent people"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:20

##### Where is the wise person? Where is the scholar? Where is the debater of this world?

"Compared with the wisdom of the gospel, there are no wise people, no scholars, no debaters!"

##### the scholar

a person who is recognized as someone who has studied a great deal

##### the debater

a person who argues about what he knows or who is skilled in such arguments

##### Has not God turned the wisdom of the world into foolishness?

"God has shown that everything they call wisdom is really foolishness"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:21

##### those who believe

"all who believe the message" or "all who believe in Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:23

##### Christ crucified

"about Christ, who died on a cross"

##### a stumbling block

"not acceptable" or "very offensive". The message of salvation through the crucifixion of the Christ keeps Jews from believing in Jesus.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:24

##### to those whom God has called

"to the people God calls"

##### we preach Christ

"we teach about Christ" or "we tell all people about Christ"

##### we preach Christ as the power and the wisdom of God

"we preach that God acted powerfully and wisely by sending Christ to die for us"

##### the power ... of God

Another possible meaning is that Christ is powerful and it is through Christ that God saves us.

##### the wisdom of God

Another possible meaning is that God shows the content of his wisdom through Christ.

#### 1 Corinthians 1:25

##### the foolishness of God is wiser than people, and the weakness of God is stronger than people

"what seems to be the foolishness of God is wiser than people's wisdom, and what seems to be the weakness of God is stronger than the people's strength"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:26

##### Not many of you

"Very few of you"

##### wise according to the flesh

"wise according to human standards" or "what most people would call wise"

##### of noble birth

"special because your family is important"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:27

##### God chose ... wise. God chose ... strong

Paul emphasizes the difference between God's way of doing things and how people think God should do them.

##### God chose the foolish things of the world to shame the wise

"God chose to use the things that the world thinks are foolish to shame those whom the world thinks are wise"

##### God chose what is weak in the world to shame what is strong

"God chose to use things that the world thinks are weak to shame the things that the world thinks are strong"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:28

##### what is low and despised

"the things that are humble and hated"

##### things that are regarded as nothing

"that which people usually regard as without value"

##### nothing, to bring to nothing things that are held as valuable

"nothing. He did this so he could show that the things that are held as valuable are really worthless"

##### things that are held as valuable

"things that people think are worth money" or "things that people think are worth respect"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:29

##### He did this

"God did this"

##### no flesh

"no people"

#### 1 Corinthians 1:30

##### Because of what God did

This refers to the work of Christ on the cross.

##### us ... our

These words refer to Paul, those with him, and the Corinthians.

##### Christ Jesus, who became for us wisdom from God

"Christ Jesus, who has made clear to us how wise God is" or "Christ Jesus, who has given us God's wisdom."

#### 1 Corinthians 1:31

##### Let the one who boasts, boast in the Lord

"If a person boasts, he should boast about how great the Lord is."

## Chapter 2

#### 1 Corinthians 2:1

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

#### 1 Corinthians 2:2

##### I decided to know nothing ... except Jesus Christ

"I decided to teach nothing ... except Jesus Christ"

##### to know nothing when I was among you except Jesus Christ

"when I was among you to know only Jesus Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:3

##### I was with you

"I was visiting with you"

##### in weakness

"physically weak" or "feeling like I could not do what I needed to do"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:4

##### my message and my proclamation were not with persuasive words of wisdom

"I did not speak and preach with persuasive words of wisdom"

##### persuasive words of wisdom

"wise and persuasive words"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:5

##### so that your faith might not be in the wisdom of humans

"so that you will not trust in human wisdom"

##### but in the power of God

"but your faith will be in the power of God"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:6

##### Now we do speak

Paul begins to explain that true wisdom is God's wisdom.

##### speak wisdom

"speak wise words" or "speak a wise message". Paul says the wisdom from the Holy Spirit is the only true wisdom.

##### the mature

"mature believers"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:7

##### before the ages

"before God created anything"

##### for our glory

"in order to ensure our future glory"

##### the hidden wisdom

This refers to truths that God had not yet revealed to people.

#### 1 Corinthians 2:8

##### the Lord of glory

"Jesus, the glorious Lord."

#### 1 Corinthians 2:9

##### No eye has seen, no ear has heard, no human heart has imagined

This refers to all parts of a person to emphasize that no man has ever been aware of the things that God has prepared.

##### what God has prepared for those who love him

The Lord has created in heaven wonderful surprises for those who love him.

#### 1 Corinthians 2:10

##### these things

the truths about Jesus and his death on the cross

##### the Spirit searches everything out

"the Spirit studies everything accurately" or "the Spirit investigates everything"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:11

##### For who knows a person's thoughts except the spirit of the person in him?

"No one knows what a person is thinking except that person's spirit"

##### spirit of the person

This refers to a person's inner being, his own spiritual nature.

##### no one knows the deep things of God except the Spirit of God

"only the Spirit of God knows the deep things of God"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:12

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" includes both Paul and his audience.

##### freely given to us by God

"that God freely gave to us"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:13

##### interpreting spiritual things to spiritual people

"interpreting spiritual things with spiritual words"

##### to spiritual people

Here "spiritual people" refers to those who are led by the Holy Spirit to obey God.

#### 1 Corinthians 2:14

##### unspiritual person

the non-Christian person, who has not received the Holy Spirit

##### because they are spiritually discerned

"because understanding these things requires the aid of the Spirit"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:15

##### The one who is spiritual

"The believer who has received the Spirit"

##### he is not judged by others

"others cannot judge him" or "no one can judge him"

#### 1 Corinthians 2:16

##### For who can know the mind of the Lord, that he can instruct him?

"No one can know the mind of the Lord, so no one can teach him anything he does not already know"

## Chapter 3

#### 1 Corinthians 3:1

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### spiritual people

people who obey the Spirit

##### fleshly people

people who follow their own desires

##### as to little children in Christ

"as to very young believers in Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:2

##### I fed you milk, not solid food

Paul uses this image to mean that the Corinthians can only understand easy truths. They are not mature enough to understand greater truths.

##### you are not yet ready

"you still are not ready to understand the harder teachings about following Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:3

##### still fleshly

still behaving according to sinful or worldly desires

##### are you not living according to the flesh, and are you not walking by human standards?

"you should be ashamed because you are behaving according to your sinful desires and you are living according to human standards!"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:4

##### are you not merely human beings?

"you should be ashamed because you are living the same way that people who do not have the Spirit live."

#### 1 Corinthians 3:5

##### Who then is Apollos? Who is Paul?

"It is wrong to form groups to follow Apollos or Paul!"

##### Who is Paul?

"I am not important!" or "Who am I?"

##### Servants through whom you believed

"Paul and Apollos are servants of Christ, and you believed in Christ because we served him"

##### Servants through whom you believed, just as the Lord gave tasks to each

"We are servants through whom you believed, and to each of us the Lord gave different tasks"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:6

##### I planted

"When I preached God's word to you, I was like one who plants seeds in a garden"

##### Apollos watered

"and when Apollos continued to teach you God's word, he was like one who waters a garden"

##### but God gave the growth

"but God caused you to grow" or "but just as God causes plants to grow, he caused you to grow spiritually"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:7

##### it is God who gives the growth

"it is God who causes you to grow"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:8

##### he who plants and he who waters are one

Paul speaks of telling people the good news and teaching those who have accepted it as if they were planting and watering plants.

##### are one

"united in purpose" or "equal in importance"

##### wages

an amount of money that a worker receives for his work

#### 1 Corinthians 3:9

##### we

This refers to Paul and Apollos but not the Corinthian church.

##### God's fellow workers

Paul considers himself and Apollos as working together.

##### You are God's garden

"You are like a garden that belongs to God" or "You are like a garden that God makes grow"

##### God's building

"and you are like a building that belongs to God" or "and you are like a building that God is constructing"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:10

##### According to the grace of God that was given to me

"According to the task that God freely gave me to do"

##### I laid a foundation

Paul equates his teaching of faith and salvation in Jesus Christ to laying a foundation for a building.

##### another is building on it

Paul is referring to the person or people who are constructing the building above the foundation.

##### let each man

"let each person who serves God"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:11

##### no one can lay a foundation other than the one that has been laid

"no one can lay a foundation other than the one and only foundation".

#### 1 Corinthians 3:12

##### Now if anyone builds on the foundation with gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, or straw

"Whether a person builds with valuable materials that will last or with cheap materials that burn easily"

##### precious stones

"expensive stones"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:13

##### his work will be revealed

"God will show everyone what the builder has done"

##### for the day will reveal it

The "day" refers to the time when God will judge everyone. When God shows everyone what these teachers have done, it will be like the sun has come up to reveal what happened during the night.

##### For it will be revealed in fire. The fire will test the quality of what each one has done

"God will use fire to show the quality of his work"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:15

##### if anyone's work is burned up

"if the fire destroys anyone's work" or "if the judgement shows that a person's work has no value"

##### he will suffer loss

"he will lose his reward"

##### but he himself will be saved, as though escaping through fire

"but God will save him as though through fire". This shows the danger that such a person is in if his works have no value.

#### 1 Corinthians 3:16

##### Do you not know that you are God's temple and that the Spirit of God lives in you?

"You act as though you do not know that you are God's temple and the Spirit of God lives in you!". All instances of "you" are plural.

#### 1 Corinthians 3:18

##### Let no one deceive himself

Nobody should believe the lie that he himself is wise in this world.

##### in this age

according to the way people who do not believe decide what is wise

##### let him become a "fool"

"that person should be willing to have people who do not believe call him a fool"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:19

##### He catches the wise in their craftiness

God traps the people who think they are clever and uses their own schemes to trap them.

#### 1 Corinthians 3:20

##### The Lord knows that the reasoning of the wise is futile

"The Lord knows that what people who think they are wise plan to do is useless"

#### 1 Corinthians 3:23

##### you are Christ's, and Christ is God's

"you belong to Christ, and Christ belongs to God."

## Chapter 4

#### 1 Corinthians 4:2

##### of stewards is that they

"of us stewards is that we"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:3

##### it is a very small thing that I should be judged by you

Paul is comparing the difference between human judgment and God's judgment. God's judgment upon man is the most important.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:4

##### I am not aware of any charge being made against me

"I have not heard anyone accuse me of doing wrong"

##### that does not justify me

"that does not mean that God has declared me innocent"

##### The one who judges me is the Lord

"It is the Lord who will decide if I am innocent or guilty"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:5

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true,"

##### He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart

"Like a light that shines on things in darkness, God will show what people have secretly done and what they secretly planned"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:6

##### brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### for your sakes

"for your welfare"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:7

##### between you ... do you have that you did not receive ... you have received ... do you boast ... you did not

Paul is speaking to the Corinthians as if they were one person, so all instances of "you" here are singular.

##### For who sees any difference between you and others?

"For there is no difference between you and others." or "For you are not superior to other people."

##### What do you have that you did not receive?

"Everything that you have is what you have received." or "God gave to you everything that you have!"

##### why do you boast as if you did not receive it?

"you should not boast as if you had not received it." or "you have no right to boast!"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:9

##### has put us apostles on display

God has displayed the apostles just like prisoners who are at the end of a Roman military parade and who are humiliated before their execution.

##### like men sentenced to death

God put the apostles on display like men who are about to be executed.

##### to the world—to angels, and to human beings

Possible meanings are 1) "the world" consists of both supernatural ("angels") and natural ("human beings") or 2) the list consists of three items: "to the world, to angels, and to human beings."

#### 1 Corinthians 4:10

##### We are fools ... in dishonor

Paul uses irony to shame the Corinthians so they will think about what he is saying.

##### You are held in honor

"People treat you Corinthians as though you were important people"

##### we are held in dishonor

"people shame us apostles"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:11

##### Up to this present hour

"Until now" or "Up to now"

##### we are beaten

"people beat us"

##### we are homeless

Although they have places to stay, they have no permanent home.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:12

##### When we are slandered, we bless

"When people slander us, we bless them" or "When people scorn us, we bless them"

##### When we are persecuted

"When people persecute us"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:13

##### When we are slandered

"When people slander us"

##### We have become as the refuse of the world

"People began to consider us—and they still consider us—to be the garbage of the world"

##### the refuse of the world

"the worst kind of garbage in the world"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:14

##### I do not write these things to shame you, but to warn you

"I do not intend to shame you, but I want to correct you"

##### my beloved children

Because Paul had led the Corinthians to Christ, they are like his spiritual children.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:15

##### ten thousand guardians

"very many guardians" or "a large crowd of guardians"

##### I became your father in Christ Jesus through the gospel

"it was because God joined you to Christ when I told you the good news that I was the one who became your father"

##### I became your father

Because Paul had led the Corinthians to Christ, he is like a father to them.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:17

##### my beloved and faithful child in the Lord

"whom I love and whom I teach about the Lord as if he were my own child."

#### 1 Corinthians 4:18

##### Now

Paul begins to rebuke the arrogant behavior of the Corinthian believers. All that they had, and all they were, was a gift from God.

#### 1 Corinthians 4:19

##### I will come to you soon

"I will visit you soon"

#### 1 Corinthians 4:21

##### What do you want?

"Tell me what you want to happen now."

##### Should I come to you with a rod or with love and in a spirit of gentleness?

"If you want, I can come to punish you, or I can come to show you how much I love you by being gentle with you."

##### of gentleness

"of kindness" or "of tenderness"

## Chapter 5

#### 1 Corinthians 5:1

##### that is not even permitted among the pagans

"that not even the Gentiles permit". This chapter deals with sexual immorality of one church member. Paul now specifically states how the Corinthian believers are proud of their acceptance of that man and his sin.

##### A man has his father's wife

"A man among you is committing adultery with his father's wife"

##### father's wife

the wife of his father, but probably not his own mother

#### 1 Corinthians 5:2

##### Should you not mourn instead ... among you?

"You should mourn over this instead ... among you!"

##### the one who did this deed might be removed

"you can remove from among you the one who did this deed"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:3

##### I am present in spirit

"I care about you" or "I want to be with you"

##### I have already passed judgment on the one who did this

"I have decided what you should do with the one who did this" or "I have found the person who did this guilty"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:4

##### When you are assembled

"When you are together" or "When you meet together"

##### in the name of our Lord Jesus

"with the authority of our Lord Jesus" or "to worship our Lord Jesus"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:5

##### deliver this man over to Satan

"hand this man over to Satan by sending him away from the Christian community”

##### for the destruction of the flesh

"so that Satan may harm his body" or "so that his sinful nature will be destroyed" or "so that he will not continue to live according to his sinful nature"

##### so that his spirit may be saved on the day of the Lord

"so that God may save his spirit on the day of the Lord"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:6

##### Your boasting is not good

"Your boasting is bad"

##### Do you not know that a little yeast leavens the whole loaf?

In this case, one person who is sinning can harm the entire Christian community. So the whole passage means: Don't you know that a little evil will affect the whole congregation? So get rid of the evil so you can live purely. Christ has been sacrificed for us.

##### Do you not know that a little yeast ... loaf?

"You know that a little yeast ... loaf." or "A little yeast ... loaf."

#### 1 Corinthians 5:7

##### Cleanse yourselves of the old yeast so that you may be a new batch of dough, unleavened

Here "old yeast" refers to the sins that the people were committing. "Unleavened dough" is the type of bread that God told the Israelites was acceptable to eat when celebrating Passover. Paul is telling his audience to stop sinning so that they may be acceptable to God.

##### Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed

"the Lord has sacrificed Christ, our Passover lamb"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:8

##### not with the old yeast, the yeast of bad behavior and wickedness ... the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth

Here "yeast" refers to sin, and "unleavened bread" refers to behaviors acceptable to God.

#### 1 Corinthians 5:10

##### the immoral people of this world

This refers to unbelievers who have chosen to live immoral lives.

##### the greedy

"those who are greedy" or "those who are willing to be dishonest to get what others have"

##### swindlers

This means people who cheat to get others' property.

##### you would need to go out of the world

"you would need to avoid all people"

#### 1 Corinthians 5:11

##### anyone who is called

"anyone who calls himself"

##### brother

Here this means a fellow Christian, either a man or a woman.

#### 1 Corinthians 5:12

##### how am I involved with judging those who are outside the church?

"I am not the one who should judge people who do not belong to the church."

##### are you not to judge those who are inside the church?

"you should know that you are the ones who should judge those who are inside the church."

## Chapter 6

#### 1 Corinthians 6:1

##### dispute

in this case a legal complaint, argument, or disagreement

##### does he dare ... holy people?

"it is wrong for him to dare ... holy people." or "he should fear God and not ... God's holy people."

##### to bring a lawsuit before the unrighteous rather than before God's holy people

Paul teaches that a Christian should not take another Christian to court before a non-Christian judge. Christians will judge the angels, so they should be able to solve problems among themselves. It is better to be cheated.

#### 1 Corinthians 6:2

##### Do you not know that God's holy people will judge the world?

"You act like you do not know that God's holy people will judge the world."

##### If then you will judge the world, are you not able to settle matters of little importance?

"You will judge the world in the future, so you should be able to settle this small matter now."

#### 1 Corinthians 6:3

##### judge matters of this life

"stop arguments about things that have to do with this life"

##### Do you not know that we will judge the angels?

"You know that we will judge the angels."

##### we

Paul includes himself and the Corinthians.

##### How much more, then, can we judge matters of this life?

"Because we know we will judge the angels, we can also be sure that God will enable us to judge matters in this life."

#### 1 Corinthians 6:4

##### If then you have to make judgments that pertain to daily life

"If you are called upon to make decisions about daily life" or "If you must settle matters that are important in this life"

##### do you lay such cases as these before those who have no standing in the church?

"you should not lay such cases as these before those who have no standing in the church."

#### 1 Corinthians 6:5

##### to your shame

"to your dishonor" or "to show how you have failed in this matter"

##### Is there no one among you wise enough to settle a dispute between brothers?

"You should be ashamed that you cannot find a wise believer to settle arguments between fellow believers"

##### dispute

argument or disagreement

#### 1 Corinthians 6:6

##### But one brother brings a lawsuit against another brother—and this before unbelievers

"It is bad that brothers have such bad disputes with each other that they go to court; it is even worse that those courts are run by unbelievers"

##### brother brings a lawsuit against another brother

Here "brother" means fellow Christian, including both men and women.

##### brings a lawsuit

asks the civil court to judge the matter

##### and this before unbelievers

"and the brothers have unbelieving judges make decisions for them" or "and unbelievers in the community see brothers disputing with one another"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:7

##### is already a defeat

"is already a failure"

##### Why not rather suffer the wrong? Why not rather allow yourselves to be cheated?

"It would be better to let others wrong you and cheat you than to take them to court."

#### 1 Corinthians 6:9

##### Do you not know that ... kingdom of God?

"You already know that ... kingdom of God."

##### inherit

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

##### inherit the kingdom of God

God will not judge them as righteous at the judgment, and they will not enter eternal life.

##### nor men who submit to homosexual acts, nor men who perform homosexual acts

Both of these phrases refer to men who have sex with other men.

#### 1 Corinthians 6:10

##### thieves

people who steal from others

##### the greedy

people who are willing to use evil means to take others' property

#### 1 Corinthians 6:11

##### you have been cleansed

"God has cleansed you"

##### you have been sanctified

"God has set you apart for himself"

##### you have been justified

"God has made you right with him"

##### in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ

"by the power and authority of our Lord Jesus Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:12

##### "Everything is lawful for me," but

"People say, 'I am allowed to do anything,' but" or "I am allowed to do anything, but"

##### but not everything is profitable

"but not everything is good for me"

##### I will not be mastered by any of them

"I will not allow these things to rule over me like a master"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:13

##### "Food is for the stomach, and the stomach is for food," but God will do away with both of them

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is correcting what some Corinthians might be thinking, "food is for the stomach, and the stomach is for food," by answering that God will do away with both the stomach and food or 2) Paul actually agrees that "food is for the stomach, and the stomach is for food,".

##### Food is for the stomach, and the stomach is for food

You should translate this literally as "stomach" and "food."

##### do away with

"destroy"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:14

##### raised the Lord

"caused the Lord to live again"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:15

##### Do you not know that your bodies are members of Christ?

"You should know that your bodies belong to Christ."

##### Should I then take the members of Christ and join them to a prostitute? May it not be!

"I am part of Christ. I will not take my body and join myself to a prostitute!" or "We are parts of Christ's body. We must not take our bodies and join ourselves to prostitutes!"

##### May it not be!

"That should never happen!" or "We must never do that!"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:16

##### Do you not know that ... her?

"I want to remind you that ... her."

##### he who is joined to a prostitute becomes one body with her

"when a man joins his body to the body of a prostitute, it is as if their bodies become one body"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:17

##### he who is joined to the Lord becomes one spirit with him

"when the Lord joins his spirit to the spirit of a person, it is as if their spirits become one spirit"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:18

##### Run away from

"Get away from"

##### immorality! Every other sin that a person commits is outside the body, but

"immorality! Some of you are saying, 'Every sin that a person commits is outside the body,' but I say that"

##### sin that a person commits

"evil deed that a person does"

#### 1 Corinthians 6:19

##### Do you not know ... God? Do you not know that you are not your own?

"I want to remind you ... God and that you are not your own."

##### your body

the body of each individual Christian is a temple of the Holy Spirit

##### temple of the Holy Spirit

The bodies of believers are like temples because the Holy Spirit lives within them and refers to the place where the Holy Spirit stays and is worshiped.

#### 1 Corinthians 6:20

##### For you were bought with a price

"God paid for your freedom"

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true,"

## Chapter 7

#### 1 Corinthians 7:1

##### "It is good for a man not to touch a woman."

"you wrote, 'It is good for a man not to touch a woman.'" or "my answer is that yes, it is good for a man not to touch a woman."

##### It is good

"It is most helpful"

##### for a man

"a husband" or "a man" refers to any man.

##### not to touch a woman

"not to have sexual relations with his wife for a while." or "not to marry"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:2

##### But because

"That is true, but because"

##### But because of temptations for many immoral acts, each

"But because Satan tempts people to commit sexual sin, each" or "But we desire to commit sexual sin because of our sinful nature, so each"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:3

##### fulfill his duty to have sexual relations with his wife

"should give to his wife her sexual rights"

##### in the same way the wife to her husband

"in the same way, the wife should fulfill her duty to have sexual relations with her husband"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:5

##### Do not deprive each other, except by mutual agreement and for

"Only if you both agree to deprive each other should you do so, and even then only do so for"

##### so that you may devote yourselves to prayer

"in order to commit yourselves to a period of especially deep prayer"

##### come together again

"sleep together again"

##### because of your lack of self-control

"because after some days, your sexual desires will be harder to keep under control"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:6

##### I say these things to you as a concession and not as a command

Possible meanings are Paul is telling the Corinthians that he is allowing them, 1) to marry and sleep together or 2) to stop sleeping together for a time.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:7

##### were as I am

Either Paul had never married or his wife had died. It is unlikely that he had been through a divorce.

##### But each one has his own gift from God. One has this kind of gift, and another that kind

"But God enables people to do different things. He enables one person to do one thing and another person to do something different."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:8

##### the unmarried

"those who are not married"

##### to widows

"to women whose husbands have died"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:9

##### to burn with passion.

"to live with the constant desire to sleep with someone."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:10

##### should not separate from

"should not divorce". Paul says married Christians should not divorce. A Christian married to an unbeliever should not leave their husband or wife. If the unbelieving husband or wife leaves, this is not a sin.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:11

##### be reconciled to her husband

"she should make peace with her husband and return to him"

##### should not divorce

"should not separate from"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:12

##### content

"willing" or "satisfied"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:14

##### For the unbelieving husband is set apart because of his wife

"For God has set apart the unbelieving husband for himself because of his believing wife" or "God treats the unbelieving husband as he would treat a son for the sake of his believing wife”

##### the unbelieving wife is set apart because of the brother

"God has set apart the unbelieving wife for himself because of her husband who believes" or "God treats the unbelieving wife as he would treat a daughter for the sake of her husband who believes”

##### they are set apart

"God has set them apart for himself" or "God treats them as he would treat his own children"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:15

##### In such cases, the brother or sister is not bound to their vows

"In such cases, God does not require the believing spouse to continue to obey the marriage vow".

#### 1 Corinthians 7:16

##### do you know, woman ... you will save your husband ... do you know, man ... you will save your wife

Paul is speaking to the Corinthians as if they were one person, so all instances of "you" and "your" here are singular.

##### how do you know, woman, whether you will save your husband?

"you cannot know if you will save your unbelieving husband."

##### how do you know, man, whether you will save your wife?

"you cannot know if you will save your unbelieving wife."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:17

##### as the Lord has given each one his portion

"as the Lord has assigned each one his life"

##### each one

"each believer"

##### let each one walk as God has called him

"each one should live as he was when he became a Christian." or "each one should live as God has instructed him to" or "each one should follow God's commands as he lives his life"

##### This is my rule in all the churches

Paul was teaching believers in all the churches to act in this manner.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:18

##### Was anyone circumcised when he was called to believe? He

"If someone was already circumcised when God called him to believe, he". Paul was addressing the Jews.

##### Was anyone uncircumcised when he was called to faith? He

"If someone was uncircumcised when God called him to believe, he".

#### 1 Corinthians 7:20

##### remain in the calling

"live and work as you did"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:21

##### Were you ... called you? Do not be ... you can become

Paul is speak here as if all instances of "you" and the command "be" are singular.

##### Were you a slave when God called you? Do not be concerned

"To anyone who was a slave when God called you to believe, I say this: do not be concerned"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:22

##### the Lord's freeman

This freeman is forgiven by God and is free from Satan and sin.

#### 1 Corinthians 7:23

##### You have been bought with a price

"Christ bought you by dying for you"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:24

##### Brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### whatever situation he was in when he was called

"whether he was married or unmarried, slave or free, when he was called"

##### he was called

"God called him"

##### let each one remain

"each one should remain." That is, each one should remain as he was when he first believed in Christ.

##### with God

"as a person responsible to God"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:25

##### Now concerning virgins, I have no commandment from the Lord

"The Lord has not commanded me to say anything to people who have never married"

##### virgins

"people who have never married"

##### I give my opinion

"I tell you what I think"

##### as one who, by the Lord's mercy, is trustworthy

"because, by the Lord's mercy, I am trustworthy"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:27

##### Are you bound to a wife? Do not ...

"If you are married to a wife, do not". Here all instances of "you" and the command "do not seek" are singular.

##### Do not seek a divorce

"Do not try to divorce her"

##### do not seek a wife

"do not try to get married"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:28

##### fleshly trouble

"trouble in this life"

##### I want to spare you from this

"I want to help you not to have worldly trouble"

##### virgin

"someone who has never married"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:29

##### The time is short

"There is little time"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:31

##### those who use the world

"those who deal every day with unbelievers"

##### should not act as though they are using it to the full.

"should show by their actions that they have their hope in God."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:32

##### free from worries

"without needing to worry"

##### concerned about

"focused on"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:34

##### he is divided

"he is trying to please God and please his wife at the same time"

##### The unmarried woman or the virgin

Possible meanings are 1) "virgin" refers only to virgins, while "unmarried woman" could be a divorcée or any other unmarried non-virgin, or 2) "unmarried woman" explains what Paul means by "virgin."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:35

##### any constraint

any restriction

##### may be devoted to

"can concentrate on"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:36

##### not treating his virgin with respect

"not being kind to his virgin" or "not honoring his virgin"

##### his virgin

"the woman whom he promised to marry" or "his fiancée" or "his virgin daughter."

##### They should marry

"He should marry his fiancée" or "He should let his daughter get married."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:37

##### But if he is standing firm in his heart

"But if he has decided firmly in his own mind"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:38

##### So the one who marries his virgin does well, and the one who chooses not to marry will do even better

"So the one who allows his virgin daughter to marry does well, and the one who chooses not to have her marry will do even better."

#### 1 Corinthians 7:39

##### A woman is bound to her husband

"A woman is married to her husband" or "A woman is united with her husband"

##### while he lives

"for as long as he lives" or "until he dies"

##### in the Lord

"if the new husband is a believer"

#### 1 Corinthians 7:40

##### my judgment

"my understanding of God's word"

##### happier

more contented, more joyful

##### lives as she is

"remains unmarried."

## Chapter 8

#### 1 Corinthians 8:1

##### food sacrificed to idols

Gentile worshipers would offer grain, fish, fowl, or meat to their gods. The priest would burn a portion of it on the altar. Paul is speaking of the portion the priest would give back for the worshiper to eat or sell in the market.

##### Knowledge puffs up

"Knowledge makes people proud" or "People who think that they know a lot become proud"

##### but love builds up

"but when we love people, we build them up"

##### love builds up

"love strengthens people" or "when we love people, we strengthen them"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:2

##### thinks he knows something,

"believes he knows everything about something,"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:3

##### that person is known by him

"God knows that person"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:4

##### We know that an idol in this world is nothing and that there is no God but one

"We all know, as you yourselves like to say, that an idol in this world has no power and that there is no God but one". "We" here refers to all believers and includes Paul's audience.

#### 1 Corinthians 8:5

##### so-called gods,

"things that people call gods,"

##### many "gods" and many "lords"

Paul does not believe that many gods and many lords exist, but he recognizes that the pagans believe they do.

#### 1 Corinthians 8:6

##### yet for us there is only one God

"yet we know that there is only one God"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:7

##### everyone ... some

"all people ... some people who are now Christians". Paul is speaking here of "weak" brothers, people who cannot separate food sacrificed to idols from the worship of those idols.

##### defiled

ruined or harmed, especially as regards the person's relationship with God

#### 1 Corinthians 8:8

##### food will not present us to God

"food does not give us favor with God" or "the food we eat does not make God pleased with us"

##### We are not worse if we do not eat, nor better if we do eat it

"Some people might think that if we do not eat some things, God will love us less. But they are wrong. Those who think that God will love us more if we do eat those things are also wrong"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:9

##### someone who is weak

believers not strong in their faith (see verse 7)

#### 1 Corinthians 8:10

##### sees you, who have

Paul is speaking to the Corinthians as if they were one person, so these words are singular.

##### his ... conscience

what he understands to be right and wrong

##### emboldened to eat

"encouraged to eat"

#### 1 Corinthians 8:11

##### the weaker one ... is destroyed

The brother or sister who is not strong in his or her faith will sin.

#### 1 Corinthians 8:13

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true"

##### if food causes

"if by eating I cause" or "if I, because of what I eat, cause"

## Chapter 9

#### 1 Corinthians 9:1

##### Am I not free?

"I am a free person." Paul explains how he uses the liberty he has in Christ.

##### Am I not an apostle?

"I am an apostle."

##### Have I not seen Jesus our Lord?

"I have seen Jesus our Lord."

##### Are you not my work in the Lord?

"You believe in Christ because I have worked the way the Lord wants me to."

##### my work

"the result of the work that I have done"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:2

##### you are the seal of my apostleship in the Lord

"you are evidence I can use to prove that the Lord has chosen me to be an apostle"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:3

##### This is my defense ... me:

Possible meanings are 1) the words that follow are Paul's defense or 2) the words in verses 1 and 2 are Paul's defense.

#### 1 Corinthians 9:4

##### Do we not have the right to eat and drink?

"We have the right to receive food and drink from the churches."

##### we

Here "we" refers to Paul and Barnabas.

#### 1 Corinthians 9:5

##### Do we not have the right ... Cephas?

"We certainly have the right ... Cephas."

##### a wife who is a believer

"a believing wife" or "a Christian wife"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:6

##### Or do only I and Barnabas not have the right to not work at a trade?

"You seem to think that Barnabas and I are the only apostles who have no authority to not work at a trade"

##### not have the right to not work at a trade

"have to work at a trade" or "have to have another job"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:7

##### Who serves as a soldier at his own expense?

"We all know that no soldier has to buy his own supplies." or "We all know that every soldier receives his supplies from the government."

##### Who plants a vineyard and does not eat its fruit?

"We all know that the one who plants a vineyard will be allowed to eat its fruit."

##### Or who shepherds a flock and does not drink milk from it?

"We all know that those who shepherd flocks may drink milk from the flocks"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:8

##### Do I say these things based on human authority? Does not the law also say this?

"I am not saying these things based on human authority. The law also says this."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:9

##### Is it really the oxen that God cares about?

"God does not only care about the oxen."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:10

##### Is he not speaking about us?

"Instead, God was certainly speaking about us."

##### should plow in hope

"should plow, expecting to receive something for his work" or "should plow, expecting to share in the harvest"

##### should thresh in the hope of sharing in the harvest

"should thresh, expecting to share in the harvest"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:11

##### If we sowed spiritual things among you, is it too much for us to reap physical things from you?

"If we taught you about Christ and spiritual truths, is it too much for us to receive money from you for our work?

##### is it too much for us to reap physical things from you?

"then it should not be too much for us to reap physical things from you."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:12

##### If others exercised ... you, do we not have even more?

"Since others exercised ... you, then we have that right even more."

##### others

other workers of the gospel

##### be a hindrance to

"be a burden to" or "stop the spread of"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:13

##### Do you not know that those who perform sacred duties get their food from the temple?

"I want to remind you that those who perform sacred duties get their food from the temple."

##### perform sacred duties

"perform sacred duties in the temple" or "work in the temple"

##### Do you not know that those who serve at the altar share in what is offered on the altar?

"I want to remind you that those who serve at the altar get some of the foods and meat that people offer on the altar."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:14

##### get their living from the gospel

"receive their food and other things they need from those to whom they teach the good news," or "receive their food and other things they need because they work to tell the good news."

#### 1 Corinthians 9:15

##### these rights

"these things that I deserve"

##### so something might be done for me

"so you will do something for me"

##### It would be better for me to die than—No one will make my boast empty!

"I would rather die than to have someone deprive me of this boast."

##### make my boast empty

"take away this opportunity I have to boast" or "make it so I have nothing to boast about"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:16

##### I must do this.

"I must preach the gospel."

##### woe be to me if

"may I suffer misfortune if"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:17

##### if I do this willingly

"if I preach willingly" or "if I preach because I want to"

##### But if not willingly

"But if I do this even though I do not want to".

##### I still have a stewardship that was entrusted to me

"I still must complete this work that God entrusted to me" or "I still must do this work that God gave me to complete"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:18

##### What then is my reward?

"This is my reward."

##### That when I preach, I may offer the gospel without charge

"My reward for preaching is that I can preach the gospel without receiving payment"

##### so not take full use of my right in the gospel

"so not ask people to support me as I travel and preach"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:19

##### I am free from all

"Though I am not obligated to anyone"

##### I became a servant to all

"I became like a servant to all" or "I became willing to serve all"

##### win more

"help others trust in Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:20

##### I became like a Jew

"I acted like a Jew" or "I practiced Jewish customs". This passage is important because Paul "contextualizes" ministering the gospel (the gospel stays the same) to different audiences. The translator should take extra care to preserve aspects of this "contextualization".

##### I became like one under the law

"I became like one committed to following the demands of the Jewish leadership, accepting their understanding of the Jewish scriptures"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:21

##### To those outside the law, I became like one outside the law

"To Gentiles, who are not obligated to follow the law of Moses, I became like them"

##### although I was not outside the law of God myself, but under the law of Christ

"although I was not one of those who is not obligated to obey the law of God, but I was obligated to obey the law of Christ"

#### 1 Corinthians 9:24

##### Do you not know that in a race all the runners run the race, but that only one receives the prize?

"Let me remind you that although all runners run the race, only one runner receives the prize."

##### run the race

As in a race, the Christian life and work require strict discipline on the part of the runner and the Christian.

#### 1 Corinthians 9:25

##### a wreath that is perishable ... one that is imperishable

Wreaths were given as prizes to athletes. Paul speaks of eternal life as if it were a wreath that would never dry up.

#### 1 Corinthians 9:26

##### run ... box

These both refer to living the Christian life and serving God by working as hard as one can to succeed.

##### run, as not without purpose

"run: with purpose"

##### box

to beat another person with the fists in a sporting contest

#### 1 Corinthians 9:27

##### I myself may not be disqualified

"the judge will not disqualify me" or "God will not say that I have failed to obey the rules"

## Chapter 10

#### 1 Corinthians 10:1

##### our fathers

"our ancestors". Paul is referring to the time of Moses in the book of Exodus when Israel fled through the Red Sea as the Egyptian army pursued them. Paul means that all Christians are spiritual descendants of Israel.

##### were all under the cloud

"were all led by God who was in the cloud"

##### passed through the sea

This sea is known by two names, the Red Sea and the Sea of Reeds.

##### passed through

"walked through" or "traveled through"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:2

##### All were baptized into Moses in the cloud and in the sea

"It was like all of them received baptism when they followed Moses across the sea as God led them in the cloud"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:3

##### all ate the same spiritual food

"All ate the same food that God supernaturally provided from heaven"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:4

##### drank the same spiritual drink ... spiritual rock

"drank the same water that God supernaturally caused to come out of the rock ... supernatural rock"

##### that rock was Christ

"it was Christ who worked through that rock"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:5

##### most of them

"most of the Israelite fathers" or "most of our ancestors"

##### their corpses were scattered about

"God scattered their dead bodies around" or "God killed them and scattered their bodies"

##### in the wilderness

the desert land between Egypt and Israel through which the Israelites wandered for 40 years

#### 1 Corinthians 10:7

##### idolaters

people who worship idols

##### sat down to eat and drink

"sat down to eat a meal"

##### play

Paul is quoting from Exodus 32:4,6 and 19. His readers would have understood the people were worshiping an idol by singing, dancing and engaging in sexual activities.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:8

##### In one day, twenty-three thousand people died

"God killed 23,000 people in one day"

##### because of it

"because they committed those unlawful sexual acts."

#### 1 Corinthians 10:9

##### as many of them tested him

"as many of them did"

##### tested him and were destroyed by snakes

"tested him. As a result, snakes destroyed them"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:10

##### did and were destroyed by an angel of death

"did. As a result, an angel of death destroyed them"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:11

##### these things happened to them

"God punished our ancestors"

##### examples for us

Here "us" refers to all believers.

##### the end of the ages

"the last days"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:12

##### does not fall

does not sin or reject God

#### 1 Corinthians 10:13

##### No temptation has overtaken you that is not common to all humanity

"The temptations that affect you are temptations that all people experience"

##### He will not let you be tempted beyond your ability

"He will only allow you to be tempted in ways that you are strong enough to resist"

##### will not let you be tempted

"will not allow anyone to tempt you"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:14

##### run away from idolatry

"do all you can to get away from worshiping idols"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:16

##### The cup of blessing

Paul is speaking of God's blessing like the cup used in the Lord's Supper, which represents the blood and body of Christ.

##### that we bless

"for which we thank God"

##### is it not a sharing in the blood of Christ?

"we share in the blood of Christ.". Paul is reminding the Corinthians that the cup of wine we share symbolically represents us sharing in the blood of Christ.

##### The bread that we break, is it not a sharing in the body of Christ?

"We share in the body of Christ when we share bread."

##### a sharing in

"taking part in" or "equally participating with others in"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:18

##### the Israel that is according to the flesh

"the natural Israel" or "the physical Israel" or "the people of Israel"

##### Are not those who eat the sacrifices participants in the altar?

"Those who eat the sacrifices share in the activities and the blessings of the altar."

#### 1 Corinthians 10:19

##### What am I saying then? That an idol is anything? Or that food sacrificed to an idol is anything?

"I am not saying that an idol is a real god or that food that has been sacrificed to idols has any power." or "What am I saying then? Am I saying that an idol is anything? Or am I saying that food sacrificed to an idol is anything?"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:20

##### the things they sacrifice

"the things that the Gentile pagans sacrifice"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:21

##### You cannot drink the cup of the Lord and the cup of demons

"You cannot be united to the Lord by drinking from his cup and also be united to demons by drinking from their cup"

##### You cannot drink the cup

"You cannot drink from the cup" or "You cannot drink the wine from the cup". This refers to the cup of wine that people drink from when celebrating the Lord's supper.

##### the cup of demons

This refers to anything people might drink during a meal dedicated to demons.

##### You cannot participate at the table of the Lord and the table of demons

"You cannot eat together at the table of the Lord and at the table of demons" or "You cannot join in eating to honor the Lord and join in eating to honor demons"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:22

##### Or do we provoke the Lord to jealousy?

"Surely you do not want to provoke the Lord to jealousy."

##### provoke

to anger or irritate

##### Are we stronger than he is?

"You are not stronger than he is."

#### 1 Corinthians 10:23

##### Everything is lawful

"People say, 'I am allowed to do anything'" or "I am allowed to do anything." See 1 Corinthians 6:12.

##### not everything is profitable

"some things are not profitable" or "some things do not help people"

##### not everything builds people up

"not everything strengthens people" or "some things do not strengthen people"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:25

##### Eat everything sold in the market

"You may eat anything sold in the market."

##### without asking questions of conscience

"without asking questions that could make the conscience feel guilty" or "without asking questions about whether it is sinful to eat it". Paul discusses meat offered to idols. If someone tells you it has been offered to idols, don't eat it for the sake of that person. Do not offend anyone but seek to save them instead.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:26

##### and the fullness of it

"and everything in it." By saying that everything on the earth belongs to the Lord; Paul shows that even meat at the market, that was offered to idols, belongs to the Lord. See Psalm 24:1 and Psalm 50:12.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:28

##### This has been offered in sacrifice

This was the part of the meat that the worshiper was allowed to bring home after killing an animal as a sacrifice to an idol.

##### for the sake of the one who informed you

"for the good of the one who informed you"

##### and for the sake of conscience

"and because of conscience" or "and in order not to cause concerns about whether or not it is sinful"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:29

##### For why should my freedom be judged by another's conscience?

"For another person's conscience should not judge my freedom."

##### my freedom

"my being free" or "what I do because I am free"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:30

##### If I partake of the meal with gratitude

"If I give thanks to God for the food when I share in the meal"

##### why am I being insulted for that for which I gave thanks?

"I should not be insulted for that for which I gave thanks." or "People should not insult me for eating food that I have thanked God for."

#### 1 Corinthians 10:32

##### Be blameless both to Jews and to Greeks, and to the church of God

"Make sure that neither Jews nor Greeks nor the church of God can accuse you of doing wrong"

#### 1 Corinthians 10:33

##### please all people

"make all people glad"

##### I do not seek my benefit, but that of the many

"I do not do things I desire for myself, but things that help as many people as possible."

## Chapter 1

#### 2 Corinthians 1:1

##### Paul ... to the church of God that is in Corinth

"I, Paul ... wrote this letter to you, the church of God that is in Corinth" In this book, the word "I" refers to Paul. Also, the word "you" is almost always plural and refers to the believers in Corinth. There are two exceptions to this: 6:2 and 12:9.

##### Timothy our brother

This indicates that both Paul and the Corinthians knew Timothy and considered him to be their spiritual brother.

##### Achaia

This is the name of a Roman province in the southern part of modern-day Greece.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:3

##### May the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ be praised

"May we always praise the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ". This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### the Father of mercies and the God of all comfort

Both phrases refer to God. Possible meanings are 1) that the words "mercies" and "all comfort" describe the character of "Father" and "God" or 2) that the words "Father" and "God" refer to one who is the source of "mercies" and "all comfort."

#### 2 Corinthians 1:5

##### For just as the sufferings of Christ abound for our sake

"For just as Christ suffered greatly for our sake"

##### the sufferings of Christ

Possible meanings are 1) that this refers to the suffering that Paul and Timothy experience because they preach the message about Christ or 2) that this refers to the suffering that Christ experienced on their behalf.

##### our comfort abounds

Comfort is a major theme of this chapter. The Holy Spirit comforts Christians. The Corinthians probably were afflicted.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:6

##### But if we are afflicted

"But if people afflict us"

##### if we are comforted

"if God comforts us"

##### Your comfort is working effectively

"You experience effective comfort"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:7

##### Our hope concerning you is unshaken

"Our hope concerning you is strong" or "We have not stopped having hope for you" or "We continue to confidently expect good for you"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:8

##### we do not want you to be uninformed

"we want you to know"

##### We were utterly burdened beyond our strength

"We felt so overwhelmed beyond our strength" or "The troubles we had caused us so much more stress than we could handle"

##### we despaired even of life

"we could not see any way we could stay alive" or "we were sure we would die"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:9

##### we had the sentence of death on us

"we were in despair like someone who is condemned to die"

##### but instead in God

"but instead to put our trust in God"

##### who raises the dead

"who causes the dead to live again"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:10

##### He rescued us from such a deadly peril

"He saved us from such a dangerous situation where we could have died"

##### On him we have set our hope that he will rescue us

"We trust in him to rescue us" or "We confidently expect that he will rescue us"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:11

##### He will do this as you also help us

"God will rescue us from danger as you, the people of the church of Corinth, also help us"

##### the favor given to us

"the favor that God has given to us"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:12

##### Our boast is this

"with integrity and godly sincerity,"

##### Our conscience testifies

"We know by our conscience"

##### not relying on fleshly wisdom but on the grace of God

"not relying on human wisdom but on the grace of God"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:13

##### We write to you nothing that you cannot read and understand

"Everything we write to you is something you can read and understand" or "You can read and understand everything we write to you"

##### I hope that you will fully understand

"I expect that you will fully understand" or "I trust you will fully understand"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:14

##### you can boast

The word "boast" here is used in the positive sense of feeling great satisfaction and joy in something.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:15

##### Because I was confident about this

Paul explains his sincere expectation with pure motives to come see the believers in Corinth after his first letter. People were criticizing Paul and saying he was not sincere. He refutes them by explaining his motives for what he was doing.

##### so that you might receive a second favor

"so that you might benefit from me visiting you twice"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:17

##### was I hesitating?

"I was not hesitating." or "I was confident in my decision."

##### Do I plan things according to the flesh ... at the same time?

"I do not plan things according to the flesh ... at the same time"

##### the flesh

"human standards" or "the way most people act"

##### Do I plan things ... so that I say "Yes, yes" and "No, no" at the same time?

"I do not plan things ... so that I say 'Yes, I will certainly visit' and 'No, I will definitely not visit' at the same time!"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:18

##### our word to you

"what we say to you"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:19

##### For the Son of God ... is not "Yes" and "No." Instead, he is always "Yes."

"For the Son of God ... does not say 'Yes' and 'No' concerning God's promises. Instead, he always says 'Yes.'"

##### the Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:20

##### all the promises of God are "Yes" in him

"all the promises of God are guaranteed in Jesus Christ"

##### "Yes" in him ... through him we say

The word "him" refers to Jesus Christ.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:21

##### God who confirms us with you

"God who confirms our relationship with each other because we are in Christ" or "God who confirms both our and your relationship with Christ".

##### he anointed us

"he sent us to preach the gospel" or "he chose us to be his people".

#### 2 Corinthians 1:22

##### he set his seal on us

"he has put his mark of ownership on us" or "he has shown that we belong to him"

##### gave us the Spirit in our hearts

"gave us the Spirit to live within each of us"

##### the Spirit ... as a guarantee

The Holy Spirit is a personal guarantee that this will happen.

#### 2 Corinthians 1:23

##### as witness to my soul

"as witness for me" or "to testify for me"

##### so that I might spare you

"so that I might not cause you more suffering"

#### 2 Corinthians 1:24

##### be lords over your faith

"control what your faith should be" or "control what you believe"

##### we are fellow laborers with you for your joy

"we are working with you so that you may have joy"

##### stand firm in your faith

"remain firm in your faith"

## Chapter 2

#### 2 Corinthians 2:1

##### I decided for my own part

"I made the decision"

##### in sorrow

"in a way that would cause you great sadness" or "while I am sorrowful"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:2

##### If I caused you sorrow, who could make me glad but the very one who was made sorrowful by me?

"If I caused you sorrow, the only ones who could make me glad would be the very one whom I had hurt."

#### 2 Corinthians 2:3

##### I wrote as I did

"I wrote as I did in my previous letter". Some scholars believe this refers to the letter known as First Corinthians. Other scholars believe this refers to a letter Paul wrote after the letter known as First Corinthians and before this letter.

##### I might not be hurt by those who should have made me rejoice

"those who should have made me rejoice might not hurt me"

##### my joy is the same joy you all have

"what gives me joy is what gives you joy, too"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:4

##### from great tribulation

Here the word "tribulation" refers to emotional pain.

##### with anguish of heart

"with extreme sorrow"

##### with many tears

"with much crying"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:5

##### not to burden you

"not to say this too harshly" or "not to exaggerate"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:6

##### This punishment of that person by the majority is enough

"The way that the majority has punished that person is sufficient"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:7

##### he is not overwhelmed by too much sorrow

"too much sorrow does not overwhelm him"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:8

##### confirm your love for him

"show him that you truly love him"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:9

##### you are obedient in everything

"you are obedient to God in everything" or "you are obedient in everything that I have taught you"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:10

##### it is forgiven for your sake

"I have forgiven it for your sake"

##### forgiven for your sake

"forgiven out of my love for you" or "forgiven for your benefit"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:11

##### For we are not ignorant of his schemes

"For we know his schemes well"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:12

##### A door was opened to me by the Lord ... to preach the gospel

"The Lord opened a door to me ... to preach the gospel" or "The Lord gave me the opportunity ... to preach the gospel"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:13

##### I had no relief in my spirit

"I was worried"

##### my brother Titus

Paul speaks of Titus as his spiritual brother.

##### So I left them

"So I left the people of Troas"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:14

##### God, who in Christ always leads us in triumph

"God, who leads us as prisoners in Christ's victory parade" or "God, who leads us as victorious soldiers in Christ's triumphal parade"

##### Through us he reveals the sweet aroma of the knowledge of him everywhere

"He causes the knowledge of Christ to spread to everyone who hears us, just as the sweet smell of burning incense spreads to everyone near it"

##### everywhere

"everywhere we go"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:15

##### we are to God the sweet aroma of Christ

Paul speaks of his ministry as if it were an offering or incense that was being burned, creating a pleasant smell to God.

##### the sweet aroma of Christ

"the sweet aroma which is the knowledge of Christ" or "the sweet aroma that Christ offers".

##### those who are saved

"those whom God has saved"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:16

##### it is an aroma

"the knowledge of Christ is an aroma."

##### an aroma from death to death

Possible meanings are 1) that the word "death" is repeated for emphasis and the phrase means "an aroma that causes death" or 2) "an aroma of death that causes people to die"

##### the ones being saved

"the ones whom God is saving"

##### aroma from life to life

"an aroma that gives life" or "an aroma of life that gives people life"

##### Who is worthy of these things?

'Who is worthy to spread the knowledge of Christ?" or "It is amazing that anyone is worthy of these things!"

#### 2 Corinthians 2:17

##### who sell the word of God

"who sell God's message"

##### purity of motives

"pure motives"

##### we speak in Christ

"we speak as people who are joined to Christ" or "we speak with the authority of Christ"

##### as we are sent from God

"as people whom God has sent"

##### in the sight of God

"speaking in the presence of God"

## Chapter 3

#### 2 Corinthians 3:1

##### Are we beginning to praise ourselves again?

"We are not beginning to praise ourselves again."

##### We do not need letters of recommendation to you or from you, like some people, do we?

"We certainly do not need letters of recommendation to you or from you, like some people do."

##### letters of recommendation

This is a letter that a person writes to introduce and give their approval of someone else.

#### 2 Corinthians 3:2

##### You yourselves are our letter of recommendation

"You yourselves are like our letter of recommendation"

##### written on our hearts

"which Christ has written on our hearts". Possible meanings are 1) Paul and his coworkers are sure about the Corinthians being their letter of recommendation or 2) Paul and his coworkers care very deeply for the Corinthians.

##### known and read by all people

"that all people can know and read"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:3

##### you are a letter from Christ

"you are a letter that Christ has written"

##### the result of our ministry

"delivered by us.". Because of the work Paul and his companions had done, the world could look at the Corinthians and see how Christ blesses people in this life.

##### It was written not with ink ... on tablets of human hearts

Paul clarifies that the Corinthians are like a spiritual letter, not like a letter that humans write with physical objects.

##### It was written not with ink but by the Spirit of the living God

"It was written not with ink but it was written by the Spirit of the living God" or "It is not a letter that people wrote with ink but a letter that the Spirit of the living God wrote"

##### It was not written on tablets of stone, but on tablets of human hearts

"It is not a letter that people engraved on stone tablets but a letter that the Spirit of the living God wrote on tablets of human hearts"

##### tablets of human hearts

Paul alludes to God giving the Ten Commandments on stone tablets. This represents the law of Moses in Exodus 24:12.

#### 2 Corinthians 3:5

##### competent in ourselves

"qualified in ourselves" or "sufficient in ourselves"

##### to claim anything as coming from us

"to claim that anything we have done in ministry comes from our own efforts"

##### our competence is from God

"God gives us our sufficiency"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:6

##### a covenant not of the letter

"a covenant not based on commands that men have written"

##### but of the Spirit

"but a covenant of the Spirit" or "but a covenant based on what the Spirit does"

##### the letter kills

"the written law leads to death"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:7

##### Now the ministry of death ... came in such glory

Paul contrasts the fading glory of the old covenant with the superiority and freedom of the new covenant. He contrasts the veil of Moses with the clarity of present revelation.

##### the ministry of death

"the ministry that causes people to die because it is based on the law"

##### engraved in letters on stones

"that God carved in letters on stone"

##### in such glory

"in so much glory"

##### This is because

"They could not look because"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:8

##### How much more glorious will the ministry of the Spirit be?

"So the service that the Spirit does must be even more glorious."

##### the ministry of the Spirit

"the ministry that gives life because it is based on the Spirit"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:9

##### the ministry of condemnation

"the ministry that condemns people because it is based on the law"

##### how much more does the ministry of righteousness abound in glory!

"then the ministry of righteousness must abound in so much more glory!"

##### the ministry of righteousness abound in glory

Paul means that "the ministry of righteousness" is far more glorious than the law, which also had glory.

##### the ministry of righteousness

"the ministry that makes people righteous because it is based on the Spirit"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:10

##### that which was once made glorious is no longer glorious ... because of the glory that exceeds it

The Old Testament law no longer appears glorious when compared with the new covenant, which is much more glorious.

##### that which was once made glorious

"the law which God once made glorious"

##### in this respect

"in this way"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:11

##### that which was passing away

"that which was becoming useless"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:12

##### Since we have such a hope

"Since we confidently expect this" or "Since we confidently wait to receive this glory"

##### such a hope

"such confidence"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:13

##### the ending of a glory that was passing away

"the glory on Moses's face as it faded away completely". (Exodus 34:33-35).

#### 2 Corinthians 3:14

##### But their minds were hardened

"But the Israelites could not understand what they saw"

##### For to this day

to the time at which Paul was writing to the Corinthians

##### when they read the old covenant, that same veil remains

"when they hear someone read the old covenant" Just as the Israelites could not see the glory on Moses's face because he covered his face with a veil, there is a spiritual veil that prevents people from understanding when they read the old covenant.

##### It has not been removed, because only in Christ is it taken away

"No one removes the veil, because only in Christ does God remove it"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:15

##### But even today

This phrase refers to the time at which Paul was writing to the Corinthians.

##### whenever Moses is read

"whenever someone reads the Mosaic law"

##### a veil covers their hearts

"they are unable to understand what they are hearing"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:16

##### when a person turns to the Lord

"when a person starts to worship the Lord" or "when a person starts to trust in the Lord"

##### the veil is taken away

"God lifts the veil away" or "God gives them the ability to understand"

#### 2 Corinthians 3:18

##### Now all of us

Here the word "us" refers to all believers, including Paul and the Corinthians.

##### with unveiled faces, see the glory of the Lord

Unlike the Israelites who could not see God's glory reflected on Moses's face because he had covered it with a veil, there is nothing to prevent believers from seeing and understanding God's glory.

##### We are being transformed into the same glorious likeness

"The Lord is transforming us into his same glorious likeness"

##### from one degree of glory into another

"from one amount of glory to another amount of glory." This means that the Spirit is constantly increasing the glory of believers.

##### just as from the Lord

"just as this comes from the Lord"

## Chapter 4

#### 2 Corinthians 4:1

##### we have this ministry

Here the word "we" refers to Paul and his coworker, but not to the Corinthians. Paul writes that he is honest in his ministry by preaching Christ, not praising himself.

##### and just as we have received mercy

"because God has shown us mercy"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:2

##### we have rejected secret and shameful ways

This means that Paul and his coworkers refuse to do "secret and shameful" things.

##### secret and shameful ways

"the things that people do secretly because they cause shame"

##### walk in craftiness

"live by deceiving people"

##### we do not mishandle the word of God

"we handle God's message correctly" or "we use the word of God properly"

##### we recommend ourselves to everyone's conscience

This means that they provide enough evidence for each person who hears them to decide whether they are right or wrong.

##### in the sight of God

"before God" or "with God as witness"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:3

##### But if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled only to those who are perishing

See 2 Corinthians 3:14. There Paul explained that there is a spiritual veil that prevents people from understanding when they read the old covenant. In the same way, people are not able to understand the gospel.

##### if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled

"if a veil covers our gospel, that veil covers it"

##### our gospel

"the gospel that we preach"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:4

##### the god of this world has blinded their unbelieving minds

"the god of this world has prevented unbelievers from understanding"

##### the god of this world

"the god who rules this world." This phrase refers to Satan.

##### they are not able to see the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ

This means that they are unable to understand "the gospel of the glory of Christ"

##### the light of the gospel

"the light that comes from the gospel"

##### the gospel of the glory of Christ

"the gospel about Christ's glory"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:5

##### but Christ Jesus as Lord, and ourselves as your servants

"but we proclaim Christ Jesus as Lord, and we proclaim ourselves as your servants"

##### for Jesus' sake

"because of Jesus"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:6

##### Light will shine out of darkness

Paul refers to God creating light, as described in Genesis 1:3.

##### He has shone ... to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God

"He has shone ... to enable us to understand the glory of God"

##### in our hearts

"in our minds"

##### the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the presence

"the light, which is the knowledge of the glory of God, in the presence"

##### the glory of God in the presence of Jesus Christ

"the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ." Just as God's glory shone upon Moses's face, it also shines upon Jesus's face. This means that when Paul preaches the gospel, people are able to see and understand the message about God's glory.

#### 2 Corinthians 4:7

##### But we have

Here the word "we" refers to Paul and his coworkers, but not to the Corinthians.

##### we have this treasure in jars of clay

This emphasizes that they are of little value compared to the worth of the gospel that they preach.

##### so that it is clear

"so that people clearly know"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:8

##### We are afflicted in every way

"People afflict us in every way"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:9

##### We are persecuted but not abandoned

"People persecute us, but God does not abandon us" or "People persecute us, but God does not stop caring for us"

##### abandoned; struck down but not destroyed

"abandoned. People strike us down but do not destroy us"

##### struck down

"hurt badly"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:10

##### always carrying around in our body the death of Jesus

"often in danger of dying, as Jesus died" or "always suffering in such a way that we experience the death of Jesus"

##### the life of Jesus may also be revealed in our body

"people can see that we will live in bodies again because Jesus is alive" or "we can show other people in our bodies the spiritual life that Jesus gives."

#### 2 Corinthians 4:11

##### we who are alive are always being given over to death for Jesus' sake

"God is always leading those of us who are alive to face death because we are joined to Jesus" or "People are always causing us who are alive to be in danger of dying because we are joined to Jesus"

##### so that the life of Jesus may be revealed in our mortal flesh

"so that God may reveal the life of Jesus in our mortal flesh"

##### the life of Jesus may be revealed

"God may reveal that Jesus is alive" or "God may reveal the life that Jesus gives to his people"

##### our mortal flesh

Paul is referring to our physical bodies, which will die someday.

#### 2 Corinthians 4:12

##### death is at work in us, but life is at work in you

This means that they are always in danger of physical death so that the Corinthians can have spiritual life.

#### 2 Corinthians 4:13

##### the same spirit of faith

"the same attitude of faith."

##### according to that which was written

"as the one who wrote these words"

##### I believed, and so I spoke

This is a quote from Psalm 116:10.

#### 2 Corinthians 4:14

##### that the one who raised the Lord Jesus will

"God, who raised the Lord Jesus, will"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:15

##### For everything is for your sake

Here the word "everything" refers to all of the sufferings that Paul has described in previous verses.

##### the grace that is reaching more and more people may cause thanksgiving to increase to the glory of God

"God may show his grace to many people, causing more and more people to give thanks, to the glory of God"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:16

##### So we do not become discouraged

"So we remain confident"

##### outwardly we are wasting away

"our physical bodies are getting weak and dying"

##### inwardly we are being renewed day by day

"our spiritual beings are being strengthened day by day" or "God is renewing our inward being more each day"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:17

##### this momentary, light affliction is producing for us an eternal burden of glory

Paul speaks of his sufferings and the glory that God will give him as if they were objects that can be weighed.

##### that exceeds all measurement

"that no one can measure"

#### 2 Corinthians 4:18

##### things that are seen ... things that are unseen ... things that are unseen

"things that we can see ... things that we cannot see ... things that we cannot see"

##### but for things that are unseen

"but we are watching for things that are unseen"

## Chapter 5

#### 2 Corinthians 5:1

##### if our earthly house—the tent—is destroyed, we have a building from God

"if people destroy our earthly house—the tent—we have" or "if people kill our bodies, we have". Paul emphasizes that the Christian's circumstances in this world are temporary. It gives hope to those who are suffering.

##### if our earthly house—the tent—is destroyed

"if the tent that is our home on earth is destroyed"

##### It is a house not made by human hands

"It is a house that humans did not make"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:2

##### in this tent we groan

Here "this tent" means the same thing as "the earthly dwelling that we live in".

##### longing to be clothed with our heavenly residence

"the place God will give us to live in." Because of this, Paul is not afraid of being killed for preaching the gospel.

#### 2 Corinthians 5:3

##### by putting it on

"by putting on our heavenly dwelling"

##### we will not be found to be naked

"we will not be naked" or "God will not find us naked"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:4

##### while we are in this tent

Paul speaks of the physical body as if it were a "tent", which refers to "the earthly dwelling that we live in."

##### being burdened

Paul refers to the difficulties that the physical body experiences as if they were heavy objects that are difficult to carry.

##### We do not want to be unclothed ... we want to be clothed

Here "to be unclothed" refers to the death of the physical body; "to be clothed" refers to the resurrection body that God will give.

##### to be unclothed

"to be without clothes" or "to be naked"

##### so that what is mortal may be swallowed up by life

"so that life may swallow up what is mortal". The physical body that will die will be replaced by a resurrection body that will live forever.

#### 2 Corinthians 5:5

##### who gave us the Spirit as a guarantee of what is to come

The Spirit is spoken of as if he were a down payment toward eternal life. See 2 Corinthians 1:22.

#### 2 Corinthians 5:6

##### while we are at home in the body

"while we are living in this earthly body"

##### we are away from the Lord

"we are not in heaven with the Lord"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:7

##### we walk by faith, not by sight

"we live according to faith, not according to what we see"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:8

##### We would prefer to be away from the body and at home with the Lord

"We would prefer to be away from the physical body and at home with the Lord in heaven, than to remain in the body and away from the Lord"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:9

##### whether we are at home or away

"whether we are at home in the body or away from it" or "whether we are at home with the Lord or away from him."

##### to please him

"to please the Lord"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:10

##### we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ

"we all must stand in the presence of Christ to be judged" or "Christ will judge all of us"

##### each one may receive what is due

"each person may receive what he deserves"

##### the things done in the body

"the things he has done in the physical body"

##### whether for good or for bad

"whether those things were good or bad"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:11

##### knowing the fear of the Lord

"knowing what it means to fear the Lord"

##### we persuade people

"we persuade people of the truth of the gospel" or "we persuade people that we are legitimate apostles."

##### What we are is clearly seen by God

"God clearly sees what kind of people we are"

##### I hope that it is also clear to your conscience

"I expect that it is also clear to your conscience" or "I trust that that you are also convinced of it"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:12

##### We are not commending ourselves to you again

"We are not recommending ourselves to you again" or "We are not trying to show you again that we are worthy"

##### so you may have an answer for those

"so you may have something to say to those"

##### those who boast about appearances but not about what is in the heart

"those who praise their own actions, but do not care about what they really are in their inner being"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:13

##### if we are out of our minds ... if we are in our right minds

"if people think we are crazy ... if people think we are sane"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:14

##### the love of Christ

"our love for Christ" or "Christ's love for us".

##### died for all

"died for all people"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:15

##### him who for their sake died and was raised

"Christ, who died for their sake and whom God raised"

##### for their sake

Possible meanings are 1) these words refer only to "died" or 2) these words refer to both "died" and "was raised".

#### 2 Corinthians 5:16

##### For this reason

This refers to what Paul has just said about living for Christ instead of living for self.

##### regard anyone

"judge anyone" or "think about anyone"

##### the flesh

"human standards" or "the way most people do"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:17

##### he is a new creation

"he is a new person". Paul speaks of the person who believes in Christ as if that person were a new person that God had created. The old and new creation probably refer to how Paul illustrates the old and new self.

##### The old things have passed away

Here "the old things" refers to the things that characterized a person before he trusted in Christ.

#### 2 Corinthians 5:18

##### All these things are from God

"God has done all these things."

##### the ministry of reconciliation

"the ministry of reconciling people to him"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:19

##### That is, in Christ

"This means that in Christ"

##### in Christ God is reconciling the world to himself

"in Christ, God is reconciling mankind to himself"

##### He is entrusting to us the message of reconciliation

God has given Paul the responsibility to spread the message that God is reconciling people to himself.

##### the message of reconciliation

"the message about reconciliation"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:20

##### we are appointed as representatives of Christ

"God has appointed us as those who speak for Christ"

##### Be reconciled to God

"Let God reconcile you to himself"

#### 2 Corinthians 5:21

##### him who knew no sin to become sin for us

"Christ never sinned, but God made him to become sin for us”

##### to become sin for us

"to become the sacrifice for which God will forgive our sins"

##### us, so that

"us. He did this so that"

##### so that we might become the righteousness of God in him

"so that through Christ we might have the righteousness that God requires"

## Chapter 6

#### 2 Corinthians 6:1

##### Working together with him

"Working together with God"

##### we also urge you not to receive the grace of God in vain

"we beg you to make use of the grace that you have received from God"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:2

##### For he says

"For God says in scripture". This introduces a quotation from Isaiah 49:8.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:3

##### We do not place a stumbling block in front of anyone

"We do not want to do anything that will prevent people from believing our message"

##### we do not wish our ministry to be discredited

"we do not want anyone to be able to speak badly about our ministry"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:4

##### in every way we commend ourselves as God's servants

"Because we are God's servants we recommend ourselves to you in every way" or "in every way we show that we are God's servants". Paul likely uses the pronoun "we" to represent at least Timothy and himself. It may also include other people.

##### in much endurance, in affliction, in distress, in hardship

Paul mentions various difficult situations in which they commend themselves as God's servants.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:5

##### in beatings, in imprisonments, in riots, in hard labor, in sleepless nights, in hunger

Paul describes some of the difficult circumstances in which he and his companions served God.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:6

##### in purity ... in sincere love

Paul lists moral virtues that they maintained in difficult situations, commending themselves as God's servants.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:7

##### in the word of truth

"by speaking God's message about truth" or "by speaking God's true message"

##### in the power of God

"by showing God's power to people"

##### with the armor of righteousness for the right hand and the left

Paul speaks of their righteousness as if it were weapons that they use to fight spiritual battles.

##### the armor of righteousness

"righteousness as our armor" or "righteousness as our weapons"

##### for the right hand and the left

Possible meanings are 1) that there is a weapon in one hand and a shield in the other or 2) that they are completely equipped for battle, able to fend off attacks from any direction.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:8

##### regarded as deceivers

"people regard us as deceivers" or "people say that we are liars"

##### and yet truthful

"but we are truthful"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:9

##### as if we were unknown, yet we are well known

"as if people did not know us, and yet people know us well"

##### as if we were being punished for our actions, yet we are not killed

"as if people were punishing us for our actions, yet they have not killed us"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:11

##### spoken the whole truth to you

"spoken honestly to you"

##### our heart is wide open

"we love you very much"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:12

##### You are not restrained by us

"We have not restrained you" or "We have not given you any reason to stop loving us".

##### you are restrained in your own hearts

"your own hearts are restraining you" or "you have stopped loving us for your own reasons"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:13

##### open yourselves wide also

"love us back" or "love us much as we have loved you"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:14

##### Do not be yoked together with unbelievers

"Only be yoked together with believers"

##### be yoked together with unbelievers

"team up with" or "have a close relationship with". Paul speaks of working together toward a common purpose as if it were two animals tied together to pull a plow or cart.

##### For what association does righteousness have with lawlessness?

"For righteousness can have no association with lawlessness."

##### For what fellowship does light have with darkness?

"Light can have no fellowship with darkness.". The words "light" and "darkness" refer to the moral and spiritual qualities of believers and unbelievers.

#### 2 Corinthians 6:15

##### What agreement can Christ have with Belial?

"There is no agreement between Christ and the devil."

##### Or what share does a believer have together with an unbeliever?

"A believer shares nothing in common with an unbeliever."

#### 2 Corinthians 6:16

##### And what agreement is there between the temple of God and idols?

"There is no agreement between the temple of God and idols." See Exodus 25:8 and 29:45, Leviticus 26:12, Jeremiah 31:1 and Ezekiel 37:27.

##### we are the temple of the living God

"we are like a temple where the living God dwells"

##### I will dwell among them and walk among them.

"I will be with them and help them"

#### 2 Corinthians 6:17

##### be set apart

"set yourselves apart" or "allow me to set you apart"

##### Touch no unclean thing

"Touch only things that are clean" or "Stay away from things that are unclean"

## Chapter 7

#### 2 Corinthians 7:1

##### Beloved

"You whom I love" or "Dear friends"

##### let us cleanse ourselves of all defilement of flesh and spirit

Here Paul is saying to stay away from any form of sin that would affect one's relationship with God.

##### of all defilement of flesh and spirit

"of all things in our body and spirit that make us unacceptable to God"

##### Let us perfect holiness

"Let us do all we can to be perfectly holy"

##### in the fear of God

"out of deep respect for God" or "because we fear God"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:2

##### Make room for us

"Make room for us in your hearts" or "Love us and accept us"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:3

##### It is not to condemn you that I say this

"I do not say this to accuse you of having done wrong." The word "this" refers to what Paul just said about not having wronged anyone.

##### you are in our hearts

"you are very dear to us"

##### for us to die together and to live together

"whether we live or whether we die"

##### for us to die

"us" includes the Corinthian believers.

#### 2 Corinthians 7:4

##### great is my boast about you

"I am very proud of you"

##### I am filled with comfort

"You fill me with comfort"

##### I overflow with joy

"I am extremely joyful"

##### even in all our tribulation

"even though we suffer greatly"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:5

##### When we came to Macedonia

Here the word "we" refers to Paul and Timothy but not to the Corinthians or Titus.

##### our bodies had no rest

"we had no rest" or "we were very tired"

##### we were troubled in every way

"we experienced trouble in every way"

##### by conflicts on the outside and fears on the inside

"by conflicts with other people and by fears within ourselves". Possible meanings for "outside" are 1) "outside of our bodies" or 2) "outside of the church." The word "inside" refers to their inward emotions.

#### 2 Corinthians 7:7

##### by the comfort that Titus had received from you

"by learning about the comfort that Titus had received from you"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:8

##### when I saw that my letter

"when I learned that my letter". Paul praises them for their godly sorrow, their zeal to do right, and the joy that it brought him and Titus.

#### 2 Corinthians 7:9

##### not because you were sorrowful

"not because what I said in my letter made you sorrowful"

##### sorrowful ... sorrow ... sorrow

or "distressed ... distress ... distress"

##### so you suffered no loss because of us

"so that we did not harm you in any way"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:10

##### For godly sorrow brings about repentance that accomplishes salvation

"For godly sorrow produces repentance, and repentance leads to salvation"

##### without regret

Possible meanings are 1) Paul has no regret that he caused them sorrow because that sorrow led to their repentance and salvation or 2) the Corinthians will not regret experiencing sorrow because it led to their repentance and salvation.

##### Worldly sorrow, however, brings about death

"Worldly sorrow, however, leads to spiritual death"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:11

##### See what great diligence

"Look and see for yourselves what great diligence"

##### How great was the determination in you to prove you were innocent.

"Your determination to prove you were innocent was very great!"

##### your indignation

"your anger"

##### that justice should be done

"that someone should carry out justice"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:12

##### the wrongdoer

"the one who did wrong"

##### your earnestness toward us should be made known to you in the sight of God

"so that you would know in the sight of God your earnestness toward us"

##### earnestness

sincere, serious desire for what is good

##### in the sight of God

"before God" or "with God as witness"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:13

##### It is by this that we are encouraged

"This is what encourages us"

##### his spirit was refreshed by all of you

"all of you refreshed his spirit" or "all of you made him stop worrying"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:14

##### For if I boasted to him about you

"For although I boasted to him about you"

##### I was not put to shame

"you did not disappoint me"

##### our boasting about you to Titus proved to be true

"you proved that our boasting about you to Titus was true"

#### 2 Corinthians 7:15

##### the obedience of all of you

"how all of you obeyed"

##### you welcomed him with fear and trembling

"you welcomed him with great reverence"

##### with fear and trembling

"with great reverence for Titus"

## Chapter 8

#### 2 Corinthians 8:1

##### the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia

"the grace that God has given to the churches of Macedonia"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:2

##### the abundance of their joy and the extremity of their poverty ... riches of generosity

"because of the people's great joy and extreme poverty, they have become very generous"

##### extremity of their poverty ... riches of generosity

Paul sends Titus and two other believers to Corinth to encourage the Corinthians to give generously. Paul and the others will carry the money to Jerusalem.

##### great riches of generosity

"a very great generosity."

#### 2 Corinthians 8:3

##### of their own free will

"voluntarily"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:4

##### this service to God's holy people

"this ministry of providing for the believers in Jerusalem"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:5

##### This did not happen as we had hoped

"This did not happen merely as we had thought it might" or "But even more than we had expected"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:6

##### who had already begun this task

"who had encouraged your giving in the first place"

##### to complete among you this act of grace

"to encourage you to finish collecting and giving your generous gift"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:7

##### make sure that you excel in this act of grace

"make sure that you are very generous in your giving"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:8

##### by comparing it to the eagerness of other people

Paul is encouraging the Corinthians to give generously by comparing their generosity with the generosity of the Macedonian churches.

#### 2 Corinthians 8:9

##### the grace of our Lord

In this context, the word "grace" emphasizes the generosity with which Jesus had blessed the Corinthians.

##### Even though he was rich, for your sakes he became poor

Paul speaks of Jesus before his incarnation as being rich, and of his becoming human as becoming poor.

##### through his poverty you might become rich

Paul speaks of the Corinthians becoming spiritually rich as a result of Jesus becoming human.

#### 2 Corinthians 8:11

##### there was an eagerness and desire to do it

"you were eager and desired to do it"

##### bring it to completion

"finish it"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:12

##### a good and acceptable thing

"a very good thing"

##### It must be based on what a person has

"Giving must be based on what a person has"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:13

##### For this is not to cause relief for others and tribulation for you

"We are not asking you to give money to relieve others and make yourselves suffer"

##### but for fairness

"but so that there might be equality between others and you."

#### 2 Corinthians 8:14

##### This is also so that their abundance may supply your need

"This is also so that in the future their abundance may supply your need"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:15

##### as it is written

"as Moses wrote". Here Paul quotes from Exodus 16:18.

##### did not have any lack

"had all he needed"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:16

##### who put into Titus' heart the same earnest care that I have for you

"who made Titus care for you as much as I do"

##### same earnest care

"same deep concern"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:17

##### For he not only accepted our appeal

"For he not only agreed to our request that he help you with the collection"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:18

##### with him

"with Titus"

##### the brother who is praised among all of the churches

"the brother whom believers among all of the churches praise"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:19

##### Not only this

"Not only do believers among all of the churches praise him"

##### he also was chosen by the churches

"the churches also chose him"

##### our traveling companion with this act of grace

"to travel with us as we carry out this act of generosity."

##### which is being administered by us

"which we are taking care of"

##### for the glory of the Lord himself and our good will

"so that people will praise the Lord and so that they will see how eager we are to help"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:20

##### about this act of generosity that we are carrying out

"concerning the way we are handling this generous gift"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:21

##### We take care to do what is good, not only before the Lord, ... before people.

"We are careful to do not only what the Lord thinks is good but also what people think is good"

##### before the Lord ... before people

"in the Lord's opinion ... in people's opinion"

#### 2 Corinthians 8:22

##### with them

The word "them" refers to Titus and the previously mentioned brother.

#### 2 Corinthians 8:23

##### he is my partner and fellow worker for you

"he is my partner, who works with me to help you"

##### they are messengers from the churches

"the churches have sent them as their messengers"

##### They are a glory to Christ

"They will cause people to honor Christ"

## Chapter 9

#### 2 Corinthians 9:1

##### the service for God's holy people

"the ministry for the believers in Jerusalem" He wants to make sure that the collection of their offering for the needy believers in Jerusalem takes place before he comes, so it does not seem like he is taking advantage of them.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:2

##### Achaia has been getting ready

"the people of Achaia have been preparing". Paul is talking about a Roman province located in southern Greece where Corinth is located.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:3

##### the brothers

This refers to Titus and the two men who accompany him.

##### our boasting about you may not be futile

Paul does not want people to think the things he had boasted about the Corinthians were false.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:4

##### find you unprepared

"find you unprepared to give"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:5

##### the brothers to come to you

"the brothers to go to you"

##### not as something extorted

"not as something that you gave us because we forced you to give it to us"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:6

##### the one who sows ... reap a blessing

As a farmer's harvest is based on how much he sows, so will God's blessings be little or much, based on how generously the Corinthians give.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:7

##### give as he has planned in his heart

"give as he has determined"

##### not reluctantly or under compulsion

"not because he feels guilty or because someone is forcing him to give"

##### for God loves a cheerful giver

God wants people to give gladly to help provide for fellow believers.

#### 2 Corinthians 9:8

##### God is able to make all grace overflow for you

"God is able to give you very much"

##### grace

This refers here to the earthly blessings that a Christian needs.

##### so that you may multiply every good deed

"so that you may be able to do more and more good deeds"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:9

##### It is as it is written

"This is just as it is written" or "This is just as the writer wrote"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:10

##### He who supplies

"God who supplies"

##### bread for food

"food to eat"

##### will also supply and multiply your seed for sowing

"will also supply and multiply your possessions so that you can sow them by giving them to others"

##### He will increase the harvest of your righteousness

"God will bless you even more for your righteousness"

##### the harvest of your righteousness

"the harvest that comes from your righteous actions."

#### 2 Corinthians 9:11

##### You will be enriched

"God will enrich you"

##### This will bring about thanksgiving to God through us

"Because of your generosity, those who receive the gifts we bring them will thank God" or "When we give your gifts to those who need them, they will give thanks to God"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:12

##### For carrying out this service

"For our carrying out this service for the believers in Jerusalem"

##### but it also is overflowing into many acts of thanksgiving to God

"It also causes people to do many deeds for which people will thank God"

#### 2 Corinthians 9:13

##### Because of your being tested and proved by this service

"Because this service has tested and proven you"

##### you will also glorify God by obedience ... by the generosity ... them and to everyone

Paul says that the Corinthians will glorify God both by being faithful to Jesus and by giving generously to other believers who have need.

##### the generosity of your contribution

"what you have contributed generously".

#### 2 Corinthians 9:15

##### for his inexpressible gift

Possible meanings are 1) that this gift refers to "the very great grace" that God has given to the Corinthians or 2) that this gift refers to Jesus Christ, whom God gave to all believers.

## Chapter 10

#### 2 Corinthians 10:1

##### by the humility and gentleness of Christ

"by Christ, who is humble and gentle"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:2

##### we are walking

"we are acting"

##### according to the flesh

"the way sinful people do". Paul appears to be teaching that we will continue to sin.

#### 2 Corinthians 10:3

##### we walk in the flesh

"we live our lives in physical bodies"

##### the flesh

"the way most people do"

##### we do not make war

Paul speaks of his trying to persuade the Corinthians to believe him and not the false teachers.

##### make war according to the flesh

"fight against our enemies using physical weapons" or "make war in sinful ways"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:4

##### the weapons we fight with ... bring misleading arguments to nothing

"the weapons we fight with ... show people that what our enemies say is completely wrong"

##### are not fleshly

"are not physical" or "are not sinful"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:5

##### every high thing that rises up

"every false argument that proud people think of to protect themselves"

##### every high thing

"everything that proud people do"

##### rises up against the knowledge of God

"people use so they will not have to know who God is"

##### We take every thought captive into obedience to Christ

"We show how all the false ideas those people have are wrong and teach the people to obey Christ"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:6

##### punish every act of disobedience

"punish every one of you who disobeys us"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:7

##### Look at what is clearly in front of you.

"Are you looking at what is clearly in front of you?" or "You seem unable to see what is clearly in front of you."

##### let him remind himself

"he needs to remember"

##### that just as he is Christ's, so also are we

"that we belong to Christ just as much as he does"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:8

##### to build you up and not to destroy you

"to help you become better followers of Christ and not to discourage you so you stop following him"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:9

##### I am terrifying you

"I am trying to frighten you"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:10

##### serious and powerful

"demanding and forceful"

##### his bodily presence is weak

"when he is here physically, he is not impressive"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:11

##### Let such people be aware

"I want such people to be aware"

##### what we are in the words of our letters when we are absent is ... our actions when we are there

"we will do the same things when we are there with you that we have written about in our letters while we have been away"

##### we ... our

All instances of these words refer to Paul's ministry team but not the Corinthians.

#### 2 Corinthians 10:12

##### We are not so bold as to group ourselves ... praise themselves

"Bold people would group themselves ... praise themselves, but we are not that bold, so we do not."

##### to group ourselves or compare ourselves with those

"to say we are as good as those"

##### they measure themselves by one another

"they look at each other and try to see who is better"

##### have no insight

"show everyone that they do not know anything"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:13

##### will not boast beyond limits. Instead

"will not boast about things over which we have no authority. Instead" or "will boast only about things over which we have authority. And"

##### within the limits of what God

"about things under the authority that God"

##### limits that reach even as far as you

"and you are within the border of our authority"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:14

##### we are not overextending ourselves

"we are not claiming to have more authority than we do,"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:15

##### We have not boasted beyond limits about the labors of others

"We have not boasted about the work of other people, as if it were our work"

##### our hope is that

"we desire that" or "we trust that"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:16

##### another's area

"an area God has assigned to someone else"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:17

##### boast in the Lord

"boast about what the Lord has done"

#### 2 Corinthians 10:18

##### recommends himself

This means that he provides enough evidence for each person to decide whether he is right or wrong.

##### who is approved

"whom the Lord approves"

##### but the one whom the Lord recommends

"but it is the one whom the Lord recommends who is approved"

## Chapter 1

#### Galatians 1:1

##### General Information:

Paul, an apostle, writes this letter to the churches in the area of Galatia. Unless noted otherwise, all instances of "you" and "your" in this letter refer to the Galatians.

##### who raised him

"who caused him to live again"

#### Galatians 1:2

##### brothers

"brothers and sisters". Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

#### Galatians 1:3

##### God our Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Galatians 1:4

##### for our sins

"to take the punishment we deserved because of our sins"

##### that he might deliver us from this present evil age

"that he might rescue us from the evil powers at work in the world today"

##### our God and Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Galatians 1:6

##### I am amazed

"I am surprised" or "I am shocked."

##### you are turning away so quickly from him

"you are so quickly starting to doubt him". Here "turning away ... from him" means to doubt or to stop trusting God.

##### him who called you

"God, who called you." This means God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to serve him, and to proclaim his message of salvation through Jesus.

##### by the grace of Christ

"because of Christ's grace" or "because of Christ's gracious sacrifice"

##### you are turning to a different gospel

"you are instead starting to believe a different gospel"

#### Galatians 1:7

##### some men

"some people"

#### Galatians 1:8

##### But even if we or an angel from heaven should proclaim ... let him be cursed

"But even if we or an angel from heaven were to preach ... let him be cursed". Paul said this to show how strongly he felt about anyone who might proclaim a gospel other than the one he had proclaimed.

##### But even if we or an angel from heaven should proclaim

The word "even" shows that Paul did not believe that he or an angel from heaven would ever proclaim a different gospel.

##### other than the one

"different from the gospel" or "different from the message"

##### let him be cursed

"let him be condemned" or "God should punish that person forever."

#### Galatians 1:10

##### For am I now seeking the favor of men or of God? Am I seeking to please men?

"I do not seek the favor of men. I seek the favor of God. I am not seeking to please men."

##### If I am still trying to please men, I am not a servant of Christ

"If I were still trying to please men, then I would not be a servant of Christ"

#### Galatians 1:11

##### the gospel I proclaimed to you is not man's gospel

“the gospel I preached is not a gospel that humans invented” or “the gospel I taught did not come from people”

#### Galatians 1:12

##### it was by revelation of Jesus Christ to me

"Jesus Christ himself revealed the gospel to me" or "Jesus Christ showed me the gospel"

#### Galatians 1:13

##### former life

"behavior at one time" or "prior life"

#### Galatians 1:14

##### I advanced in Judaism beyond many

"I practiced Judaism better than many" or "I followed the Jewish religion better than many

##### my fathers

"my ancestors"

#### Galatians 1:15

##### and who called me through his grace

"and who called me to serve him because he is gracious" or "and who called me by means of his grace."

#### Galatians 1:16

##### to reveal his Son in me

"to allow me to know his Son" or "to show the world through me that Jesus is God's Son."

##### his Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### so that I might preach him

"so that I might preach about him" or "so that I might proclaim the good news about God's Son"

##### I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood

"I did not immediately ask people to help me understand the message"

#### Galatians 1:17

##### I did not go up to Jerusalem

"I did not go to Jerusalem." Jerusalem was in a region of high hills.

#### Galatians 1:19

##### I saw none of the other apostles except James

"the only other apostle I saw was James"

#### Galatians 1:20

##### In what I write to you, I assure you before God that I am not lying

"I tell you in God's presence that I am not lying in what I write to you". Paul knows that God hears what he says and will judge him if he does not tell the truth.

#### Galatians 1:22

##### I was still not known by face to the churches of Judea that are in Christ

"The churches of Judea that are in Christ still had not met me" or "The people of the Judean churches in Christ did not know me personally yet"

#### Galatians 1:23

##### They only heard it being said

"They only heard others saying about me"

## Chapter 2

#### Galatians 2:2

##### and set before them the gospel that I preach among the Gentiles

"and told them the gospel that I preach to the Gentiles"

##### I was not running—or had not run—in vain

"I was not working—or had not worked—for nothing" or "my efforts were not useless"

#### Galatians 2:3

##### to be circumcised

"to have someone circumcise him"

#### Galatians 2:4

##### The false brothers came in secretly

"People who pretended to be Christians came among us"

##### to spy on the liberty we have in Christ Jesus

"to secretly watch how we live in freedom because of Christ Jesus"

##### to enslave us

"to make us slaves" or "to make us live like slaves to the law"

#### Galatians 2:5

##### we did not yield in submission to them

"we did not surrender to them"

#### Galatians 2:6

##### added nothing to me

"added nothing to what I teach" or "did not tell me to add anything to what I teach"

#### Galatians 2:7

##### On the contrary

"Instead" or "Rather"

##### I had been entrusted with the gospel to those

"I had been given the responsibility of preaching the gospel to those"

#### Galatians 2:8

##### God, who worked in Peter for the apostleship

"God, who made Peter effective as an apostle"

##### also worked in me to the Gentiles

"also made me effective as an apostle to the Gentiles"

#### Galatians 2:9

##### who had a reputation as pillars

"who were known to be important leaders of the church". Pillars are posts that support a building. Here it refers to important leaders.

##### recognized the grace that had been given to me

"recognized the grace that God had given to me"

##### gave the right hand of fellowship to Barnabas and me

"welcomed Barnabas and me as fellow workers" or "welcomed Barnabas and me with honor". Grasping and shaking the right hand was a symbol of fellowship.

#### Galatians 2:10

##### remember the poor

"remember to help those who are poor"

#### Galatians 2:11

##### I opposed him to his face

"I confronted him in person" or "I challenged his actions in person"

#### Galatians 2:12

##### he stopped

"he stopped eating with them"

##### those who were demanding circumcision

"those who required that men be circumcised”

#### Galatians 2:13

##### the rest of the Jews joined in this hypocrisy

"the rest of the Jews became hypocrites like Peter." When people from the circumcision group came, they pretended that they did not eat with Gentiles.

##### Even Barnabas was led astray with them by their hypocrisy

"Even Barnabas was persuaded to do wrong because of their hypocrisy"

#### Galatians 2:14

##### their behavior was not following the truth of the gospel

"they were not living according to the truth of the gospel"

##### how can you force the Gentiles to live like Jews?

"you are wrong to force the Gentiles to live like Jews." The word "you" refers to Peter.

#### Galatians 2:15

##### not Gentile sinners

"not sinful Gentiles"

#### Galatians 2:16

##### no flesh will be justified

"no person will be justified" or "people will not be justified"

#### Galatians 2:17

##### to be justified in Christ

"to be justified by our union with Christ" or "to be justified by Christ"

##### we too were found to be sinners

"we see that we too are sinners"

##### Absolutely not!

"Of course, that is not true!"

#### Galatians 2:20

##### the Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Galatians 2:21

##### I do not set aside the grace of God

"I do not reject the grace of God" or "I do not consider God's grace to be worthless"

##### if righteousness could be gained through the law,

"if people could become righteous by obeying the law"

##### then Christ died for nothing

"then Christ would have accomplished nothing by dying"

## Chapter 3

#### Galatians 3:1

##### Who has put a spell on you?

"You behave as if someone has put a spell on you!"

##### has put a spell on you

"has done magic on you" or "has done witchcraft on you"

##### It was before your eyes that Jesus Christ was publicly displayed as crucified

"You yourselves heard the clear teaching about Jesus being crucified"

#### Galatians 3:2

##### by the works of the law or by the hearing of faith

"by obeying the law or by believing what you heard"

#### Galatians 3:3

##### Are you so foolish?

"Do not be so foolish!"

##### by the flesh

"by yourself" or "by your own effort" or "by your own work"

#### Galatians 3:4

##### Have you suffered so many things for nothing—if indeed it was for nothing?

"You have suffered so many things: Do not let it be for nothing!" or "You suffered so many things from those who opposed your faith in Christ. If you now think that righteousness comes by obeying the law, then your suffering was for nothing!"

##### for nothing

"without benefit to you"

#### Galatians 3:5

##### Does he ... do so by the works of the law or by the hearing of faith?

"He ... does not do it by the works of the law; he does it by the hearing of faith."

##### by the works of the law

"because you obey the law"

##### by the hearing of faith

"because you hear with faith" or "because you believe what you heard"

#### Galatians 3:6

##### it was credited to him as righteousness

"and God counted Abraham’s faith as righteousness” or “and because of that, God called him righteous"

#### Galatians 3:7

##### those of faith

"those who believe"

##### are the children of Abraham

"are Abraham's descendants" or "are considered to be Abraham's true descendants"

#### Galatians 3:8

##### The scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the Gentiles by faith, preached the gospel

"In the scripture, God showed that he would justify the Gentiles by faith, and he presented the gospel"

##### In you

"Because of you" or "Through you." The word "you" refers to Abraham.

#### Galatians 3:9

##### the man of faith

"the man who believed" or "the man who was faithful."

#### Galatians 3:10

##### All who rely on ... the law are under a curse

"Those who rely on ... the law are cursed" or "God will punish those who rely on ... the law"

##### the works of the law

"obeying the law"

#### Galatians 3:11

##### no one is justified before God by the law

"no one is justified before God by obeying the law" or "God does not justify anyone for their obedience to the law"

##### the righteous will live by faith

"righteous people will live by faith"

#### Galatians 3:12

##### must live by them

"must obey them all" or "will be judged by his ability to do what the law demands."

#### Galatians 3:13

##### from the curse of the law

"from being cursed because of the law" or "from being cursed for not obeying the law"

##### by becoming a curse for us

"by being cursed for us"

#### Galatians 3:14

##### so that the blessing of Abraham might come to the Gentiles in Christ Jesus

"so that through Christ Jesus, the blessing that God gave to Abraham might come to the Gentiles"

##### so that by faith we might receive the promise of the Spirit

"so that by believing we might receive the Spirit whom God promised"

#### Galatians 3:15

##### Brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### let me speak in human terms

"let me speak of things most people understand"

#### Galatians 3:16

##### to your descendant

The word "your" refers to Abraham.

#### Galatians 3:17

##### The law, which came 430 years afterward, does not set aside the covenant previously established by God

"When God gave the law 430 years later, he did not set aside the covenant that he had previously established"

##### set aside

"cancel"

##### to nullify the promise

"to make the promise worthless" or "to make things as if the promise had never been made"

#### Galatians 3:18

##### For if the inheritance comes by the law, then it no longer comes by promise

"If people could receive the inheritance by obeying the law, then it would no longer be true that people receive the inheritance by believing God's promise"

##### the inheritance

"what God gives to his children"

#### Galatians 3:19

##### What, then, was the purpose of the law?

"You might wonder then what the purpose of the law was. I will tell you."

##### It was added

"God added it" or "God added the law"

##### The law was ordained through angels

"God ordained the law through angels" or "God gave the law through angels"

##### by the hand of an intermediary

"by an intermediary" or "by his representative"

#### Galatians 3:20

##### Now an intermediary implies more than one person

“Now if we say that there was an intermediary, that means that there must have been more than one person.”

##### But God is one

Paul seems to be saying that the promise is superior to the law since God made the promise alone, without an intermediary.

#### Galatians 3:21

##### against the promises

"opposed to the promises" or "in conflict with the promises"

##### if a law had been given that could give life

"if God had given a law that enabled those who kept it to live"

##### righteousness would certainly have come by the law

"people could have become righteous by obeying that law"

#### Galatians 3:22

##### the scripture imprisoned everything under sin

“the scripture says that everyone is controlled by sin”

##### the promise by faith in Jesus Christ

what God promised to those who have faith in Jesus Christ”

#### Galatians 3:23

##### we were held captive under the law, imprisoned

"the law held us captive in prison" or "we were like prisoners, guarded by the law

##### until faith should be revealed

"until God would reveal faith" or "until God would show that he justifies those who trust in Christ"

#### Galatians 3:24

##### guardian

A guardian was someone who watched over a child and enforced the parents’ rules so that the child would obey them.

##### so that we might be justified

"so that God would declare us to be righteous"

#### Galatians 3:27

##### For as many of you who were baptized into Christ

"For all of you who were baptized into Christ"

##### have clothed yourselves with Christ

"have put Christ on you like a garment." or "have become like Christ." or "have become united with Christ.”

#### Galatians 3:28

##### There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is neither male nor female

"God sees no difference between Jew and Greek, slave and free, male and female"

#### Galatians 3:29

##### and heirs according to the promise

"and those who will receive what God has promised" or "and you will receive what God has promised"

## Chapter 4

#### Galatians 4:1

##### no different from

"the same as"

#### Galatians 4:2

##### guardians

people who have legal responsibility for children

##### managers

people whom others trust to control what is valuable, in this case children

#### Galatians 4:3

##### General Information:

The word "we" here refers to all Christians, including the people to whom Paul was writing.

##### when we were children

"when we were like children"

##### we were enslaved to the elemental principles of the world

"we were like slaves to the elemental principles of the world" or "we obeyed the elemental principles of the world as if we were slaves"

##### the elemental principles of the world

These words could refer to 1) the laws or moral principles of the world, or 2) spiritual powers that some people thought control what happens on earth.

#### Galatians 4:4

##### his Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Galatians 4:5

##### redeem

"might buy freedom for" or "might set free"

#### Galatians 4:6

##### you are sons

"you are his children". In Paul's culture, inheritance usually passed to male children. He was not excluding female children here.

##### who cries

The Spirit is the one who cries.

##### Abba

This is the way a young child would address his father in Paul's home language, but not in the language of the Galatian readers. To keep the sense of a foreign language, translate this as a word that sounds as much like "Abba" as your language allows.

#### Galatians 4:7

##### you are also an heir through God

"you also will receive what God promised to give to his children"

#### Galatians 4:8

##### those who are

"those things that are" or "those spirits who are"

#### Galatians 4:9

##### how is it that you are turning back to ... principles?

"why are you paying attention again to ... principles?" or "you should not be concerned again with ... principles."

##### Do you want to be enslaved all over again?

"It seems that you want to be slaves again." or "You behave as though you wanted to be like slaves again."

#### Galatians 4:10

##### You observe days and new moons and seasons and years

"You carefully celebrate days and new moons and seasons and years"

#### Galatians 4:11

##### may have been for nothing

"may have been useless"

#### Galatians 4:12

##### beg

Here this means to ask or urge strongly. In this sentence, it does not mean to ask for food or money.

##### brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### You did me no wrong

"You did not do anything wrong to me" or "You treated me well"

#### Galatians 4:13

##### disease of the flesh

"disease of the body"

#### Galatians 4:14

##### and though my physical condition put you to the test

"and though my illness was difficult for you"

##### you did not despise or reject me

"you did not treat me as worthless or turn me away"

#### Galatians 4:17

##### They are zealous to win you over

"They are eager to convince you to join them"

##### to shut you out

"to keep you away from us" or "to make you stop being loyal to us"

##### zealous for them

"eager to do what they want"

#### Galatians 4:19

##### My little children

"My dear friends"

##### I am suffering the pains of childbirth for you until Christ is formed in you

"I am in pain as though I were a woman having to give birth to you, and I will continue to be in pain until Christ truly controls you"

#### Galatians 4:20

##### change my tone

"change the way I sound" or "change the way I am speaking to you" or "speak to you differently"

#### Galatians 4:21

##### Tell me, you who ... law, do you not listen to the law?

"You who ... law, you need to learn what the law really says." or "You who ... law, let me tell you what the law really says."

#### Galatians 4:24

##### These things may be interpreted as an allegory

"This story of the women and their sons is like a picture of what I will tell you now"

##### an allegory

An "allegory" is a story in which the people and things in it represent other things.

##### One of them is from Mount Sinai

"One of the covenants is from Mount Sinai." Mount Sinai is where God gave made a covenant with the people of Israel and gave the the law.

##### she bears children into slavery

"the children she gives birth to become slaves"

#### Galatians 4:25

##### she represents

"she is a picture of"

##### she is in slavery with her children

"she and her children are slaves"

#### Galatians 4:26

##### is free

"is not a slave"

#### Galatians 4:27

##### Rejoice

"Be glad"

##### you barren one

"you infertile woman" or "you childless woman"

#### Galatians 4:28

##### children of promise

"children born because of God's promise"

#### Galatians 4:29

##### the one who was born according to the flesh

"the one who was born by means of human action" or "the one who was born because of what people did"

##### the one born according to the Spirit

"the one who was born because of what the Spirit did"

#### Galatians 4:31

##### we are not children of a slave girl, but of the free woman

"we are not children of a slave girl. We are children of the free woman"

## Chapter 5

#### Galatians 5:1

##### For freedom Christ has set us free

"Christ has set us free from the old covenant so that we might be free"

##### Stand firm

"be strong" or "Be determined to stay free"

##### do not again be subject to a yoke of slavery

"do not become slaves again" or "do not become slaves again to the law"

#### Galatians 5:2

##### if you let yourselves be circumcised

"if you become circumcised" or "if you get circumcised in order to become righteous"

#### Galatians 5:3

##### he is obligated to obey

"he must obey"

#### Galatians 5:4

##### You are cut off from Christ

"You are no longer united with Christ" or "You have ended your relationship with Christ"

##### you who would be justified by the law

"you who want to become right with God by obeying the law" or "you who want to obey the law so that God will say that you are righteous "

##### you no longer experience grace

"you have rejected God's kindness"

#### Galatians 5:5

##### the hope of righteousness

"the righteousness that we confidently expect to receive"

#### Galatians 5:6

##### neither circumcision nor uncircumcision has value

"neither circumcision nor uncircumcision benefits anyone" or "it does not matter whether a person is circumcised or not"

##### neither ... has value, but only faith working through love

"neither ... has value; rather, God is concerned with our faith in him, which we show by loving others"

#### Galatians 5:7

##### You were running well

"You were making good progress" or "You were following Christ well" or "you were trusting Christ well"

#### Galatians 5:8

##### This persuasion

"This influence" or "Their teaching"

##### him who calls you

"God, the one who invites you to be his people"

#### Galatians 5:9

##### A little yeast leavens the whole batch of dough

In this case, a few people who teach something false can harm an entire Christian community.

#### Galatians 5:10

##### you will think nothing different

"you will not believe anything different from what I am telling you"

##### The one who is troubling you will suffer the judgment

"God will punish the one who is troubling you"

##### is troubling you

"is causing you to be uncertain about what is truth"

#### Galatians 5:11

##### Brothers, if I still proclaim circumcision, why am I still being persecuted?

"Brothers, you can see that I am not proclaiming circumcision because I am still being persecuted."

##### Brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### if I still proclaim circumcision

"if I still proclaim that men have to be circumcised"

##### why am I still being persecuted

"why are the Jews still persecuting me?"

##### In that case

"If I were still proclaiming circumcision"

##### the stumbling block of the cross has been removed

"the cross would no longer cause people to stumble" or "the cross would no longer offend people" or "the cross would no longer lead people to reject the truth"

##### the cross

"the message about the cross". Here "the cross" refers to the teaching that Jesus died on the cross and is alive again and that God saves people who believe in Christ.

#### Galatians 5:12

##### would cut themselves off

"would castrate themselves" or "would cut off their male organs"

#### Galatians 5:13

##### you were called to freedom

"Christ has called you to freedom"

##### an opportunity for the flesh

"an opportunity for you to behave according to your sinful nature"

#### Galatians 5:14

##### the whole law is fulfilled in one word

"A person can state the whole law with this one commandment" or "a person obeys the whole law if he obeys this one commandment"

#### Galatians 5:16

##### walk by the Spirit

"conduct your life in the power of the Holy Spirit" or "live your life by depending on the Spirit"

##### you will not carry out the desires of the flesh

"you will not do what your sinful nature desires" or "you will not do the sinful things that you want to do"

#### Galatians 5:18

##### not under the law

"not obligated to obey the law of Moses"

#### Galatians 5:19

##### the works of the flesh

"the things people do because of their sinful nature" or "the things people do because they are sinful"

#### Galatians 5:21

##### will not inherit the kingdom of God

"will not receive the kingdom of God" or “will not belong to the kingdom of God”

#### Galatians 5:22

##### the fruit of the Spirit is love ... faith

"what the Spirit produces is love ... faith" or "the Spirit produces in God's people love ... faith"

#### Galatians 5:24

##### have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires

"have crucified their sinful nature with its passions and desires" or "refuse to live according the sinful nature with its passions and desires, as if they killed them on a cross"

##### the flesh with its passions and desires

"their sinful nature and the things they strongly want to do because of it"

#### Galatians 5:25

##### If we live by the Spirit

"Since God's Spirit has caused us to be alive"

##### walk by the Spirit

"let us also follow the Spirit" or "Let us also allow God's Spirit to guide us"

#### Galatians 5:26

##### let us also walk by the Spirit

"we should also walk by the Spirit." See how you translated "walk by the Spirit" in 5 :16

## Chapter 6

#### Galatians 6:1

##### Brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

##### if someone

"if anyone among you"

##### if someone is caught in any trespass

"if someone gives in and sins" or "if someone is discovered in an act of sin"

##### you who are spiritual

"those of you who are guided by the Spirit"

##### should restore him

"should correct him" or "should exhort him to return to a correct relationship with God"

##### in a spirit of gentleness

"with an attitude of gentleness" or "gently" or "in a kind way"

##### so you also may not be tempted

"so that nothing will tempt you also to sin"

#### Galatians 6:3

##### he is something

"he is someone important" or "he is better than others"

##### he is nothing

"he is not important" or "he is not better than others"

#### Galatians 6:4

##### his reason to boast

"his reason to be glad" or "his reason to be pleased"

##### will be in himself alone and not in someone else

"will be because of what he has done and not because of how he compares himself to someone else" or "will be because of what he has done and not because he is better than someone else"

#### Galatians 6:5

##### each one will carry his own burden

"each person will be responsible for his own work only" or "each person will be judged by his own work only"

#### Galatians 6:6

##### The one who is taught the word

"The person who hears the message" or "Whoever hears the teaching about God"

#### Galatians 6:7

##### for whatever a man plants, that he will also reap

"for whatever a person plants, that is what he will harvest" or "people reap the same thing as what they plant."

#### Galatians 6:8

##### plants seed to his own flesh

"plants seed to satisfy his sinful nature" or "does the things he wants to do because of his sinful nature"

##### from the flesh will reap destruction

"will be destroyed by his sinful nature"

##### plants seed to the Spirit

"plants seed to please the Spirit" or "does the things God's Spirit wants"

##### from the Spirit will reap eternal life

"will receive eternal life as a reward from God's Spirit"

#### Galatians 6:9

##### Let us not become weary

"Let us not grow tired" or "We must not get discouraged"

##### if we do not give up

"if we do not quit"

#### Galatians 6:10

##### those who belong to the household of faith

"those who are members of God's family through faith in Christ"

#### Galatians 6:12

##### to make a good impression

"to cause others to think well of them" or "to cause others to think that they are good people"

##### in the flesh

"with visible evidence" or "by their own efforts"

##### to compel you to be circumcised

"to force you to be circumcised." See how you translated "circumcised" in 2:3.

##### only to avoid being persecuted for the cross of Christ

"only so that the Jews will not persecute them"

##### for the cross of Christ

"for saying that the cross of Christ alone is what saves people" or "for believing that God forgives people's sins because Christ died on the cross"

#### Galatians 6:13

##### so that they may boast about your flesh

"so that they may be proud about what was done to your body" or "so that they may boast that you were circumcised"

#### Galatians 6:14

##### But may I never boast except in the cross

"I do not ever want to boast in anything other than the cross" or "May I boast only in the cross"

##### the world has been crucified to me

"the world has died to me" or "I think of the things of the world as dead"

##### and I to the world

"and I have been crucified to the world" or "and the people of the world thinks of me as dead"

#### Galatians 6:15

##### neither circumcision counts for anything nor uncircumcision

"neither circumcision nor uncircumcision is important to God" or "it does not matter whether a person is circumcised or not circumcised"

##### what counts is a new creation

"what counts is becoming a new creation" or "what matters is that people becomes new creatures"

#### Galatians 6:16

##### walk according to this standard

"live according to this rule" or "follow this teaching"

##### peace and mercy be upon them, even upon the Israel of God

"may God give peace and mercy to them, who are the Israel of God" or "may God give peace and mercy to them and to the Israel of God."

#### Galatians 6:17

##### for I carry on my body the marks of Jesus

"for the scars on my body show that I serve Jesus.". These marks were scars from people who beat and whipped Paul because they did not like him teaching about Jesus.

#### Galatians 6:18

##### The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit

"May our Lord Jesus Christ be kind to you"

## Chapter 1

#### Ephesians 1:1

##### Paul, an apostle ... to God's holy people in Ephesus

"I, Paul, an apostle ... write this letter to you, God's holy people Ephesus". Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter and its intended audience. Except where noted, all instances of "you" and "your" refers to the Ephesian believers, as well as all believers and so are plural.

##### who are faithful in Christ Jesus

"In Christ Jesus" expresses the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in Him.

#### Ephesians 1:3

##### May the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ be praised

"Let us praise the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ". These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### who has blessed us

"for God has blessed us"

##### every spiritual blessing

"every blessing coming from the Spirit of God"

##### in the heavenly places

"in the supernatural world." The word "heavenly" refers to the place where God is.

##### in Christ

"through Christ" or "through what Christ has done" or "by uniting us with Christ" or "because we are united with Christ"

#### Ephesians 1:4

##### from the foundation of the world

"from the time he created the world"

##### holy and blameless

Paul uses two similar words to emphasize moral goodness.

#### Ephesians 1:5

##### God predestined us for adoption

"God planned long ago to adopt us". The word "us" refers to Paul, the Ephesian church, and all believers in Christ.

##### God predestined us

"God chose us ahead of time" or "God chose us long ago"

##### for adoption as sons

"to be adopted as his children". Here "adoption" refers to becoming part of God's family and the word "sons" refers to males and females.

##### through Jesus Christ

God brought believers into his family by the work of Jesus Christ.

##### his will

"God's will"

#### Ephesians 1:6

##### he has freely given us in the One he loves

"he has kindly given to us by means of the One he loves". The words "his" and "he" refer to God.

##### the One he loves

"the One he loves, Jesus Christ" or "his Son, whom he loves"

#### Ephesians 1:7

##### riches of his grace

"greatness of God's grace" or "abundance of God's grace"

#### Ephesians 1:8

##### He multiplied this grace to us

"He gave us this great amount of grace" or "He was extremely kind to us"

##### with all wisdom and understanding

"because he has all wisdom and understanding" or "so that we might have great wisdom and understanding"

#### Ephesians 1:9

##### according to what pleased him

"because he wanted to make it known to us" or "which was what he wanted".

##### which he demonstrated in Christ

"he demonstrated this purpose in Christ"

##### in Christ

"by means of Christ"

#### Ephesians 1:10

##### with a view to a plan

"He did this with a view to a plan" or "He did this, thinking about a plan". A new sentence can be started here. If you start a new sentence here, you will need to end 1:9 with a period instead of a comma.

##### for the fullness of time

"for the time that he has appointed"

#### Ephesians 1:11

##### we were given an inheritance, having been predestined according to the plan of him who works

"God gave us an inheritance, having predestined us according to his plan. For he works"

#### Ephesians 1:12

##### so that we, ... Christ, would be for the praise of his glory.

"we, ... Christ, would live in a way that brings glory to God." or "people would praise God because of the glorious grace he showed us who ... Christ." or "so that we, ... Christ, would praise him for his glory as long as we live.". The pronoun "we" refers to Paul and the other Jewish believers, not to the Ephesian believers.

##### the first to hope in Christ

"the first to trust in Christ"

#### Ephesians 1:13

##### the word of truth

"the message about the truth" or "the true message." Paul has been speaking in the previous two verses about himself and the other Jewish believers, but now he begins speaking about the Ephesian believers.

##### were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit

"God has sealed you with the Holy Spirit that he promised". Wax was placed on a letter and stamped with a symbol representing the person who wrote the letter. Paul uses this custom as a picture to show how God has used the Holy Spirit to assure us that we belong to him.

#### Ephesians 1:14

##### the guarantee of our inheritance

"the guarantee that we will receive what God has promised"

##### the redemption of the possession

"God redeems us as his own people" or "we take possession of our inheritance"

#### Ephesians 1:16

##### I have not stopped thanking God

"I continue to thank God". Paul prays for the Ephesian believers and praises God for the power that believers have through Christ.

#### Ephesians 1:18

##### that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened

"that you may gain understanding and be enlightened" or "that God may enlighten your heart" or "that God may enlighten your understanding"

##### may be enlightened

"may be made to see"

##### the hope to which he has called you

"what he has called you to confidently expect" or "what he has called you to confidently wait for"

##### to which he has called you

to which he has invited you

##### the riches of his glorious inheritance among all God's holy people

"the riches of all the glorious things he has promised to give to all God's holy people"

##### all God's holy people

"all those whom he has set apart for himself" or "all those who belong completely to him"

#### Ephesians 1:19

##### the incomparable greatness of his power

God's power is far beyond all other power.

##### toward us who believe

"for us who believe"

##### the working of the strength of his might

"the strength of his might that is at work for us"

##### the strength of his might

"his very great strength"

#### Ephesians 1:20

##### raised him

"made him alive again"

##### when he raised him from the dead

"when he brought him back to life" or "when he caused him to be alive again"

##### seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places

"gave him all authority to rule from heaven" or "seated him in the place of honor and authority beside him". The person who sits "at the right hand" of a king sits at his right side and rules with all the authority of the king.

#### Ephesians 1:21

##### far above all rule and authority and power and dominion

"far above all types of supernatural beings". Rulers, authorities, dominions, and powers are different terms for the ranks of supernatural beings, both angelic and demonic.

##### every name that is named

"every name that man gives" or "every name that God gives"

##### name

Possible meanings are 1) title or 2) position of authority.

##### in this age

"at this time"

##### in the age to come

"in the future"

#### Ephesians 1:22

##### subjected all things under Christ's feet

"put all things under Christ's power" or "made all things subject to Christ"

##### head over all things

"ruler over all things"

#### Ephesians 1:23

##### The church is his body

"It is as though the church is his body" or "The church is like a body". Just as with a human body, the head (verse 22) rules all things pertaining to its body, so Christ is the head of the church body.

##### his body, the fullness of him who fills all in all

Possible meanings are 1) the body is the fullness of Christ. This means Christ fills or gives to the church everything that he has to give or 2) "the fullness" refers back to "him," that is, Christ in 1:22, and "him" in 1:23 refers to God the Father. This means the full deity of the Father dwells within Christ or 3) the body is the completion of Christ. This means that Christ as the "head" is completed by the church, which is "his body,".

## Chapter 2

#### Ephesians 2:1

##### you were dead in your trespasses and sins

This speaks of sinful people being unable to obey God as if they were people who were physically dead.

##### in your trespasses and sins

"because you had trespassed and sinned"

#### Ephesians 2:2

##### in which you once walked

"because you used to live that way". To say that they "walked in" their trespasses and sins is to say that they often trespassed and sinned.

##### according to the ways of this world

"according to the values of people living in the world" or "following the principles of this present world"

##### according to the ruler of the authorities of the air

"doing what the ruler of the authorities of the air wants them to do." These words expand upon "according to the age of this world." The "ruler of the authorities of the air" is the devil or Satan.

##### the spirit that is working in the sons of disobedience

This is another way of speaking of the devil or Satan.

#### Ephesians 2:3

##### the desires of the flesh and of the mind

The words "flesh" and "mind" represent the entire person.

##### flesh

"body"

##### children of wrath

people with whom God is angry

#### Ephesians 2:4

##### God is rich in mercy

"God is abundant in mercy" or "God is very kind to us"

##### because of his great love with which he loved us

"because he loves us very much"

#### Ephesians 2:5

##### by grace you have been saved

"God saved us because of his great kindness toward us"

#### Ephesians 2:6

##### God raised us up together with Christ

"God has given us new life because we belong to Christ" or "We can be sure that God will give us life as he has caused Christ to come alive again"

##### in the heavenly places

"in the supernatural world." The word "heavenly" refers to the place where God is.

##### in Christ Jesus

"In Christ Jesus" expresses the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

#### Ephesians 2:7

##### in the ages to come

"in the future"

#### Ephesians 2:8

##### For by grace you have been saved through faith

"God saved you by grace because of your faith in him". God's kindness to us is the reason he made it possible for us to be saved from judgment if we simply trust in Jesus for forgiveness of our sins.

##### this did not

The word "this" refers back to "by grace you have been saved by faith."

#### Ephesians 2:9

##### not from works, so that no one may boast

"Salvation does not come from works, so that no one may boast" or "God does not save a person because of what that person does, so no one can boast and say that he earned his salvation"

#### Ephesians 2:10

##### we would walk in them

"we would always and continually do those good deeds"

#### Ephesians 2:11

##### Gentiles in the flesh

This refers to people who were not born Jewish. Paul reminds these believers that God has now made Gentiles and Jews into one body through Christ and his cross.

##### uncircumcision

"uncircumcised pagans". Non-Jewish people were not circumcised as babies and thus the Jews considered them people who do not follow any of God's laws.

##### circumcision

"circumcised people". This was another term for Jewish people because all male infants were circumcised.

##### what is called the "circumcision" in the flesh made by human hands

"Jews, who are circumcised by humans" or "Jews, who circumcise the physical body"

##### by what is called

"by what people call" or "by those whom people call"

#### Ephesians 2:12

##### separated from Christ

"not knowing Christ" or "not belonging to Christ"

##### foreigners to citizenship in Israel

"foreigners, not citizens of Israel"

##### strangers to the covenants of the promise

"not belonging to those with whom God made the covenants of the promise". Paul speaks to the Gentile believers as if they had been foreigners, kept out of the land of God's covenant and promise.

##### having no hope

"not hoping in God" or "not confidently waiting for eternal life with God". They had no reason to confidently expect anything good to happen. Specifically, they had no hope that God would save them and give them eternal life with him.

#### Ephesians 2:13

##### you who once were far away from God have been brought near by the blood of Christ

"you who once did not belong to God now belong to God because of the blood of Christ". Not belonging to God due to sin is spoken of as being far away from God. Belonging to God because of the blood of Christ is spoken of as being brought near to God.

##### by the blood of Christ

"when Christ died for us"

#### Ephesians 2:14

##### he himself is our peace

"he is the one who enables us to live in peace with each other". This emphasizes that Jesus alone is the reason that Jews and Gentiles can worship God as one peaceful community.

##### he made us both one

"he made the Jews and Gentiles one"

##### By his flesh

"By the death of his body on the cross" or "By dying on the cross" or "By his actions as a mortal man"

##### he broke down the dividing wall of hostility

"he made it possible for Jews and Gentiles not to be hostile to each other anymore". Paul is speaking of Jews and Gentiles being hostile to each other and unable to worship God together as if they were on different sides of a wall. Because Jesus died, Gentiles as well as Jews can now worship God.

#### Ephesians 2:15

##### He set aside the law with its commands and ordinances

Jesus's blood satisfied the law of Moses so that both the Jews and Gentiles can live at peace in God.

##### one new man

a single new people, the people of redeemed humanity.

##### in himself

It is union with Christ that makes reconciliation possible between Jews and Gentiles.

#### Ephesians 2:16

##### Christ reconciles both peoples

"Christ brings the Jews and the Gentiles together in peace"

##### through the cross

"by means of Christ's death on the cross"

##### putting to death the hostility

"stopping them from hating one another". By dying on the cross Jesus eliminated the reason for Jews and Gentiles to be hostile toward each other. Neither are now required to live according to the law of Moses.

#### Ephesians 2:17

##### proclaimed the good news of peace

"proclaimed the good news that tells that God and people can be at peace with each other" or "proclaimed the good news that is itself the way that people can be at peace with each other". Paul tells the Ephesian believers that present Gentile believers are also now made one with the Jewish apostles and prophets; they are a temple for God in the Spirit.

##### you who were far away

This refers to the Gentiles or non-Jews.

##### those who were near

This refers to the Jews.

#### Ephesians 2:18

##### For through Jesus we both have access

Here "we both" refers the believing Jews (including Paul) and the believing non-Jews.

##### in one Spirit

All believers, both Jewish and Gentile, are given the right to enter into the presence of God the Father by the same Holy Spirit.

#### Ephesians 2:19

##### foreigners and strangers ... fellow citizens ... and members of the household

Paul is contrasting "foreigners and strangers" with "fellow citizens ... and members." The word "citizens" refers to having political rights, so here "foreigners" probably refers to people living in a country not their own and having no political rights. The word "members" refers to being part of a family.

#### Ephesians 2:20

##### You have been built on the foundation

Paul speaks of God's people as if they were a building. Christ is the cornerstone, the apostles are the foundation, and the believers are the structure.

##### You have been built

"God has built you"

#### Ephesians 2:21

##### the whole building fits together and grows as a holy temple

Paul continues to speak of Christ's family as if it were a building. In the same way a builder fits stones together while building, so Christ is fitting us together.

##### In him ... in the Lord

"In Christ ... in the Lord Jesus". These words express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

#### Ephesians 2:22

##### you also are being built together as a dwelling place for God in the Spirit

This describes how believers are being put together to become a place where God will permanently live through the power of the Holy Spirit.

##### you also are being built together

"God is also building you together"

## Chapter 3

#### Ephesians 3:1

##### For this reason

"Because God has made you Gentiles members of his household". This refers to chapter 2.

##### the prisoner of Christ Jesus

"the prisoner for Christ Jesus" or "the prisoner for preaching about Christ Jesus"

#### Ephesians 3:2

##### the stewardship of the grace of God that was given to me for you

"the responsibility that God gave me to bring his grace to you"

#### Ephesians 3:3

##### The mystery was made known to me by revelation

"I learned about the mystery by revelation" or "God revealed the mystery to me". Paul refers to the church as a "mystery". The role of the church in the plans of God was once not known but God has now revealed it. Part of this mystery involves the Gentiles having equal standing with the Jews in the plans of God.

##### The mystery

"God's secret plan" or "The hidden truth"

##### as I have written briefly

Paul refers to another letter he had written to these people.

#### Ephesians 3:5

##### In other generations this mystery was not made known to the sons of men

"God did not make this truth known to people in the past"

##### But now it has been revealed by the Spirit

"But now the Spirit has made it known"

##### his holy apostles and prophets

"the apostles and prophets whom God set apart to do this work"

#### Ephesians 3:6

##### the Gentiles are fellow heirs ... through the gospel

This is the hidden truth Paul began to explain in the previous verse. The Gentiles who receive Christ also receive the same things as the Jewish believers.

##### fellow members of the body

The church is often referred to as the body of Christ.

##### through the gospel

Possible meanings are 1) because of the gospel the Gentiles are fellow sharers in the promise or 2) because of the gospel the Gentiles are fellow heirs and members of the body and fellow sharers in the promise.

#### Ephesians 3:8

##### unsearchable

unable to be completely known

##### riches of Christ

Paul speaks of the truth about Christ and the blessings he brings as if they were material wealth.

#### Ephesians 3:9

##### the mystery hidden for ages in God, who created all things

"God, who created all things, kept this plan hidden for long ages in the past"

#### Ephesians 3:10

##### This plan was made known through the church

"God made this plan known by means of the church"

##### rulers and authorities

Paul uses these words together to emphasize that every spiritual being will know God's wisdom.

##### in the heavenly places

"in the supernatural world." The word "heavenly" refers to the place where God is.

##### the many-sided nature of the wisdom of God

"the great and complex wisdom of God"

#### Ephesians 3:11

##### according to the eternal plan

"in keeping with the eternal plan"

#### Ephesians 3:12

##### we have boldness

"we are without fear" or "we have courage"

##### access with confidence

"access into God's presence with certainty" or "freedom to enter into God's presence with assurance"

#### Ephesians 3:13

##### for you, which is your glory

"for you. This is for your benefit" or "for you. You should be proud of this". The Christians in Ephesus should be proud of that Paul is suffering in prison.

#### Ephesians 3:14

##### For this reason

"Because God has done all this for you"

##### I bend my knees to the Father

"I bow down in prayer to the Father" or "I humbly pray to the Father". Bowed knees are a picture of the whole person in an attitude of prayer.

#### Ephesians 3:15

##### from whom every family in heaven and on earth is named

"who created and named every family in heaven and on earth"

#### Ephesians 3:16

##### I pray that he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with power

"I pray that God, because he is so great and powerful, would allow you to become strong with his power."

##### would grant

"would cause"

##### in your inner person

"in your heart" or "in your soul"

#### Ephesians 3:17

##### I pray that Christ may live in your hearts through faith and that you may be rooted and founded in his love

This is the second item which Paul prays that God will "grant" the Ephesians. The first is that they would "be strengthened" (Ephesians 3:16).

##### that Christ may live in your hearts through faith

"that Christ may live within you because you trust in him"

##### you may be rooted and founded in his love

"that you will be like a firmly rooted tree and a building built on stone because of his love"

#### Ephesians 3:18

##### that you might be able to understand

This is the first item which Paul says will be the result of the Christians being rooted and grounded in Christ's love. (Ephesians 3:17)

##### all God's holy people

"all believers in Christ"

##### the width, the length, the height, and the depth

"how very wise God is" or "how much Christ loves us"

#### Ephesians 3:19

##### to know the love of Christ, which goes beyond knowledge

This is the second item which Paul says will be the result of the Christians being rooted and grounded in Christ's love. (Ephesians 3:17)

##### that you may be filled with all the fullness of God

This is the third item for which Paul bends his knees and prays (Ephesians 3:14). The first is that they would "be strengthened" (Ephesians 3:16) and the second is that they "can understand" (Ephesians 3:18).

#### Ephesians 3:20

##### General Information:

The words "we" and "us" in this book continue to include Paul and all believers.

##### Now to him who

"Now to God, who". Paul concludes his prayer with a blessing.

##### to do far beyond all that we ask or think

"to do things that are much greater than all that we ask him for or think about"

## Chapter 4

#### Ephesians 4:1

##### as the prisoner for the Lord

"as someone who is in prison because of his choice to serve the Lord"

##### walk worthily of the calling

Walking is a common way to express the idea of living one's life.

#### Ephesians 4:2

##### to live with great humility and gentleness and patience

"to always be very humble, gentle, and patient"

#### Ephesians 4:3

##### to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace

"to live peacefully with one another and remain united, as the Spirit made possible". Here Paul speaks of "peace" as if it were a bond that ties people together. Paul considers it very important that the church is united and this is a major chapter theme.

#### Ephesians 4:4

##### one body

The church is often referred to as the body of Christ.

##### one Spirit

"one Holy Spirit"

##### you were called in one hope of your calling

"God invited you to one hope when he invited you" or "God chose you to hope for one thing when he chose you"

##### one hope

"one thing to confidently wait for"

#### Ephesians 4:6

##### Father of all ... over all ... through all ... and in all

The word "all" means "everything."

#### Ephesians 4:7

##### To each one of us grace has been given

"God gave a spiritual gift to each believer" or "a spiritual gift has been given". Spiritual gifts are specific supernatural abilities that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians when they come to believe in Jesus. These spiritual gifts were foundational to developing the church. This is only some of the spiritual gifts.

##### according to the measure of the gift of Christ

"according to the amount that Christ has given us"

#### Ephesians 4:8

##### When he ascended on high

"When he went up to the very high place" (Psalm 68:18)

#### Ephesians 4:9

##### he ascended

"he went up"

##### he also descended

"he also came down"

##### into the lower regions of the earth

"into the lowest place on earth" or "into the lower regions, the earth"

#### Ephesians 4:10

##### that he might fill all things

"so that he might satisfy everywhere in his power"

#### Ephesians 4:12

##### to equip God's holy people

"to prepare the people he has set apart" or "to provide the believers with what they need"

##### for the work of service

"so they can serve others"

##### for the building up of the body of Christ

"improvement" or "strengthening". Paul is speaking of people who grow spiritually as if they were doing exercises to increase the strength of their physical bodies.

##### body of Christ

The "body of Christ" refers to all of the individual members of Christ's Church.

#### Ephesians 4:13

##### reach the unity of faith

"become united together in faith"

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### become mature

"become mature believers"

##### mature

"fully developed" or "grown up"

#### Ephesians 4:14

##### be children

"be like children"

##### tossed back and forth ... carried away by every wind of doctrine

This speaks of a believer who has not become mature and follows wrong teaching as if that believer were a boat that the wind is blowing in different directions on the water.

##### by the trickery of people in their deceitful schemes

"by crafty people who trick believers with clever lies"

#### Ephesians 4:15

##### into him who is the head

Paul uses the human body to describe how Christ causes believers to work together in harmony as the head of a body causes the body parts to work together to grow healthy.

#### Ephesians 4:16

##### by every supporting ligament

A "ligament" is a strong band that connects bones or holds organs in place in the body.

#### Ephesians 4:17

##### Therefore, I say and insist on this in the Lord

"Because what I have just said, I will say something more to strongly encourage you because we all belong to the Lord"

##### that you must no longer walk as the Gentiles walk, in the futility of their minds

"stop living the way the Gentiles live, with their worthless thoughts"

#### Ephesians 4:18

##### They are darkened in their understanding, alienated from the life of God

"They do not understand what is true, and they do not have the life that God gives to people"

##### because of the ignorance that is in them

"because they refuse to learn what is true"

##### because of the hardness of their hearts

"because they are stubborn" or "because they refuse to listen to God"

#### Ephesians 4:19

##### have committed themselves to sensuality

"only want to satisfy their physical desires"

##### they practice every kind of uncleanness with greed

"they are continually practicing every kind of sinful act"

#### Ephesians 4:20

##### But that is not how you learned about Christ

"But what you learned about Christ was not like that"

#### Ephesians 4:21

##### I assume that you have heard ... and that you were taught

Paul knows that the Ephesians have heard and been taught.

##### you were taught in him

"Jesus's people have taught you" or "someone has taught you because you are Jesus's people".

##### as the truth is in Jesus

"as everything about Jesus is true"

#### Ephesians 4:22

##### to put off what belongs to your former manner of life

"to stop living according to your former manner of life"

##### to put off the old man

"to stop living as your former self did". The term "old man" probably refers to the sinful nature with which a person is born. The "new man" is the new nature or new life that God gives a person when they come to believe in Christ.

##### that is corrupt because of its deceitful desires

Paul speaks of the sinful human nature as if it were a dead body falling apart in its grave.

#### Ephesians 4:23

##### to be renewed in the spirit of your minds

"to allow God to change your attitudes and thoughts"

#### Ephesians 4:24

##### in true righteousness and holiness

"truly righteous and holy"

#### Ephesians 4:25

##### get rid of lies

"stop telling lies"

##### we are members of one another

"we are members of God's family"

#### Ephesians 4:26

##### Be angry and do not sin

"You may get angry, but do not sin" or "If you become angry, do not sin"

##### Do not let the sun go down on your anger

"Do not let the sun set while you are still angry with someone"

#### Ephesians 4:27

##### Do not give an opportunity to the devil

"Do not give the devil an opportunity to lead you into sin"

#### Ephesians 4:29

##### harmful talk

This refers to any speech that is cruel or rude.

##### for the edification of those

"for encouraging those" or "for strengthening those"

##### give grace to the hearers

"help those who hear you"

#### Ephesians 4:30

##### do not grieve

"do not distress" or "do not upset"

##### for it is by him that you were sealed for the day of redemption

"for he is the seal that assures you that God will redeem you on the day of redemption" or "for he is the one who assures you that God will redeem you on the day when God will free his people from sin"

#### Ephesians 4:31

##### Put away all bitterness, rage, anger

"You must not allow these things to be part of your life: bitterness, rage, anger"

##### rage

intense anger

#### Ephesians 4:32

##### Be kind

"Instead, be kind"

##### tenderhearted

"gentle and compassionate towards others"

## Chapter 5

#### Ephesians 5:1

##### Therefore be imitators of God

"Therefore you should do what God does,"

##### as beloved children

"because you are his children and he loves you dearly"

#### Ephesians 5:2

##### walk in love

"live a life of love"

##### a fragrant offering and sacrifice to God

"like a sweet-smelling offering and sacrifice to God"

#### Ephesians 5:3

##### But sexual immorality or any kind ... must not even be named among you

"Do not do anything that would let anyone think that you are are guilty of sexual immorality or any sinful act or greed"

#### Ephesians 5:4

##### Instead there should be thanksgiving

"Instead you should thank God"

#### Ephesians 5:6

##### empty words

words that have no truth to them

#### Ephesians 5:8

##### For you were once darkness

Just as one cannot see in the dark, so people who love to sin lack spiritual understanding.

##### but now you are light in the Lord

Just as one can see in the light, so people whom God has saved understand how to please God.

##### Walk as children of light

"Live as people who understand what the Lord wants them to do"

#### Ephesians 5:9

##### the fruit of the light consists in all goodness, righteousness, and truth

"the result of living in the light is good work, right living, and truthful behavior"

#### Ephesians 5:11

##### Do not associate with the unfruitful works of darkness

"Do not do useless, sinful things with unbelievers". In this chapter Paul teaches how God's people should live. He uses the image of darkness to represent sin and the image of light to represent righteousness.

##### unfruitful works

actions that do nothing good, useful, or profitable. Paul is comparing evil actions to an unhealthy tree that produces nothing good.

##### expose them

"bring them out into the light" or "show and tell people how wrong these actions are"

#### Ephesians 5:13

##### when anything is exposed by the light

"when the light shines on something"

#### Ephesians 5:14

##### anything that becomes visible is light

"people can clearly see everything that comes into the light." The Bible often speaks of God's truth as if it were light that could reveal the character of something.

##### Awake, you sleeper, and arise from the dead

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is addressing unbelievers who need to wake up from being dead spiritually just as a person who has died must come alive again in order to respond, or 2) Paul is addressing the Ephesian believers and using death as a metaphor for their spiritual weakness. (Isaiah 26:19, 51:17 and 52:1)

##### the dead

This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To arise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

##### you sleeper ... shine on you

These instances of "you" refer to the "sleeper" and are singular.

##### Christ will shine on you

Christ will enable an unbeliever to understand how evil his deeds are and how Christ will forgive him and give him new life, just as light shows what is being hid by darkness.

#### Ephesians 5:15

##### Look carefully how you walk—not as unwise but as wise

"Therefore you must be careful to live as a wise person rather than a foolish person"

#### Ephesians 5:16

##### Redeem the time

"Use time wisely" or "Put time to its best use"

##### because the days are evil

"because the people around you are doing all kinds of evil things"

#### Ephesians 5:18

##### And do not get drunk with wine

"You should not get drunk from drinking wine"

##### Instead, be filled with the Holy Spirit

"Instead, you should be controlled with the Holy Spirit"

#### Ephesians 5:19

##### psalms and hymns and spiritual songs

Possible meanings are 1) "all sorts of songs to praise God" or 2) Paul is listing specific forms of music.

##### psalms

These are probably songs from the Old Testament book of Psalms that Christians sang.

##### hymns

These are songs of praise and worship that may have been written specifically for Christians to sing.

##### spiritual songs

Possible meaning is that these are songs that the Holy Spirit inspires a person to sing right at that moment.

##### with all your heart

"enthusiastically"

#### Ephesians 5:20

##### in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

"as people who belong to our Lord Jesus Christ"

#### Ephesians 5:23

##### the head of the wife ... the head of the church

The word "head" represents the leader. Scholars are divided over how to understand this passage in its historical and cultural context. Some scholars believe men and women are perfectly equal in all things. Other scholars believe God created men and women to serve in distinctly different roles in marriage and the church. Translators should be careful not to let how they understand this issue affect how they translate this passage.

#### Ephesians 5:24

##### Christ, so also wives to their husbands

"Christ. In the same way, wives also must be subject to their husbands"

#### Ephesians 5:25

##### love your wives

"unselfishly serve your wives"

##### gave himself up

"allowed people to kill him"

##### for her

"for us"

#### Ephesians 5:26

##### sanctify her ... cleansed her

"sanctified us ... cleansed us"

##### having cleansed her by the washing of water with the word

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is referring to God making Christ's people clean by God's word and through water baptism in Christ or 2) Paul speaks of God making us spiritually clean from our sins by the message as if God were making our bodies clean by washing them with water.

#### Ephesians 5:27

##### without stain or wrinkle

Paul speaks of the church as though it were a garment that is clean and in good condition and to emphasize the church's purity.

##### holy and blameless

The word "blameless" means basically the same thing as "holy."

#### Ephesians 5:28

##### as their own bodies

"as husbands love their own bodies"

#### Ephesians 5:29

##### his own flesh

"his own body"

##### but nourishes

"but feeds"

#### Ephesians 5:30

##### we are members of his body

Here Paul speaks of the close union of believers with Christ as if they were part of his own body, for which he would naturally care.

#### Ephesians 5:31

##### For this reason

The words "his" and "himself" refer to a male believer who marries. (Genesis 2:24)

## Chapter 6

#### Ephesians 6:1

##### Children, obey your parents in the Lord

"Children, as followers of the Lord, obey your parents"

#### Ephesians 6:2

##### Honor your father and mother

Here Paul quotes Moses from Exodus 20:12 and Deuteronomy 5:16. Moses was talking to the people of Israel as though they were one person, so "your" is singular. You may need to translate it as plural.

#### Ephesians 6:4

##### do not provoke your children to anger

"do not cause your children to be angry"

##### raise them in the discipline and instruction of the Lord

"teach them to become adults by making sure that they know and do what the Lord wants them to do"

#### Ephesians 6:5

##### be obedient to

"obey." This is a command. Paul does not write in this chapter about whether slavery is good or bad. Paul teaches about working to please God whether as a slave or as a master. What Paul teaches here about slavery would have been surprising. In his time, masters were not expected to treat their slaves with respect and not threaten them.

##### your masters according to the flesh

"your human masters"

##### deep respect and trembling

The phrase "deep respect and trembling" uses two similar ideas to emphasize the importance of slaves honoring their masters.

##### and trembling

"and fear"

##### in the honesty of your heart

"with sincerity"

#### Ephesians 6:6

##### as slaves of Christ

Serve your earthly master as though your earthly master were Christ himself.

##### from your heart

"with sincerity" or "enthusiastically"

#### Ephesians 6:7

##### Serve with all your heart

"Serve with all of your being" or "Be completely dedicated when you serve"

#### Ephesians 6:9

##### treat your slaves in the same way

"you also must treat your slaves well" or "just as slaves must do good to their masters, you also must do good to your slaves" (Ephesians 6:5).

##### You know that he who is both their Master and yours is in heaven

"You know that Christ is the Master of both slaves and their masters, and that he is in heaven"

##### there is no partiality with him

"he judges everyone the same way"

#### Ephesians 6:10

##### the strength of his might

"his great power."

#### Ephesians 6:11

##### Put on the whole armor of God, so ... to stand against the scheming plans of the devil

Christians should use all the resources God gives to stand firmly against the devil just as a soldier puts on armor to protect himself from enemy attacks.

##### the scheming plans

"the tricky plans"

#### Ephesians 6:12

##### flesh and blood

This expression refers to people, not spirits who do not have human bodies.

##### against the powers over this present darkness

"against the powerful spiritual beings that rule over people during this present evil time"

#### Ephesians 6:13

##### so that you may be able to stand ... to stand firm

"so that you may be able to resist evil ... to remain strong"

##### in the evil day

"at the evil time" or "when people do evil deeds"

#### Ephesians 6:14

##### Stand firm

"Resist evil"

##### the belt of truth

Truth holds everything together for a believer just as a belt holds the clothing of a soldier together.

##### truth ... righteousness

We are to know the truth and act in ways that please God.

##### the breastplate of righteousness

Possible meanings are 1) the gift of righteousness covers a believer's heart just as a breastplate protects the chest of a soldier or 2) our living as God wants us gives us a clear conscience that protects our hearts the way a breastplate protects a soldier's chest.

#### Ephesians 6:15

##### and, with your feet fitted with the readiness that comes from the gospel of peace

Just as a soldier wears shoes to give him solid footing, the believer must have solid knowledge of the gospel of peace in order to be ready to proclaim it.

#### Ephesians 6:16

##### In all circumstances take up the shield of faith

The believer must use the faith that God gives for protection when the devil attacks just as a soldier uses a shield to protect him from enemy attacks.

##### the flaming arrows of the evil one

The attacks of the devil against a believer are like flaming arrows shot at a soldier by an enemy.

#### Ephesians 6:17

##### take the helmet of salvation

Salvation given by God protects the believer's mind just as a helmet protects the head of a soldier.

##### the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God

The writer speaks of God's instructions to his people as if they were a sword that his people could use to fight an enemy,

#### Ephesians 6:18

##### With every prayer and request, pray at all times in the Spirit

"Pray at all times in the Spirit as you pray and make specific requests"

##### To this end

"For this reason"

##### be watching with all perseverance as you offer prayers for all God's holy people

"be watching, and even when it is difficult, keep praying for all the believers"

#### Ephesians 6:19

##### that a message might be given to me

"that God might give me the word" or "God might give me the message"

##### when I open my mouth. Pray that I might make known with boldness

"when I speak. Pray that I boldly explain"

#### Ephesians 6:20

##### It is for the gospel that I am an ambassador who is kept in chains

"I am now in prison because I am a representative of the gospel"

##### so that I may declare it boldly, as I ought to speak

"so pray that whenever I teach the gospel, I will speak it as boldly as I should"

#### Ephesians 6:21

##### Tychicus

Tychicus was one of several men who served with Paul.

##### the beloved brother

"my beloved brother"

##### make everything known

"will tell you everything about me"

#### Ephesians 6:22

##### so that he may encourage your hearts

"so that he may encourage you"

#### Ephesians 6:23

##### Peace to the brothers

Paul closes his letter to the Ephesian believers with a blessing of peace and grace on all believers who love Christ.

## Chapter 1

#### Philippians 1:1

##### Paul and Timothy, servants of Christ Jesus

Paul and Timothy wrote this letter to the church at Philippi. Because Paul writes later in the letter saying "I," it is generally assumed that he is the author and that Timothy, who is with him, writes as Paul speaks. All instances of "you" and "your" in the letter refer to the believers in the Philippian church and are plural. The word "our" probably refers to all believers in Christ, including Paul, Timothy, and the Philippian believers.

##### all God's holy people in Christ Jesus

"all God's people in Christ Jesus" or "all those who belong to God because they are united with Christ"

##### the overseers and deacons

"the leaders of the church"

#### Philippians 1:3

##### every time I remember you

"every time I think of you"

#### Philippians 1:5

##### because of your partnership in the gospel

"because you are helping me proclaim the gospel"

#### Philippians 1:6

##### I am confident

"I am sure"

##### he who began ... you

"God, who began ... you"

#### Philippians 1:7

##### It is proper for me

"It is right for me"

##### I have you in my heart

"I love you very much"

##### have been my partners in grace

"have been partakers of grace with me" or "have shared in grace with me"

#### Philippians 1:8

##### God is my witness,

"God knows" or "God understands"

##### with the compassion of Christ Jesus

"and I love you as Christ Jesus dearly loves us all"

#### Philippians 1:9

##### may abound

"may increase". Paul prays for the believers in Philippi and talks about the joy there is in suffering for the Lord.

##### in knowledge and all understanding

"as you learn and understand more about what pleases God"

#### Philippians 1:10

##### approve

"test and choose"

##### what is excellent

"what is most pleasing to God"

##### sincere and blameless

"completely blameless"

#### Philippians 1:11

##### filled with the fruit of righteousness that comes through Jesus Christ

"habitually doing what is righteous because Jesus Christ enables you"

##### to the glory and praise of God

"Then other people will see how you honor God" or "Then people will praise and give honor to God because of the good things they see you do." These alternate translations would require a new sentence.

#### Philippians 1:12

##### brothers

This means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### what has happened to me

"what I suffered because I was put into prison for preaching about Jesus". Paul says that two things have happened: many people inside and outside the palace have found out why he is in prison, and other Christians are no longer afraid to proclaim the good news.

##### has really served to advance the gospel

"has caused more people to hear the gospel"

#### Philippians 1:13

##### my chains in Christ came to light

"It became known that I am in prison for the sake of Christ"

##### my chains in Christ came to light throughout the whole palace guard and to everyone else

"the palace guards and many other people in Rome know that I am in chains for the sake of Christ"

##### my chains in Christ

"my chains for the sake of Christ" or "my chains because I teach people about Christ"

##### palace guard

This was a group of soldiers that helped protect the Roman emperor.

#### Philippians 1:14

##### Most of the brothers have far more confidence in the Lord

"Most of the brothers in the Lord have far more confidence."

##### fearlessly speak the word

"fearlessly speak God's message"

#### Philippians 1:15

##### Some indeed even proclaim Christ

"Some people preach the good news about Christ"

##### out of envy and strife

"because they do not want people listening to me, and they want to cause trouble"

##### and also others out of good will

"but other people do it because they are kind and they want to help"

#### Philippians 1:16

##### The latter

"Those who proclaim Christ out of good will"

##### I am put here for the defense of the gospel

"God chose me to defend the gospel" or "I am in prison because I defend the gospel."

##### for the defense of the gospel

"to teach everyone that the message of Jesus is true"

#### Philippians 1:17

##### But the former

"But the ones who proclaim Christ out of envy and strife"

##### while I am in chains

"while I am imprisoned" or "while I am in prison"

#### Philippians 1:18

##### What then?

"What then shall I think about this?"

##### Only that in every way—whether from false motives or from true—Christ is proclaimed

"As long as people preach about Christ, it does not matter if they do it for good reasons or for bad reasons"

##### in this I rejoice

"I am happy because people are preaching about Jesus"

##### I will rejoice

"I will celebrate" or "I will be glad"

#### Philippians 1:19

##### this will result in my deliverance

"because people proclaim Christ, God will deliver me"

##### in my deliverance

"in my being brought to a safe place" or "in God bringing me to a safe place"

##### through your prayers and the help of the Spirit of Jesus Christ

"because you are praying and the Spirit of Jesus Christ is helping me"

##### Spirit of Jesus Christ

"Holy Spirit"

#### Philippians 1:20

##### It is my eager expectation and hope

"I eagerly and confidently hope"

##### with all boldness

"because I act with all boldness" or "after I have acted boldly"

##### Christ will be exalted in my body

"I will honor Christ no matter what happens to my body" or "people will praise Christ no matter what I do or what others do to me"

##### whether by life or by death

"whether I live or die" or "if I go on living or if I die"

#### Philippians 1:21

##### For to me

These words indicate that this is Paul's personal experience.

##### to live is Christ

"to go on living is an opportunity to please Christ"

##### to die is gain

Possible meanings for "gain" are 1) Paul's death will help spread the message of the gospel or 2) Paul will be in a better situation.

#### Philippians 1:22

##### But if I am to live in the flesh

"But if I am to remain alive in my body"

##### that means fruitful labor for me

"that means I will be able to do work that produces good results"

##### Yet which to choose?

"But which should I choose?"

#### Philippians 1:23

##### For I am hard pressed between the two

"I am under tension. I do not know if I should choose to live or to die"

##### My desire is to depart and be with Christ

"I would like to die because I would go to be with Christ"

#### Philippians 1:25

##### Being convinced of this

"Since I am sure that it is better for you that I stay alive"

##### I know that I will remain

"I know that I will continue to live"

#### Philippians 1:26

##### so that in me

"so that because of what I do"

#### Philippians 1:27

##### that you are standing firm in one spirit, with one mind striving together for the faith of the gospel

The phrases "standing firm in one spirit" and "with one mind striving together" emphasize the importance of unity.

##### with one mind striving together

"agreeing with one another and working hard together"

##### for the faith of the gospel

"to spread the faith that is based on the gospel" or "to believe and live as the gospel teaches us"

#### Philippians 1:28

##### Do not be frightened in any respect

This is a command to the Philippian believers. If your language has a plural command form, use it here.

##### This is a sign to them of their destruction, but of your salvation—and this from God

"Your courage will show them that God will destroy them. It will also show you that God will save you"

##### and this from God

"and this is from God." Possible meanings are: 1) the believers' courage or 2) the sign or 3) destruction and salvation.

#### Philippians 1:30

##### having the same conflict which you saw in me, and now you hear in me

"suffering in the same way that you saw me suffer, and that you hear I am still suffering"

## Chapter 2

#### Philippians 2:1

##### If there is any encouragement in Christ

"If Christ has encouraged you" or "If you are encouraged because of Christ"

##### if there is any comfort provided by love

"if his love for you has comforted you in any way"

##### if there is any fellowship in the Spirit

"if you have fellowship with the Spirit"

##### if there are any tender mercies and compassions

"if you have experienced many of God's acts of tender mercy and compassion"

#### Philippians 2:2

##### make my joy full

"cause me to rejoice greatly"

#### Philippians 2:3

##### Do nothing out of ambition or empty conceit

"Do not serve yourselves out of selfish ambition or think of yourselves as better than others"

#### Philippians 2:4

##### Let each of you look out not only for his own interests, but also for the interests of others

"Do not care only about what you need and desire, but also about what others need and desire"

#### Philippians 2:5

##### Have this mind in yourselves which also was in Christ Jesus

"Think about one another the way Christ Jesus thought of people"

#### Philippians 2:6

##### he existed in the form of God

"everything that is true of God was true of him"

##### did not consider his equality with God as something to hold on to

"did not think that he had to have the same status as God". Holding onto equality with God represents demanding that he continue to be honored as God is honored. Christ did not do that. Though he did not cease to be God, he ceased to act as God.

#### Philippians 2:7

##### he emptied himself

Paul speaks of Christ as if he were a container in order to say that Christ refused to act with his divine powers during his ministry on earth.

##### he was born in the likeness of men

"he was born a human being"

#### Philippians 2:8

##### became obedient to the point of death

Possible meanings of "to the point of death" are 1) Christ went all the way to death or 2) Christ was obedient even until the time that he died.

##### death, even death on a cross

"death, that is, death on a cross”

#### Philippians 2:9

##### the name that is above every name

"the rank that is above any other rank" or "the honor that is above any other honor"

#### Philippians 2:10

##### at the name of Jesus every knee should bow

"at the name of Jesus everyone will bow to worship him"

##### under the earth

Possible meanings are 1) the place where people go when they die or 2) the place where demons dwell.

#### Philippians 2:11

##### every tongue

"every person" or "every being"

##### to the glory of God the Father

"with the result that they will praise God the Father"

#### Philippians 2:12

##### my beloved

"my dear fellow believers"

##### in my presence

"when I am there with you"

##### in my absence

"when I am not there with you"

##### work out your own salvation

"work in a way that is appropriate because you have been saved" or "work hard to do the good things that show that God has saved you"

##### salvation with fear and trembling

"salvation with deep reverence”

#### Philippians 2:13

##### both to will and to work for his good pleasure

"so that you will want to do what pleases him and will be able to do what pleases him"

#### Philippians 2:15

##### blameless and pure

"completely innocent"

##### in the middle of a crooked and depraved generation

"among very sinful people"

##### in which you shine as lights in the world

"among whom your righteous lives are like lights in the world"

#### Philippians 2:16

##### Hold on to the word of life

"Continue to firmly believe the word of life"

##### the word of life

"the message that brings life" or "the message that shows how to live the way God wants you to"

##### on the day of Christ

"when Christ returns"

##### I did not run in vain or labor in vain

"I did not work so hard for nothing"

##### run

The scriptures often use the image of walking to represent conducting one's life. Running is living life intensely.

#### Philippians 2:17

##### But even if I am being poured out as an offering on the sacrifice and service of your faith, I am glad and rejoice with you all

"But, even if the Romans kill me and it is as if my blood pours out as an offering, I will be glad and rejoice with you all if my death will make your faith and obedience more pleasing to God"

#### Philippians 2:19

##### But I hope in the Lord Jesus to send Timothy to you soon

"But if it is the will of the Lord Jesus, I expect to send Timothy to you soon"

#### Philippians 2:20

##### For I have no one else like him, who

"No one else here loves you as much as he does: he"

#### Philippians 2:21

##### For they all

This refers to a group of people Paul does not feel he can trust to send to Philippi. Paul is expressing his displeasure with those who should have been able to go but Paul does not trust them to fulfill their mission.

#### Philippians 2:22

##### as a son with his father, so he served with me

Fathers and sons love each other and work together. Timothy was not really Paul's son, but he worked with Paul as a son works with his father.

##### in the gospel

"in telling people about the gospel"

#### Philippians 2:23

##### I hope to send him as soon as I see how things will go with me

"I hope to send him immediately after I see how things will go with me"

##### I hope to send him

"I plan to send him" or "I expect to send him"

##### I see how things will go with me

"I find out what happens concerning me" or "I learn what will happen to me"

#### Philippians 2:24

##### I am confident in the Lord that I myself will also come soon

"I am sure, if it is the Lord's will, that I will also come soon"

#### Philippians 2:25

##### Epaphroditus

This is the name of a man sent by the Philippian church to minister to Paul in prison.

##### fellow worker and fellow soldier

"fellow believer who works and struggles along with us". Here Paul is speaking of Epaphroditus as if he were a soldier. He means that Epaphroditus is trained and is dedicated to serving God, no matter how great the hardship he must suffer.

##### your messenger and servant for my needs

"who brings your messages to me and helps me when I am in need"

#### Philippians 2:26

##### he was very distressed, and he longed to be with you all

"he was very worried and wanted to be with you all"

#### Philippians 2:27

##### sorrow upon sorrow

"the sorrow of losing him added to the sorrow I already have from being in prison"

#### Philippians 2:28

##### I can have less sorrow

"I will not be as sad as I have been"

#### Philippians 2:29

##### welcome him

"gladly receive Epaphroditus"

##### in the Lord with all joy

"with the great joy we have because the Lord Jesus loves us"

#### Philippians 2:30

##### he came near death

"he almost died." Paul speaks of dying as if death were a place that people could go to.

##### so that he could bring to completion what was lacking in your service to me

"so that he could complete what you could not do in serving me"

## Chapter 3

#### Philippians 3:1

##### Finally, my brothers

"Now moving along, my brothers" or "Concerning other matters, my brothers"

##### brothers

This means fellow Christians, including both men and women, because all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.

##### rejoice in the Lord

"be happy because of all the Lord has done"

##### For me to write these same things again to you is no trouble for me

"It is no trouble for me to write these things again to you"

##### and it keeps you safe

"doing this keeps you safe because these teachings will protect you from those who teach what is not true"

#### Philippians 3:2

##### Watch out for

"Beware of" or "Be on guard against"

##### the dogs ... those evil workers ... the mutilation

These are three different ways of describing the same group of false teachers and Paul is using strong expressions to show how he feel about these Jewish teachers who claim to be Christians.

##### dogs

The word "dogs" was used by the Jews to refer to those who were not Jews. They were considered unclean. Paul speaks of the false teachers as though they were dogs, to insult them. If you have a different animal in your culture that is considered unclean or whose name is used as an insult, you could use this animal instead.

##### the mutilation

"those who mutilate the body". This exaggeration plays on the idea of circumcision. Paul speaks of those who wanted to trim off the foreskin as if they were totally mutilating the body.

#### Philippians 3:3

##### For it is we who are

Paul uses "we" to refer to himself and all true believers in Christ, including the Philippian believers.

##### the circumcision

"the truly circumcised ones" or "truly God's people". Paul continues warning the Philippians against people who say that Christians have to obey the Jewish ceremonial law. Paul uses this phrase to refer to believers in Christ who are not physically circumcised but are spiritually circumcised, which means they have received the Holy Spirit through faith.

##### have no confidence in the flesh

"do not trust in anything about ourselves to make us right with God". To have no confidence in the flesh means to understand that those things cannot make a person right with God.

#### Philippians 3:4

##### Even so, I myself could have confidence in the flesh. If anyone thinks he has confidence in the flesh, I could have even more

"However, I could trust in something about myself to make me right with God. If anyone thinks he can trust in anything about himself, I could trust in myself even more". To have confidence in the flesh means to believe that those things can make a person right with God.

##### I myself

"certainly I"

#### Philippians 3:5

##### I was circumcised

"A priest circumcised me"

##### on the eighth day

"seven days after I was born"

##### a Hebrew of Hebrews

"a Hebrew son with Hebrew parents" or "the purest Hebrew".

##### with regard to the law, a Pharisee

"as a Pharisee, I was committed to obeying all of the law"

#### Philippians 3:6

##### As for zeal, I persecuted the church

"I had so much zeal for God that I attacked Christians" or "Because I wanted so much to honor God, I persecuted the church"

##### as for righteousness under the law, I was blameless

"I was so righteous by obeying the law that I was blameless"

#### Philippians 3:7

##### whatever things were a profit for me

"anything that other Jews praised me for". Paul is referring here to the praise he received for being an eager Pharisee. He speaks of this praise as if he had viewed it in the past as a businessman's profit.

##### profit ... loss

If many people in your culture do not understand formal business terms, you could translate these terms as "things that made my life better" and "things that made my life worse".

##### I have considered them as loss

Paul speaks of that praise as if he were now viewing it as a business loss instead of a profit. In other words, Paul says that all his religious acts of righteousness are worthless before Christ.

#### Philippians 3:8

##### In fact

"Really" or "Truly"

##### now I count

"now that I have trusted in Christ, I count"

##### I count all things to be loss

"I consider everything to be worthless"

##### because of the surpassing value of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord

"because knowing Christ Jesus my Lord is worth so much more"

##### so that I may gain Christ

"so that I may have only Christ"

#### Philippians 3:9

##### be found in him

"be truly united with Christ"

##### not having a righteousness of my own from the law

Paul knows that he cannot become righteous by obeying the law.

##### but that which is through faith in Christ

"but having the righteousness that comes by believing in Christ". The word "that" refers to righteousness. Paul knows that he can become righteous only by believing in Christ.

#### Philippians 3:10

##### the power of his resurrection

"his power that gives us life"

##### the fellowship of his sufferings

"what it is like to suffer as he suffered" or "what it is like to participate in suffering with him"

##### becoming like him in his death

Possible meanings are 1) Paul wants to be like Christ by dying as Christ died or 2) Paul wants his desire to sin to become as dead as Jesus was before he was raised.

#### Philippians 3:11

##### so somehow I may experience the resurrection from the dead

"so that no matter what happens to me now, I will come back to life after I die"

#### Philippians 3:12

##### obtained these things

These include knowing Christ, knowing the power of his resurrection, sharing in Christ's suffering, and being united with Christ in his death and resurrection. Paul urges the believers at Philippi to follow his present example because of heaven and the new bodies that wait for believers. He speaks, knowing that God will allow him to live forever in heaven, as if he were a runner racing for the finish line.

##### or am already perfect

"so I am not yet perfect" or "so I am not yet mature"

##### but I press on

"but I keep trying"

##### to take hold of that for which I was taken hold of by Christ Jesus

"to receive these things for which Jesus claimed me as his own". Receiving spiritual things from Christ is spoken of as if Paul could grasp them with his hands, and Jesus choosing Paul to belong to him is spoken of as if Jesus grasped Paul with his hands.

#### Philippians 3:13

##### I myself have yet taken hold of it

"all these things belong to me yet"

##### Forgetting what is behind and straining forward to what is ahead,

"I do not care what I have done in the past; I only work as hard as I can on what is ahead.". Like a runner in a race is no longer concerned about what is completed but on what is ahead; Paul speaks of setting aside his religious works of righteousness and only focusing on the race of life that Christ has set before him to complete.

#### Philippians 3:14

##### I press on toward the goal with a view to the prize of the upward call of God in Christ Jesus

"I do all I can to be like Christ, like a runner racing to the finish line, so that I may belong to him, and God may call me to himself after I die"

##### the upward call

Possible meanings are that Paul speaks as if God were to call Paul to ascend 1) to heaven as Jesus did or 2) meeting God face to face and receiving eternal life.

#### Philippians 3:15

##### All of us who are mature, let us think this way

"I encourage all of us believers who are strong in the faith to think the same way"

##### God will also reveal that to you

"God will also make it clear to you" or "God will make sure you know it"

#### Philippians 3:16

##### Nevertheless, let us live up to what we have already attained.

"However, let us keep living by the same standard we have achieved."

##### Nevertheless

"No matter what else is true"

#### Philippians 3:17

##### Be imitators of me

"Do what I do" or "Live as I live"

##### those who are walking by the example that you have in us

"those who already are living as we live" or "those who already are doing what we do"

#### Philippians 3:18

##### Many are walking

"Many are conducting their lives"

##### those about whom I have often told you, and now I am telling you with tears

Paul interrupts his main thought with these words that describe the "many." You can move them to the beginning or end of the verse if you need to.

##### I have often told you

"I have told you many times"

##### am telling you with tears

"am telling you with great sadness"

##### as enemies of the cross of Christ

"in a way that shows they are actually against Jesus, who was willing to suffer and die on a cross". Here "the cross of Christ" refers to Christ's suffering and death. The enemies are those who say they believe in Jesus but are not willing to suffer or die like Jesus did.

#### Philippians 3:19

##### Their end is destruction

"Someday God will destroy them."

##### their god is their stomach

"they desire food and other physical pleasures more than they desire to obey God"

##### their glory is in their shame

"they are proud of the things that should cause them shame"

##### They think about earthly things

"All they think about is what will please themselves rather than what will please God"

#### Philippians 3:20

##### our citizenship is in heaven

"we are citizens of heaven" or "our homeland is heaven" or "our true home is heaven." By Paul's use of "our" and "we", he includes himself and the believers in Philippi.

#### Philippians 3:21

##### He will transform our lowly bodies

"He will change our weak, earthly bodies"

##### into bodies formed like his glorious body

"into bodies like his glorious body"

##### body, formed by the might of his power to subject all things to himself

"body. He will change our bodies with the same power he uses to control all things"

## Chapter 4

#### Philippians 4:1

##### Therefore, my beloved brothers whom I long for

"So, my fellow believers whom I love and greatly desire to see"

##### my joy and crown

"You give me joy because you have believed in Jesus, and you are my reward and honor for my work". Paul uses the word "joy" to mean that the Philippian church is the cause of his happiness and the word "crown" means the Philippian church brought honor to Paul before God.

##### in this way stand firm in the Lord, beloved friends

"continue living for the Lord in the way that I have taught you, dear friends"

#### Philippians 4:2

##### I am pleading with Euodia, and I am pleading with Syntyche

"I beg Euodia, and I beg Syntyche". These are women who were believers and helped Paul in the church at Philippi. Apparently these two women disagreed with each other. Paul was encouraging them to agree.

##### be of the same mind in the Lord

"agree with each other because you both believe in the same Lord"

#### Philippians 4:3

##### Yes, I ask you, my true companion

Here "you" refers to the "true fellow worker" and is singular. Paul does not say the name of the person. He calls him that to show he worked with Paul to spread the gospel.

##### along with Clement

Clement was a man who was a believer and worker in the church at Philippi.

##### whose names are in the Book of Life

"whose names God has written in the Book of Life"

#### Philippians 4:4

##### Rejoice in the Lord

"Be happy because of all the Lord has done."

#### Philippians 4:5

##### The Lord is near

Possible meanings are 1) The Lord Jesus is near to the believers in spirit or 2) the day the Lord Jesus will return to the earth is near.

#### Philippians 4:6

##### in everything by prayer and earnest appeal with thanksgiving, let your requests be known to God

"whatever happens to you, ask God for everything you need with prayer and thanks"

#### Philippians 4:7

##### the peace of God

"the peace that God gives"

##### which surpasses all understanding

"which is more than we can understand"

##### will guard your hearts and your thoughts in Christ

"will be like a soldier and guard your emotions and thoughts in Christ"

##### your thoughts

The word translated "thoughts" can also be translated "minds," referring to the part of the person that thinks.

#### Philippians 4:8

##### whatever things are lovely

"whatever things are pleasing"

##### whatever things are of good report

"whatever things people admire" or "whatever things people respect"

##### if there is anything excellent

"if they are morally good"

##### if there is anything to be praised

"and if they are things that people praise"

#### Philippians 4:9

##### that you have learned and received and heard and seen in me

"that I have taught and shown you"

#### Philippians 4:11

##### to be content

"to be satisfied" or "to be happy"

##### in all circumstances

"no matter what my situation is"

#### Philippians 4:12

##### I know what it is to be poor ... to have plenty

Paul knows how to live happily having either no possessions or many possessions.

##### how to be well fed or to be hungry, and how to have an abundance or to be in need

Paul uses these two phrases to emphasize that he has learned how to be content in any situation.

#### Philippians 4:13

##### I can do all things through him who strengthens me

"I can do all things because Christ gives me strength"

#### Philippians 4:14

##### in my difficulties

"when things became difficult"

#### Philippians 4:15

##### the beginning of the gospel

"as I began to preach the gospel"

##### no church supported me in the matter of giving and receiving except you alone

"the only church that supported me in the matter of giving and receiving was you" or "you were the only church that sent me money or helped me"

#### Philippians 4:17

##### It is not that I seek the gift

"My reason for writing this is not that I want you to give me more"

##### I seek the fruit that increases to your credit

"Rather I want God to bless you more because of the good deeds that you do"

#### Philippians 4:18

##### even more

"even more than necessary"

##### They are a sweet-smelling aroma, a sacrifice acceptable and pleasing to God

"I assure you these gifts are very pleasing to God, like an acceptable sacrifice". Paul speaks of the gift from the Philippian church as if it were a sacrifice offered to God on an altar. Paul implies that the church's gift is very pleasing to God, like the sacrifices that the priests burned, which had a smell that pleased God.

#### Philippians 4:19

##### will meet all your needs

This phrase translates the same word that is translated "have been well supplied" in verse 18.

##### according to his riches in glory in Christ Jesus

"from his glorious riches that he gives through Christ Jesus"

#### Philippians 4:21

##### The brothers

This refers to those people who were either ministering with or to Paul.

##### all God's holy people

"every holy person"

#### Philippians 4:22

##### especially those of Caesar's household

"especially the fellow believers who work in the palace of Caesar"

#### Philippians 4:23

##### with your spirit

"with you"

## Chapter 1

#### Colossians 1:1

##### an apostle of Christ Jesus through the will of God

"whom God chose to be an apostle of Christ Jesus". Though this letter is from Paul and Timothy to the Colossian believers, Paul makes it clear that he is the writer. Most likely Timothy was with him and wrote the words down as Paul spoke. Throughout this letter the words "we," "our," and "ours" include the Colossians unless noted otherwise. The words "you," "your," and "yours" refer to the Colossian believers and so are plural unless noted otherwise.

#### Colossians 1:3

##### We give ... our Lord ... we always

These words do not include the Colossians.

#### Colossians 1:4

##### We have heard

Paul is excluding his audience.

##### your faith in Christ Jesus

"your belief in Christ Jesus"

#### Colossians 1:5

##### because of the hope reserved for you in heaven

"because you are confident that God, who is in heaven, will do the many good things that he has promised you". Here "hope" stands for what the believer can confidently expect, that is, the things that God has promised to do for all believers.

##### the word of truth, the gospel

"the message about the truth, the gospel" or "the true message, the gospel."

#### Colossians 1:6

##### this gospel is bearing fruit and is growing

"This gospel is having good results, more and more" or "This gospel is having increasing results"

##### in all the world

"throughout the world"

##### the grace of God in truth

"the true grace of God"

#### Colossians 1:7

##### our beloved ... our behalf

The word "our" does not include the Colossians.

##### gospel as you learned it from Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, who

"gospel. It is exactly what Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, taught you. He"

##### Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, who is a faithful servant of Christ on our behalf

Here "on our behalf" means that Epaphras was doing work for Christ that Paul himself would have done if he were not in prison.

##### Epaphras

the man who preached the gospel to the people in Colossae

#### Colossians 1:8

##### to us

The word "us" does not include the Colossians.

##### your love in the Spirit

"how the Holy Spirit has enabled you to love believers".

#### Colossians 1:9

##### Because of this love

"Because the Holy Spirit has enabled you to love other believers"

##### we heard ... we have not stopped ... We pray

The word "we" does not include the Colossians.

##### from the day we heard this

"from the day Epaphras told us these things"

##### that you will be filled with the knowledge of his will

"that God will fill you with what you need to know so that you can do his will"

##### in all wisdom and spiritual understanding

"so that the Holy Spirit will make you wise and able to understand what God wants you to do"

#### Colossians 1:10

##### that you will walk in a manner that is worthy of the Lord and that pleases him

"that you will live as God expects you to and so please him"

##### by bearing fruit in every good work and growing

"by making sure that all of your good works please God and people and growing". Paul is speaking of the Colossian believers as if they were trees or plants that grow and bear fruit.

##### growing in the knowledge of God

"always learning more about God"

#### Colossians 1:12

##### made you able to have a share

"allowed you to share"

##### made you able

Here Paul is focusing on his readers as receivers of God's blessings. But he does not mean that he himself has no share in those blessings.

##### inheritance

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

##### in light

"in the glory of his presence". This idea is opposite to the idea of the dominion of darkness in the next verse.

#### Colossians 1:13

##### He has rescued us

"God has rescued us"

##### the dominion of darkness

"the evil forces that controlled us"

##### his beloved Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Colossians 1:15

##### He is the image of the invisible God

"His Son is the image of the invisible God." By knowing the Son, we learn what God the Father is like. This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### the firstborn of all creation

"God's Son, the most important one over all creation". The expression "firstborn" does not refer to when Jesus was born. Instead, it refers to his position as the eternal Son of God the Father. This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### of all creation

"over all that God created"

#### Colossians 1:16

##### For in him all things were created

"For in Jesus God created all things"

##### all things were created through him and for him

"God created all things through Jesus and for Jesus"

#### Colossians 1:17

##### He himself is before all things

"It is Jesus who existed before all things"

##### in him all things hold together

"Jesus holds everything together"

#### Colossians 1:18

##### He is the head

"Jesus Christ, the Son of God, is the head". It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### He is the head of the body, the church

Paul speaks of Jesus's position over the church as if he were the head on the human body. As the head rules the body, so does Jesus rule the church.

##### the beginning

"the originating authority."

##### firstborn from among the dead

Jesus is the first person to die and come back to life, never to die again.

#### Colossians 1:20

##### through the blood of his cross

"by means of the blood Jesus shed on the cross"

##### the blood of his cross

Here "blood" stands for the death of Christ on the cross.

##### whether things on earth or things in heaven

This phrase explains what "all things" means. Some languages might prefer to put it closer to "all things."

#### Colossians 1:21

##### At one time you also

"There was a time when you Colossian believers also"

##### were alienated

were no longer living in loving relationship with God

#### Colossians 1:22

##### blameless, and above accusation

"holy and perfect". Paul uses these two concepts to emphasize the idea of perfection.

##### before him

"in God's view" or "in God's mind"

#### Colossians 1:23

##### not moved away from the hope of the gospel that you heard

"continuing in the hope of the gospel that you heard" or "continuing to confidently expect what is promised in the gospel".

##### which was proclaimed

"which believers proclaimed"

##### to every person created under heaven

"to every person in the world". God created everyone.

##### the gospel of which I, Paul, became a servant

"the gospel that I, Paul, serve God by proclaiming". Paul was a servant of God.

#### Colossians 1:24

##### I fill up in my flesh what is lacking of the afflictions of Christ

Paul may be acknowledging here that there is much suffering that he and all other Christians must endure before Christ comes again, and that Christ in a spiritual sense joins with them in experiencing these hardships. Paul certainly does not mean that Christ's sufferings alone were not enough to provide salvation for the believers.

##### I fill up in my flesh

Paul speaks of his body as if it were a container that could hold suffering.

##### for the sake of his body, which is the church

Paul often speaks of the church, the group of all Christian believers, as if it were Christ's body.

#### Colossians 1:25

##### to fulfill the word of God

"to be obedient to what God has instructed". This means to bring about the purpose of God's gospel message, which is that it be preached and believed.

#### Colossians 1:26

##### This is the mystery that was hidden

"This is the mystery that God had hidden"

##### for ages and for generations

The words "ages" and "generations" refer to the time period from the creation of the world until the time when the gospel was preached.

##### now has been revealed to God's holy people

"now God has revealed it to his holy people"

#### Colossians 1:27

##### the riches of the glory of this mystery

"the greatness of the glory of this mystery". Paul speaks as if it were a treasure of material wealth.

##### which is Christ in you

"which is that Christ is in you" or "which is that Christ is united to you". This is one of Paul's ways of expressing the union of the believers with Christ.

##### the hope of glory

"so you can confidently expect to share in God's glory" or "so you can confidently wait for God's glory".

#### Colossians 1:28

##### We proclaim ... we may present

These instances of "we" include Paul and his companions but do not include the Colossians.

##### so that we may present every person

"so that we may present to God every person"

## Chapter 2

#### Colossians 2:1

##### how great a struggle I have had for you

Paul has exerted much effort in developing their purity and their understanding of the gospel and continues to encourage the believers in Colossae and Laodicea to understand that Christ is God and that he lives in believers.

##### Laodicea

This was a city very close to Colossae where there was another church for which Paul was praying.

##### as many as have not seen my face in the flesh

"all those who have never seen me personally" or "all those whom I have never met face to face"

#### Colossians 2:2

##### so that their hearts

"so that their hearts and yours"

##### brought together

This means brought together in a close relationship.

##### all the riches of full assurance of understanding

Paul speaks of a person who is completely sure that the good news is true as though that person were rich in physical things.

##### the mystery of God

This is knowledge that can be revealed only by God.

##### that is, Christ

Jesus Christ is the mystery revealed by God.

#### Colossians 2:3

##### In him all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge are hidden

"God has hidden all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge in Christ". Only Christ can reveal God's true wisdom and knowledge.

##### the treasures of wisdom and knowledge

"the very precious wisdom and knowledge". Paul speaks as if they were material wealth.

#### Colossians 2:4

##### trick

To cause someone to believe something that is not true, so he acts on that belief, and suffers harm as a result.

##### persuasive speech

speech that will make people change what they believe

#### Colossians 2:5

##### not with you in the flesh

"not physically present with you"

##### I am with you in spirit

"I continually think about you"

##### good order

the proper way of doing things

##### the strength of your faith

"how nothing and no one can cause you to stop believing"

#### Colossians 2:6

##### walk in him

"live so that people can see that you belong to Christ". Walking on a path refers to how a person lives his life. The words "in him" refer to being in close relationship with Christ.

#### Colossians 2:7

##### Be rooted ... be built ... be established ... abound

These words explain what it means to "walk in him." Paul speaks of a person with true faith in Christ as if that person were a tree growing in solid ground with deep roots.

##### be built on him

Paul speaks of a person with true faith in Christ as if that person were a building that has a strong foundation.

##### be established in faith

"trust in Jesus for everything"

##### just as you were taught

"just as you learned" or "just as they taught you"

##### abound in thanksgiving

"be very thankful to God"

#### Colossians 2:8

##### See that

"Make sure that"

##### captures you

Paul speaks of the way a person can believe false teachings as if someone had physically caught and held that person by force.

##### philosophy

religious doctrines and beliefs that are not from God's word but are based on man's thoughts about God and life

##### empty deceit

Paul speaks of false ideas that produce nothing as though they are containers with nothing in them.

##### the tradition of men ... the elemental spirits of the world

The "tradition of men" may refer to Jewish traditions, while "the elemental spirits of the world" refers to pagan (Gentile) belief systems. Both of these are worthless.

##### the elemental spirits of the world

Possible meanings are 1) spiritual powers that some people thought control what happens on earth, or 2) the laws or moral principles of the world.

#### Colossians 2:9

##### in him all the fullness of God lives in bodily form

"God's total nature lives in physical form in Christ"

#### Colossians 2:10

##### You have been filled in him

"You are made complete in Christ"

##### who is the head over every ruler and authority

Christ is the ruler over every other ruler

#### Colossians 2:11

##### In him you were also circumcised

"When you joined the church in baptism, God circumcised you"

##### a circumcision not done by humans

Paul says that God has made Christian believers acceptable to himself in a way that reminded him of circumcision, the ceremony through which Hebrew male babies were added to the community of Israel.

#### Colossians 2:12

##### You were buried with him in baptism

"God buried you with Christ when you joined the church in baptism"

##### in him you were raised up

"because you have joined yourself to Christ, God raised you up". Paul speaks of the new spiritual life of believers that God made possible by making Christ come alive again.

##### you were raised up

"God caused you to live again"

#### Colossians 2:13

##### When you were dead ... he made you alive

"When you Colossian believers were unable to respond to God". Paul speaks of unresponsiveness to God as if it were death, while he also speaks of coming into new spiritual life as if it were coming back to life physically.

##### dead in your trespasses and in the uncircumcision of your flesh

You were dead on two accounts: 1) you were spiritually dead, living a life of sin against Christ and 2) you were not circumcised according to the law of Moses.

##### forgave us all of our trespasses

"he forgave us, both us Jews and you Gentiles, of all our trespasses"

#### Colossians 2:14

##### He blotted out the written record of debts that was hostile to us

Paul speaks of God forgiving our sins as if God were forgiving a debt that we owe him.

##### blotted out the written record

When someone blots out words, they cover the words with ink so that no one can read them.

##### that was hostile to us

"that was opposed to us"

#### Colossians 2:15

##### made a public spectacle of them

In Roman times, it was common practice for the Roman armies to have a victory parade when they returned home, displaying all the prisoners they had captured and goods they had obtained. God was victorious over the evil powers and authorities.

##### by the cross

Here "the cross" stands for Christ's death on the cross.

#### Colossians 2:16

##### in eating or in drinking

"for what you eat or what you drink". The law of Moses included what one could eat and drink.

##### about a festival or a new moon, or about Sabbath days

"for the way you celebrate festivals or new moons or the Sabbath". The law of Moses specified the days to celebrate, to worship, and to offer sacrifice.

#### Colossians 2:17

##### These are a shadow of the things to come, but the substance is Christ

"These are like a shadow of what would happen, but the reality is Christ" or "These are like a shadow of the savior who would come, but the savior is Christ". A shadow shows the shape of an object, but it is not the object itself. In a similar way, the festivals, celebrations, and Sabbaths show us something about how God would save people, but those things do not save people. The savior is Christ.

#### Colossians 2:18

##### Let no one ... judge you out of your prize

"Let no one ... disqualify you from winning a prize". Here Paul refers to false teachers as if they were corrupt judges at an athletic contest who would unjustly disqualify the believers from winning the prizes they deserve, and he speaks of Christ saving a person as if Christ were giving a prize to the winner.

##### who wants humility

"who wants you to do things to show that you are humble"

##### enters into the things he has seen

Here Paul speaks about people who claim to have dreams and visions from God and who talk proudly about them.

##### becomes puffed up for no reason by his fleshly thinking

"puffs himself up for no reason by means of the sinful thoughts he naturally thinks".

#### Colossians 2:19

##### He does not hold on to the head

"He does not firmly grasp Christ, who is like the head of a body" or "He does not cling to Christ, who is like the head of a body"

##### It is from the head that the whole body throughout its joints and ligaments is supplied and held together

"It is from the head that God supplies the whole body throughout its joints and ligaments and holds it together"

#### Colossians 2:20

##### If you died together with Christ to the elemental spirits of the world

A believer is spiritually united with Christ. As Christ died, the believer has died to the elemental spirits of the world. The believer is no longer controlled by them.

##### the elemental spirits of the world

Possible meanings are 1) spiritual powers that some people thought control what happens on earth, or 2) the laws or moral principles of the world.

##### live as obligated to the world

"think you must obey the desires of the world"

##### the world

the thoughts, desires, and assumptions of the sinful majority of the world's people

#### Colossians 2:21

##### "Do not handle, nor taste, nor touch"

"why do you believe them when they say, 'Do not handle, nor taste, nor touch'?"

#### Colossians 2:23

##### These rules have the appearance of wisdom, ... humility and severe treatment of the body

"These rules seem wise to unbelieving people because they allow those who follow them to appear humble because they hurt their own bodies"

##### have no value against the indulgence of the flesh

"do not help you stop following your human desires"

## Chapter 3

#### Colossians 3:1

##### God has raised you with Christ

"God has given you new life because you belong to Christ" or "you can be sure that God will give you life as he has caused Christ to come alive again"

##### things above

"things in heaven"

##### where Christ is sitting at the right hand of God

"where Christ is sitting in the place of honor at God's right side"

#### Colossians 3:3

##### For you have died

As Christ actually died, so God counts the Colossian believers as having died with Christ.

##### your life is hidden with Christ in God

"it is as though God has taken your life and concealed it with Christ in God's presence" or "only God knows what your true life really is, and he will reveal it when he reveals Christ"

#### Colossians 3:4

##### Christ appears ... you will also appear

"God reveals Christ ... he will also reveal you"

##### who is your life

Christ is the one who gives spiritual life to the believer.

#### Colossians 3:5

##### the members that are on earth

"the earthly parts of your nature" or "the parts of your nature that are worldly". The rest of the verse is a list of sinful "members" or behaviors.

##### uncleanness

"impure behavior"

##### passion

"lust" or "extremely strong desires"

##### greed, which is idolatry

"greed, which is the same thing as idolatry" or "do not be greedy because that is the same as worshiping idols"

#### Colossians 3:6

##### wrath of God

God's anger against those who do evil as shown by what he does to punish them.

##### the sons of disobedience

"people who disobey him"

#### Colossians 3:7

##### It is in these things that you also once walked

"These are the things you used to do"

##### when you lived in them

"when you practiced these things" or "when you lived among the people who disobey God"

#### Colossians 3:8

##### evil intentions

"desire to do wicked deeds"

##### slander

speech used to hurt others by saying untrue things about them

##### obscene speech

vulgar words that do not belong in polite conversation

##### from your mouth

"in your talk"

#### Colossians 3:9

##### you have taken off the old man with its practices

Here Paul is speaking of a Christian's rejecting his old sinful life as if it were an old garment that he takes off in order to put on a new garment. The old and new self mean the same as the old and new man. The term "old man" probably refers to the sinful nature with which a person is born. The "new man" is the new nature or new life that God gives a person after they come to believe in Christ.

#### Colossians 3:10

##### and you have put on the new man

see verse 9

##### the image

This refers to Jesus Christ.

#### Colossians 3:11

##### there is no Greek or Jew, circumcision or uncircumcision, barbarian, Scythian, slave, freeman

"race, religion, culture, and social status do not matter". These terms are examples of the categories of people that Paul says do not matter for God. God sees every person alike, not by race, religion, nationality, or social status.

##### barbarian

a foreigner who does not know local customs

##### Scythian

This is someone from the land of Scythia, which was outside the Roman Empire. Greeks and Romans used this word for someone who grew up in a place where everyone did wicked things all the time.

##### Christ is all, and is in all

"Christ is all important and lives in all his people"

#### Colossians 3:12

##### as God's chosen ones, holy and beloved

"as those whom God has chosen for himself, whom he desires to see live for him alone, and whom he loves"

##### put on a heart of mercy, kindness, humility, gentleness, and patience

"have a merciful, kind, humble, gentle, and patient heart" or "be merciful, kind, humble, gentle, and patient"

#### Colossians 3:13

##### Bear with one another

"Be patient with one another" or "Accept each other even when you disappoint each other"

##### Be gracious to each other

"Treat others better than they deserve to have you to treat them"

##### has a complaint against

"has a reason to complain against"

#### Colossians 3:14

##### have love, which is the bond of perfection

"love one another because doing so will unite you perfectly together"

#### Colossians 3:15

##### Let the peace of Christ rule in your hearts

"Do everything so that you can have peaceful relationships with each other" or "Allow God to give you peace in your heart".

##### in your hearts

"in your minds" or "inside of you"

#### Colossians 3:16

##### Let the word of Christ live in you richly

"Be obedient to the instructions of Christ" or "Always trust Christ's promises"

##### singing psalms and hymns and spiritual songs

"singing all sorts of songs to praise God."

##### psalms

These are probably songs from the Old Testament book of Psalms that Christians sang.

##### with thankfulness in your hearts

"with thankfulness in your minds" or "being thankful"

#### Colossians 3:17

##### in word or in deed

"in speaking or in acting"

##### in the name of the Lord Jesus

"to honor the Lord Jesus" or "so that others will know you belong to the Lord Jesus and will think well of him" or "as if the Lord Jesus himself were doing it"

##### through him

Possible meanings are 1) because he has done great deeds or 2) because he has made it possible for people to speak to God and so give him thanks.

#### Colossians 3:18

##### Wives, submit to

"Wives, obey"

##### it is appropriate

"it is proper" or "it is right"

#### Colossians 3:19

##### do not be bitter against

"do not be harsh with" or "do not be angry at"

#### Colossians 3:21

##### do not provoke your children

"do not needlessly make your children angry"

#### Colossians 3:22

##### obey your masters according to the flesh

"obey your human masters"

##### things, not with eye-service, as people-pleasers, but with a sincere heart

"things. Do not obey only when your master is watching, as though you need only to please people, but be sincere"

##### with a sincere heart

"with all honest intentions"

#### Colossians 3:23

##### as to the Lord

"as you would work for the Lord"

#### Colossians 3:24

##### the reward of the inheritance

"the inheritance as your reward"

##### inheritance

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

#### Colossians 3:25

##### anyone who does unrighteousness will receive the penalty

"God will punish anyone who does what is unrighteous"

##### who does unrighteousness

who actively does wrong of any kind

##### there is no partiality

"God does not favor anyone" or "God judges everyone by the same standard"

## Chapter 4

#### Colossians 4:1

##### right and fair

These words are used to emphasize the things that are morally correct.

##### you also have a Master in heaven

"you also have a Master, who is God in heaven". Paul implies that God, as the Master in heaven, will give his servants what is right and fair, so this could be blessing for the earthly master who treats his servants kindly.

#### Colossians 4:2

##### Continue steadfastly in prayer

"Keep praying faithfully"

#### Colossians 4:3

##### God would open a door to us for the word

"God would provide opportunities for us to preach his message"

##### the mystery of Christ

This refers to the gospel of Jesus Christ, which was not understood before Christ came.

##### for which also I have been in chains

"It is for proclaiming the message of Jesus Christ that I am now in prison"

#### Colossians 4:4

##### Pray that I may make it clear

"Pray that I might be able to speak the message of Jesus Christ clearly"

#### Colossians 4:5

##### Walk in wisdom toward those outside

"Live in such a way that those who are not believers will see that you are wise"

##### redeem the time

"do the best things you can with your time" or "put the time to its best use". Time is spoken of as something that can be restored and used to serve God.

#### Colossians 4:6

##### Let your words always be with grace. Let them be seasoned with salt

"Let your conversation always be gracious and attractive"

##### so that you may know how you should answer

"so that you may know how to answer questions from anyone about Jesus Christ" or "so that you may be able to treat every person well"

#### Colossians 4:7

##### all the things concerning me

"everything that has been happening to me"

##### fellow slave

"fellow servant." Though Paul is a free man, he sees himself as a servant of Christ and sees Tychicus as a fellow servant.

#### Colossians 4:8

##### about us

These words do not include the Colossians.

##### may encourage your hearts

"may encourage you"

#### Colossians 4:9

##### the faithful and beloved brother

Paul calls Onesimus a fellow Christian and servant of Christ. He was a slave of Philemon in Colossae and had stolen money from Philemon and run away to Rome where he became a Christian through the ministry of Paul. Now Tychicus and Onesimus are the ones bringing Paul's letter to Colossae along with a letter from Paul to Philemon asking him to send Onesimus back to Paul.

##### They will make known

"Tychicus and Onesimus will make known"

##### everything that has happened here

Tradition says Paul was in Rome under house arrest or in prison at this time.

#### Colossians 4:10

##### Aristarchus

He was in prison with Paul in Ephesus when Paul wrote this letter.

##### if he comes

"if Mark comes"

#### Colossians 4:11

##### Jesus who is called Justus

This is a man who also worked with Paul.

##### These alone of the circumcision are my fellow workers for the kingdom of God

"These three men are the only Jewish believers working with me to proclaim God as king through Christ Jesus". Paul uses "circumcision" here to refer to Jews because, under the Old Testament law, all male Jews had to be circumcised.

##### These alone of the circumcision

"These men—Aristarchus, Mark, and Justus—alone of the circumcision"

#### Colossians 4:12

##### Epaphras

Epaphras was the man who had preached the good news to the people in Colossae.

##### one of you

"from your city" or "your fellow townsman"

##### a slave of Christ Jesus

"a committed disciple of Christ Jesus"

##### always strives for you in prayer

"earnestly prays for you"

##### you may stand complete and fully assured

"you may stand mature and confident"

#### Colossians 4:14

##### Demas

He was one of Paul's co-workers.

#### Colossians 4:15

##### brothers

This means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

##### in Laodicea

a city very close to Colossae where there was also a church. Hierapolis was also a town close to Colossae.

##### Nympha, and the church that is in her house

"Nympha and the group of believers that meets in her house"

#### Colossians 4:17

##### Say to Archippus, "Look to the ministry that you have received in the Lord, that you should fulfill it

Paul reminds Archippus of the task God had given him and that he, Archippus, was under obligation to the Lord to fulfill it.

#### Colossians 4:18

##### Remember my chains

"Remember me and pray for me while I am in prison". Paul closes his letter with a greeting written in his own handwriting.

##### May grace be with you

"I pray that our Lord Jesus Christ would continue to act graciously toward you all"

## Chapter 1

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:1

##### May grace and peace be to you

"May God be kind to you and give you peace"

##### peace be to you

The word "you" refers to the Thessalonian believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:2

##### We always give thanks to God

The words "we" and "us" refer to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy, unless otherwise noted. Here "always" suggests that when Paul prays to God, he consistently presents the Thessalonians to God in his prayers.

##### we mention you continually in our prayers

"we continually pray for you"

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:3

##### your work of faith, labor of love, and patient endurance of hope in our Lord Jesus Christ

"what you have done because you have faith in God, the hard work you have done because you love others, and how you always continued to hope in our Lord Jesus Christ"

##### patient endurance of hope in our Lord Jesus Christ

"continual trust in our Lord Jesus Christ"

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:4

##### Brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:5

##### not in word only

"not only in what we said"

##### but also in power, in the Holy Spirit

Possible meanings are 1) the Holy Spirit gave Paul and his companions the ability to preach the gospel powerfully or 2) the Holy Spirit made the preaching of the gospel have a powerful effect among the Thessalonian believers or 3) the Holy Spirit demonstrated the truth of the gospel preaching by means of miracles, signs, and wonders.

##### power, in the Holy Spirit, and in much assurance

"power and in the Holy Spirit, and God made you sure that it was true"

##### what kind of men

"how we conducted ourselves when"

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:6

##### received the word

"welcomed the message" or "accepted what we had to say"

##### in much tribulation

"during a time of great suffering" or "in much persecution"

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:7

##### Achaia

This is an ancient district in what is present-day Greece.

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:8

##### the word of the Lord has rung out

"the Lord's teachings have rung out"

##### has rung out

Here Paul speaks of the Christian witness as if it were a bell that was rung or a musical instrument that was being played.

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:9

##### For they themselves

Paul is referring to the churches that already existed in the surrounding regions, who have heard about the Thessalonian believers.

##### what kind of reception we had among you

"how warmly you welcomed us"

##### you turned to God from the idols to serve the living and true God

"you stopped worshiping idols and started serving the living and true God"

#### 1 Thessalonians 1:10

##### whom he raised from the dead

"whom God caused to live again so that he was no longer dead."

##### who rescues us

Here Paul includes the Thessalonian believers.

## Chapter 2

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:1

##### you yourselves

These words refer to the Thessalonian believers.

##### was not useless

"was very worthwhile"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:2

##### previously suffered and were shamefully treated

"were mistreated and insulted"

##### in much struggling

"while struggling under great opposition"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:3

##### was not from error, nor from uncleanness, nor from deceit

"was truthful, pure, and honest"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:4

##### approved by God to be trusted

Paul was tested and proven trustworthy by God.

##### we speak

Paul is referring to preaching the gospel message.

##### who examines our hearts

"who knows our desires and thoughts"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:5

##### we never came with words of flattery

"we never spoke to you with false praise"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:6

##### Nor did we seek glory from people

"And we did not try to make people praise us"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:7

##### as a mother comforting her own children

Just as a mother gently comforts her children, so Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy spoke gently.

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:8

##### In this way we had affection for you

"This is how we demonstrated our love for you"

##### We were pleased to share with you not only the gospel of God but also our own lives

"We were pleased not only to tell you the gospel of God but also to spend time with you and to help you"

##### you had become very dear to us

"we cared for you deeply"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:9

##### our labor and toil

"how hard we worked"

##### Night and day we were working so that we might not be a burden to any of you

"We worked hard to make our own living so you would not need to support us"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:11

##### as a father with his own children

Paul compares how he encouraged the Thessalonians to a father gently teaching his children how to behave.

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:12

##### exhorting you and comforting you and urging you

"strongly exhorted you"

##### into his own kingdom and glory

"into his own glorious kingdom"

##### to walk in a manner that is worthy of God

"to live so that people will think well of God"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:13

##### not as the word of man

"not a message that is made up by a man"

##### the word of God

"the message that comes from God"

##### which is also at work in you who believe

"which those of you who believe are listening to and beginning to obey"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:14

##### became imitators of the churches

"became like the churches"

##### from your own countrymen

"from other Thessalonians"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:16

##### They forbid us to speak

"They try to make us stop speaking"

##### wrath will overtake them in the end

This refers to God finally judging and punishing people for their sins.

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:17

##### in person not in heart

"in person, but we continued to think about you"

##### to see your faces

"to see you" or "to be with you"

#### 1 Thessalonians 2:19

##### For what is our hope, or joy, or crown of pride in ... our Lord Jesus at his coming? Is it not you?

"For you are our hope, our joy, and our crown of pride in front of our Lord Jesus at his coming" or "For what is the reason that we can be hopeful or joyful? What is our crown of pride in front of our Lord Jesus at his coming? Is it not you?"

## Chapter 3

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:1

##### we could no longer bear it

"we could no longer endure worrying about you"

##### good to be left behind at Athens alone

"good for Silvanus and me to stay behind in Athens". Athens was a city in the the Roman province of Achaia

##### it was good

"it was proper"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:3

##### no one would be shaken

"no one would be frightened away from trusting in Christ"

##### we have been appointed

"God has appointed us"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:4

##### Truly

"Moreover"

##### to suffer affliction

"to be mistreated by others"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:5

##### I could no longer endure it

"I could not continue to wait patiently"

##### I sent

"I sent Timothy"

##### our labor

"our hard work among you" or "our teaching among you"

##### in vain

"useless"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:6

##### came to us

The word "us" refers to Paul and Silvanus.

##### the good news of your faith

"a good report of your faith"

##### you always have good memories

When they think of Paul, they always have good thoughts about him.

##### you long to see us

"you desire to see us"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:7

##### because of your faith

"because of your faith in Christ"

##### in all our distress and affliction

"in all our distress caused by our afflictions"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:8

##### we live

"we are very encouraged"

##### if you stand firm in the Lord

"if you continue to trust in the Lord"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:9

##### For what thanks can we give to God for you, for all the joy that we have before our God over you?

"We cannot thank God enough for what he has done for you! We greatly rejoice over you when we pray to our God"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:10

##### very hard

"fervently"

##### see your face

"visit you"

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:11

##### May our God

"We pray that our God"

##### direct our way to you

Paul speaks as if he wants God to show him and his companions the route to take to visit the Thessalonian Christians.The word "our" refers to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy but not the Thessalonian believers.

##### Father himself

Here "himself" refers back to "Father" for emphasis.

#### 1 Thessalonians 3:13

##### strengthen your hearts so that they will be

"strengthen you so that you will be"

##### at the coming of our Lord Jesus

"when Jesus comes back to earth"

##### with all his holy people

"with all those who belong to him"

## Chapter 4

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:1

##### we earnestly appeal to you and exhort you

"we strongly exhort you". Paul uses these words to emphasize how strongly they exhort the believers.

##### you received instructions from us

"we taught you"

##### you must walk

"you ought to live”

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:2

##### through the Lord Jesus

Paul speaks of his instructions as if they were given by Jesus himself.

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:3

##### you avoid sexual immorality

"you stay away from sexually immoral acts"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:4

##### knows how to possess his own vessel

"know how to control his own body"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:5

##### in the passion of lust

"with wrongful sexual desire"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:6

##### no man

"no person"

##### transgress and wrong his brother

"do very wrong things to his brother" or "do what God had forbidden and wrong his brother”

##### the Lord is an avenger

"the Lord will punish the one who transgressed and will defend the one who was wronged"

##### forewarned you and testified

"told you beforehand and strongly warned against"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:7

##### God did not call us to uncleanness, but to holiness

"God called us to cleanness and holiness"

##### God did not call us

The word "us" refers to all believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:8

##### he who rejects this

"whoever ignores this teaching"

##### rejects not people, but God

Paul stresses that this teaching is not from man, but from God.

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:10

##### you do this for all the brothers who are in all Macedonia

"you show love to the believers throughout Macedonia"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:11

##### to aspire

"to try to"

##### live quietly

"live in a calm and orderly way". Paul uses the word "quietly" to describe living at peace and not causing strife.

##### take care of your own responsibilities

"do your own work" or "take care of the things that you are responsible for". This may also imply that we should not gossip and interfere in other people's concerns.

##### labor with your hands

"work at your own jobs to earn what you need to live"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:12

##### walk properly

"behave properly"

##### properly

in a way that shows respect to others and earns their respect

##### before outsiders

"in the sight of those who do not believe in Christ". Paul speaks of those who do not believe in Christ as if they are outside, in a place away from the believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:13

##### We do not want you to be uninformed

"We want you to be informed" or "We want you to know"

##### those who sleep

"those who have died"

##### so that you do not grieve like the rest

"because we do not want you to mourn like the rest"

##### like the rest, who do not have hope

"like people who do not have confidence in the future promise" or "like the people who are not sure that they will rise from the dead"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:14

##### rose again

"rose to live again"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:15

##### by the word of the Lord

"by means of understanding the teachings of the Lord"

##### at the coming of the Lord

"when the Lord returns"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:16

##### the Lord himself will descend

"the Lord himself will come down"

##### the archangel

"the chief angel"

##### the dead in Christ will rise first

"those who believe in Jesus Christ, but who have already died, will rise first"

#### 1 Thessalonians 4:17

##### with them

The word "them" refers to the dead believers who were made alive again.

##### be caught up in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air

"meet the Lord Jesus in the sky"

## Chapter 5

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:1

##### General Information:

The words "we" and "us" refer to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy, unless otherwise noted. Also, the word "you" is plural and refers to the believers at the church of Thessalonica

##### concerning the times and seasons

"the exact time that the Lord will return."

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:2

##### perfectly well

"accurately"

##### like a thief in the night

"unexpectedly". Just as one does not know which night a thief may come, we do not know when the day of the Lord will come.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:3

##### When they say

"When the people say"

##### then sudden destruction

"then unexpected destruction"

##### like birth pains in a pregnant woman

Just as a pregnant woman's birth pains come suddenly, the destruction will come, and people will not escape.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:4

##### are not in darkness

"you are not unknowing, like people who live in the dark"

##### so that the day would overtake you like a thief

The Lord will come on a day when believers will not expect him to come, but it will not "overtake" them—God will not destroy them on that day—because they will be ready for Jesus to return.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:5

##### For you are all sons of the light and sons of the day

"For you know the truth, like people who live in the light, like people during the day". Paul speaks of the truth as if it were light and day.

##### We are not sons of the night or the darkness

"We are not unknowing, like people who live in the darkness, like people at night"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:6

##### let us not sleep as the rest do

"let us not be like others who are not aware that Jesus is coming back"

##### keep watch and be sober

Paul describes spiritual awareness as the opposite of sleep and drunkenness.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:7

##### For those who sleep do so at night

Just as when people sleep, so the people of this world do not know that Christ will return.

##### those who get drunk do so at night

Paul is stating that it is at night when people become drunk, so when people are unaware of Christ's return they do not live a self-controlled life.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:8

##### we belong to the day

"we know the truth" or "we have received the light of truth”

##### we must stay sober

"let us exercise self-control”

##### put on faith and love as a breastplate

"protect ourselves with faith and love" or "protect ourselves by trusting Christ and loving him".

##### the hope of salvation for our helmet

"protect ourselves by being certain that Christ will save us”

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:10

##### whether we are awake or asleep

"whether we are alive or dead"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:11

##### build each other up

"encourage each other"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:12

##### to acknowledge those who labor

"to esteem and appreciate those who are involved in leading"

##### who rule over you in the Lord

This refers to people God appointed to serve as leaders of the local group of believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:16

##### Rejoice always

Paul is telling the believers to maintain a spiritual attitude of rejoicing in all things.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:18

##### In everything give thanks

Paul is exhorting the believers to express thankfulness in all things.

##### For this is the will of God

Paul is referring to the behavior he just mentioned as being God's will for the believers.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:19

##### Do not quench the Spirit

"Do not stop the Holy Spirit from working among you"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:20

##### Do not despise prophecies

"Do not hate anything the Holy Spirit tells someone"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:21

##### Test all things

"Make sure that all messages that seem to come from God truly come from him"

##### Hold firmly to what is good

Paul speaks of messages from the Holy Spirit as if they were objects that one could grasp in his hands.

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:23

##### sanctify you completely

This refers to God making a person sinless and perfect in his sight.

##### May your whole spirit, soul, and body be preserved blameless

"May God make your whole life without sin" or "May God keep you completely blameless”

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:24

##### Faithful is he who calls you

"He is faithful who calls you"

##### the one who will also do it

"he will be helping you"

#### 1 Thessalonians 5:27

##### I command you by the Lord to have this letter read

"With the authority of the Lord, I direct you to read this letter"

## Chapter 1

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:1

##### General Information:

Paul is the author of this letter, but he includes Silvanus and Timothy as senders of the letter. The words "we" and "us" refer to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy, unless otherwise noted. Also, the word "you" is plural and refers to the believers at the church of Thessalonica.

##### Silvanus

This is the Latin form of "Silas." He is the same person listed in the book of Acts as Paul's fellow traveler.

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:2

##### Grace to you

Paul commonly uses this greeting in his letters.

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:3

##### We should always give thanks to God

"We should often give thanks to God". This emphasizes the greatness of what God is doing in the lives of the Thessalonian believers.

##### brothers

"brothers and sisters"

##### the love each of you has for one another increases

"you sincerely love one another"

##### one another

Here "one another" means fellow Christians.

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:4

##### we ourselves

Here "ourselves" is used to emphasize Paul's boasting.

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:5

##### you will be considered worthy of the kingdom of God

"God will consider you worthy to be part of his kingdom"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:6

##### it is righteous for God

"God is just"

##### for God to return affliction to those who afflict you

"for God to afflict those who afflict you"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:7

##### and relief to you

"and to relieve you". This continues the description of what God is right "to return" to people (verse 6).

##### relief to you

"for God to provide relief to you"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:8

##### in flaming fire, inflicting vengeance on ... do not know God and on those who

"punishing with blazing fire those who do not know God and those who"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:10

##### when he comes on that day

Here "that day" is the day when Jesus will return to the world.

##### to be glorified in his holy people and to be marveled at by all those who believed

"so that his people will glorify him and all those who believed will stand in awe of him"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:11

##### we also pray continually for you

"we also pray regularly for you"

##### calling

This refers to God appointing or choosing people to be his children and servants and to proclaim his message of salvation through Jesus.

##### fulfill every good purpose

"make you able to do good in every way that you desire"

#### 2 Thessalonians 1:12

##### that the name of our Lord Jesus may be glorified in you

"that you may glorify the name of our Lord Jesus"

##### and you in him

"and Jesus will glorify you"

##### according to the grace of our God and the Lord Jesus Christ

"because God and the Lord Jesus Christ have given grace to you"

## Chapter 2

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:1

##### brothers

"brothers and sisters"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:2

##### that you not be easily disturbed or troubled, either by a spirit or by a message

"that no spirit or person easily disturb or trouble you, either by a message"

##### by a message, or by a letter that seems to be coming from us

"by spoken word or by written letter that pretends to be coming from us"

##### to the effect that

"saying that"

##### the day of the Lord

This refers to the time when Jesus will come back to the earth for all believers.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:3

##### it will not come

"the day of the Lord will not come"

##### the falling away

This refers to a future time when many people will turn away from God.

##### the man of lawlessness is revealed

"God reveals the man of lawlessness". This is the same as "son of destruction" and "lawless one" in this chapter. Paul associates him with Satan, who is actively working in the world.

##### the son of destruction

"the one who destroys everything he can". Paul speaks of destruction as a person who bore a son whose goal is to totally destroy everything.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:4

##### all that is called God or that is worshiped

"everything that people consider to be God or everything that people worship"

##### exhibits himself as God

"shows himself as God"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:5

##### Do you not remember ... these things?

"I am sure you remember ... these things"

##### these things

This refers to the return of Jesus, the day of the Lord, and the man of lawlessness.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:6

##### what restrains him

"what keeps him from doing what he wants to do"

##### he will be revealed only at the right time

"God will reveal the man of lawlessness when the time is right"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:7

##### mystery of lawlessness

This refers to a sacred secret that only God knows.

##### who restrains him

To restrain someone is to hold him back or to keep him from doing what he wants to do.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:8

##### Then the lawless one will be revealed

"Then God will allow the lawless one to show himself"

##### with the breath of his mouth

"by the power of his spoken word"

##### bring him to nothing by the revelation of his coming

When Jesus returns to earth and shows himself, he will defeat the lawless one.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:9

##### with all power, signs, and false wonders

"with all kinds of power, signs, and false wonders"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:10

##### with every kind of evil that deceives those who are perishing

This man who is given power by Satan will deceive everyone who does not believe in Jesus.

##### who are perishing

Here "perishing" has the concept of everlasting or eternal destruction.

##### they refused to love the truth

Here this speaks of these people as if someone had offered them a physical object, like good food, and they had refused to accept or receive it.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:11

##### For this reason

"Because the people do not love the truth"

##### God is sending them a powerful delusion so that they will believe a lie

"God is sending the man of lawlessness to delude them"

##### a powerful delusion

A lie that sounds so true that many people believe it.

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:12

##### they all may be condemned

"God will judge all of them"

##### who did not believe the truth but instead took pleasure in unrighteousness

"who enjoyed doing evil deeds because they did not believe the truth"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:13

##### we should always give thanks

"we should continually give thanks"

##### we should

Here "we" refers to Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy.

##### brothers loved by the Lord

"for the Lord loves you, brothers"

##### as the firstfruits to be saved through the sanctification by the Spirit and belief in the truth

"to be among the first people who believe what is true, whom God has saved and set apart for himself by his Spirit"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:15

##### So then, brothers, stand firm

Paul exhorts the believers to hold fast to their faith in Jesus.

##### hold tightly to the traditions

"believe the truths"

##### you were taught

"we have taught you"

##### whether by word or by our letter

"whether by what we taught you in person or by what we wrote to you in a letter"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:16

##### Lord Jesus Christ himself

Here "himself" gives additional emphasis to the phrase "Lord Jesus Christ."

##### may our Lord ... who loved us and gave us

The words "our" and "us" refer to all believers.

##### gave us eternal comfort and good hope through grace

"caused us to have unceasing encouragement and good hope through grace"

##### good hope through grace

"certainty that we will receive good things from him because of his kindness"

#### 2 Thessalonians 2:17

##### comfort and strengthen your hearts in

"comfort you and strengthen you for"

##### every good work and word

"every good thing you do and say"

## Chapter 3

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:1

##### brothers

"brothers and sisters"

##### that the word of the Lord may rush and be glorified, as it also is with you

"that more and more people will soon hear our message about our Lord Jesus and honor it, as happened with you"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:2

##### that we may be delivered

"that God may rescue us"

##### for not all have faith

"for many people do not believe in Jesus"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:3

##### the evil one

"Satan"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:4

##### We have confidence

"We have faith"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:5

##### direct your hearts to

"cause you to understand"

##### the love of God and to the endurance of Christ

"how much God loves you and how much Christ has endured for you"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:6

##### in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

"as if our Lord Jesus Christ himself were speaking"

##### our Lord

Here "our" refers to all believers.

##### is idle

"does not do what is right"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:7

##### to imitate us

"to act the way that my fellow workers and I act"

##### we were not idle

"we lived disciplined lives"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:8

##### anyone's bread

"anyone's food"

##### we worked night and day

"we worked all the time"

##### in labor and toil

"in very difficult circumstances"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:9

##### We did this not because we have no authority, but we did this

"Even though we have authority, we did this"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:10

##### The one who is unwilling to labor must not eat

"Only people who are willing to work should eat"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:11

##### you are idle

"live a lazy life"

##### but busybodies

Busybodies are people who interfere in the affairs of others without being asked to help.

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:12

##### with quietness

"in a quiet, peaceful, and mild manner." Paul exhorts the meddlers to stop getting involved in other people's affairs.

##### eat their own bread

"eat their own food"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:13

##### But

Paul uses this word to contrast the lazy believers with the hardworking believers.

##### you, brothers

The word "you" refers to all the Thessalonian believers.

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:14

##### if anyone does not obey our word

"if anyone does not obey our instructions"

##### take note of him

"publicly identify that person"

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:16

##### may the Lord of peace himself give you

"I pray that the Lord of peace himself gives you"

##### the Lord of peace himself

Here "himself" emphasizes that the Lord will personally give peace to believers.

#### 2 Thessalonians 3:17

##### I, Paul, write this with my own hand

Paul makes it clear that this letter is from him and not a forgery.

## Chapter 1

#### 1 Timothy 1:1

##### Paul, an apostle

"I, Paul, wrote this letter. I am an apostle." Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter. In this book, unless otherwise noted, the word "our" refers to Paul and Timothy (the one to whom this letter is written), as well as to all believers.

##### according to the commandment of

"by the authority of"

##### God our Savior

"God who saves us"

##### Christ Jesus our hope

"Christ Jesus, who is the one in whom we have confidence" or "Christ Jesus, whom we trust"

#### 1 Timothy 1:2

##### true son in the faith

"who is truly like a son to me". Paul speaks of his close relationship to Timothy as though they were father and son. This shows Paul's sincere love and approval of Timothy. It is also likely that Timothy was converted to Christ by Paul, and so this is why Paul considers him like his own child

##### Grace, mercy, and peace

"May grace, mercy, and peace be yours," or "May you experience kindness, mercy, and peace"

##### God the Father and

"God, who is our Father, and.". This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### Christ Jesus our Lord

"Christ Jesus, who is our Lord".

#### 1 Timothy 1:3

##### As I urged you

"As I pleaded with you" or "As I asked you very strongly". The word "you" in this letter is singular and refers to Timothy.

##### remain in Ephesus

"wait for me there in the city of Ephesus"

##### a different doctrine

"a different doctrine from what we teach"

#### 1 Timothy 1:4

##### Neither should they pay attention

"And I also want you to command them not to pay attention"

##### to stories

These may have been stories about their ancestors.

##### endless genealogies

With the word "endless", Paul uses this to emphasize that the genealogies are very long. "Genealogies" refer to the written or verbal record of a person's parents and ancestors

##### These promote arguments

"These make people angrily disagree."

##### rather than the plan of God, which is by faith

"rather than helping people to understand God's plan to save us, which we learn by faith" or "rather than helping us to do God's work, which we do by faith."

#### 1 Timothy 1:5

##### the commandment

Here this does not mean the Old Testament or the Ten Commandments but rather the instructions that Paul gives in 1 Timothy 1:3 and 1 Timothy 1:4.

##### is love

"is to love God" or "is to love people."

##### from a pure heart

"from a mind that is honest"

##### good conscience

"a conscience that chooses right instead wrong"

##### sincere faith

"genuine faith" or "a faith without hypocrisy"

#### 1 Timothy 1:6

##### have gone astray from these things

"no longer try to do these things"

##### turned to worthless talk

"begun to have useless discussions"

#### 1 Timothy 1:7

##### teachers of the law

Here "law" refers to the law of Moses.

##### but they do not understand

"even though they do not understand"

##### what they so confidently affirm

"what they so confidently state is true"

#### 1 Timothy 1:8

##### we know that the law is good

"we understand that the law is useful" or "we understand that the law is beneficial"

##### if one uses it lawfully

"if a person uses it the way God intended"

#### 1 Timothy 1:9

##### We know this

"Because we realize this"

##### that law is not set in place for a righteous man

"that God did not set the law in place for the righteous man"

##### a righteous man

"a righteous person" or "a good person"

#### 1 Timothy 1:10

##### sexually immoral people

This refers to anyone who sleeps with someone to whom they are not married.

##### homosexuality

"sexual activity with other members of the same sex."

##### those who kidnap people for slaves

"those who kidnap people to sell as slaves" or "those who take people to sell as slaves"

##### whatever else is opposed to truthful teaching

"whatever other things people do that we teach is wrong"

#### 1 Timothy 1:11

##### the glorious gospel of the blessed God

"the gospel about the glory that belongs to the blessed God" or "the gospel of the glorious and blessed God"

##### with which I have been entrusted

"which God has given me and made me responsible for"

#### 1 Timothy 1:12

##### he considered me faithful

"he considered me trustworthy"

##### he appointed me to service

"he assigned me to serve him" or "he appointed me as his servant"

#### 1 Timothy 1:13

##### I was a blasphemer

"I was a person who spoke evil against Christ." Paul is referring to his character before he was a Christian.

##### a persecutor

"a person who persecuted those who believed in Christ"

##### a violent man

"a person who was cruel to other people" or "a person who believed I had the right to hurt others"

##### But I received mercy because I acted ignorantly in unbelief

"But because I did not believe in Jesus, and I did not know what I was doing, I received mercy from Jesus"

##### I received mercy

"Jesus showed me mercy"

#### 1 Timothy 1:14

##### the grace of our Lord overflowed

"God showed me much grace"

##### overflowed with the faith and the love that is in Christ Jesus

"overflowed, which caused me to trust in Christ Jesus and love him"

##### that is in Christ Jesus

"that Christ Jesus enables me to give to God because I am united to him"

#### 1 Timothy 1:15

##### This message is reliable

"This statement is true"

##### worthy of all acceptance

"we should receive it without any doubt"

##### sinners, of whom I am chief

"sinners, of whom I am the chief sinner" or "sinners, of whom I am the worst." Paul is saying that he has sinned more than any other sinner, not that he has been the leader of a group of sinners.

#### 1 Timothy 1:16

##### I was given mercy

"God showed me mercy" or "I obtained mercy from God"

##### the chief

"the chief sinner" or "the worst sinner."

#### 1 Timothy 1:17

##### the king of the ages

"the eternal king"

##### Now to the king of the ages, the immortal, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory forever and ever

"Now may people forever honor and glorify the king of the ages, who is immortal, invisible, and the only God"

#### 1 Timothy 1:18

##### I am placing this command before you

"I am entrusting you with this command"

##### my child

"who is truly like my child"

##### in accordance with the prophecies previously made about you

"in agreement with what other believers prophesied about you"

##### fight the good fight

"continue to work hard for the Lord"

#### 1 Timothy 1:19

##### a good conscience

"a conscience that chooses right instead wrong."

##### some have shipwrecked their faith

Paul means that they have ruined their faith and no longer believe in Jesus.

#### 1 Timothy 1:20

##### Hymenaeus ... Alexander

These are names of men.

##### whom I delivered over to Satan

Paul has cast the men out of the community, so Satan now has power over them and can harm them.

##### they may be taught

"God may teach them"

## Chapter 2

#### 1 Timothy 2:1

##### first of all

"before anything else"

##### I urge that humble requests, prayers, petitions, and thanksgivings be made

"I plead with all believers to make requests, prayers, intercessions, and thanksgiving to God"

#### 1 Timothy 2:2

##### a peaceful and quiet life

Paul wants all believers to be able to live calm lives without trouble from the authorities.

##### in all godliness and dignity

"that honors God and that other people will respect"

#### 1 Timothy 2:4

##### He desires all people to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth

"God desires to save all people and for them to come to the knowledge of the truth"

##### to come to the knowledge of the truth

"to know and accept what is true"

#### 1 Timothy 2:5

##### one mediator for God and man

A mediator is a person who helps negotiate a peaceful settlement between two parties who disagree with each other. Here Jesus helps sinners enter into a saving relationship with God.

#### 1 Timothy 2:6

##### gave himself

"died willingly"

##### as a ransom

"as a payment to obtain freedom"

##### as the testimony at the right time

"as the proof at the right time that God wants to save all people"

#### 1 Timothy 2:7

##### For this purpose

"For this reason"

##### I was appointed a herald and an apostle

"Christ made me an official messenger and an apostle"

##### I am telling the truth, I am not lying

With these two comments Paul emphasizes that he is telling the truth when he says that he was appointed to be a herald, an apostle, and a teacher. Some translators may prefer to put these comments at the end of the verse.

##### in faith and truth

"about the message of faith and truth" or "about the true faith"

#### 1 Timothy 2:8

##### I want men in every place to pray and to lift up holy hands

"I want holy men in every place to lift up their hands and pray"

##### men in every place

"the males in all places" or "the males everywhere." Here the word "men" refers specifically to males.

##### lift up holy hands

It was a normal posture for people to raise their hands while praying.

#### 1 Timothy 2:9

##### with modesty and self-control

Paul is emphasizing that women should wear clothes that are appropriate and do not attract improper attention from men.

##### not with braided hair

"not having elaborate hairstyles that attract attention"

##### pearls

These are beautiful and valuable white balls that people use as jewelry.

#### 1 Timothy 2:10

##### General Information:

Possible meanings of this verse are 1) the words "through good works" tell how the women Paul is talking about "proclaim godliness" or 2) those words tell how women are to "dress," or "but with good works, as is proper for women who proclaim godliness" (1 Timothy 2:9).

##### who proclaim godliness through good works

"who want to show that they honor God by doing good deeds"

#### 1 Timothy 2:11

##### in silence

"in quietness"

##### and with all submission

"and submit to what is taught"

#### 1 Timothy 2:12

##### I do not permit a woman

"I do not allow a woman". Some scholars believe men and women are perfectly equal in all things. Other scholars believe God created men and women to serve in distinctly different roles in marriage and the church. Translators should be careful not to let how they understand this issue affect how they translate this passage.

#### 1 Timothy 2:13

##### Adam was formed first

"God created Adam first"

##### then Eve

"and then God created Eve"

#### 1 Timothy 2:14

##### Adam was not deceived

"And Adam was not the one whom the serpent deceived"

##### but the woman was deceived and became a transgressor

"but it was the woman who disobeyed God when the serpent deceived her"

#### 1 Timothy 2:15

##### she will be saved through bearing children

Possible meaning is that God will keep women physically safe as they give birth to children.

##### if they continue

"if they remain" or "if they continue living." Here "they" refers to women.

##### in faith and love and sanctification

"in trusting Jesus and loving others and living a holy life"

##### with self-control

"with good judgment" or "with modesty"

## Chapter 3

#### 1 Timothy 3:1

##### a good work

"an honorable task"

#### 1 Timothy 3:2

##### husband of one wife

An overseer must have only one wife. It is unclear if this excludes men who have been previously widowed or divorced, or never married. The church has used different titles for church leaders. Some titles include elder, pastor, and bishop. The word “overseer” reflects the meaning of the original language in verses 1-2. Paul writes about "deacons" in verses 8 and 12 as another kind of church leader.

##### He must be moderate, sensible, orderly, and hospitable

"He must not do anything to excess, must be reasonable and behave well, and must be friendly to strangers"

#### 1 Timothy 3:3

##### He must not be addicted to wine, not a brawler, but instead, gentle, peaceful

"He must neither drink too much alcohol nor like to fight and argue, but instead he must be gentle and peaceful"

##### a lover of money

"greedy for money"

#### 1 Timothy 3:4

##### He should manage

"He should take care of"

##### he should make sure his children obey and respect him in every way

Possible meanings are 1) the overseer's children should obey and show respect to their father or 2) the overseer's children should show respect to everyone or 3) the overseer should show respect to those in his household as he leads them.

#### 1 Timothy 3:5

##### For if a man does not know how to manage

"For when a man cannot manage"

##### how will he care for a church of God?

"he cannot take care of a church of God." or "he will not be able to lead a church of God."

##### a church of God

"the believers over whom he is in charge"

#### 1 Timothy 3:6

##### He should not be a new convert

"He should not be a new believer"

##### fall into condemnation as the devil

"have God condemn him as he condemned the devil"

#### 1 Timothy 3:7

##### those outside

"those who are not Christians"

##### he does not fall into disgrace and the trap of the devil

"nothing causes him shame before the unbelievers and so that the devil does not cause him to sin"

#### 1 Timothy 3:8

##### In the same way, deacons

"Deacons, like overseers". Paul gives some special instructions on how the deacons of the church and their wives should act and be.

##### should be dignified, not double-talkers

"should act properly and mean what they say"

#### 1 Timothy 3:9

##### They should keep the mystery of the faith with a clean conscience

"They must continue to believe, with a clean conscience, the true message God has revealed to us"

##### the mystery of the faith

"the truth of the faith that God revealed"

##### faith with a clean conscience

"faith, knowing they have tried their hardest to do what is right"

#### 1 Timothy 3:10

##### They should also be approved first

"Other believers should approve of them first"

##### be approved

This means other believers should evaluate those who want to be a deacon and determine if they are fit to serve in the church.

#### 1 Timothy 3:11

##### In the same way, their wives

Possible meaning is the wives of deacons.

##### be dignified

"act properly" or "be worthy of respect"

##### should be dignified, not slanderers, but sober and faithful

"should be dignified; they should not speak evil about other people, and they should not do anything to excess; rather, they should be faithful"

##### sober

"moderate." See how you translated "moderate" in 1 Timothy 3:2.

#### 1 Timothy 3:12

##### manage well their children and household

"properly take care of and lead their children and others who live in their homes"

#### 1 Timothy 3:13

##### For those

"For those deacons"

##### acquire for themselves

"receive for themselves"

##### a good standing

"a good reputation among other believers"

##### great confidence in the faith that is in Christ Jesus

Possible meanings are 1) they will trust in Jesus with even more confidence or 2) they will speak confidently to other people about their faith in Jesus.

#### 1 Timothy 3:14

##### I hope to come to you soon

"I expect to come to you soon"

#### 1 Timothy 3:15

##### But if I delay

"But in case I cannot go there soon" or "But if something prevents me for being there soon"

##### so that you may know how to conduct yourself in the household of God

"so that you all may know how to conduct yourselves as members of God's family"

##### household of God, which is the church of the living God

"household of God. Those who belong to the family of God are the community of believers in the living God"

##### which is the church of the living God, the pillar and support of the truth

"which is the church of the living God. And, by keeping and teaching God's truth, these members of the church support the truth just as a pillar and base support a building"

#### 1 Timothy 3:16

##### We all agree

"No one can deny"

##### that the mystery of godliness is great

"that the truth that God has revealed is great"

##### He was revealed ... up in glory

This is most likely a song or poem that Paul is quoting. If your language has a way of indicating that this is poetry you could use it here. Some modern translations read, "God was revealed" or "God appeared." If Paul is quoting a song or poem, the word "he" refers to Jesus Christ. If he is not quoting, the word "he" could refer to either God or Jesus Christ.

##### in the flesh

"as a true human being"

##### was vindicated by the Spirit

"the Holy Spirit confirmed that he was who he said he was"

##### was seen by angels

"the angels saw him"

##### was proclaimed among nations

"people in many nations told others about him"

##### was believed on in the world

"people in many parts of the world believed in him"

##### was taken up in glory

"God the Father took him up to heaven in glory". This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father. This means he received power from God the Father and he is worthy of honor.

## Chapter 4

#### 1 Timothy 4:1

##### in later times

These words could refer to 1) a time after Paul dies or 2) a later time in Paul's own life.

##### leave the faith

"stop trusting in Jesus"

##### and pay attention

"and give attention"

##### deceitful spirits and the teachings of demons

"spirits who trick people and the things that demons teach"

#### 1 Timothy 4:2

##### by the hypocrisy of liars

"They will learn these things by the hypocrisy of liars"

##### their own consciences having been seared

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is speaking of people who can no longer tell that they are doing wrong as if their minds were skin that someone had burned with a hot iron. or 2) Paul is speaking of these people as if Satan had put a mark on them with a hot iron to indicate that they belong to him.

#### 1 Timothy 4:3

##### They will

"These people will"

##### forbid people to marry

"forbid believers to marry"

##### require them to abstain from foods

"they will not allow people to eat certain foods"

#### 1 Timothy 4:4

##### For every creation of God is good

"everything that God has created is good"

##### nothing received with thanksgiving is to be rejected

"we should not refuse anything for which we give thanks to God"

#### 1 Timothy 4:5

##### it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer

"it is dedicated for God's use by praying in agreement with his word"

##### it is sanctified

"we have set it apart"

#### 1 Timothy 4:6

##### If you place these things before the brothers

"If you help the believers remember these things"

##### these things

This refers to the teaching that started in 1 Timothy 3:16.

##### you are being nourished by the words of faith and by the good teaching that you have followed

"the words of faith and the good teaching that you have followed are causing you to trust more strongly in Christ"

##### words of faith

"words that cause people to believe"

#### 1 Timothy 4:7

##### profane stories loved by old women

"ungodly stories and old wives' tales." "Profane" here refers to stories that purposely dishonor God.

##### loved by old women

"silly" or "absurd." Paul is not purposely insulting women in his reference to "old women." Instead, he and his audience knew that there are more women than men whose minds have become feeble due to old age.

##### train yourself in godliness

"train yourself to act in ways that please God"

#### 1 Timothy 4:8

##### bodily training

"physical exercise"

##### holds promise for this life

"is beneficial to this life"

#### 1 Timothy 4:9

##### worthy of full acceptance

"worthy of your complete belief"

#### 1 Timothy 4:10

##### For it is for this

"This is the reason"

##### labor and struggle

The word "labor" here refers to working very hard.

##### For we hope in the living God ... believers

"For we confidently expect that the living God... believers, will do what he promised to do" or "For we fully trust in the living God ... believers"

##### the living God

"the God who is alive," or "God, who acts," or "God, who gives life to all living beings."

##### but especially of believers

"but he is especially the Savior of those people who believe"

#### 1 Timothy 4:11

##### Instruct the people and teach these things

"Instruct and teach these things I just mentioned"

#### 1 Timothy 4:12

##### Let no one despise your youth

"Do not let anyone consider you less important because you are young"

##### in speech, conduct, love, faithfulness, and purity

"by speaking and doing what is right, by loving others, and by being faithful and pure"

#### 1 Timothy 4:13

##### attend to the reading, to the exhortation, and to the teaching

"continue reading the scripture to the people, exhorting the people, and teaching the people"

#### 1 Timothy 4:14

##### Do not neglect the gift that is in you

"Do not neglect your spiritual gift"

##### Do not neglect

"Be sure to use"

##### which was given to you through prophecy

"which you received when leaders of the church spoke God's word"

##### laying on of the hands of the elders

This was a ceremony in which the church leaders put their hands on Timothy and prayed that God would enable him to do the work he had commanded him to do.

#### 1 Timothy 4:15

##### Care for these things. Be in them

"Do all these things and live according to them"

##### so that your progress may be evident to all people

"so other people will know that you are serving God better and better"

#### 1 Timothy 4:16

##### Give careful attention to yourself and to the teaching

"Conduct yourself carefully and give attention to the teaching"

##### Continue in these things

"Continue to do these things"

##### you will save yourself and those who listen to you

Possible meanings are 1) Timothy will save himself and those who hear him from God's judgment or 2) Timothy will save himself and those who hear him from the influence of false teachers.

## Chapter 5

#### 1 Timothy 5:1

##### Do not rebuke an older man

"Do not speak harshly to an older man"

##### Instead, exhort him

"Instead, encourage him"

##### as if he were a father ... as brothers

Paul tells Timothy that he should treat fellow believers with sincere love and respect.

#### 1 Timothy 5:2

##### older women ... younger women

"exhort older women ... exhort younger women" or "encourage older women ... encourage younger women"

##### in all purity

"with pure thoughts and actions"

#### 1 Timothy 5:3

##### Honor widows

"Respect and provide for widows"

##### the real widows

"widows with no one to provide for them"

#### 1 Timothy 5:4

##### let them first learn

"let them make it a priority to learn"

##### in their own household

"to their own family" or "to those living in their homes"

##### Let them repay their parents

"Let them do good to their parents in return for the good things their parents have given them"

#### 1 Timothy 5:5

##### But she who is a real widow, who is left all alone

"But one who is truly a widow, who has no family"

##### has set her hope in God

"confidently expects that God will do what he promised to do"

##### continues in offering earnest appeals and prayers

"continues to make requests and prayers"

#### 1 Timothy 5:6

##### is dead

"is like a dead person; she does not respond to God"

#### 1 Timothy 5:7

##### Instruct them in these things

"Teach them these things, too"

##### so that they may be blameless

"so that no one can find fault with them"

#### 1 Timothy 5:8

##### does not provide for his own relatives, especially for those of his own household

"does not help with his relatives' needs, especially for those family members living in his home"

##### he has denied the faith

"he has acted contrary to the truth we believe"

##### is worse than an unbeliever

"is worse than those who do not believe in Jesus."

#### 1 Timothy 5:9

##### be enrolled as a widow

There seems to have been a list, written or not, of widows. The church members met these women's needs for shelter, clothing, and food, and these women were expected to devote their lives to serving the Christian community.

##### a wife of one husband

Possible meanings are 1) she was always faithful to her husband or 2) she had not divorced her husband and then married another man.

#### 1 Timothy 5:10

##### She must have a reputation for doing good deeds

"People must be able to tell others about her good deeds"

##### has been hospitable to strangers

"has welcomed strangers into her home"

##### has washed the feet of God's holy people

"has done common work to help other believers"

##### has relieved the afflicted

"has helped those who are suffering"

##### has been devoted to every good work

"has given herself to doing all kinds of good deeds"

#### 1 Timothy 5:11

##### But as for younger widows, refuse to enroll them in the list

"But do not include younger widows in the list"

##### For when they give in to bodily desires against Christ, they want to marry

"For when they prefer to fulfill their sensual desires and get married, they go against their promise to serve Christ as widows"

#### 1 Timothy 5:12

##### set aside their first commitment

"do not do what they promised before to do"

#### 1 Timothy 5:13

##### learn to be lazy

"get into the habit of doing nothing"

##### talk nonsense and are busybodies, saying things they should not say

These people should not be looking into other people's private lives and telling about them to others who are no better off after hearing.

#### 1 Timothy 5:14

##### to manage the household

"to take care of everyone in her house"

##### the enemy

These words could refer to Satan or unbelievers who are hostile to Christians.

#### 1 Timothy 5:15

##### turned aside after Satan

"decided to obey Satan instead of Christ"

#### 1 Timothy 5:16

##### any believing woman

"any woman who believes in Christ"

##### has widows

"has widows among her relatives"

##### so that the church will not be burdened

"so that the Christian community will not have to help widows whose families could provide for them"

##### real widows

"those women who have no one to provide for them"

#### 1 Timothy 5:17

##### Let the elders who rule well be considered worthy

"All believers should think of the elders who are good leaders as worthy"

##### double honor

"respect and payment" or "more respect than others receive"

##### those who labor with the word and in teaching

"those who work hard preaching and those who teach God's word"

#### 1 Timothy 5:18

##### For the scripture says

"For we read in the scriptures that"

##### is worthy of

"deserves"

#### 1 Timothy 5:19

##### Do not receive an accusation

"Do not accept as true any accusation that someone speaks"

##### two or three

"two or more"

#### 1 Timothy 5:20

##### before all

"where everyone can see"

##### so that the rest may be afraid

"so that others will be afraid to sin"

#### 1 Timothy 5:21

##### the chosen angels

This means the angels whom God and Jesus have chosen to serve them in a special way.

##### to keep these commands without partiality, and to do nothing out of favoritism

"to keep these rules without being partial or showing favor to anyone"

#### 1 Timothy 5:22

##### Do not share in the sins of another person

"do not join in another person's sin"

#### 1 Timothy 5:23

##### You should no longer drink water

Paul is telling Timothy to use wine as medicine. The water in that area often caused sickness.

##### for the stomach and your frequent sicknesses

"to help your stomach and to stop your frequent illnesses"

#### 1 Timothy 5:24

##### The sins of some people are openly known

"The sins of some people are very obvious"

##### they go before them into judgment

"their sins go before those people into judgment."

##### But some sins follow later

"But some sins follow people later."

#### 1 Timothy 5:25

##### some good works are openly known

"some good works are obvious"

##### good works

The works are considered "good" because they fit with God's character, purposes, and will.

##### but even the others cannot be hidden

"but people will later find out about even the good deeds that are not obvious"

## Chapter 6

#### 1 Timothy 6:1

##### Let all who are under the yoke as slaves

"Let all who are believers working as slaves". Paul does not write in this chapter about whether slavery is good or bad. Paul teaches about honoring, respecting, and diligently serving masters. Paul teaches all believers to be godly and content in every situation.

##### the name of God and the teaching might not be blasphemed

"the unbelievers might always speak respectfully about the character of God and the teaching"

##### the teaching

"the gospel"

#### 1 Timothy 6:2

##### The slaves who have believing masters should not show them disrespect because they are brothers

Possible meanings are 1) it is because the believing masters are fellow believers that their slaves should not show them disrespect or 2) slaves should not think that because their masters are believers they can therefore show them disrespect.

##### those who receive the benefit

"the masters whom the slaves help with their good work"

##### and beloved

"and the slaves should love them" or "whom God loves"

#### 1 Timothy 6:3

##### truthful words

"trustworthy words"

#### 1 Timothy 6:4

##### understands nothing

"understands nothing about God's truth"

##### He has an unhealthy interest in controversies and arguments

"All he wants to do is argue"

##### controversies and arguments about words that result in envy

"controversies and arguments about the meanings of words, and these controversies and arguments result in envy"

#### 1 Timothy 6:5

##### morally corrupt minds

"wicked minds"

##### They have lost the truth

"They have forgotten the truth"

#### 1 Timothy 6:6

##### Now

"Of course"

##### godliness with contentment is great gain

"it provides great benefits for people to do what is godly and to be content with what they have"

#### 1 Timothy 6:7

##### we brought nothing into the world

"we brought nothing into the world when we were born"

##### we can take nothing out of it

"we can take nothing out of the world when we die"

#### 1 Timothy 6:9

##### to become wealthy fall into temptation, into a trap

"to become wealthy will encounter more temptation than they can resist, and they will be like an animal in a trap"

##### They fall into many foolish and harmful desires, and into whatever else sinks

"They desire many foolish and harmful things and then do things that sink"

##### into whatever else sinks people into ruin and destruction

"into other kinds of evil that ruin and destroy people"

#### 1 Timothy 6:10

##### For the love of money is a root of all kinds of evil

"This happens because loving money is a cause of all kinds of evil"

##### who desire it

"who desire money"

##### have been misled away from the faith

"have let their desires lead them away from the truth"

##### have pierced themselves with much grief

"have caused themselves to be very sorrowful"

#### 1 Timothy 6:11

##### man of God

"person who belongs to God"

##### flee from these things

"completely avoid these things"

##### Pursue righteousness

"Seek to gain" or "Do your best to act in"

#### 1 Timothy 6:12

##### Fight the good fight of faith

"Try your hardest to obey Christ's teachings with as much energy as an athlete uses in a contest"

##### Take hold of the everlasting life

"Take eternal life as your reward as a victorious athlete takes his prize"

##### to which you were called

"to which God has called you"

##### you gave the good confession

"you confessed the truth"

#### 1 Timothy 6:13

##### I give these orders to you

"This is what I command you"

##### before God, who gives life to all things

"with God, who causes all things to live, as my witness"

##### and before Christ Jesus, who testified before Pontius Pilate

"in the presence of Christ Jesus, who spoke ... Pilate" or "with Christ Jesus, who spoke ... Pilate, as my witness"

#### 1 Timothy 6:14

##### without spot or blame

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus will not find fault with Timothy or blame him for doing wrong or 2) other people will not find fault with Timothy or blame him for doing wrong.

##### until the appearance of our Lord Jesus Christ

"until our Lord Jesus Christ comes again"

#### 1 Timothy 6:15

##### God will reveal Christ's appearing

"God will reveal Jesus"

##### the blessed and only Sovereign

"the One worthy of praise who rules over the world"

#### 1 Timothy 6:16

##### Only he has immortality

"Only he has the power to live forever"

##### dwells in inapproachable light

"dwells in a light so bright that no one can approach him"

#### 1 Timothy 6:17

##### Instruct the rich in this world

"Solemnly charge those who are rich in this world"

##### not to hope in riches, which are uncertain

"not to confidently expect that they will always have what they need, because it is uncertain how long they may have their many possession"

##### they should hope in God

"they should confidently expect that God will do what he has promised to do"

##### all the true riches

"all the things that will make us truly happy."

#### 1 Timothy 6:18

##### be rich in good works

"serve and help others in many ways"

#### 1 Timothy 6:19

##### they will store up for themselves a good foundation for what is to come

"it will be as though they were storing up for themselves many things that God will give them"

#### 1 Timothy 6:20

##### protect what was given to you

"faithfully proclaim the true message that Jesus has given to you"

##### Avoid the profane and empty talk

"Do not pay attention to the ungodly and useless talk"

##### of what is falsely called knowledge

"of what some people falsely call knowledge”

#### 1 Timothy 6:21

##### they have gone astray from the faith

"they have stopped believing the truth"

##### May grace be with you

"May God give grace to all of you"

## Chapter 1

#### 2 Timothy 1:1

##### through the will of God

"because of God's will"

##### according to

"for the purpose of" or "in keeping with"

##### of the life that is in Christ Jesus

"of the life that we receive as a result of belonging to Christ Jesus"

#### 2 Timothy 1:2

##### beloved child

"who is like my beloved child"

##### Grace, mercy, and peace from

"May grace, mercy, and peace be yours from"

##### God the Father and

"God, who is our Father, and.". This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### Christ Jesus our Lord

"Christ Jesus, who is our Lord"

#### 2 Timothy 1:3

##### whom I serve from my forefathers

"whom I serve as my ancestors did"

##### with a clean conscience

"knowing I have tried my hardest to do what is right"

##### as I constantly remember you

"when I remember you continually"

##### night and day

"always" or "constantly"

#### 2 Timothy 1:4

##### I long to see you

"I want very much to see you"

##### I may be filled with joy

"I may be full of joy"

##### I remember your tears

"I remember how you cried for me"

#### 2 Timothy 1:5

##### I have been reminded of your

"I also recall your"

##### your genuine faith

"your faith that is real"

##### faith, which lived first in your grandmother Lois and your mother Eunice, and I am convinced that it lives in you also

"faith. Lois, your grandmother, and Eunice, your mother, first had genuine faith, and I am confident that you have genuine faith as well"

#### 2 Timothy 1:6

##### This is the reason I am

"Because of your sincere faith in Jesus, I am"

##### to rekindle the gift

"to start using again the gift"

##### the gift of God which is in you through the laying on of my hands

"the gift of God that you received when I laid my hands on you."

#### 2 Timothy 1:7

##### God did not give us a spirit of fear, but of power and love and discipline

"God's Holy Spirit does not cause us to be afraid. He causes us to have power and love and discipline" or "God does not cause us to be afraid but to have power and love and discipline"

##### discipline

The power to control ourselves or the power to correct other people who are doing wrong.

#### 2 Timothy 1:8

##### of the testimony

"of telling others"

##### his prisoner

"a prisoner because I testify about the Lord"

##### share in suffering for the gospel

"suffer with me for the gospel"

##### gospel according to the power of God

"gospel, allowing God to make you strong"

#### 2 Timothy 1:9

##### with a holy calling

"with a calling that set us apart as his people"

##### He did this

"He saved and called us"

##### not according to our works

"not because we did anything to deserve it"

##### but according to his own plan and grace

"but because he planned to show us kindness"

##### in Christ Jesus

"through our relationship to Christ Jesus"

##### before times ever began

"before time began"

#### 2 Timothy 1:10

##### God's salvation has been revealed by the appearing of our Savior Christ Jesus

"God has shown how he will save us by sending our Savior Christ Jesus"

##### who put an end to death

"who made it possible for people not to remain dead forever"

##### brought life and immortality to light through the gospel

"taught what life that never ends is by preaching the gospel"

#### 2 Timothy 1:11

##### I was appointed a herald

"God chose me to be a herald"

##### a herald

a person who proclaims important or official messages

#### 2 Timothy 1:12

##### For this cause

"Because I am an apostle"

##### I also suffer these things

Paul is referring to being a prisoner.

##### to keep that which I have entrusted to him

Paul is trusting Jesus to help him remain faithful, or Paul is trusting that Jesus will ensure that people continue spreading the gospel message.

##### I am convinced

"I am certain"

##### that day

This refers to the day when God judges all people.

#### 2 Timothy 1:13

##### Keep the example of the truthful words that you heard from me

"Keep teaching the correct ideas I have taught you"

##### truthful words

"trustworthy words"

##### with the faith and love that are in Christ Jesus

"as you trust in Jesus Christ and love him"

#### 2 Timothy 1:14

##### The good thing

This refers to the work of proclaiming the gospel correctly.

##### guard it

Timothy needs to be alert because people will oppose his work, try to make him stop, and distort what he says.

##### through the Holy Spirit

"with the power of the Holy Spirit"

#### 2 Timothy 1:15

##### turned away from me

"have stopped helping me"

##### Phygelus and Hermogenes

These are names of men.

#### 2 Timothy 1:16

##### Onesiphorus

This is the name of a man.

##### to the household

"to the family"

##### was not ashamed of my chain

"was not ashamed that I was in prison"

#### 2 Timothy 1:18

##### May the Lord grant to him to find mercy from him

"May Onesiphorus receive mercy from the Lord"

## Chapter 2

#### 2 Timothy 2:1

##### my child

"who is like my child"

##### be strengthened in the grace that is in Christ Jesus

"let God use the grace he gave you through your relationship to Christ Jesus to make you strong"

#### 2 Timothy 2:2

##### among many witnesses

"with many witnesses there to agree that what I said is true"

##### entrust them to faithful people

"commit them"

#### 2 Timothy 2:3

##### Suffer hardship with me

"Endure suffering as I do"

##### as a good soldier of Christ Jesus

Paul compares suffering for Christ Jesus to the suffering that a good soldier endures.

#### 2 Timothy 2:4

##### No soldier serves while entangled in the affairs of this life

"When soldiers are serving, they do not get distracted by the ordinary things that people do."

##### his superior officer

"his leader" or "the one who commands him"

#### 2 Timothy 2:5

##### he is not crowned unless he competes by the rules

"they will crown him as winner only if he competes by the rules"

##### he is not crowned

"he does not win the prize." Athletes in Paul's time were crowned with wreaths made from the leaves of plants when they won competitions.

##### competes by the rules

"competes according to the rules"

#### 2 Timothy 2:6

##### It is necessary that the hard-working farmer receive his share of the crops first

The reader should understand that Christ's servants need to work hard.

#### 2 Timothy 2:7

##### in everything

"about everything"

#### 2 Timothy 2:8

##### who was raised from the dead

"whom God caused to live again"

##### according to my gospel message

"according to the gospel message that I preach"

#### 2 Timothy 2:9

##### to the point of being bound with chains as a criminal

"to the point of wearing chains as a criminal in prison"

##### the word of God is not bound

"no one can stop the word of God"

#### 2 Timothy 2:10

##### for those who are chosen

"for the people whom God has chosen"

##### may obtain the salvation that is in Christ Jesus

"will receive salvation from Christ Jesus"

##### with eternal glory

"and that they will be forever with him in the glorious place where he is"

#### 2 Timothy 2:11

##### This is a trustworthy saying

"These are words you can trust"

##### If we have died with him, we will also live with him

This is most likely the beginning of a song or poem that Paul is quoting. If your language has a way of indicating that this is poetry, you could use it here. If not, you could translate this as regular prose rather than poetry.

##### died with him

Paul uses this expression to mean that people share in Christ's death when they trust in Jesus, deny their own wants, and obey him.

#### 2 Timothy 2:13

##### if we are unfaithful ... he cannot deny himself

This is most likely the end of a song or poem that Paul is quoting.

##### if we are unfaithful

"even if we fail God" or "even if we do not do what we believe God wants us to do"

##### he cannot deny himself

"he must always act according to his character"

#### 2 Timothy 2:14

##### before God

"in God's presence" or "with God as your witness"

##### not to quarrel about words

"not to argue about foolish things that people say"

##### it is of no value

"this does not benefit anyone"

#### 2 Timothy 2:15

##### to present yourself to God as one approved, a laborer who has no reason to be ashamed

"to present yourself to God as a person who has proven to be worthy and has no cause for shame"

##### a laborer

"like a workman"

##### accurately teaches the word of truth

"explains the true message correctly."

#### 2 Timothy 2:16

##### Avoid profane and empty talk

"Do not pay attention to ungodly and useless talk"

##### which leads to more and more godlessness

"which causes people to become more and more ungodly"

#### 2 Timothy 2:17

##### Their talk will spread like cancer

"What they say will spread like an infectious disease" or "Their talk will spread quickly and cause destruction like cancer"

##### Hymenaeus and Philetus

These are names of men.

#### 2 Timothy 2:18

##### who have gone astray from the truth

"who have started saying things that are not true"

##### the resurrection has already happened

"God has already raised dead believers to eternal life"

##### they destroy the faith of some

"they cause some people to stop believing"

#### 2 Timothy 2:19

##### the firm foundation of God stands

"God's truth is like a firm foundation" or "God has established his people like a building on a firm foundation" or "God's faithfulness is like a firm foundation."

##### this inscription

Possible meanings of "inscription" are 1) words written into stone with a chisel or 2) words impressed in wax by a king's ring.

##### who names the name of the Lord

"who calls on the Lord" or "who says he is a believer in Christ"

##### depart from unrighteousness

"stop being evil"

#### 2 Timothy 2:20

##### containers of gold and silver ... containers of wood and clay

Here "containers" is a general word for bowls, plates, and pots. If your language does not have a general word, use the word for "bowls" or "pots."

##### honorable use ... dishonorable

"special occasions ... ordinary times" or "the kinds of activities people do in public ... the kinds of activities people do in private"

#### 2 Timothy 2:21

##### cleans himself from dishonorable use

"separates himself from dishonorable people" or "makes himself pure"

##### He is set apart, useful to the Master, and prepared for every good work

"The Master sets him apart, and he is ready for the Master to use him for every good work"

#### 2 Timothy 2:22

##### Flee youthful lusts

"Completely avoid youthful lusts"

##### Pursue righteousness

"Seek after righteousness"

##### with those

Possible meanings are 1) Paul wants Timothy to join with other believers in pursuing righteousness, faith, love, and peace, or 2) Paul wants Timothy to be at peace and not argue with other believers.

##### those who call on the Lord

"those who worship the Lord"

##### out of a clean heart

"with a sincere mind" or "with sincerity"

#### 2 Timothy 2:23

##### refuse foolish and ignorant questions

"refuse to answer foolish and ignorant questions." or "refuse to answer the questions that foolish people who do not want to know the truth ask"

##### they give birth to quarrels

"they cause arguments"

#### 2 Timothy 2:25

##### correcting his opponents with gentleness

"gently correcting those who oppose him"

##### his opponents

"people who say that what he teaches is not true"

##### Perhaps God may give them repentance

"God may give them the opportunity to repent"

##### for the knowledge of the truth

"so that they will know the truth"

#### 2 Timothy 2:26

##### They may become sober again

"They may think correctly again"

##### leave the devil's trap

"stop doing what the devil wants"

##### after they have been captured by him for his will

"after he has deceived them into obeying his will"

## Chapter 3

#### 2 Timothy 3:1

##### In the last days

"during this period of time before Jesus returns"

##### difficult times

These will be days, months, or even years when Christians will endure suffering and danger.

#### 2 Timothy 3:2

##### lovers of themselves

"self-centered"

#### 2 Timothy 3:3

##### without natural affection

"unloving even to their own families"

##### unable to reconcile

"unwilling to live peacefully with others"

##### not lovers of good

"haters of good"

#### 2 Timothy 3:5

##### They will have a shape of godliness, but they will deny its power

"They will appear to honor God, but they way they act will show that they do not really believe in God's power"

##### have a shape of godliness

"appear to honor God"

##### Turn away from these people

"Avoid these people"

#### 2 Timothy 3:6

##### enter into households and captivate

"enter into houses and greatly influence"

##### foolish women

"women who are spiritually weak."

##### who are loaded up with sins

"who sin often" or "who feel terrible guilt because they continue to sin.". The idea is that these men can easily influence these women because the women are unable to stop sinning.

##### are led away by various desires

"they desire to sin in various ways rather than obey Christ"

#### 2 Timothy 3:8

##### Jannes and Jambres

These are names of men.

##### stood against

"opposed" (Exodus 7:11)

##### stand against the truth

"oppose the gospel of Jesus"

##### They are men corrupt in mind

"Their minds are corrupt" or "They cannot think rightly"

##### and with regard to the faith they are rejected

"and they have shown that their faith is not sincere" or "and, according to the true teachings of the Christian faith, God has rejected them"

#### 2 Timothy 3:9

##### they will not advance very far

"they will not have much success"

##### obvious to all

"easily seen by all"

#### 2 Timothy 3:10

##### you have followed my teaching

"you have paid close attention to my teaching"

##### my teaching

"what I have taught you to do"

##### longsuffering

"perseverance"

#### 2 Timothy 3:11

##### Out of them all, the Lord rescued me

Paul speaks of God having stopped him from suffering these hardships and dangers as if God had carried him out of a physical location.

#### 2 Timothy 3:12

##### to live in a godly manner in Christ Jesus

"to live godly lives as followers of Jesus"

##### will be persecuted

"will certainly have to endure persecution"

#### 2 Timothy 3:13

##### impostors

An imposter is a person who wants other people to think he is someone other, usually more important, than who he is.

##### will go from bad to worse

"will become even more evil"

##### leading others astray and being led astray

"deceiving and being deceived" or "teaching lies and believing lies"

#### 2 Timothy 3:14

##### remain in the things that you have learned

"do not forget what you learned" or "continue doing what you have learned"

#### 2 Timothy 3:15

##### the sacred writings. These are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus

"what is in the sacred writings. When you read the word of God, you can become wise so as to receive salvation from Christ Jesus by faith"

#### 2 Timothy 3:16

##### All scripture has been inspired by God

"All scripture is God-breathed" or "God has spoken all scripture by his Spirit"

##### It is profitable

"It is useful" or "It is beneficial"

##### for conviction

"for pointing out errors"

##### for correction

"for fixing errors"

##### for training in righteousness

"for training people to be righteous"

#### 2 Timothy 3:17

##### the man of God

"all believers"

##### may be competent, equipped

"may be completely prepared"

## Chapter 4

#### 2 Timothy 4:1

##### this solemn command before God and Christ Jesus

"this serious command in the presence of God and Christ Jesus" or "this solemn command, having as my witnesses God and Christ Jesus"

##### the dead, and because of his appearing and his kingdom

"the dead when he returns to rule as king"

#### 2 Timothy 4:2

##### the word

"the message about Christ"

##### Reprove

tell someone he is guilty of doing wrong

##### exhort, with all patience and teaching

"exhort, and teach the people, and always be patient with them"

#### 2 Timothy 4:3

##### For the time will come when

"Because at some time in the future"

##### people

The context indicates that these will be people who are a part of the community of believers.

##### will not endure sound teaching

"will no longer want to listen to true teaching"

##### they will heap up for themselves teachers according to their own desires

"they will listen to many teachers who assure them that there is nothing wrong with their sinful desires"

##### who say what their itching ears want to hear

"who say only what they want so much to hear"

#### 2 Timothy 4:4

##### They will turn their hearing away from the truth

"They will no longer pay attention to the truth"

##### they will turn aside to myths

"they will pay attention to teachings that are not true"

#### 2 Timothy 4:5

##### be sober-minded

"think clearly"

#### 2 Timothy 4:6

##### I am already being poured out

Paul speaks of his readiness to die as if he were a cup of wine being poured out as a sacrifice to God.

##### The time of my departure has come

"Soon I will die and leave this world"

#### 2 Timothy 4:7

##### I have fought the good fight

"I have done my best"

##### I have kept the faith

"I have been faithful in doing my ministry" or "I have kept the teachings about what we believe from any error"

#### 2 Timothy 4:8

##### The crown of righteousness has been reserved for me

"God has reserved the crown of righteousness for me"

##### crown of righteousness

Just as the judge of a race gives a crown to the winner, when Paul finishes his life, God will declare that Paul is righteous.

##### on that day

"on the day when the Lord comes again" or "on the day when God judges people"

##### but also to all those who have loved his appearing

"but also he will give it to those who are eagerly waiting for him to return"

#### 2 Timothy 4:10

##### Demas ... Crescens ... Titus

These are names of men.

##### He loves this present world

Possible meanings are 1) he loves the temporary comforts of this world or 2) he is afraid he will die if he remains with Paul.

##### Crescens went ... and Titus went

These two men had left Paul, but Paul is not saying that they also "love this present world" like Demas.

##### Dalmatia

This is the name of a land region.

#### 2 Timothy 4:11

##### he is useful to me in the service

"he can help me in the ministry"

#### 2 Timothy 4:13

##### Carpus

This is the name of a man.

##### the books

This refers to scrolls. A scroll was a type of book made of one long sheet of papyrus or leather.

##### especially the parchments

"especially those made from animal skins"

#### 2 Timothy 4:14

##### Alexander the coppersmith displayed

"Alexander, who works with metal, displayed"

##### displayed many evil deeds against me

"did many evil things to me"

##### The Lord will repay him according to his deeds

"The Lord will punish him for what he has done"

#### 2 Timothy 4:15

##### opposed our words

"opposed the message that we teach"

#### 2 Timothy 4:16

##### At my first defense

"When I first appeared in court and explained my actions"

##### no one stood with me

"no one stayed with me and helped me"

##### May it not be counted against them

"May God not count it against them" or "I pray that God does not punish those believers for leaving me"

#### 2 Timothy 4:17

##### the Lord stood by me

"the Lord helped me"

##### so that, through me, the proclamation of the message might be fully accomplished ... the Gentiles might hear

"so that I was able to speak all of the Lord's message ... the Gentiles heard"

##### I was rescued out of the lion's mouth

"I was rescued from great danger"

#### 2 Timothy 4:19

##### house of Onesiphorus

"family of Onesiphorus"

##### Priscilla

This is the name of a woman.

##### Aquila

This is the name of a man.

##### Onesiphorus

This is the name of a man.

#### 2 Timothy 4:20

##### Erastus ... Trophimus

These are names of men.

##### Miletus

This is the name of a city to the south of Ephesus.

#### 2 Timothy 4:21

##### Eubulus ... Pudens, Linus

These are all names of men.

##### Do your best to come

"Try hard to come"

##### greets you, also Pudens, Linus, Claudia, and all the brothers

"greets you. Pudens, Linus, Claudia, and all the brothers also greet you"

##### Claudia

This is a female name.

#### 2 Timothy 4:22

##### May the Lord be with your spirit

"I pray that the Lord makes your spirit strong." (Timothy)

##### May grace be with you

"I pray that the Lord shows his grace to all of you there." Here "you" is plural and refers to all the believers with Timothy.

## Chapter 1

#### Titus 1:1

##### for the faith of

"to strengthen the faith of"

##### that agrees with godliness

"that is suitable for honoring God"

#### Titus 1:2

##### with the hope of everlasting life

"with the confidence of receiving everlasting life"

##### before all the ages of time

"before time began"

#### Titus 1:3

##### At the right time he revealed his word

"At the proper time he caused people to understand his message"

##### with which I have been entrusted

"that he trusted me to deliver"

##### God our Savior

"God, who saves us"

#### Titus 1:4

##### a true son

"you who are like a son to me"

##### our common faith

"the teachings that we both believe"

##### Grace and peace

"May you experience kindness and peace within"

##### Christ Jesus our Savior

"Christ Jesus who is our Savior"

#### Titus 1:5

##### For this purpose I left you in Crete, that you might set

"This is the reason I left you in Crete: I wanted you to set"

##### I left you in Crete

"I told you to stay in Crete"

##### set in order things not yet complete

"finish arranging things that needed to be done"

##### ordain elders

"appoint elders"

##### elders

In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the assemblies of believers.

#### Titus 1:6

##### An elder must be blameless, the husband

"An elder must not have a bad reputation and must be the husband"

##### the husband of one wife

"a man who has only one woman" or "a man who is faithful to his wife". This means that he has only one wife, that is, he does not have any other wives or concubines. It may also imply that he does not commit adultery and that he has not divorced a previous wife.

##### faithful children

Possible meanings are 1) children who believe in Jesus or 2) children who are trustworthy.

#### Titus 1:7

##### overseer

This is another name for the same position of spiritual leadership that Paul referred to as "elder" in 1:6.

##### a manager of the household of God

Paul speaks of the church as if it were God's household and the overseer as if he were a servant in charge of managing the household.

##### not addicted to wine

"not an alcoholic" or "not one who drinks much wine"

##### not a brawler

"not one who likes to fight"

#### Titus 1:8

##### Instead

Paul is changing his argument from what an elder should not be, to what an elder is to be.

#### Titus 1:9

##### hold tightly to

"be devoted to" or "know well". Paul speaks of devotion to the Christian faith as if it were grasping the faith with one's hands.

##### truthful teaching

"trustworthy words"

#### Titus 1:10

##### rebellious people

These are rebellious people who oppose Paul's gospel message.

##### empty talkers and deceivers

"people who say useless things and deceive others"

##### those of the circumcision

This refers to the Christian Jews who taught that men must be circumcised in order to follow Christ.

#### Titus 1:11

##### It is necessary to stop them

"They must be stopped from influencing others by their words"

##### are upsetting whole families

"are ruining whole families"

##### for disgraceful profit

This refers to profit that people make by doing things that are not honorable.

##### what they should not teach

These are things that are not proper to teach regarding Christ and the Law because they are not true.

#### Titus 1:12

##### One of their own prophets

"A prophet from Crete itself" or "A Cretan that they themselves consider to be a prophet"

##### Cretans are always liars

"Cretans lie all the time"

#### Titus 1:13

##### Therefore, correct them severely

"You must use strong language that the Cretans will understand when you correct them"

#### Titus 1:14

##### Jewish myths

This refers to the false teaching of the Jews.

##### turn away from the truth

"reject the truth"

#### Titus 1:15

##### To those who are pure, all things are pure

"If people are pure on the inside, everything they do will be pure"

##### To those who are pure

"To those who are acceptable to God"

##### to those who are corrupt and unbelieving, nothing is pure

"if people are morally defiled and do not believe, they cannot do anything pure"

#### Titus 1:16

##### they deny him by their actions

"how they live proves that they do not know him"

##### They are detestable

"They are disgusting"

## Chapter 2

#### Titus 2:1

##### But you, speak what fits

"But you, Titus, in contrast with the false teachers, be sure to say those things that fit"

#### Titus 2:2

##### to be temperate

"to be sober-minded”

##### temperate, dignified, sensible

"temperate and dignified, to control their desires"

##### and sound in faith, in love, and in perseverance

"and they must firmly believe the true teachings about God, truly love others, and continually serve God even when things are difficult"

#### Titus 2:3

##### slanderers

This word refers to people who say bad things about other people whether they are true or not.

##### or being slaves to much wine

"and not drinking too much wine"

#### Titus 2:5

##### so that God's word may not be spoken of as evil

"so that no one insults God's word"

#### Titus 2:6

##### In the same way, encourage

"Also be sure to encourage"

#### Titus 2:7

##### present yourself as an example of good works

"show yourself to be an example of one who does right and proper things"

#### Titus 2:8

##### a truthful message

"trustworthy words"

#### Titus 2:9

##### their masters

"their own masters"

##### in everything

"in every situation"

##### please them

"satisfy their masters"

#### Titus 2:10

##### demonstrate all good faith

"show that they are worthy of their masters' trust"

##### in every way

"in everything they do"

##### they may bring credit to the teaching about God our Savior

"they may cause people to understand that the teaching about God our Savior is good"

##### God our Savior

"our God who saves us"

#### Titus 2:11

##### the grace of God has appeared

Paul speaks of the grace of God as if it were a person who goes to other people.

#### Titus 2:12

##### trains us

Paul speaks of the grace of God (Titus 2:11) as if it were a person who goes to other people and trains them to live holy lives.

##### trains us to reject godlessness

"teaches us not to dishonor God"

##### worldly desires

"strong desires for the things of this world" or "strong desires for sinful pleasures"

##### in this age

"as we live in this world"

#### Titus 2:13

##### we look forward to receiving

"we eagerly wait to receive"

##### our blessed hope, the appearance of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ

"the good thing for which we confidently wait, that is, the glorious appearance of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ"

#### Titus 2:14

##### gave himself for us

"gave himself to die for us"

##### to redeem us from all lawlessness

Paul speaks of Jesus as if he were setting slaves free from their evil master.

##### a special people

A group of people that he treasures.

##### are eager

"have a strong desire"

#### Titus 2:15

##### give correction with all authority

"correct with all authority those people who do not do these things"

##### Let no one

"Do not allow anyone to"

##### disregard you

"refuse to listen to your words"

## Chapter 3

#### Titus 3:1

##### submit to rulers and authorities, to obey them

"do as the political rulers and government authorities say by obeying them"

##### rulers and authorities

These words have similar meanings and are used together to include everyone who holds authority in the government.

##### be ready for every good work

"be ready to do good whenever there is opportunity"

#### Titus 3:2

##### to insult no one

"to speak evil of no one"

#### Titus 3:3

##### For once we ourselves

"This is because we ourselves were once"

##### once

"formerly" or "previously"

##### we ourselves

"even we" or "we also"

##### were thoughtless

"were foolish" or "were unwise"

##### We were led astray and enslaved by various desires and pleasures

"Various desires and pleasures had lied to us and so led us astray" or "We had allowed ourselves to believe the lie that various desires and pleasures could make us happy, and then we were unable to control our feelings or stop doing things we thought would give us pleasure"

##### We lived in evil and envy

"We were always doing evil things and not wanting others to have good things"

##### We were detestable

"We caused others to hate us"

#### Titus 3:4

##### when the kindness of God our Savior and his love for mankind appeared

Paul speaks of God's kindness and love as if they were people that came into our sight.

#### Titus 3:5

##### by his mercy

"because he had mercy on us"

##### washing of new birth

Paul is probably speaking of God's forgiveness for sinners as if God were physically washing them and he is also speaking of sinners who become responsive to God as if they had been born again.

#### Titus 3:6

##### whom God richly poured on us

"whom God gave to us generously". It is common for New Testament writers to speak of the Holy Spirit as a liquid that God can pour out in large amounts.

##### through our Savior Jesus Christ

"when Jesus Christ saved us"

#### Titus 3:7

##### having been justified

"since God has declared us to be without sin"

##### we might become heirs having the hope of eternal life

"we might become like God's heirs, confidently waiting to inherit eternal life" or "we might have the confident expectation that God will cause us to live forever". The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were heirs, inheriting property and wealth from a family member.

#### Titus 3:8

##### may be careful to engage themselves in good works

"may seek to do good works"

#### Titus 3:9

##### But avoid foolish debates

"So avoid arguments concerning unimportant matters"

##### genealogies

This is the study of family kinship relationships.

##### strife

arguments

##### the law

"the law of Moses"

#### Titus 3:10

##### Reject anyone

"Have everyone stay away from anyone"

##### after one or two warnings

"after you have warned that person once or twice"

#### Titus 3:11

##### such a person

"a person like that"

##### has turned from the right way

Paul speaks of someone who has rejected the truth as if he had left the correct path on which he had been walking.

##### condemns himself

"brings judgment on himself"

#### Titus 3:12

##### When I send

"After I send"

##### Artemas ... Tychicus

These are men's names.

##### spend the winter

"stay until winter has ended"

#### Titus 3:13

##### Zenas ... Apollos

These are men's names.

#### Titus 3:14

##### Our people

Paul is referring to the believers in Crete.

##### that provide for urgent needs

"that help people who need important things immediately"

##### needs, and so not be unfruitful

"needs; in this way they will be fruitful" or "needs, and so they will do good works". Paul speaks of people doing good works as if they were trees bearing good fruit.

#### Titus 3:15

##### All those

"All the people"

##### those who love us in faith

"the believers who love us" or "the believers who love us because we share the same belief"

##### Grace be with all of you

"May God's grace be with you"

## Chapter 1

#### Philemon 1:1

##### Paul, a prisoner of Christ Jesus, and the brother Timothy, to Philemon

"I, Paul, a prisoner of Christ Jesus, and Timothy, our brother, are writing this letter to Philemon". Your language may have a particular way of introducing the authors of a letter. Three times Paul identifies himself as the author of this letter. Evidently Timothy was with him and probably wrote the words down as Paul said them. People opposing Paul's preaching had punished him by putting him into prison.

##### brother

Here this means a fellow Christian.

##### our dear friend

The word "our" here refers to Paul and those with him but not to the reader.

##### and fellow worker

"who, like us, works to spread the gospel"

#### Philemon 1:2

##### Apphia our sister

"Apphia our fellow believer" or "Apphia our spiritual sister"

##### Archippus our fellow soldier

"Archippus, who also fights the spiritual battle with us"

#### Philemon 1:3

##### May grace be to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ

"May God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ give you grace and peace."

##### God our Father

The word "our" here refers to Paul, those with him, and the reader.

#### Philemon 1:6

##### the sharing of your faith may be effective

"the way you tell others what you believe may cause them to believe also"

##### be effective, so you will have a full understanding of every good thing we have

"have a good result, and you will completely understand all the good things we have"

##### in Christ

"because of Christ"

#### Philemon 1:7

##### the hearts of God's holy people have been refreshed by you

"you have encouraged believers"

##### you, brother

"you, dear friend"

#### Philemon 1:8

##### all the boldness in Christ

"courage because Christ has given me authority"

#### Philemon 1:9

##### yet because of love

"because I love you"

#### Philemon 1:10

##### my child Onesimus

"my spiritual son Onesimus"

##### Onesimus

The name "Onesimus" means "profitable" or "useful". He was apparently Philemon's slave and had stolen something and run away.

##### whom I have fathered in my chains

"who became my spiritual son when I taught him about Christ and he received new life while I was in my chains" or "who became like a son to me while I was in my chains"

##### in my chains

"while I was in prison"

#### Philemon 1:12

##### I have sent him back to you

Paul was probably sending Onesimus with another believer who carried this letter.

##### who is my very heart

"whom I love dearly"

#### Philemon 1:13

##### so he could serve me for you

"so that, since you cannot be here, he might help me" or "so that he could help me in your place"

##### while I am in chains

"while I am in prison"

##### for the sake of the gospel

"because I preach the gospel". Paul was in prison because he preached the gospel publicly.

#### Philemon 1:14

##### But I did not want to do anything without your consent

"But I wanted to make sure that you approved of everything I did"

##### I did not want your good deed to be from necessity but from good will

"I did not want you to do this good deed because I commanded you to do it, but because you wanted to do it" or "but because you freely chose to do the right thing"

#### Philemon 1:15

##### Perhaps for this he was separated from you for a time, so that

"Perhaps the reason God took Onesimus away from you during this time was so that"

#### Philemon 1:16

##### better than a slave

"more valuable than a slave"

##### a beloved brother

"a precious brother in Christ"

##### much more so to you

"he means even more to you"

##### in both the flesh

"both as a man." Paul is referring to Onesimus' being a trustworthy servant.

##### in the Lord

"as a brother in the Lord"

#### Philemon 1:17

##### if you have me as a partner

"if you think of me as a fellow worker for Christ"

#### Philemon 1:18

##### charge that to me

"say that I am the one who owes you"

#### Philemon 1:19

##### I, Paul, write this with my own hand

"I, Paul, write this myself." Paul wrote this part with his own hand so that Philemon would know that the words were really from Paul.

##### not to mention

"I do not need to remind you" or "You already know".

##### you owe me your own self

"you owe me your own life." or "you owe me much because I saved your life"

#### Philemon 1:20

##### refresh my heart in Christ

"encourage me in Christ" or "refresh my heart in Christ by accepting Onesimus kindly"

#### Philemon 1:21

##### Confident about your obedience

"Because I am sure that you will do what I ask"

#### Philemon 1:22

##### At the same time

"Also"

##### prepare a guest room for me

"make a room in your house ready for me."

##### for I hope that through your prayers I will be returned to you

"for I confidently expect that God will answer your prayers and send me back to you"

##### your ... you

These words are plural and refer to Philemon, Apphia, Archippus, and the other Christians that meet in their home.

#### Philemon 1:23

##### Epaphras

This man is a fellow believer and prisoner with Paul.

##### my fellow prisoner in Christ Jesus

"who is in prison with me because he serves Christ Jesus"

#### Philemon 1:24

##### So do Mark, Aristarchus, Demas, and Luke, my fellow workers

"Mark, Aristarchus, Demas, and Luke, my fellow workers, also greet you"

##### my fellow workers

"the men who work with me"

#### Philemon 1:25

##### The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit

"May our Lord Jesus Christ be kind to all of you"

## Chapter 1

#### Hebrews 1:2

##### in these last days

"in these final days." (Deuteronomy 4:30). This phrase refers to the time when Jesus began his ministry, extending until God establishes his complete rule in his creation.

##### through a Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### to be the heir of all things

"to possess all things"

##### It is through him that God also made the universe

"It is through the Son that God also made all things"

#### Hebrews 1:3

##### the brightness of God's glory, the exact representation of his being

"glory and is just like God" or "glory, and what is true about God is true about the Son"

##### the word of his power

"his powerful command"

##### After he had made cleansing for sins

"After he had finished making us clean from sins" or "he had made it possible for God to forgive our sins"

##### he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high

"he sat down at the place of honor and authority beside God Most High"

#### Hebrews 1:4

##### He has become

"The Son has become"

##### as the name he has inherited is more excellent than their name

"as the honor and authority he has received is superior to their honor and authority"

#### Hebrews 1:5

##### For to which of the angels did God ever say, "You are my Son ... a Son to me"?

"For God never said to any of the angels, 'You are my Son ... a Son to me.'" (Psalm 2:7).

#### Hebrews 1:6

##### the firstborn

"his honored Son, his only Son" (Psalm 97:7). The author refers to Jesus as the "firstborn" to emphasize the Son's importance and authority over everyone else. It does not imply that there was a time before Jesus existed or that God the Father has other sons like Jesus. These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### he says

"God says"

#### Hebrews 1:7

##### He is the one who makes his angels spirits, and his servants flames of fire

Possible meanings are: 1) "God has made his angels to be spirits who serve him with power like flames of fire" (Psalm 104:4) or 2) God makes the wind and flames of fire his messengers and servants. In the original language the word for "angel" is the same as "messenger," and the word for "spirits" is the same as "wind." The point is that the angels serve the Son because he is superior.

#### Hebrews 1:8

##### But to the Son he says

"But God says this to the Son"

##### Your throne, God, is forever and ever

"You are God, and your reign will last forever and ever" (Psalm 45:6).

##### The scepter of justice is the scepter of your kingdom

"And you will rule over your kingdom with justice" or "And you will rule over the people of your kingdom justly"

#### Hebrews 1:9

##### has anointed you with the oil of joy more than your companions

"has honored you and made you more joyful than anyone else". Here "oil of joy" refers to the joy that the Son felt when God honored him.

#### Hebrews 1:10

##### In the beginning

"Before anything existed"

##### you laid the earth's foundation

"you created the earth". The author speaks of God creating the earth as if he built a building on a foundation. (Psalm 102:25)

##### The heavens are the work of your hands

"You made the heavens"

#### Hebrews 1:11

##### They will perish

"The heavens and earth will no longer exist"

##### wear out like a piece of clothing

The author speaks of the heavens and earth as if they were a piece of clothing that will get old and eventually become useless.

#### Hebrews 1:12

##### roll them up like a cloak, they will be changed like a piece of clothing

The author speaks of the heavens and earth as if they were a robe or another kind of outer garment, that could also be exchanged for other clothing.

##### your years do not end

"your life will never end"

#### Hebrews 1:13

##### But to which of the angels has God said at any time ... feet"?

"But God has never said to an angel at any time ... feet.'"

##### Sit at my right hand

"Sit in the place of honor beside me" (Psalm 110:1).

##### until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet

This image represents defeat and dishonor for his enemies.

#### Hebrews 1:14

##### Are not all angels spirits ... inherit salvation?

"All angels are spirits who ... inherit salvation."

##### for those who will inherit salvation

"for those whom God will save"

## Chapter 2

#### Hebrews 2:1

##### we must

Here "we" refers to the author and includes his audience.

##### so that we do not drift away from it

"so that we do not stop believing it" or "so that we do not stop obeying it"

#### Hebrews 2:2

##### For if the message that was spoken through the angels

"Because the message that God spoke through the angels". The Jews believed that God spoke his law to Moses through angels.

##### every transgression and disobedience receives just repayment

"every person who sins and disobeys will receive just repayment"

##### repayment

"punishment"

#### Hebrews 2:3

##### how then can we escape if we ignore so great a salvation?

"then God will certainly punish us if we do not pay attention to his message about how God will save us!"

##### ignore

"pay no attention to" or "consider unimportant"

##### This is salvation that was first announced by the Lord and confirmed to us by those who heard it

"The Lord himself first announced the message about how God will save us and then those who heard the message confirmed it to us"

#### Hebrews 2:4

##### according to his will

"in just the way he wanted to do it"

#### Hebrews 2:5

##### For it was not to the angels that God subjected

"For God did not make the angels rulers over"

##### the world to come

"the people who will live in the new world". The writer reminds these Hebrew believers that the earth will one day be under the rule of the Lord Jesus.

#### Hebrews 2:6

##### What is man, that you are mindful of him?

"Humans are insignificant, and yet you are mindful of them!" (Psalm 8:4).

##### Or a son of man, that you care for him?

"Human beings are of little importance, and yet you care for them!" (Psalm 144:3).

#### Hebrews 2:7

##### a little lower than the angels

"less important than the angels" (Psalm 8:5)

##### made man ... crowned him

"made humans ... crowned them"

##### you crowned him with glory and honor

"you have given them great glory and honor"

#### Hebrews 2:8

##### his feet ... to him

"their feet ... to them"

##### You put everything in subjection under his feet

"You have given them control over everything" (Psalm 8:6)

##### He did not leave anything not subjected to him

"God made everything subject to him"

##### we do not yet see everything subjected to him

"we know that humans are not in control of everything yet"

#### Hebrews 2:9

##### we see him

"we know there is one"

##### who was made

"whom God made"

##### lower than the angels ... crowned with glory and honor

See how you translated these words in Hebrews 2:7. The writer reminds these Hebrew believers that Christ became lower than the angels when he came to earth to suffer death for forgiveness of sins, and that he became a merciful high priest to believers.

##### he might taste death

"he might die"

#### Hebrews 2:10

##### bring many sons to glory

"save many believers". The gift of glory is spoken of, as if it were a place to which people could be brought.

##### the founder of their salvation

"the one who makes their salvation possible" or "the one who leads people to salvation"

##### complete

Becoming mature and completely trained is spoken of as if a person were made complete, perhaps complete in all his body parts.

#### Hebrews 2:11

##### the one who sanctifies

"the one who makes others holy" or "the one who makes others pure from sin"

##### those who are sanctified

"those whom he makes holy" or "those whom he makes pure from sin"

##### have one source

"have one source, God himself"

##### he is not ashamed

"Jesus is not ashamed"

##### is not ashamed to call them brothers

"is pleased to call them fellow believers"

#### Hebrews 2:12

##### I will proclaim your name to my brothers

"I will proclaim to my brothers the great things you have done" (Psalm 22:22)

##### from inside the assembly

"when believers come together to worship God"

#### Hebrews 2:13

##### And again,

"And a prophet wrote in another scripture passage what Christ said about God:" (Isaiah 8:17)

##### the children

"those who are like my children" (Isaiah 8:18)

#### Hebrews 2:14

##### the children

"those who are like his children"

##### share in flesh and blood

"are all human beings"

##### he shared in those things in the same way

"Jesus in the same way shared in flesh and blood"

##### through death

"by dying"

##### has the power of death

"has the power to cause people to die"

#### Hebrews 2:15

##### This was so that he would free all those who through fear of death lived all their lives subject to slavery

"This was so he might free all people. For we lived like slaves because we were afraid of dying"

#### Hebrews 2:17

##### it was necessary for him

"it was necessary for Jesus"

##### like his brothers

"like human beings"

##### he could make atonement for the sins of the people

"he could make it possible for God to forgive people's sins"

#### Hebrews 2:18

##### was tempted

"Satan tempted him"

##### who are tempted

"whom Satan is tempting"

## Chapter 3

#### Hebrews 3:1

##### holy brothers

"holy brothers and sisters"

##### you share in a heavenly calling

"God has called us together"

##### the apostle and high priest

"the one whom God sent and is the high priest". The word "apostle" means someone who has been sent. In this passage, it does not refer to any of the twelve apostles.

##### of our confession

"whom we confess" or "in whom we believe"

#### Hebrews 3:2

##### in all the house of God

"to all of God's people"

#### Hebrews 3:3

##### Jesus has been considered

"God has considered Jesus"

#### Hebrews 3:4

##### the one who built everything

God's acts of creating the world are spoken of as if they were the actions of building a house.

##### every house is built by someone

"every house has someone who built it"

#### Hebrews 3:5

##### in God's entire house

See how you translated this in Hebrews 3:2.

##### house, bearing witness about the things

"house. Moses's life and work pointed to the things"

##### were to be spoken of in the future

"God would speak about in the future"

#### Hebrews 3:6

##### Son

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### who is in charge of the house of God

"who rules over God's people"

##### if we hold firmly to our courage and the hope of which we boast

"if we continue to be courageous and joyfully expect God to do what he has promised"

#### Hebrews 3:7

##### if you hear his voice

"when you hear God speak" (Psalm 95:7)

#### Hebrews 3:8

##### do not harden your hearts

"do not be stubborn" or "do not refuse to listen"

##### as in the rebellion, in the time of testing in the wilderness

"as when your ancestors rebelled against God and tested him in the wilderness"

#### Hebrews 3:9

##### your ancestors

Here "your" is plural and refers to the people of Israel.

##### by testing me

Here "me" refers to God. (Psalm 95:9)

#### Hebrews 3:10

##### I was angry

"I was greatly unhappy" (Psalm 95:10)

##### They have always gone astray in their hearts

"They have always rejected me" or "They have always refused to obey me"

##### They have not known my ways

"They have not understood how I want them to conduct their lives"

#### Hebrews 3:11

##### They will never enter my rest

"They will never enter the place of rest" or "I will never allow them to experience my blessings of rest"

#### Hebrews 3:12

##### that none of you has an evil heart of unbelief, a heart that turns away from the living God

"that none of you refuses to believe the truth and stops obeying the living God"

##### the living God

"the true God who is really alive"

#### Hebrews 3:13

##### as long as it is called "today,"

"while there is still opportunity,"

##### no one among you will be hardened by the deceitfulness of sin

"no one among you will be deceived by sin and become stubborn" or "you do not sin, deceiving yourselves so that you become stubborn"

#### Hebrews 3:14

##### For we have become

Here "we" refers to both the writer and the readers.

##### if we firmly hold to our confidence in him

"if we continue to confidently trust in him"

##### from the beginning

"from when we first began to believe in him"

##### to the end

"until we die"

#### Hebrews 3:15

##### it has been said

"the writer wrote"

##### if you hear his voice

"if you hear God speak" (Psalm 95:7)

##### as in the rebellion

"as when your ancestors rebelled against God"

#### Hebrews 3:16

##### Who was it who heard God and rebelled? Was it not all those who came out of Egypt through Moses?

"All those who came out of Egypt with Moses heard God, yet they still rebelled."

#### Hebrews 3:17

##### With whom was he angry for forty years? Was it not with those who sinned, whose dead bodies fell in the wilderness?

"For forty years, God was angry with those who sinned, and he let them die in the wilderness."

#### Hebrews 3:18

##### To whom did he swear that they would not enter his rest, if it was not to those who disobeyed him?

"And it was to those who disobeyed that he swore they would not enter his rest."

##### they would not enter his rest

"they would not enter the place of rest" or "they would not experience his blessings of rest". The word "they" refers to the disobedient Israelites.

#### Hebrews 3:19

##### because of unbelief

"because they did not believe him"

## Chapter 4

#### Hebrews 4:1

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true" or "Since God will certainly punish those who do not obey"

##### let us fear

"we must be very careful"

##### entering his rest

"to experience God's blessings of rest"

##### none of you may seem to have fallen short of it

"none of you fail to enter into God's rest, which he promised to us" or "God allows you all to enter into his rest as he promised us"

#### Hebrews 4:2

##### For we were told the good news just as they were

"For we heard the good news just as they did" Here "they" refers to the Hebrews' ancestors who were alive during the time of Moses.

##### But that message did not benefit those who did not unite in faith with those who obeyed

"But that message benefited only those who believed and obeyed it". (See Deuteronomy 1:32)

##### unite

join

#### Hebrews 4:3

##### we who have believed enter that rest

"we who have believed will enter the place of rest" or "we who have believed will experience God's blessings of rest" (Psalm 95:11)

##### just as he said

"just as God said"

##### As I swore in my wrath

"As I swore when I was very angry"

##### They will never enter my rest

"They will never enter the place of rest" or "They will never experience my blessings of rest"

##### his works were finished

"he finished his works of creation"

##### from the foundation of the world

"at the beginning of the world" or "from the time he created the world". The author speaks of the world as if it were a building set on a foundation.

#### Hebrews 4:4

##### the seventh day

The word "seventh" is the ordinal number for "seven." The quotation, "God rested on ... works," is from Genesis 2:2 and Exodus 31:17.

#### Hebrews 4:6

##### it remains for some to enter that rest

"God still allows some people to enter his place of rest" or "God still allows some people to experience his blessings of rest"

#### Hebrews 4:7

##### if you hear his voice

"if you hear God speaking". God's commands to Israel are spoken of as if he had given them in an audible voice. See how you translated this in Hebrews 3:7.

##### do not harden your hearts

"do not be stubborn" or "do not refuse to listen"

#### Hebrews 4:8

##### if Joshua had given them rest

"if Joshua had been able to cause the people to rest" or "if the Israelites during the time of Joshua had experienced God's blessings of rest". (see Joshua 11:23)

#### Hebrews 4:10

##### he who enters into God's rest

"the person who enters into God's place of rest" or "the person who experiences God's blessings of rest"

#### Hebrews 4:11

##### let us be eager to enter that rest

"we should also do everything we can to rest with God where he is"

##### will fall into the kind of disobedience that they did

"will disobey in the same way as they did"

##### that they did

Here "they" refers to the Hebrews' ancestors during the time of Moses.

#### Hebrews 4:12

##### the word of God is living and active ... It pierces ... is able

"the words of God are living ... They pierce ... are able". This speaks about God's word as if it were alive. It means when God speaks, it is powerful and effective.

##### sharper than any two-edged sword

A two-edged sword can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts. The sword has a blade that is sharp on both edges.

##### It pierces even to the dividing of soul and spirit, of joints and marrow

The sword is so sharp that it can cut through and divide parts of the human that are very difficult or even impossible to divide. This means that there is nothing inside us that we can hide from God. The "soul" is what causes a person to be alive. The "spirit" is the part of a person that causes him to be able to know and believe in God. The "joint" is what holds two bones together. The "marrow" is the center part of the bone.

##### is able to discern

"exposes"

##### the thoughts and intentions of the heart

"what a person is thinking and intends to do"

#### Hebrews 4:13

##### No thing that has been created is hidden before God

"Nothing that God has created can hide from him"

##### everything is bare and open

"everything is completely exposed"

##### to the eyes of the one to whom we must give an account

"to God, who will judge how we have lived". God is spoken of as if he had eyes.

#### Hebrews 4:14

##### who has passed through the heavens

"who has entered where God is"

##### let us firmly hold to our confession

"let us continue to believe confidently in him, as we say that we do"

#### Hebrews 4:15

##### we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy ... Rather, we have

"we have a high priest who can feel sympathy ... Rather, we have"

##### who has in all ways been tempted as we are

"who has endured temptation in every way that we have" or "whom the devil has tempted in every way that he tempts us"

##### he is without sin

"he did not sin"

#### Hebrews 4:16

##### to the throne of grace

"to where our gracious God is sitting on his throne"

##### we may receive mercy and find grace to help in time of need

"God may be merciful and gracious and help us in time of need"

## Chapter 5

#### Hebrews 5:1

##### chosen from among people

"whom God chooses from among the people"

##### is appointed

"God appoints"

##### to act on the behalf of people

"to represent the people"

##### so that he may offer

The word "he" refers to a high priest. The writer describes the sinfulness of the Old Testament priests, and then he shows that Christ has a better kind of priesthood, one not based on Aaron's priesthood but on the priesthood of Melchizedek.

#### Hebrews 5:2

##### He can deal gently

"The high priest can deal gently"

##### those ... who have been deceived

"those ... whom others have deceived" or "those ... who believe false things and so behave badly"

##### is subject to weakness

"is spiritually weak" or "is weak to the desire to sin"

#### Hebrews 5:3

##### he also is required

"God also requires him"

#### Hebrews 5:4

##### takes this honor

The "honor" or praise and respect that people gave to the high priest stand for his task.

##### he is called by God, just as Aaron was

"God calls him, just as he called Aaron"

#### Hebrews 5:5

##### the one speaking to him said

"God said to him"

##### You are my Son; today I have become your Father

These two phrases mean essentially the same thing. See how you translated them in Hebrews 1:5. These are important titles that describe the relationship God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### Hebrews 5:6

##### he also says

"he also says to Christ"

##### in another place

"in another place in the scriptures"

##### after the manner of Melchizedek

"in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest" (Psalm 110:4)

#### Hebrews 5:7

##### During the days of his flesh

"While Jesus lived on earth"

##### the one able to save him from death

"God was able to save Christ after Christ's death by making him alive again".

##### he was heard

"God heard him"

#### Hebrews 5:9

##### He was made perfect

"God made him perfect". Here this means being made mature, able to honor God in all aspects of life.

##### became, for everyone who obeys him, the cause of eternal salvation

"now he saves all who obey him and causes them to live forever"

#### Hebrews 5:10

##### He was designated by God

"God designated him" or "God appointed him"

##### as high priest after the manner of Melchizedek

"to be the sort of high priest that Melchizedek was"

#### Hebrews 5:11

##### We have much to say

"I have much to say"

##### you have become dull in hearing

"you have trouble understanding it"

#### Hebrews 5:12

##### elementary principles of God's messages

"basic truths of God's messages" or "beginning lessons of God's word"

##### You need milk

"You have become like babies and can drink only milk"

##### milk, not solid food

"milk instead of solid food that adults can eat"

#### Hebrews 5:13

##### takes milk because he is still a little child

"drinks milk because he is still a spiritual infant"

#### Hebrews 5:14

##### who because of their maturity have their understanding trained for distinguishing good from evil

"who are mature and can distinguish between good and evil"

## Chapter 6

#### Hebrews 6:1

##### let us leave the beginning of the message of Christ and move forward to maturity

"let us stop only discussing what we first learned and start understanding more mature teachings as well"

##### Let us not lay again the foundation

"Let us not repeat the basic teachings"

##### dead works

Sinful deeds are spoken of as if they belonged to the world of the dead.

#### Hebrews 6:2

##### nor the foundation of teaching

"nor the basic teachings"

##### laying on of hands

This practice was done to set someone apart for special service or position.

#### Hebrews 6:4

##### those who were once enlightened

"those who once understood the message about Christ"

##### who tasted the heavenly gift

"who experienced God's saving power"

##### who were sharers of the Holy Spirit

"who received the Holy Spirit"

#### Hebrews 6:5

##### who tasted God's good word

"who learned about God's good message"

##### the powers of the age to come

"how God will work powerfully in the future"

#### Hebrews 6:6

##### it is impossible to restore them again to repentance

"it is impossible to bring them back to repent again"

##### they crucify the Son of God for themselves again

"it is like they crucify for themselves the very Son of God again"

#### Hebrews 6:7

##### the land that drinks in the rain

"the land that absorbs the rain"

##### that gives birth to the plants

"that produces plants"

##### the land that receives a blessing from God

Rain and crops are seen as proof that God has helped the farmland. The farmland is spoken of as if it were a person who could receive God's blessing.

#### Hebrews 6:8

##### is near to a curse

"is in danger of God cursing it"

##### Its end is in burning

The farmer will burn everything in the field.

#### Hebrews 6:9

##### we are convinced

"I am convinced" or "I am certain"

##### about better things concerning you

"that you are doing better things than what I have mentioned"

##### things that concern salvation

"things that concern God saving you"

#### Hebrews 6:10

##### For God is not unjust. He will not forget

"For God is just. He will certainly remember"

##### for his name

"for God's name"

#### Hebrews 6:11

##### We greatly desire

"I greatly desire"

##### diligence

careful, hard work

##### to the end

"to the end of your lives"

##### in order to make your hope certain

"in order to have complete certainty that you will receive what God has promised you"

#### Hebrews 6:12

##### imitators

An "imitator" is someone who copies the behavior of someone else.

##### inherit the promises

"receive what God promised them"

#### Hebrews 6:15

##### what was promised

"what God promised Abraham". In the covenant that God made with Abraham, God promised to make Abraham's descendants into a great nation. He also promised to protect Abraham's descendants and to give them land of their own.

#### Hebrews 6:17

##### to the heirs of the promise

"to those who would receive what God promised"

##### the unchangeable quality of his purpose

"that God would always do what He said He would do"

#### Hebrews 6:18

##### we, who have fled for refuge

"we, who have trusted God"

##### will have a strong encouragement to hold firmly to the hope set before us

"will continue to trust in God just has He has placed before us to do"

#### Hebrews 6:19

##### as a secure and reliable anchor for the soul

"that causes us to live completely secure in God's presence"

##### hope that enters into the inner place behind the curtain

Confidence is spoken of as if it were a person who could go into the most holy place of the temple. It was thought to be the place where God was most intensely present among his people. In this passage, this place stands for heaven and God's throne room.

#### Hebrews 6:20

##### after the order of Melchizedek

"in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

## Chapter 7

#### Hebrews 7:1

##### Salem

This is the name of a city.

##### Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings

This refers to when Abraham and his men went and defeated the armies of four kings in order to rescue his nephew, Lot, and his family.

#### Hebrews 7:2

##### It was to him

"It was to Melchizedek"

##### king of righteousness ... king of peace

"righteous king ... peaceful king"

#### Hebrews 7:3

##### He is without father, without mother, without ancestors, with neither beginning of days nor end of life

It is possible to think from this passage that Melchizedek was neither born nor did he die. However, it is likely that the writer means the Scriptures provides no information about Melchizedek's ancestry, birth, or death.

#### Hebrews 7:4

##### this man was

"Melchizedek was"

#### Hebrews 7:5

##### The descendants of Levi who receive the priestly office

"the descendants of Levi who become priests"

##### from the people

"from the people of Israel"

##### from their brothers

"from their relatives"

#### Hebrews 7:6

##### whose descent was not traced from them

"who was not a descendant of Levi"

##### the one who had the promises

"the one to whom God had spoken his promises"

#### Hebrews 7:7

##### the lesser person is blessed by the greater person

"the more important person blesses the less important person"

#### Hebrews 7:8

##### In this case ... in that case

These phrases are used to compare the Levite priests with Melchizedek. Your language may have a way to emphasize that the author is making a comparison.

##### is testified that he lives on

"scripture shows that he lives on"

#### Hebrews 7:9

##### Levi, who received tithes, also paid tithes through Abraham

Since Levi had not been born yet, the author speaks of him as still being in Abraham's body. In this way, the author argues that Levi paid tithes to Melchizedek through Abraham.

#### Hebrews 7:11

##### Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

##### what further need would there have been for another priest to arise after the manner of Melchizedek, and not be considered to be after the manner of Aaron?

"no one would have needed another priest, one who was like Melchizedek and not like Aaron, to arise."

##### to arise

"to come" or "to appear"

##### after the manner of Melchizedek

"in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

##### not be considered to be after the manner of Aaron

"not be after the manner of Aaron" or "who is not a priest like Aaron"

#### Hebrews 7:12

##### For when the priesthood is changed, the law must also be changed

"For when God changed the priesthood, he also had to change the law"

#### Hebrews 7:13

##### For the one

This refers to Jesus.

##### about whom these things are said

"about whom I am speaking"

#### Hebrews 7:14

##### it is from Judah that our Lord was born

The words "our Lord" refer to Jesus.

##### from Judah

"from the tribe of Judah"

#### Hebrews 7:15

##### when another priest arises

"when another priest comes"

##### in the likeness of Melchizedek

"in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

#### Hebrews 7:16

##### This one became a priest

The words "This one" refer to the one who became priest in the likeness of Melchizedek.

##### not based on a law of physical requirement

"a law of human descent" or "a law that required priests to be descendants of priests".

#### Hebrews 7:17

##### For scripture witnesses about him

"For God witnesses about him through the scriptures" or "For this is what was written about him in the scripture"

##### according to the order of Melchizedek

"according to the priesthood of Melchizedek" (Psalm 110:4)

#### Hebrews 7:18

##### has the former command been set aside

"has God made the commandment invalid"

#### Hebrews 7:19

##### the law made nothing perfect

"no one could become perfect by obeying the law"

##### a better hope is introduced

"God has introduced a better hope" or "God has given us reason for a more confident hope"

##### through which we come near to God

"and because of this hope we approach God" or "and because of this hope we worship God"

#### Hebrews 7:20

##### And it was not without an oath!

"And God did not choose this new priest without swearing an oath!" or "And God showed how important it was by swearing an oath!"

#### Hebrews 7:22

##### Jesus has given the guarantee of a better covenant

"Jesus has told us that we can be sure that there will be a better covenant"

#### Hebrews 7:24

##### he has a permanent priesthood

"he is a priest permanently"

#### Hebrews 7:25

##### Therefore he

"Because Christ is our high priest who lives forever, he"

##### those who approach God through him

"those who come to God because of what Jesus has done"

#### Hebrews 7:26

##### exalted above the heavens

"whom God has given more honor and power than anyone else"

#### Hebrews 7:28

##### the law appoints as high priests men who have weaknesses

"according to the law, men appoint as high priests men who are spiritually weak" or "for according to the law, men who are weak against sin are appointed as high priests"

##### the word of the oath, which came after the law, appointed a Son

"God appointed a Son by his oath, which he made after he gave the law, a Son" or "after he had given the law, God swore an oath and appointed his Son". These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate “Father” and “Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### who has been made perfect

"who has completely obeyed God and become mature"

## Chapter 8

#### Hebrews 8:1

##### we are saying

"I am saying" or "I am writing"

##### We have a high priest

The author is including the readers here, so the word "we" is inclusive.

##### sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty

"sat down at the place of honor and authority beside the throne of the Majesty"

#### Hebrews 8:2

##### the true tabernacle that the Lord, not a man, set up

People built the earthly tabernacle out of animal skins fastened to a wooden framework, setting it up in the manner of a tent. Here "true tabernacle" means the heavenly tabernacle that God created.

#### Hebrews 8:3

##### For every high priest is appointed

"For God appoints every priest"

#### Hebrews 8:4

##### according to the law

"as God requires in the law"

#### Hebrews 8:5

##### They serve a copy and shadow of the heavenly things

"They serve what is a vague image of the heavenly things" or "They serve what is only similar to the heavenly things". The words "copy" and "shadow" emphasize that the priesthood and the earthly temple were images of Christ, the true high priest, and the heavenly temple.

##### It is just as Moses was warned by God when he was about to construct the tabernacle

"It is just as God warned Moses when Moses was about to command the people to construct the tabernacle"

##### See that

"Make sure that"

##### to the pattern

"to the design"

##### that was shown to you

"that I showed you"

##### on the mountain

"on Mount Sinai"

#### Hebrews 8:6

##### Christ has received

"God has given Christ"

##### mediator of a better covenant

Christ, as mediator, made it possible for a better covenant between God and humans to exist.

##### covenant, which is based on better promises

"covenant. It was this covenant that God made based on better promises" or "covenant. God promised better things when he made this covenant"

#### Hebrews 8:7

##### first ... second

"old covenant ... new covenant"

##### had been faultless

"had been perfect"

##### no occasion for a second would have been sought

"no one would have sought a way to establish a second covenant" or "there would have been no reason to establish a second covenant"

#### Hebrews 8:8

##### with the people

"with the people of Israel"

##### See

"Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

##### the house of Israel and with the house of Judah

"the people of Israel and with the people of Judah" (Jeremiah 31:31)

#### Hebrews 8:9

##### I took them by their hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt

"I led them out of Egypt like a father leads his young child"

#### Hebrews 8:10

##### the house of Israel

"the people of Israel"

##### after those days

"after that time"

##### I will put my laws into their minds and I will also write them on their hearts

"I will enable them to understand my laws and I will also enable them to obey my law"

##### I will be their God, and they will be my people

"I will be the God they worship, and they will be the people for whom I care" (Jeremiah 31:33)

#### Hebrews 8:11

##### They will not teach each one his fellow citizen and each one his brother, saying, 'Know the Lord.'

"They will not need to teach their neighbors or brothers to know me" (Jeremiah 31:34)

##### citizen ... brother

Both of these refer to a fellow Israelite.

##### Know the Lord ... will all know me

"Know" here stands for acknowledge.

#### Hebrews 8:12

##### toward their evil deeds

"to those who did evil deeds"

##### their sins I will not remember any longer

Here "remember" stands for "think about"

#### Hebrews 8:13

##### he declared the first covenant to be obsolete

"he declared that the first covenant was no longer useful"

## Chapter 9

#### Hebrews 9:1

##### had regulations

"had detailed instructions"

#### Hebrews 9:2

##### a tabernacle was prepared

"the Israelites prepared a tabernacle"

##### tabernacle

"tent"

##### The first room

"The first room in the tabernacle" or "The first section of the tabernacle"

##### the lampstand, the table, and the bread of the presence

The author assumes that his readers already know about these things.

##### bread of the presence

"bread the priests presented to God"

#### Hebrews 9:3

##### Behind the second curtain

The first curtain was the outer wall of the tabernacle, so the "second curtain" was the curtain between the "holy place" and the "most holy place."

#### Hebrews 9:4

##### Inside it

"Inside the ark of the covenant"

##### Aaron's rod that budded

This was the rod Aaron had when God proved to the people of Israel that he had chosen Aaron as his priest by making Aaron's rod bud.

##### that budded

"from which leaves and flowers had grown"

##### tablets of the covenant

This refers to the stone tablets on which the ten commandments were written.

#### Hebrews 9:5

##### glorious cherubim overshadowed the atonement lid

"glorious cherubim covered the atonement lid with their wings". Here the two cherubim are spoken of as providing shade for the ark of the covenant.

##### which we cannot

"which I cannot"

#### Hebrews 9:6

##### After these things were prepared

"After the priests prepared these things"

#### Hebrews 9:7

##### not without blood that he offered

"always with blood, which he offered."

##### blood

This is the blood of the bull and goat that the high priest had to sacrifice on the Day of Atonement.

#### Hebrews 9:8

##### the most holy place

Possible meanings are 1) the inner room of the tabernacle on earth or 2) God's presence in heaven.

##### the first tabernacle was still standing

"the outer room of the tabernacle was still standing" or "the earthly tabernacle and the sacrificial system still existed."

#### Hebrews 9:9

##### This was an illustration

"This was a picture" or "This was a symbol"

##### for the present time

"for now"

##### that are now being offered

"that the priests now offer"

##### are not able to perfect the worshiper's conscience

"are not able to make the worshiper free from guilt". A person's conscience is his knowledge of right and wrong. It is also his awareness of whether or not he has done wrong. If he knows he has done wrong, we say that he feels guilty.

#### Hebrews 9:10

##### until the time of the new order

"until God creates the new covenant"

#### Hebrews 9:11

##### good things

This does not refer to material things. It means the good things that God promised in his new covenant.

##### the greater and more perfect tabernacle

This refers to the heavenly tent or tabernacle, which is more important and more perfect than the earthly tabernacle.

##### that was not made by human hands

"that humans did not make"

#### Hebrews 9:12

##### most holy place

This means the most holy place in the heavenly tabernacle, because God himself lives there.

#### Hebrews 9:13

##### sprinkling of a heifer's ashes on those who have been defiled

The priest would drop small amounts of the ashes on the people who were defiled.

##### for the cleansing of their flesh

"for the cleansing of their bodies"

#### Hebrews 9:14

##### how much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself unblemished to God, cleanse our conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

"then certainly Christ's blood will cleanse our conscience even more from dead works to serve the living God! Because, through the eternal Spirit, he offered himself without even the smallest fault to God."

##### the blood of Christ

The "blood" of Christ stands for his death.

##### cleanse our conscience

Believers no longer have to feel guilty for the sins they have committed because Jesus sacrificed himself and has forgiven them.

##### dead works

Sinful deeds are spoken of as if they belonged to the world of the dead.

#### Hebrews 9:15

##### he is the mediator of a new covenant

See how you translated a similar phrase in Hebrews 8:6-7.

##### to redeem those under the first covenant from their transgressions

"to take away the transgressions of those who were under the first covenant." or "to take away the guilt of those who were under the first covenant." or "to take away the punishment that those who were under the first covenant deserved because they had transgressed"

##### those who are called

"those whom God has called" or "those whom God has chosen to be his children"

#### Hebrews 9:16

##### will

a legal document in which a person states who should receive his possessions when he himself dies

##### the death of the person who made it must be proven

"someone must prove that the person who made the will has died"

#### Hebrews 9:18

##### So not even the first covenant was established without blood

"So God established even the first covenant with blood" (Hebrews 8:7)

##### blood

"the death of animals sacrificed to God"

#### Hebrews 9:19

##### took the blood ... with water ... and sprinkled ... the scroll ... and all the people

The priest dipped the hyssop (a woody shrub with flowers in summer) in the blood and the water and then shook the hyssop so drops of blood and water would fall on the scroll and on the people. Sprinkling was done by the priests by which they applied the benefits of the covenant to people and to objects. Here the scroll and the people's acceptability to God are renewed.

#### Hebrews 9:20

##### the blood of the covenant

"the blood that brings into effect the covenant"

#### Hebrews 9:21

##### he sprinkled

"Moses sprinkled"

##### all the containers used in the ministry

"all the utensils the priests used in their work"

#### Hebrews 9:22

##### almost everything is cleansed with blood

"the priests use blood to cleanse almost everything"

##### Without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness

"Forgiveness of the sins of the people only comes when something dies as a sacrifice" or "God only forgives when something dies as a sacrifice"

#### Hebrews 9:23

##### the copies of the things in heaven should be cleansed with these animal sacrifices

"the priests should use these animal sacrifices to cleanse what are copies of things that are in heaven"

##### the heavenly things themselves had to be cleansed with much better sacrifices

"as for the heavenly things themselves, God had to cleanse them with much better sacrifices"

#### Hebrews 9:24

##### the most holy place made with hands, which

"the most holy place, which humans made, and which"

##### of the true one

"of the true most holy place"

#### Hebrews 9:25

##### He did not go there

"He did not enter heaven"

##### year by year

"every year"

##### with the blood of another

This means with the blood of an animal victim, not with his own blood.

#### Hebrews 9:26

##### If that had been the case

"If he had needed to offer himself often"

##### since the foundation of the world

"since God created the world"

##### to do away with sin by the sacrifice of himself

"to cause God to forgive sins by sacrificing himself" or "to sacrifice himself so that God can forgive sin"

#### Hebrews 9:28

##### Christ was offered once

"Christ offered himself once"

##### to take away the sins

"so that God would forgive the the guilt that people have before God because of the sins they committed"

## Chapter 10

#### Hebrews 10:1

##### the law is only a shadow of the good things to come

The author means the law is not the good things that God had promised. It only hints at the good things that God is going to do.

##### not the real forms of those things themselves

"not the real things themselves"

#### Hebrews 10:2

##### would the sacrifices not have ceased to be offered?

"they would have ceased offering those sacrifices."

##### ceased to be

"stopped being"

##### the worshipers would have been cleansed one time and would

"the sacrifices would have taken away the worshipers' sin once, and they would" or "God would have made the worshipers no longer guilty of sin once, and they would"

##### would no longer have any consciousness of sin

"would no longer think that they are guilty of sin" or "would know that they are no longer guilty of sin"

#### Hebrews 10:4

##### For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins

"For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to cause God to forgive sins"

#### Hebrews 10:5

##### you did not desire

Here "you" is singular and refers to God. (Psalm 40:6)

##### a body you have prepared

"you have made a body ready"

#### Hebrews 10:7

##### Then I said

This refers to Christ.

#### Hebrews 10:8

##### sacrifices ... offerings

See how you translated these words in Hebrews 10:5.

##### whole burnt offerings ... sin offerings

See how you translated similar words in Hebrews 10:6.

##### that are offered

"that priests offer"

#### Hebrews 10:9

##### He takes away the first practice in order to establish the second practice

"He stops people atoning for sins the first way in order to atone for sins the second way"

##### first practice ... the second practice

"old practice ... the new practice"

#### Hebrews 10:10

##### we have been sanctified

"God has sanctified us" or "God has dedicated us to himself"

##### through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ

"because Jesus Christ offered his body as a sacrifice"

#### Hebrews 10:11

##### can never take away sins

"can never cause God to forgive sins"

#### Hebrews 10:12

##### he sat down at the right hand of God

"he sat down at the place of honor and authority beside God"

#### Hebrews 10:13

##### until his enemies are made a footstool for his feet

"until God humiliates Christ's enemies and they become like a footstool for his feet"

#### Hebrews 10:14

##### those who are being sanctified

"those whom God is sanctifying" or "those whom God has dedicated to himself"

#### Hebrews 10:16

##### with them

"with my people" (Jeremiah 31:31 & 33)

##### after those days

"when the time of the first covenant with my people has finished"

##### I will put my laws in their hearts

"I will enable them to know my laws"

##### I will write them on their minds

"I will cause them to remember my laws"

#### Hebrews 10:17

##### Their sins and lawlessness I will remember no longer."

"I will no longer remember their sins and lawlessness.'" or "Then next he said, 'Their sins and lawlessness I will remember no longer.'"

##### Their sins and lawlessness

"The things they did that were forbidden and how they broke the law"

#### Hebrews 10:18

##### where there is forgiveness for these

"when God has forgiven these things"

##### there is no longer any sacrifice for sin

"people no longer need to make offerings for sin"

#### Hebrews 10:19

##### brothers

"brothers and sisters"

##### the most holy place

This means the presence of God, not the most holy place in the old tabernacle.

##### by the blood of Jesus

Here "blood of Jesus" refers to the death of Jesus.

#### Hebrews 10:20

##### living way

Possible meanings are 1) this new way to God that Jesus has provided results in believers living forever or 2) Jesus is alive, and he is the way believers enter into the presence of God.

##### through the curtain

The curtain in the earthly temple represents the separation between people and God's true presence.

##### by means of his flesh

"by means of his death"

#### Hebrews 10:21

##### we have a great priest over the house of God

This must be translated in such a way as to make it clear that Jesus is this "great priest".

##### over the house

"in charge of all the people of God"

#### Hebrews 10:22

##### with true hearts

"with sincerity"

##### in the full assurance of faith

"and trusting completely in Jesus"

##### having our hearts sprinkled clean

"as if had he made our consciences clean with his blood"

##### sprinkled

See how you translated this in Hebrews 9:19.

##### having our bodies washed with pure water

"as if he had washed our bodies in pure water"

##### our bodies washed with pure water

Possible meanings are 1) "bodies" represents peoples' entire beings, and "washed with pure water" represents Christ making a person spiritually pure or 2) this is literal and it refers to Christian baptism.

#### Hebrews 10:23

##### Let us also hold firmly to the hope we confess

"Let us be determined to continue confessing the things that we confidently expect from God"

#### Hebrews 10:25

##### Let us not abandon meeting together

"Let us not stop coming together to worship"

##### as you see the day coming closer

"as you know that Christ will return soon"

#### Hebrews 10:26

##### we deliberately go on sinning

"we know we are sinning but we do it again and again"

##### after we have received the knowledge of the truth

"after we have learned the truth about God"

##### a sacrifice for sins no longer remains

"no one can offer a sacrifice for which God will forgive our sins"

##### a sacrifice for sins

Here "sacrifice for sins" stands for "an effective way to sacrifice animals to take away sins"

#### Hebrews 10:27

##### of judgment

Of God's judgment, that is, that God will judge.

##### a fury of fire that will consume God's enemies

God's fury is spoken of as if it were fire that would burn up his enemies.

#### Hebrews 10:28

##### of two or three witnesses

"of at least two or three witnesses"

#### Hebrews 10:29

##### How much worse punishment do you think one deserves ... grace?

"This was severe punishment. But the punishment will be even greater for anyone ... grace!"

##### who has trampled underfoot the Son of God

"who has rejected the Son of God"

##### who regarded the blood of the covenant as unholy

"by treating the blood of the covenant as unholy". Here "blood" stands for Christ's death, by which God established the new covenant.

##### the blood by which he was sanctified

"the blood by which God sanctified him"

##### the Spirit of grace

"the Spirit of God, who provides grace"

#### Hebrews 10:30

##### Vengeance belongs to me

Vengeance is spoken of as if it were an object that belongs to God, who has the right to do as he wishes with what he owns. God has the right to take vengeance on his enemies.

##### I will pay back

God taking vengeance is spoken of as if he were paying back the harmful things that someone has done to others.

#### Hebrews 10:31

##### to fall into the hands

"to receive the full punishment"

#### Hebrews 10:32

##### the former days

"the time in the past"

##### after you were enlightened

"after you learned the truth about Christ"

##### how you endured a great struggle in suffering

"how much suffering you had to endure"

#### Hebrews 10:33

##### Sometimes you were publicly exposed to insult and persecution

"People ridiculed you by insulting you and persecuting you in public"

##### you shared with those

"you joined those"

#### Hebrews 10:34

##### a better and everlasting possession

God's eternal blessings are spoken of as a "possession".

#### Hebrews 10:35

##### do not throw away your confidence, which has a great reward

"do not stop confidently trusting in God, who will reward you greatly"

#### Hebrews 10:37

##### For in a very little while

"As God said in the scriptures, 'For in a very little while" (Isaiah 26:20)

##### in a very little while

"very soon"

#### Hebrews 10:38

##### My righteous one ... If he shrinks ... with him

"My faithful people ... If any one of them shrinks ... with that person" or "My faithful people ... If they shrink ... with them"

##### My righteous ... my soul will

Here "My" and "my whole being" refer to God. (Habakkuk 2:4)

##### shrinks back

stops doing the good thing he is doing

#### Hebrews 10:39

##### who turn back to destruction

"who stop trusting God, whom God will destroy"

##### who have faith and preserve their souls

"who have faith, which will result in our living with God forever"

## Chapter 1

#### James 1:1

##### James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ

"This letter is from James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ"

##### to the twelve tribes

"to God's faithful people"

##### in the dispersion

"who are scattered around the world"

#### James 1:2

##### Consider it all joy, my brothers, when you experience various troubles

"My fellow believers, think of all your different kinds of troubles as things to celebrate"

#### James 1:3

##### the testing of your faith produces endurance

"when you suffer hardships, God is finding out how much you trust him. As a result, you will become able to endure even more hardships"

#### James 1:4

##### Let endurance complete its work

"Learn to endure any hardship"

##### fully developed

able to trust in Christ and obey him in all circumstances

##### not lacking anything

"having all that you need"

#### James 1:5

##### ask for it from God, the one who gives generously and without rebuke to all

"ask God for it. He is the one who gives generously and does not rebuke any"

##### he will give it to him

"God will give it to him"

#### James 1:6

##### in faith, doubting nothing

"with complete certainty that God will answer"

##### For anyone who doubts is like a wave in the sea that is driven by the wind and tossed around

Anyone who doubts that God will help him is said to be like the water in the ocean or in a large lake, which keeps moving in different directions.

#### James 1:8

##### is a double-minded man, unstable

"cannot decide if he will follow Jesus or not and is unstable"

#### James 1:9

##### the lowly brother

"the believer whom other people consider unimportant"

##### boast of his high position

Someone whom God has honored is spoken of as if he were standing in a high place.

#### James 1:10

##### but the rich man of his low position

"but let the man who has lots of money boast of his low position"

#### James 1:11

##### its beauty perishes

"it is no longer beautiful"

##### the rich man will fade away in the middle of his journey

As flowers do not die suddenly but instead fade away over a short time, so also the rich people may not die suddenly but instead take a little time to disappear. He also has not given any thought to his coming death, and that it takes him by surprise.

#### James 1:12

##### Blessed is the man who endures testing

"The man who endures testing is fortunate"

##### endures testing

remains faithful to God during hardships

##### passed the test

he has been approved by God

##### receive the crown of life

"receive eternal life as his reward"

##### has been promised to those who love God

"God has promised to those who love him"

#### James 1:13

##### when he is tempted

"when he desires to do something evil"

##### I am tempted by God

"God is trying to make me do something evil"

##### God is not tempted by evil nor does he himself tempt anyone

"No one can make God desire to do evil and God himself does not try to persuade anyone to do evil"

#### James 1:14

##### each person is tempted by his own desire

A person's evil desire is spoken of as if it were someone else who was tempting him to sin and who could drag him away.

##### entices

attracts, persuades someone to do evil

#### James 1:15

##### Then after the desire conceives, it gives birth to sin, and ... is full grown, it gives birth to death

This is a picture of someone who ends up dying both spiritually and physically.

#### James 1:16

##### Do not be deceived

"Do not let anyone deceive you"

#### James 1:17

##### Every good gift and every perfect gift

James uses these phrases to emphasize that anything good that a person has comes from God.

##### the Father of lights

God, the creator of all the lights in the sky (sun, moon, and stars), is said to be their "Father."

##### With him there is no changing or shadow because of turning

"God always stays the same. He does not change like shifting shadows"

#### James 1:18

##### to give us

The word "us" refers to James and his audience.

##### give us birth

God, who brought us eternal life, is spoken of as if he had given us birth.

##### the word of truth

"the message about the truth" or "the true message."

##### so that we would be a kind of firstfruits

"so that we would be like an offering of firstfruits"

#### James 1:19

##### You know this

Possible meanings are 1) "Know this" is a command to pay attention to what I am about to write or 2) "You know this" is a statement saying that I am about to remind you of something that you already know.

##### Let every man be quick to hear, slow to speak

These sayings mean people should first listen intently, and then consider carefully what they say.

##### slow to anger

"not get angry quickly"

#### James 1:21

##### take off all sinful filth and abundant amounts of evil

"stop doing all filthy sins and stop doing every kind of sinful behavior"

##### sinful filth

Here "filth," that is, dirt, stands for sin and evil.

##### In humility

"Without pride"

##### receive the implanted word

"obey the message God has spoken to you"

##### save your souls

"save yourselves from God's judgment"

#### James 1:22

##### Be doers of the word

"Be people who follow God's instructions"

##### deceiving yourselves

"fooling yourselves"

#### James 1:23

##### For if anyone is a hearer of the word but not a doer

"For if anyone listens to God's message in the scriptures but does not obey the word"

##### he is like a man who examines his natural face in a mirror

A person who hears God's word is like someone who looks at his face in the mirror.

#### James 1:24

##### then goes away and immediately forgets what he was like

"then goes away and immediately forgets to do what he saw he needed to do"

#### James 1:25

##### the person who looks carefully into the perfect law

This expression continues the image of the law as a mirror.

##### the perfect law of freedom

"the perfect law that makes those who follow it free"

##### this man will be blessed in his actions

"God will bless this man as he obeys the law"

#### James 1:26

##### thinks he is religious

"thinks he worships God correctly"

##### his tongue

"what he says"

##### his heart

"himself"

##### his religion is worthless

"he worships God uselessly"

#### James 1:27

##### pure and unspoiled before our God and Father

"completely acceptable to our God and Father"

##### the fatherless

"the orphans"

##### in their affliction

The fatherless and widows are suffering because their fathers or husbands have died.

##### to keep oneself unstained by the world

"to not allow the evil in the world to cause oneself to sin"

## Chapter 2

#### James 2:1

##### My brothers

"My fellow believers" or "My brothers and sisters in Christ"

##### do not hold to faith in our Lord Jesus Christ ... with partiality toward certain people

"as you hold to faith in our Lord Jesus Christ ... do not show partiality toward certain people"

##### hold to faith in our Lord Jesus Christ

Believing in Jesus Christ is spoken of as if it were an object that one could hold onto.

##### partiality

the act of treating some people better than others

#### James 2:2

##### Suppose that someone enters your meeting

James describes a situation where the believers might give more honor to a rich person than to a poor person.

##### wearing gold rings and splendid clothes

"dressed like a wealthy person"

#### James 2:3

##### sit here in a good place

sit in this place of honor

##### stand over there

move to a place with less honor

##### Sit by my footstool

Move to a humble place

#### James 2:4

##### are you not judging among yourselves? Have you not become judges with evil thoughts?

"you are making judgments among yourselves and becoming judges with evil thoughts."

#### James 2:5

##### Listen, my beloved brothers

"Pay attention, my dear fellow believers"

##### did not God choose ... love him?

"God has chosen ... love him"

##### the poor

"poor people"

##### be rich in faith

"have strong faith in Christ"

##### heirs

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member.

#### James 2:6

##### But you have

James is speaking to his whole audience.

##### have dishonored the poor

"you have shamed poor people"

##### Is it not the rich who oppress you?

"It is rich people who treat you badly.”

##### Are they not the ones ... to court?

"The rich people are the ones who forcibly take you to court to accuse you in front of judges"

#### James 2:7

##### Do they not insult ... have been called?

"The rich people insult ... have been called."

##### the good name by which you have been called

"Christ, who called you" or "Christ, to whom you belong"

#### James 2:8

##### you fulfill

The word "you" refers to the Jewish believers.

##### fulfill the royal law

"obey God's law."

##### Love your neighbor as yourself

James is quoting from Leviticus 19:18.

##### your neighbor

"all people" or "everyone"

##### you do well

"you are doing well"

#### James 2:9

##### if you favor

"give special treatment to" or "give honor to"

##### committing sin

"sinning" That is, breaking the law.

##### you are convicted by the law as transgressors

"the law itself convicts you of transgressing it" or "you are guilty of breaking God's law"

#### James 2:10

##### For whoever obeys

"For anyone who obeys"

##### except that he stumbles ... the whole law

Disobeying one point of the law is spoken of as if it were stumbling while walking.

##### in just a single way

because of disobedience to just one requirement of the law.

#### James 2:11

##### For the one who said

This refers to God, who gave the law to Moses.

##### Do not commit

To "commit" is to do an action.

##### If you ... but if you ... you have

Here "you" means "each one of you."

#### James 2:12

##### So speak and act

"So you must speak and obey."

##### who will be judged by means of the law of freedom

"who know that God will judge them by means of the law that gives true freedom"

#### James 2:13

##### Mercy triumphs over

"Mercy defeats"

#### James 2:14

##### What profit is it, my brothers, if someone says he has faith, but he has no works?

"Fellow believers, if someone says he has faith but he has no works, that does him no good at all." or "Fellow believers, someone who has no works is no better if he says he has faith than someone who does not say he has faith."

##### he has faith, but he has no works ... that faith

"he believes in God but does not do anything as a result of his belief ... that belief"

##### Can that faith save him?

"Just saying he believes in God will not save him."

#### James 2:15

##### brother or sister

a fellow believer in Christ, whether male or female

#### James 2:16

##### stay warm

"have enough clothes to wear" or "have a place to sleep"

##### be filled

"have enough to eat"

##### for the body

to eat, to wear, and to live comfortably

##### what profit is that?

"how does that help them?" or "your speech by itself does not help them."

#### James 2:17

##### faith by itself, if it does not have works, is dead

"a person who says he believes in God but does not do anything as a result of his belief, does not really believe in God"

#### James 2:18

##### "You have faith, and I have works." Show me your faith without works, and I will show you my faith by my works

"'You believe in God, and I do good things.' Prove to me that you can believe in God without doing anything, and I will prove to you that I believe in God by what I do"

#### James 2:20

##### Do you want to know, foolish man, that faith without works is useless?

"Listen to me, foolish man, and I will show that faith without works is useless."

##### that faith without works is useless

"that saying that you believe in God without doing good things is useless"

#### James 2:21

##### Was not Abraham our father justified by works ... on the altar?

"Did not God justify Abraham our father because of what he did ... on the altar?" or "God certainly justified Abraham our father because of what he did ... on the altar."

##### father

"ancestor."

#### James 2:22

##### You see

"You understand"

##### that faith worked with his works, and that by works his faith was completed

"that because Abraham believed God, he did what God commanded him to do. And Abraham doing what God commanded showed that he truly believed"

#### James 2:23

##### The scripture was fulfilled

"This fulfilled the scripture". See Genesis 15:6.

##### it was counted to him as righteousness

"God regarded his faith as righteousness."

#### James 2:24

##### it is by works that a man is justified, and not only by faith

"God justifies a man because of what he does as a result of his belief, and not just because he believes in God"

#### James 2:25

##### In the same way also ... justified by works

James says that what was true of Abraham was also true of Rahab. Both were justified by works.

##### was not Rahab the prostitute justified by works ... another road?

"God justified Rahab the prostitute because of what she did ... another road."

##### messengers

people who bring news from another place

##### sent them away by another road

"then helped them escape and leave the city"

#### James 2:26

##### For as the body apart from the spirit is dead, even so faith apart from works is dead

"For just as the body is useless without the spirit, even so it is useless for a person to believe in God if he does not do anything as a result of his belief"

## Chapter 3

#### James 3:1

##### my brothers

"my fellow believers"

##### we who teach will be judged more strictly

"God will judge us who teach more severely."

##### we who teach

Here James includes himself and other teachers, but not the readers.

#### James 3:2

##### we all stumble

James speaks of himself, other teachers, and the readers, so the word "we" is inclusive.

##### does not stumble in words

"does not sin by saying wrong things"

##### he is a perfect man

"he is spiritually mature"

##### control even his whole body

"control all his behavior"

#### James 3:3

##### Now if we put bits into horses' mouths

A bit is a small piece of metal that is placed into a horse's mouth to control where it goes.

#### James 3:4

##### Notice also that ships ... are driven by strong winds, are steered by a very small rudder

A rudder or tool is a flat piece of wood or metal at the back of the ship, used to control where it goes.

##### are steered by a very small rudder to wherever the pilot desires

"have a small tool that a person can use to control where the ship goes"

#### James 3:5

##### the tongue is a small member

"the tongue is a small part of the body"

##### Notice also

"Think about"

##### how small a fire sets on fire a large forest

"how a small flame can start a fire that burns many trees"

#### James 3:6

##### The tongue is also a fire

"The tongue is like a fire"

##### a world of evil set among our members

The enormous effects of sinful speaking are spoken of as if they were a world by themselves.

##### our members

"the parts of our bodies"

##### The tongue defiles the whole body

"For God rejects a person who speaks evil words"

##### sets on fire the course of life

"it ruins a person's entire life"

##### life, and is itself set on fire by hell

"life because the devil uses it for evil"

#### James 3:7

##### For every kind of ... mankind

"People have learned to control many kinds of wild animals, birds, reptiles, and sea creatures"

##### reptile

This is an animal that crawls on the ground.

#### James 3:8

##### But no human being can tame the tongue

James speaks of the tongue as if it were a wild animal.

##### It is a restless evil, full of deadly poison

"It is like a restless and evil creature that can kill people with its venom"

#### James 3:9

##### With it we

"We use the tongue to say words that"

##### we curse men

"we ask God to harm men"

##### who have been made in God's likeness

"whom God made in his likeness"

#### James 3:10

##### Out of the same mouth come blessing and cursing

"With the same mouth, a person blesses people and curses people"

##### My brothers

"Fellow Christians"

##### these things should not happen

"these things are wrong"

#### James 3:11

##### Does a spring pour out from its opening both sweet and bitter water?

"You know that a spring does not pour out both sweet water and bitter water"

#### James 3:12

##### Does a fig tree, my brothers, make olives?

"Brothers, you know that a fig tree cannot grow olives."

##### Or a grapevine, figs?

"Or does a grapevine make figs?"

#### James 3:13

##### Who is wise and understanding among you?

"I will tell you how a wise and understanding person is to act."

##### Let that person show a good life by his works in the humility of wisdom

"That person should live a good life by doing the kind of deeds that come from being humble and wise"

#### James 3:14

##### if you have bitter jealousy and ambition in your heart

"if you are jealous and selfish"

##### do not boast and lie against the truth

"do not boast that you are wise, because that is not true"

#### James 3:15

##### This is not the wisdom that comes down from above

"This is not the kind of wisdom that God teaches us from heaven"

##### This is not the wisdom that comes down from above. Rather, it is earthly, unspiritual, demonic

"Whoever acts like this is not honoring to what God in heaven teaches us. Rather, this person is earthly, not spiritual, and from demons"

#### James 3:16

##### For where there are jealousy and ambition, there is confusion and every evil practice

"For when people are jealous and selfish, this causes them to act in disorderly and evil ways"

##### there is confusion

"there is disorder" or "there is chaos"

##### every evil practice

"every kind of sinful behavior"

#### James 3:17

##### But the wisdom from above is first pure

"But when a person is wise according to what God in heaven teaches, he acts in ways that are first holy"

##### full of mercy and good fruits

"full of mercy and good deeds"

##### and sincere

"and honest" or "and truthful"

#### James 3:18

##### The fruit of righteousness is sown in peace among those who make peace

"The result of making peace is righteousness"

##### make peace

"cause people to live peacefully"

## Chapter 4

#### James 4:1

##### Where do quarrels and disputes among you come from?

"Why do you quarrel and dispute among yourselves?"

##### Do they not come from your desires that fight among your members?

"Do they not come because of the conflict you feel within you because of your different desires" or "You quarrel and argue because of the tension caused by your different desires"

#### James 4:2

##### You murder and covet, and you are not able to obtain

"You do all kinds of evil things to get what you cannot have"

##### You fight and quarrel

"You constantly fight"

#### James 4:3

##### you ask wrongly

"you ask with wrong motives" or "you ask with bad attitudes"

#### James 4:4

##### You adulteresses!

"You are not being faithful to God!"

##### Do you not know ... God?

"You know ... God!"

##### friendship with the world

Here the world's value system is spoken of as if it were a person that others could be friends with.

##### friendship with the world is hostility against God

"friends of the world are enemies of God"

#### James 4:5

##### Or do you think the scripture says in vain ... envious"?

"There is a reason that scripture says ... envious".

##### The Spirit he caused to live in us

Some versions understand this as a reference to the Holy Spirit.

#### James 4:6

##### But God gives more grace

"But, even though our spirits may desire what we cannot have, God gives us even more grace if we will humble ourselves"

##### so the scripture

"that is why the scripture"

##### the proud

"proud people"

##### the humble

"humble people"

#### James 4:7

##### So submit

"Because God gives grace to the humble, so obey"

##### Resist the devil

"Oppose the devil"

##### he will flee

"he will run away"

##### you

Here this pronoun is plural and refers to James's audience.

#### James 4:8

##### Come close to God

Here the idea of coming close stands for becoming honest and open with God.

##### Cleanse your hands

"Behave in a way that honors God"

##### purify your hearts

"make your thoughts and intentions right"

##### you double-minded people

"you people who cannot decide if you want to obey God or not"

#### James 4:9

##### Grieve, mourn, and cry

James uses these words together to emphasize that the people should be truly sorry for not obeying God.

##### Let your laughter turn into mourning and your joy into gloom

"Stop laughing and mourn. Stop being joyful and be gloomy"

#### James 4:10

##### Humble yourselves before the Lord

"Be humble toward God."

##### he will exalt you

"he will honor you"

#### James 4:11

##### brothers

"fellow believers"

##### but a judge

"but you are acting like the person who gives the law"

#### James 4:12

##### Only one is the lawgiver and judge

"God is the only one who gives laws and judges people"

##### Who are you, you who judge your neighbor?

"You are just a human and cannot judge another human."

#### James 4:13

##### spend a year there

"stay there for a year"

#### James 4:14

##### Who knows what will happen tomorrow, and what is your life?

"No one knows what will happen tomorrow, and your life does not last very long!"

##### For you are a mist that appears for a little while and then disappears

"You live for only a short amount of time, and then you die"

#### James 4:15

##### Instead, you should say

"Instead, your attitude should be"

##### we will live and do this or that

"we will live long enough to do what we have planned to do." This "we" does not directly refer to James or his audience but is part of the example of how James's audience should consider the future.

#### James 4:17

##### for anyone who knows to do good but does not do it, for him it is sin

Anyone who fails to do the good he knows he should do is guilty of sin.

## Chapter 5

#### James 5:1

##### you who are rich

"you who are rich and say you honor God"

##### because of the miseries coming on you

"because you will suffer terribly in the future"

#### James 5:2

##### Your riches have rotted, and your clothes have become moth-eaten.

"Your riches will rot, and your clothes will be eaten by moths"

#### James 5:3

##### Your gold and your silver have become tarnished

"Your gold and silver will become tarnished"

##### have become tarnished ... their rust

"are ruined ... their ruined condition"

##### their rust will be a witness against you. It

"and when God judges you, your ruined treasures will be like someone who accuses you in court. Their corrosion"

##### will consume your flesh like fire

Here "flesh" stands for the physical body and corrosion is spoken of as if it were a fire that will burn up their owners. The idea of fire is meant to lead people to remember that fire often stands for God's punishment that will come on all the wicked.

##### for the last days

"for when God is about to judge you"

#### James 5:4

##### the wages you kept back from the laborers who mowed your fields is crying out against you

"God can see that you kept back the wages you should have given to those who mowed your fields"

##### The cries of the harvesters have reached the ears of the Lord of hosts

"The Lord of hosts has heard the cries of the harvesters"

##### the ears of the Lord of hosts

God is spoken of as if he had ears as humans have.

#### James 5:5

##### You have fattened your hearts for a day of slaughter

"Your greed has only prepared your entire person for harsh eternal judgment"

#### James 5:6

##### You have condemned ... the righteous person

This is probably not "condemned" in the legal sense of a judge passing a sentence of death on a criminal. Instead, it probably refers to the wicked and powerful people who decide to mistreat the poor until they die.

##### the righteous person. He does not

"righteous people. They do not"

#### James 5:7

##### Be patient, then

"Because of this, wait and be calm"

##### until the Lord's coming

"until Christ's return"

##### the farmer

James makes an analogy using farmers and believers to teach what it means to be patient.

#### James 5:8

##### Strengthen your hearts

"Keep your faith strong"

##### the Lord's coming is near

"the Lord will return soon"

#### James 5:9

##### Do not complain, brothers ... you

James is writing to all the scattered Jewish believers.

##### against one another

"about each other"

##### you will not be condemned

"Christ will not condemn you"

##### See, the judge is standing at the door

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: the judge is coming soon"

#### James 5:10

##### the suffering and patience of the prophets, those who spoke in the name of the Lord

"how the prophets who spoke in the name of the Lord suffered persecution with patience"

##### spoke in the name of the Lord

"spoke by the authority of the Lord"

#### James 5:11

##### See, we regard

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: we regard"

##### those who endured

"those who continued obeying God even through hardship"

#### James 5:12

##### Above all, my brothers,

"This is important, my fellow believers"

##### do not swear

"do not make an oath" or "do not make a vow"

##### either by heaven or by the earth

The words "heaven" and "earth" refer to the spiritual or human authorities that are in heaven and earth.

##### let your "Yes" mean "Yes" and your "No" mean "No,"

"If you say "Yes" or "No," say it truthfully"

##### so you do not fall under judgment

"so God will not punish you"

#### James 5:13

##### Is anyone among you suffering hardship? Let him pray

"If anyone is enduring troubles, he should pray"

##### Is anyone cheerful? Let him sing praise

"If anyone is happy, he should sing songs of praise"

#### James 5:14

##### Is anyone among you sick? Let him call

"If anyone is sick, he should call"

##### in the name of the Lord

"by the authority of the Lord" or "with the authority that the Lord has given them"

#### James 5:15

##### The prayer of faith will heal the sick person

"The Lord will hear the prayer of faith and will heal the sick person"

##### The prayer of faith

"The prayer made by believers" or "The prayer that people pray believing God will do as they ask"

##### the Lord will raise him up

"the Lord will make him well"

#### James 5:16

##### So confess your sins to one another

Admit to each other things you did wrong so that you can be forgiven.

##### so that you may be healed

"so that God may heal you"

##### The prayer of a righteous person is very strong in its working

"When the person who obeys God prays, God will do great things"

#### James 5:17

##### prayed earnestly

"prayed passionately"

##### in the land

There may have been rain in lands other than Israel, but it did not rain in Israel.

#### James 5:18

##### The heavens gave rain

"Rain fell from the sky"

##### the earth produced its fruit

Here the earth is presented as the source of the crops.

##### fruit

This stands for all the crops of the farmers.

#### James 5:19

##### if anyone among you strays from the truth, and someone brings him back

"whenever anyone stops obeying God, and another person helps him start obeying again"

#### James 5:20

##### whoever turns a sinner from the error of his way ... will cover over a great number of sins

James means that God will use the actions of this person to persuade the sinner to repent and be saved.

##### will save him from death and will cover over a great number of sins

"will save him from spiritual death, and God will forgive the sinner for all of his sins"

##### will cover over a great number of sins

Possible meaning: the disobedient brother, when he returns to the Lord, will have his sins forgiven. Sins are spoken of as if they were objects that God could cover so that he would not see them.

## Chapter 1

#### 1 Peter 1:1

##### the foreigners of the dispersion

Peter speaks of his readers as people who live away from their homes in many different countries.

##### Cappadocia ... Bithynia

"Cappadocia" and "Bithynia" were Roman provinces located in what is now the country of Turkey.

##### the chosen ones

"the ones whom God the Father has chosen"

#### 1 Peter 1:2

##### the foreknowledge of God the Father

"what God the Father decided previously" or "what God the Father knew beforehand". This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### for the sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ

Here "the blood" refers to the death of Jesus. Just as Moses sprinkled blood on the people of Israel to symbolize their covenant with God, believers are in covenant with God because of Jesus's death.

##### May grace be to you, and may your peace increase

This passage speaks of grace as if it were an object that believers could possess, and of peace as if it were something that could increase in amount. Grace is in reality the kind way God acts toward believers, and peace is how believers live in safety and joy with God.

#### 1 Peter 1:3

##### he has given us new birth to a living hope

"he has caused us to to be born again, having an enduring, confident hope"

#### 1 Peter 1:4

##### This is for an inheritance

"We confidently expect to receive an inheritance"

##### will not perish, will not become stained, and will not fade away

Peter uses three similar phrases to describe the inheritance as something that is perfect and eternal.

##### It is reserved in heaven for you

"God is reserving it in heaven for you"

#### 1 Peter 1:5

##### You are protected by God's power

"God is protecting you"

##### through faith

"because of your faith"

##### that is ready to be revealed

"that God is ready to reveal"

##### in the last time

This particular time is as the world as we know it is ending, before the age to come begins.

#### 1 Peter 1:6

##### In this you greatly rejoice

The word "this" refers to all the blessings that Peter mentions in the previous verses.

#### 1 Peter 1:7

##### This is for the proving of your faith

In the same way in which fire refines gold, hardships test how well believers trust in Christ. God wishes to test how well believers trust in Christ.

##### faith, which is more precious than gold that perishes, even though it is tested by fire

Faith is more valuable than gold, because gold does not last forever, even if it is refined in fire.

##### your faith will be found to result in praise, glory, and honor

"God will honor you very highly" or "your faith will bring praise, glory, and honor"

##### at the revealing of Jesus Christ

"when Jesus Christ appears to all people"

#### 1 Peter 1:8

##### joy that is inexpressible and filled with glory

"wonderful joy that words cannot describe"

#### 1 Peter 1:9

##### the salvation of your souls

"God saving you"

#### 1 Peter 1:10

##### searched diligently and examined carefully

"carefully searched to know all about this salvation" or "carefully examined everything about this salvation"

#### 1 Peter 1:11

##### inquiring into

"trying to learn" or "trying to make known"

##### the Spirit of Christ

This is a reference to the Holy Spirit.

#### 1 Peter 1:12

##### It was revealed to them

"God revealed to the prophets"

##### into which angels long to look

"that angels want to understand"

#### 1 Peter 1:13

##### So gird

"Because of this, gird."

##### gird up the loins of your mind

"get your minds ready"

##### Be sober

"Control your thoughts" or "Be careful about what you think"

##### Put your hope fully on the grace that will be brought to you

"Fully trust in the grace that God will bring to you"

##### the grace that will be brought to you

"the good things that God will kindly give to you"

##### when Jesus Christ is revealed

"when Jesus Christ appears to all people"

#### 1 Peter 1:14

##### do not conform yourselves to the desires

"do not desire the same things" or "do not live to gratify the desires"

#### 1 Peter 1:16

##### For it is written

"For as God said"

##### Be holy, because I am holy

Here the word "I" refers to God.

#### 1 Peter 1:17

##### conduct yourselves in fear during your time here as foreigners.

"be reverent while you are living your life on earth”

#### 1 Peter 1:18

##### you have been redeemed

"God has redeemed you"

#### 1 Peter 1:19

##### like that of a lamb without blemish or spot

"like the blood of the spotless lambs that the Jewish priests sacrificed"

##### without blemish or spot

"with no imperfections"

#### 1 Peter 1:20

##### Christ was foreknown

"God knew Christ" or "God chose Christ"

##### before the foundation of the world

"before God created the world"

##### he has been revealed to you

"God has revealed him to you"

##### he has been revealed to you

Peter does not mean that his readers have actually seen Christ, but that they have learned the truth about him.

#### 1 Peter 1:21

##### who raised him from the dead

"who caused him to live again so that he was no longer among the dead"

##### and gave him glory

"and glorified him" or "and showed that he is glorious"

##### your faith and hope are in God

"you believe in God and trust him"

#### 1 Peter 1:22

##### You made your souls pure

"You made yourselves acceptable to God"

##### brotherly love

This refers to love between fellow believers.

##### love one another earnestly from a pure heart

"love one another earnestly and completely"

#### 1 Peter 1:23

##### born again, not from perishable seed, but from imperishable seed

Possible meanings are that Peter speaks of the word of God either 1) as the seed of a plant that that will not rot or dry up but grows and produces new life in believers or 2) as the tiny cells inside a man or woman that combine to cause a baby to grow inside the woman.

##### through the living and remaining word of God

Peter speaks of God's word as if it were alive forever. In reality, it is God who lives forever, and whose instructions and promises last eternally.

#### 1 Peter 1:24

##### General Information:

In these verses Peter quotes from the prophet Isaiah (Isaiah 40:6) relating to what he has just said about them being born of imperishable seed.

##### All flesh is like grass, and all its

"All people will die like grass dies, and all their"

##### glory is like the wild flower of the grass

"goodness soon stops, just as flowers soon die"

#### 1 Peter 1:25

##### the word of the Lord

"the message that comes from the Lord"

##### the gospel that was preached

"the gospel that we preached"

## Chapter 2

#### 1 Peter 2:1

##### Therefore put aside all evil, all deceit, hypocrisy, envy, and all slander

"So then, stop being evil, deceptive, hypocritical, envious, and slanderous"

#### 1 Peter 2:2

##### As newborn infants, long for pure spiritual milk

"Just as babies long for their mother's breast milk, so you must yearn for pure spiritual milk"

##### long for

"desire intensely" or "yearn for"

##### you may grow in salvation

"you may grow up spiritually until God saves you completely"

#### 1 Peter 2:3

##### if you have tasted that the Lord is kind

"if you have experienced the Lord's kindness toward you"

#### 1 Peter 2:4

##### Come to him who is a living stone

"Come to him who is like a stone in a building, but alive, not a dead stone"

##### that has been rejected by people

"that people have rejected"

##### but that has been chosen by God

"but that God has chosen"

#### 1 Peter 2:5

##### You also are like living stones

Peter compares his readers to stones that are alive.

##### that are being built up to be a spiritual house

"that God is building into a spiritual house"

##### a holy priesthood that offers the spiritual sacrifices

Here the position of priesthood stands for the priests who fulfill the duties of the Old Testament priesthood.

#### 1 Peter 2:6

##### Scripture contains this

"This is what a prophet wrote in the scriptures long ago". See Isaiah 28:16.

##### See

The word "see" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### a cornerstone, chosen and valuable

"a most important cornerstone, which I have chosen"

##### a cornerstone

The prophet speaks of the Messiah as the most important stone in a building.

#### 1 Peter 2:7

##### The value, then, is to you who believe

"only you who believe know the value of this cornerstone"

##### The stone that was rejected by the builders

"The stone that the builders rejected". See Psalm 118:22.

#### 1 Peter 2:8

##### A stone of stumbling and a rock that makes them fall

"a stone or a rock over which people will stumble". See Isaiah 8:14.

##### stumble because they disobey the word

"stumble because they do not believe the message about Jesus"

##### which is what they were appointed to do

"for which God also appointed them"

#### 1 Peter 2:9

##### a chosen people

"a people whom God has chosen"

##### a royal priesthood

"a group of priests who serve the king".

##### a people for God's possession

"a people who belong to God"

##### who called you out

"who called you to come out"

##### from darkness into his marvelous light

"from a life of sin and ignorance of God to a life of knowing and pleasing him".

#### 1 Peter 2:10

##### General Information:

Here Peter quotes a verse from the prophet Hosea (Hosea 1:10). Some modern versions do not format this as a quote, which is also acceptable.

#### 1 Peter 2:11

##### foreigners and exiles

Peter speaks of his readers as people who are living in foreign lands away from their home. See how you translated "foreigners" in 1 Peter 1:1.

##### to abstain from fleshly desires

"to not to give in to sinful desires"

##### fight against your soul

"seek to destroy your spiritual life"

#### 1 Peter 2:12

##### Your conduct among the Gentiles should be honorable

"When you are with the Gentiles, you should always act in an honorable way"

##### they may be eyewitnesses of your good deeds

"they may be eyewitnesses of the good things that you do"

##### on the day when he appears

"on the day when he comes." or "when he comes to judge everyone"

#### 1 Peter 2:13

##### every human authority

"every person who is in authority"

##### for the Lord's sake

Possible meanings are 1) that by obeying human authorities, they are obeying the Lord who established those authorities or 2) that by obeying human authorities, they will honor Jesus who also obeyed human authorities.

##### the king as supreme

"the king as the highest human authority"

#### 1 Peter 2:14

##### who are sent for the punishment

"whom the king has sent to punish"

#### 1 Peter 2:15

##### in doing good you silence the ignorant talk of foolish people

"by doing good you stop foolish people from speaking about things that they do not know"

#### 1 Peter 2:16

##### as a covering for wickedness

"as an excuse to do wicked things"

#### 1 Peter 2:18

##### the good and gentle masters

"the very kind masters"

##### the malicious ones

"the cruel ones" or "the mean ones"

#### 1 Peter 2:19

##### it is praiseworthy

"it is pleasing to God"

##### because he is conscious of God, a person endures sorrows while suffering unjustly

This person accepts unjust suffering because he knows that he is obeying God.

#### 1 Peter 2:20

##### For how much credit is there ... while being afflicted?

"For there is no credit ... while being afflicted."

##### while being afflicted

"while someone punishes you"

#### 1 Peter 2:21

##### it is to this that you were called

"God has called you to this"

##### for you to follow in his steps

"so that you would imitate his behavior"

#### 1 Peter 2:22

##### neither was any deceit found in his mouth

"neither did he speak any lies" or "neither did anyone find deceit in his mouth"

#### 1 Peter 2:23

##### When he was insulted, he gave no insult in return

"When people insulted him, he did not insult them back"

##### he gave himself over to the one who judges justly

"he entrusted himself to the one who judges justly." This means that he trusted God to take away his shame, which had been put on him by those who treated him harshly.

#### 1 Peter 2:24

##### He himself

This refers to Jesus, with emphasis.

##### carried our sins in his body on the tree

"suffered the punishment for our sins in his body on the cross"

##### By his bruises you have been healed

"God has healed you because people bruised him"

#### 1 Peter 2:25

##### you had been straying like lost sheep

Peter compares his readers' actions before they had believed in Christ to the way lost sheep wander away from their shepherd.

##### the shepherd ... of your souls

"your shepherd..."

## Chapter 3

#### 1 Peter 3:1

##### In the same way, you who are wives should submit to your own husbands

Just as believers are to "Obey every human authority" (1 Peter 2:13) and servants are to "be subject" to their masters (1 Peter 2:18), wives are to submit to their husbands. The words "Obey," "be subject," and "submit" translate the same word.

##### some men are disobedient to the word

"some men do not believe the message about Jesus"

##### they may be won

"they may become believers"

##### without a word

"without the wife saying a word about Jesus"

#### 1 Peter 3:2

##### having been eyewitnesses of your respectful, pure behavior

"having seen for themselves that you behave sincerely and respectfully" or "your pure behavior toward them and the way that you honor God"

#### 1 Peter 3:3

##### your adornment

"the things that make you beautiful"

#### 1 Peter 3:4

##### the inner person of the heart

"what you really are on the inside"

##### a gentle and quiet spirit

"a gentle and peaceful attitude."

##### which is precious before God

"which God considers to be precious"

#### 1 Peter 3:5

##### who hoped in God

"who fully trusted God"

#### 1 Peter 3:6

##### called him her lord

said that he was her lord, that is, her master

##### You are now her children

Peter says that believing women who act as Sarah acted can be thought of as if they were her actual children.

#### 1 Peter 3:7

##### In the same way

This refers back to how Sarah and other godly women obeyed their husbands in 1 Peter 3:5 and 6.

##### wives according to understanding, as with a weaker container, a woman

"wives, understanding that the woman is the weaker partner”

##### give them honor as fellow heirs of the grace of life

"honor them because they will also receive by grace the eternal life that God gives"

##### Do this

"Live with your wives in this way"

##### so that your prayers will not be hindered

"so that nothing will hinder your prayers"

#### 1 Peter 3:8

##### be likeminded, compassionate

"have the same attitude and be compassionate"

##### tenderhearted

being gentle and compassionate towards others

#### 1 Peter 3:9

##### Do not pay back evil for evil or insult for insult

"Do not do evil to someone who does evil to you or insult someone who insults you"

##### continue to bless

"continue to bless those who do evil to you or insult you"

##### for this you were called

"God called you for this"

##### that you might inherit a blessing

"that you might receive God's blessing as your permanent possession"

#### 1 Peter 3:10

##### General Information:

In these verses Peter quotes from Psalm 34:12-16.

##### to love life and see good days

"experience good things during life"

##### stop his tongue from evil and his lips from speaking deceit

"stop himself from saying evil and deceitful things"

#### 1 Peter 3:11

##### Let him turn away from what is bad

"Let him stop doing what is bad"

#### 1 Peter 3:12

##### The eyes of the Lord see the righteous

"The Lord sees the righteous" or "The Lord approves of the righteous"

##### his ears hear their prayers

"he hears their prayers" or "he grants their prayers"

##### the face of the Lord is against

"the Lord opposes"

#### 1 Peter 3:13

##### Who is the one who will harm you if you are eager to do what is good?

"No one will harm you if you do good things"

#### 1 Peter 3:14

##### suffer because of righteousness

"suffer because you do what is right"

##### you are blessed

"God will bless you"

##### Do not fear their threats. Do not be troubled

"Do not be afraid of what people might do to you"

##### their threats

Here the word "their" refers to anyone who might try to harm those to whom Peter is writing.

#### 1 Peter 3:15

##### Instead, set apart

"Instead of being troubled, set apart"

##### set apart the Lord Christ in your hearts as holy

"acknowledge within yourselves that the Lord Christ is holy" or "honor the Lord Christ as holy within yourselves"

##### about the hope you have

"about what you are confidently expecting God to do for you"

#### 1 Peter 3:16

##### however, with meekness and respect

"but do this with gentleness and respect"

#### 1 Peter 3:17

##### if it should be God's will

Peter is saying that it is sometimes God's will that his people suffer, but it is not always God's will.

#### 1 Peter 3:18

##### suffered for us

The word "us" includes the people Peter was writing to; as he explains how Christ suffered and what Christ accomplished by suffering.

##### so that he would bring us to God

Peter probably means here that Christ died in order to create a close relationship between us and God.

##### He was put to death in the flesh

"People put Christ to death physically"

##### he was made alive by the Spirit

"the Spirit made him alive"

#### 1 Peter 3:19

##### By the Spirit, he went

"By the Holy Spirit's power, he went"

##### the spirits who are now in prison

"spirits of the dead people"

#### 1 Peter 3:20

##### when the patience of God was waiting

"when God was waiting patiently"

##### in the days of Noah, in the days of the building of an ark

"during the time of Noah, when he was building an ark"

#### 1 Peter 3:21

##### through the resurrection of Jesus Christ

"because of the resurrection of Jesus Christ." This phrase completes the thought, "This is a symbol of the baptism that saves you now."

#### 1 Peter 3:22

##### Christ is at the right hand of God

"Christ is beside God in the place of honor and authority"

##### submit to him

"submit to Jesus Christ"

## Chapter 4

#### 1 Peter 4:1

##### in the flesh

"in his body"

##### arm yourselves with the same intention

"prepare yourselves with the same thoughts that Christ had"

##### has ceased from sin

"has stopped sinning"

#### 1 Peter 4:2

##### for men's desires

for the things that sinful people normally desire

#### 1 Peter 4:3

##### the time that has passed is enough for you to do the desire of the Gentiles

"you have been doing for too long the things that the Gentiles like to do"

##### drunken celebrations, having wild parties

These terms refer to activities in which people gather to drink too much alcohol and behave in a shameful manner.

#### 1 Peter 4:4

##### floods of reckless behavior

These examples of wild, boundless sin are spoken of as if they were great floods of water that sweep over people.

##### reckless behavior

doing everything they can to satisfy the desires of their bodies

#### 1 Peter 4:5

##### the one who is ready to judge

"Christ, who is ready to judge" or "God, who is ready to judge”

##### the living and the dead

"every person"

#### 1 Peter 4:6

##### the gospel was preached also to the dead

"the gospel was preached by Christ also to people who had already died" or "men preached the gospel also to those who were alive but are now dead"

##### they have been judged in the flesh as humans

"God judged them in their bodies as humans" or "men judged them in their bodies as humans"

##### judged in the flesh as humans

This is a reference to death as the ultimate form of judgment.

##### live in the spirit the way God does

"live spiritually as God lives because the Holy Spirit will enable them to do so" or "live according to God's standards by the power of the Holy Spirit"

#### 1 Peter 4:7

##### The end of all things is coming

"will soon happen"

##### be of sound mind, and be sober in your thinking

Peter uses these two phrases to emphasize the need to think clearly about life since the end of the world is near.

##### be sober in your thinking

"control your thoughts"

#### 1 Peter 4:8

##### Above all things

"Most importantly of all"

##### for love covers a multitude of sins

"for a person who loves will not try to find out if another person has sinned" or "for a person who loves will forgive the sins of other people, even if those sins are many"

#### 1 Peter 4:9

##### Be hospitable

Show kindness to and welcome guests and travelers.

#### 1 Peter 4:10

##### As each one of you has received a gift

"Because each one of you has received a special spiritual ability as a gift from God"

#### 1 Peter 4:11

##### so that in all ways God would be glorified

"so that in all ways you will praise and honor God"

#### 1 Peter 4:12

##### do not regard as strange the testing

"do not be surprised by the testing"

##### the testing in the fire that has come upon you

"the difficult trial that you are experiencing" or "your troubles that are like a test by fire"

#### 1 Peter 4:14

##### If you are insulted for Christ's name,

"If people insulted you because you believe in Christ"

##### the Spirit of glory and of God

"the Spirit of glory, who is the Spirit of God," or "the glorious Spirit of God"

##### rests on you

"is with you" or "lives with you"

#### 1 Peter 4:15

##### a meddler

This refers to a person who gets involved with the affairs of others without having a right to do so.

#### 1 Peter 4:16

##### with that name

"because he bears the name Christian" or "because people have recognized him as a Christian"

#### 1 Peter 4:17

##### household of God

This phrase refers to believers, whom Peter speaks of as God's family.

##### If it begins with us, what will be the outcome for those who disobey God's gospel?

"If it begins with us, what will happen to those who do not obey God's gospel will be much worse."

##### those who disobey God's gospel

"those who do not believe God's gospel."

#### 1 Peter 4:18

##### the righteous ... what will become of the ungodly and the sinner?

"the righteous man ... the outcome will be much worse for the ungodly and the sinner."

##### If it is difficult for the righteous to be saved

"If the righteous person experiences many difficulties before God saves him"

##### what will become of the ungodly and the sinner

"what will happen to the ungodly and the sinner"

##### the ungodly and the sinner

"ungodly sinners"

#### 1 Peter 4:19

##### commit their souls

"commit themselves" or "commit their lives"

##### in well-doing

"while they live rightly"

## Chapter 5

#### 1 Peter 5:1

##### the glory that will be revealed

"the glory of Christ that God will reveal"

#### 1 Peter 5:2

##### Be shepherds of God's flock

Peter speaks of the believers as a flock of sheep and the elders as the shepherds who care for them.

#### 1 Peter 5:3

##### Do not act as lords over those allotted to you. Instead, be examples

Elders are to lead by example and not act toward the people as a harsh master would toward his servants.

##### those allotted to you

"those whom God has placed in your care"

#### 1 Peter 5:4

##### Then when the Chief Shepherd is revealed

"When Jesus, the Chief Shepherd, appears" or "When God reveals Jesus, the Chief Shepherd"

##### an unfading crown of glory

"a glorious prize that will last forever"

#### 1 Peter 5:5

##### In the same way

This refers back to the way the elders were to submit to the Chief Shepherd as Peter described in 1 Peter 5:1 to 4.

##### All of you

This refers to all believers, not just the younger men.

##### clothe yourselves with humility

"act humbly toward each other" or "act with humility"

#### 1 Peter 5:6

##### under God's mighty hand so

"under God's great power so" or "before God, realizing that he has great power, so"

#### 1 Peter 5:7

##### Cast all your anxiety on him

"Trust him with everything that worries you"

#### 1 Peter 5:8

##### Be sober

"Control your thoughts"

##### the devil is walking around like a roaring lion, looking for someone to devour

Peter teaches his readers that Satan can harm their bodies, but if they trust in God and obey him, they will always be God's people, and God will care for them. If your language has a word for the way an animal walks when it is hunting, you may use it here.

#### 1 Peter 5:9

##### Stand against him

"Fight against him"

##### your brotherhood in the world is enduring

"your fellow believers who are in the world are enduring"

##### in the world

"in various places throughout the world"

#### 1 Peter 5:10

##### for a little while

"for a short time"

##### the God of all grace

"the God who always gives us what we need" or "the God who is always gracious".

##### who called you to his eternal glory in Christ

"who chose you to share his eternal glory in heaven because you are joined to Christ"

##### perfect you

"make you perfect" or "restore you" or "make you well again"

##### confirm you, strengthen you

God will enable the believers to trust in him and to obey him regardless of any suffering they may experience.

#### 1 Peter 5:12

##### I have written to you briefly through him

Silvanus wrote the words that Peter told him to write in the letter.

##### what I have written is the true grace of God

"I have written about the true grace of God." Here the word "grace" refers to the gospel message.

##### Stand in it

"Remain strongly committed to it"

#### 1 Peter 5:13

##### The woman who is in Babylon

Here "The woman" probably refers to the group of believers who live in "Babylon." Possible meanings for "Babylon" are 1) it is a symbol for the city of Rome, 2) it is a symbol for anywhere that Christians are suffering, or 3) it refers literally to the city of Babylon. It most likely refers to the city of Rome because the Romans were persecuting the Christians.

##### who is chosen together with you

"whom God has chosen as he has chosen you"

##### my son

"my spiritual son"

#### 1 Peter 5:14

##### a kiss of love

"a kiss to show your love for each other"

## Chapter 1

#### 2 Peter 1:1

##### slave and apostle of Jesus Christ

Peter speaks of being Jesus Christ's servant. He also was given the position and authority of being Christ's apostle.

##### to those who have received the same precious faith

"to the believers to whom God has given the same precious faith"

##### we have received

"we apostles have received"

#### 2 Peter 1:2

##### May grace and peace increase in measure

"May God increase your grace and your peace"

##### in the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord

"through your knowing God and Jesus our Lord"

#### 2 Peter 1:3

##### for life and godliness

"for a godly life"

##### through the knowledge of him who called us

"through our knowledge of God, who called us"

##### through his own glory and excellence

"by showing us his own glory and greatness" or "to share his own glory and excellence"

#### 2 Peter 1:4

##### Through these

Here "these" refer to "his own glory and virtue."

##### you might be sharers

"you might share"

##### the divine nature

what God is like

##### having escaped the corruption in the world that is caused by evil desires

"and so that the wicked desires in this world will no longer corrupt you"

#### 2 Peter 1:5

##### For this reason

"Because of what God has done"

#### 2 Peter 1:7

##### brotherly love

Love for a friend or family member and it likely includes love for one's spiritual family.

#### 2 Peter 1:8

##### these things

This refers to faith, virtue, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love, which Peter mentioned in the previous verses.

##### they will keep you from being barren or unfruitful

"because you have them you will not be barren or unproductive" or "they will enable you to do much valuable work"

##### in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ

"through your knowing God and Jesus our Lord"

#### 2 Peter 1:9

##### whoever lacks these things

any person who does not have these things

##### is so nearsighted that he is blind

"is like a shortsighted person who cannot see their importance"

##### he has been cleansed from his past sins

"that God has cleansed him from his old sins"

#### 2 Peter 1:10

##### make your calling and election sure

"make sure that God has really chosen you to belong to him"

##### you will not stumble

"you will not practice sinful behavior" or "you will not become unfaithful to Christ"

#### 2 Peter 1:11

##### there will be richly provided for you an entrance into the eternal kingdom

"God will richly provide for you the opportunity to enter into the eternal kingdom"

#### 2 Peter 1:12

##### you are strong in the truth

"you strongly believe the truth of these things"

#### 2 Peter 1:13

##### to stir you up by way of reminder

"to remind you of these things so that you will think about them"

##### as long as I am in this tent

"as long as I am in this body"

#### 2 Peter 1:15

##### after my departure

"after my death"

#### 2 Peter 1:16

##### For we did not follow cleverly invented myths

"For we apostles did not follow cleverly made-up stories"

##### the power and the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ

"the powerful coming". Possible meanings are: the future second coming of the Lord Jesus or the first coming of the Lord Jesus.

#### 2 Peter 1:17

##### when a voice was brought to him by the Majestic Glory

"when he heard a voice come from the Majestic Glory" or "God, the Supreme Glory, saying"

#### 2 Peter 1:18

##### We ourselves heard this voice brought from heaven

"We ourselves heard this voice that came from heaven" or "We ourselves heard the voice of the one who spoke from heaven" Peter is referring to himself and to the disciples James and John, who heard the voice of God.

##### we were with him

"we were with Jesus"

#### 2 Peter 1:19

##### For we have the prophetic word made more certain

"For the things that we saw make this prophetic message more sure" or "the scriptures, which the prophets spoke, made". This refers to the Old Testament.

##### to which you would do well to pay attention

Peter instructs the believers to pay close attention to the prophetic message.

##### as to a lamp shining in a dark place until the day dawns

Peter compares the prophetic word to a lamp that gives light in the dark until light comes in the morning. The coming of morning is a reference to Christ's coming.

##### the morning star rises in your hearts

"Christ shines his light into your hearts like the morning star shines its light into the world"

#### 2 Peter 1:20

##### Above all, you must understand

"Most importantly, you must understand"

##### no prophecy of scripture comes from someone's own interpretation

Possible meanings are 1) the prophets did not make their prophecies on their own or 2) people must rely on the Holy Spirit to understand and interpret the prophecies.

#### 2 Peter 1:21

##### men spoke from God when they were carried along by the Holy Spirit

"men spoke from God as the Holy Spirit directed them"

## Chapter 2

#### 2 Peter 2:1

##### False prophets came to the people, and false teachers will also come to you

Just as false prophets came deceiving Israel with their words, so will false teachers come teaching lies about Christ.

##### destructive heresies

The word "heresies" refers to opinions that are contrary to the teaching of Christ and the apostles. These heresies destroy the faith of those who believe them.

##### the master who bought them

The word "master" here refers to a person who owns slaves. Peter speaks of Jesus as the owner of people whom he has bought, the price being his death.

#### 2 Peter 2:2

##### sensuality

immoral sexual behavior

##### the way of truth will be slandered

"unbelievers will slander the way of truth". The phrase "way of truth" refers to the Christian faith as the true path to God.

#### 2 Peter 2:3

##### exploit you with deceptive words

"convince you to give them money by telling you lies"

##### Their condemnation has been coming for a long time, and their destruction is not asleep

"It was decided long ago that they would be condemned; they will surely be destroyed" or "God said long ago that he would condemn them; he is ready to destroy them". Possible meanings are 1) the false teachers will be condemned, and as a result they will be destroyed, or 2) the two phrases emphasize how soon or how certainly the false teachers will be condemned.

#### 2 Peter 2:4

##### did not spare

"did not refrain from punishing"

##### but delivered them into hell

"but sent them to hell"

##### to be kept in chains of darkness

"in darkness that imprisons them like chains" or "where God keeps them in chains of darkness”

#### 2 Peter 2:5

##### and if he did not spare the ancient world

"and if God did not refrain from punishing the people who lived in the ancient world"

##### but preserved Noah ... along with seven others

"but protected Noah ... along with seven others."

##### Noah, a herald of righteousness

"Noah, a preacher of righteousness." Possible meanings are 1) Noah taught people that they should live righteous lives, or 2) Noah warned people that the righteous God would judge them.

#### 2 Peter 2:6

##### and if he reduced the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah to ashes

"and if God burned the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah with fire until only ashes remained"

##### condemned them to destruction

Here the word "them" refers to Sodom and Gomorrah and the people who lived in them.

##### as an example of what is to happen to the ungodly

Sodom and Gomorrah serve as an example and a warning of what will happen to others who disobey God.

#### 2 Peter 2:7

##### but delivered righteous Lot

Lot was righteous, and God rescued him from the punishment he sent on Sodom and Gomorrah.

##### the sensual behavior of lawless people

"the immoral behavior of people who broke God's law"

#### 2 Peter 2:8

##### that righteous man

This refers to Lot.

##### was tormented in his righteous soul

"was greatly disturbed"

#### 2 Peter 2:9

##### if the Lord did these things

The words "these things" refer to what God did in verses 4-8.

##### rescue ... out of trials

"enable ... to resist temptation" or "enable ... to pass the test"

#### 2 Peter 2:10

##### This is especially true

The word "this" refers to God keeping unrighteous men in prison until judgment day in 2 Peter 2:9.

##### those who walk after the corrupt desires of the flesh

"those who continue to indulge their corrupt, sinful desires"

##### despise authority

"refuse to submit to God's authority."

##### self-willed

"doing whatever they want to do"

#### 2 Peter 2:11

##### greater strength and power

"more strength and power than the false teachers"

##### they do not bring insulting judgments against them

The word "they" refers to angels. Possible meanings for the word "them" are 1) the glorious ones or 2) the false teachers. The idea that angels could accuse them is spoken of as if they could attack them using accusations as weapons.

#### 2 Peter 2:12

##### these people are like unreasoning animals, born for capture and destruction

"these false teachers are like unreasoning animals whose nature is to be born for capture and destruction" or "so that people can capture them or other animals can destroy them" or "and they become prey or die"

##### They do not know what they insult

They speak evil of what they do not know or understand.

##### In destruction they also will be destroyed

"God will completely destroy them"

#### 2 Peter 2:13

##### suffering harm as a reward for doing harm

"receiving what they deserve for the harm they have done"

##### luxury during the day

Here the word "luxury" refers to immoral activity that includes gluttony, drunkenness, and sexual activity. Doing these things during the day indicates that these people are not ashamed of this behavior.

##### They are stains and blemishes

"They are like stains and blemishes on clothes, which cause disgrace"

#### 2 Peter 2:14

##### They have eyes full of adultery

"They constantly want to commit adultery"

##### they are never satisfied with sin

Although they sin in order to satisfy their lusts, the sin that they commit never satisfies.

##### They entice unstable souls

"They entice unstable people"

##### hearts trained in greed

Here the word "hearts" refers to the thoughts and emotions of the person. Because of their habitual actions, they have trained themselves to think and act out of greed.

#### 2 Peter 2:15

##### the straight way

Behavior that honors God is spoken of as if it were a path to follow.

##### have gone astray

People who commit evil behavior that displeases God are spoken of as if they were animals who go away from the people who take care of them.

##### to receive payment for unrighteousness

"to receive money for doing things that are not righteous"

#### 2 Peter 2:16

##### he obtained a rebuke

"God rebuked Balaam"

##### a mute donkey speaking in a human voice

A donkey, which is naturally unable to speak, spoke with a voice like a human.

##### stopped the prophet's insanity

God used a donkey to stop the prophet's foolish action.

#### 2 Peter 2:17

##### These men are springs without water and mists driven by a storm

Springs flowing with water promise refreshment for thirsty people, but "springs without water" will leave the thirsty disappointed. In the same way, false teachers, although they promise many things, are unable to do what they promise.

##### The gloom of thick darkness is reserved for them

"God has reserved the gloom of thick darkness for the false teachers"

#### 2 Peter 2:18

##### They speak with vain arrogance

They use impressive but meaningless words.

##### Through the lusts of the flesh, through sensuality, they entice people

"They appeal to people's fleshly lusts and desire for sensuality. This is how they entice people"

##### people who are trying to escape from those who live in error

"people who try to live rightly, instead of living sinfully as they used to and as other people do"

#### 2 Peter 2:19

##### They promise freedom to them, but they themselves are slaves of corruption

"They promise to give them the ability to live exactly as they want to live, but they themselves cannot escape their own sinful desires"

##### For a man is a slave to whatever overcomes him

"For if something has control over a person, that person becomes like a slave to that thing"

#### 2 Peter 2:20

##### If they have escaped the corruptions of the world ... and are again entangled in them and overcome

"Since they have escaped the corrupting practices of sinful human society ... and are again entangled in them and overcome"

##### through the knowledge of the Lord and Savior Jesus Christ

"by knowing the Lord and Savior Jesus Christ"

##### the last state has become worse for them than the first

"their condition is worse than it was before"

#### 2 Peter 2:21

##### the way of righteousness

Peter speaks of life as a "way" or path. This phrase refers to living a life that is according to God's will.

##### turn away from the holy commandment delivered to them

"stop obeying the holy commandment" or "the holy commandment that God delivered to them" or "the holy commandment that God made sure that they received"

#### 2 Peter 2:22

##### This proverb is true for them

"This proverb applies to them" or "This proverb describes them"

##### A dog returns to its own vomit, and a washed pig returns to the mud

Peter uses two proverbs to illustrate how the false teachers, although they have known "the way of righteousness," have turned back to the things that make them morally and spiritually impure.

## Chapter 3

#### 2 Peter 3:1

##### to stir up your sincere mind

"to cause you to think pure thoughts"

#### 2 Peter 3:2

##### the words spoken in the past by the holy prophets

"the words that the holy prophets spoke in the past"

##### the command of our Lord and Savior given through your apostles

"the command of our Lord and Savior, which your apostles gave to you"

#### 2 Peter 3:3

##### Know this first

"Know this as the most important thing." See how you translated this in 2 Peter 1:20.

##### proceed according to their own desires

"live or behave according to their own sinful desires"

#### 2 Peter 3:4

##### Where is the promise of his return?

"The promise that Jesus would return is not true! He will not return!"

##### our fathers fell asleep

"our ancestors died"

##### all things have stayed the same, since the beginning of creation

"since God created the world" The mockers exaggerate with the word "all," and they argue that since nothing in the world has ever changed, it cannot be true that Jesus will return.

#### 2 Peter 3:5

##### by the word of God the heavens and the earth came to exist

"God spoke and the heavens and the earth came to exist"

##### came to exist out of water and through water

God caused the land to come up out of the water, gathering the bodies of water together to make the land appear.

#### 2 Peter 3:6

##### through which

Here "which" refers to God's word and water.

##### the world at that time was destroyed, being flooded with water

"God flooded the world that existed at that time with water and destroyed it"

#### 2 Peter 3:7

##### By the same word the heavens and the earth are reserved for fire

"God, by that same command, has reserved the heavens and the earth for fire"

##### fire, being kept for the day of judgment

"fire. God is reserving them for the day of judgment"

##### for the day of judgment and destruction of ungodly people

"for the day when he judges and destroys ungodly people"

#### 2 Peter 3:8

##### It should not escape your notice

"You should not fail to understand this"

##### that one day with the Lord is like a thousand years

"that from the Lord's point of view, one day is like a thousand years"

#### 2 Peter 3:9

##### The Lord is not slow concerning his promise

"The Lord is not slow to fulfill his promise to return"

##### as some consider slowness to be

Some people think that the Lord is slow to fulfill his promise because their perspective of time is different from God's.

#### 2 Peter 3:10

##### However ... laid bare

Although the Lord is being patient and wants people to repent, he will indeed return and bring judgment.

##### the day of the Lord will come as a thief

Peter speaks of the day when God will judge everyone as if it were a thief who will come unexpectedly, and the people will be surprised when it happens.

##### The heavens will pass away

"The heavens will disappear"

##### The elements will be burned with fire

"God will burn the elements with fire". Possible meanings are 1) the heavenly bodies, such as the sun, moon, and stars or 2) the things that make up heaven and earth, such as soil, air, fire, and water.

##### the earth and the deeds in it will be laid bare

"God will expose the earth and everything that people have done on it"

#### 2 Peter 3:11

##### Since all these things will be destroyed in this way

"Since God will destroy all these things in this way"

##### what kind of people should you be?

"you know what kind of people you should be."

#### 2 Peter 3:12

##### the heavens will be destroyed by fire, and the elements will be melted in great heat

"God will destroy the heavens by fire, and he will melt the elements in great heat"

#### 2 Peter 3:13

##### where righteousness will dwell

"where righteous people will dwell"

#### 2 Peter 3:14

##### do your best to be found spotless and blameless before him, in peace

"do your best to live in such a way that God will find you completely pure and faultless, and be at peace with him and each other"

#### 2 Peter 3:15

##### Also, consider the patience of our Lord to be salvation

"Also, think about the patience of our Lord as giving people an opportunity to repent and be saved". Because the Lord is patient, the day of judgment has not yet happened. This gives people an opportunity to repent and be saved, as he explained in 2 Peter 3:9.

##### according to the wisdom that was given to him

"according to the wisdom that God gave to him"

#### 2 Peter 3:16

##### Paul speaks of these things in all his letters

"Paul speaks of the patience of God leading to salvation in all his letters"

##### in which there are things that are difficult to understand

There are things in Paul's letters that are difficult to understand.

##### Ignorant and unstable men distort these things

"Unlearned and unsteady." These men have not been taught how to properly interpret scripture and are not well established in the truth of the gospel.

##### to their own destruction

"resulting in their own destruction"

#### 2 Peter 3:17

##### since you know about these things

"These things" refers to the truths about the patience of God and the teachings of these false teachers.

##### guard yourselves

"protect yourselves"

##### so that you are not led astray by the deceit of lawless people

"so that lawless people do not deceive you and cause you do something wrong"

##### you lose your own faithfulness

"you stop being faithful"

#### 2 Peter 3:18

##### grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ

"receive more of the grace of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, and know him more"

## Chapter 1

#### 1 John 1:1

##### which we have heard

"which we have heard him teach"

##### which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked at

"which we ourselves have seen"

##### the Word of life

"the one who gives life" or "the one who causes people to live forever"

##### life

Throughout this letter, the word "life" refers to more than physical life. Here it refers to being alive spiritually.

#### 1 John 1:2

##### the life was made known

"God made the eternal life known to us" or "God made us able to know him, who is eternal life"

##### we have seen and testify

"we have seen it and testify about it" or "we have seen him and testify about him"

##### the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to us

"the one who enables us to live forever, who was with God the Father, and who has been made known to us". This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### and which has been made known to us

"and which the Father has made known to us"

#### 1 John 1:3

##### That which we have seen and heard we declare also to you

"We say to you also what we have seen and heard"

##### have fellowship with us. Our fellowship is with the Father

"be our close friends. We are friends with God the Father"

##### Our fellowship

It is not clear if John is including or excluding his readers. You may translate this either way.

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### 1 John 1:4

##### so that our joy will be complete

"to make our joy complete"

#### 1 John 1:5

##### God is light

"God is purely righteous like pure light"

##### in him there is no darkness at all

"in him there is nothing that is evil"

#### 1 John 1:6

##### walk in darkness

"do what is evil"

#### 1 John 1:7

##### walk in the light as he is in the light

"do what is good as God is perfectly good" or "do what is right as God is perfectly right"

##### the blood of Jesus

This refers to the death of Jesus.

#### 1 John 1:8

##### have no sin

"never sin"

##### are deceiving

"lying to"

##### the truth is not in us

"we do not believe what God says is true"

#### 1 John 1:9

##### he is faithful

"God is faithful"

##### to forgive us our sins and cleanse us from all unrighteousness

"and will completely forgive us for what we have done wrong"

#### 1 John 1:10

##### we make him out to be a liar

"it is the same as calling God a liar, because he said we have all sinned"

##### his word is not in us

"we do not understand God's word and do not obey what he says"

## Chapter 2

#### 1 John 2:1

##### Children

"You who are as dear to me as my own children"

##### I am writing these things

"I am writing this letter"

##### But if anyone sins

"But when anyone sins"

##### we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ, the one who is righteous

"we have Jesus Christ, the one who is righteous, who speaks to the Father and asks him to forgive us"

#### 1 John 2:2

##### He is the atoning sacrifice for our sins

"God is no longer angry with us because Jesus sacrificed his own life for our sins"

#### 1 John 2:3

##### We know that we have come to know him

"We know that we know him" or "We know that we have a good relationship with him”

##### if we keep his commandments

"if we obey what he commands"

#### 1 John 2:4

##### The one who says

"Anyone who says" or "The person who says"

##### I know God

"I have a good relationship with God"

##### does not keep his commandments

"does not obey what God commands"

##### the truth is not in him

"he does not believe what God says is true"

#### 1 John 2:5

##### keeps his word

"does what God says to do" or "obeys what God says"

##### in him truly the love of God has been perfected

"it is that person who truly loves God perfectly" or "God's love has achieved its purpose in that person's life"

##### By this we know that we are in him

"When we obey what God says, we can be certain that we have fellowship with him" or "By this we know that we are joined to God"

#### 1 John 2:6

##### remains in God

"continues to have fellowship with God" or "stays joined to God"

##### should himself also walk just as he walked

"must live as he lived" or "should also obey God just as Jesus Christ did"

#### 1 John 2:7

##### Beloved, I am

"You people whom I love, I am"

##### I am not writing a new commandment to you, but an old commandment that you have had

"I write to you to love one other, which is not a new thing to do but an old commandment that you have heard"

##### from the beginning

"from when you first believed in Christ"

##### The old commandment is the word that you heard

"The old commandment is the message that you heard"

#### 1 John 2:8

##### Yet I am writing a new commandment to you

"But in one way the commandment I write to you is a new commandment"

##### which is true in Christ and in you

"which is true, as shown in Christ's deeds and your deeds"

##### the darkness is passing away, and the true light is already shining

"you are ceasing to do evil and you are doing more and more good"

#### 1 John 2:9

##### The one who says

"Anyone who says"

##### he is in the light

"he does what is right"

##### is in the darkness

"does what is evil"

#### 1 John 2:10

##### there is no occasion for stumbling in him

"nothing will cause him to stumble" or "nothing will cause him to sin" or "he will not fail to do what is pleasing to God"

#### 1 John 2:11

##### is in the darkness and walks in the darkness

"does what is evil"

##### he does not know where he is going

"he does not know what he should do"

##### the darkness has blinded his eyes

"sin has made it impossible for him to understand the truth"

#### 1 John 2:12

##### you, children

"you who are as dear to me as my own children"

##### your sins are forgiven

"God forgives your sins"

##### because of his name

"because of what Christ has done for you"

#### 1 John 2:13

##### I am writing to you, fathers

"I am writing to you, mature believers"

##### you know

"you have a relationship with"

##### the one who is from the beginning

"the one who has always existed."

##### young men

"young believers"

##### you have overcome

"you have conquered"

#### 1 John 2:14

##### you are strong

Here "strong" refers not to believers' physical strength, but to their faithfulness to Christ.

##### the word of God remains in you

"God's message continues to teach you" or "you know the word of God"

#### 1 John 2:15

##### Do not love the world or

"Do not behave like the people in the world who do not honor God, and do not love"

##### the things that are in the world

"the things that those who dishonor God want"

##### If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him

A person cannot love this world and all that dishonors God and love the Father at the same time.

##### the love of the Father is not in him

"he does not love the Father"

#### 1 John 2:16

##### the lust of the flesh

"the strong desire to have sinful physical pleasure"

##### the lust of the eyes

"the strong desire to have things that we see"

##### is not from the Father

"does not come from the Father"

#### 1 John 2:17

##### are passing away

"will one day not be here"

#### 1 John 2:18

##### Children

"you who are as dear to me as my own children"

##### it is the last hour

"Jesus will return soon"

##### many antichrists

"there are many people who are against Christ"

##### have come. By this we know

"have come, and because of this we know" or "have come, and because many antichrists have come, we know"

#### 1 John 2:19

##### They went out from us

"They left us"

##### but they were not from us

"but they were not really part of our group in the first place."

##### For if they had been from us they would have remained with us

"We know this because they would not have left us if they really had been believers"

#### 1 John 2:20

##### But you have an anointing from the Holy One

"But Jesus Christ, the Holy One, has given you his Spirit"

##### you all know

"you all have knowledge" or "you all know what is true"

#### 1 John 2:21

##### the truth ... no lie is from the truth

"what is true ... no lie comes from what is true"

#### 1 John 2:22

##### Who is the liar but the one who denies that Jesus is the Christ?

"The one who denies that Jesus is the Christ is the liar"

##### denies that Jesus is the Christ

"refuses to say that Jesus is the Christ" or "says that Jesus is not the Messiah"

##### denies the Father and the Son

"refuses to say the truth about the Father and the Son" or "rejects the Father and the Son."

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son” with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### 1 John 2:23

##### has the Father

"belongs to the Father"

##### confesses the Son

"speaks the truth about the Son"

#### 1 John 2:24

##### As for you

This phrase marks John's switch from talking about other people to talking about the people he is writing to.

##### let what you have heard from the beginning remain in you

"continue to trust what we have taught you about Jesus when you first became believers"

##### If what you heard from the beginning remains in you

"If you continue to trust what we first taught you"

##### also remain in the Son and in the Father

"also continue to have fellowship with the Son and with the Father" or "also stay joined to the Son and to the Father". These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### 1 John 2:25

##### This is the promise he gave to us—eternal life.

"This is what he promised to give us—eternal life"

##### life

Here "life" refers to being alive spiritually.

#### 1 John 2:26

##### those who would lead you astray

"those who want to make you believe lies about Jesus Christ"

#### 1 John 2:27

##### the anointing that you received from him remains in you

"Jesus has anointed you with his Spirit, and his Spirit is still with you"

##### as his anointing teaches you everything

"because his Spirit teaches you everything that you need to know"

#### 1 John 2:28

##### Now, children

"Now, you who are as dear to me as my own children"

##### he appears

"we see him"

##### boldness

having no fear

##### not be ashamed before him

"not be ashamed in his presence"

##### at his coming

"when he comes again"

#### 1 John 2:29

##### has been born from him

"has been born of God"

## Chapter 3

#### 1 John 3:1

##### See what kind of love the Father has given to us

"Think about how our Father loves us so much"

##### we should be called children of God

"the Father called us his children"

##### children of God

Here this means people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

##### For this reason, the world does not know us, because it did not know him

"Because we are the children of God and because the world did not know God, it does not know us"

##### the world does not know us, because it did not know him

"those who do not honor God do not know that we belong to God, because they did not know God"

#### 1 John 3:2

##### Beloved, we are

"You people whom I love, we are"

##### it has not yet been revealed

"God has not yet revealed"

##### revealed

"demonstrated" or "shown"

#### 1 John 3:3

##### Everyone who has this hope in him

"Everyone who has this hope because of Christ" or "Everyone who trusts Christ to fulfill this hope"

##### purifies himself just as he is pure

"keeps himself pure because Christ is pure"

#### 1 John 3:5

##### Christ was revealed

"Christ appeared" or "the Father revealed Christ"

#### 1 John 3:6

##### remains in him

"continues to have fellowship with him"

##### No one ... has seen him or known him

"No one ... has ever truly believed in him"

#### 1 John 3:7

##### Children, do not let

"You who are as dear to me as my own children, do not let"

##### do not let anyone lead you astray

"do not let anyone deceive you"

##### The one who does righteousness is righteous, just as Christ is righteous

"He who does what is right is pleasing to God just as Christ is pleasing to God"

#### 1 John 3:8

##### is from the devil

"belongs to the devil" or "is like the devil"

##### from the beginning

"since the earliest time of creation"

##### the Son of God was revealed

"God revealed his Son"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### 1 John 3:9

##### Whoever has been born from God

"Whoever God has made his child"

##### God's seed

"the Holy Spirit"

##### he has been born of God

"God has given him new spiritual life" or "he is a child of God"

#### 1 John 3:10

##### In this the children of God and children of the devil are revealed

"This is how we know who the children of God are and who the children of the devil are"

##### Whoever does not do what is righteous is not from God, neither is the one who does not love his brother

"whoever does not do what is righteous is not from God; whoever does not love his brother is also not from God"

##### his brother

Here "brother" means fellow Christians.

#### 1 John 3:12

##### We should not be like Cain

"We should not do as Cain did"

##### brother

This refers to Cain's younger brother Abel.

##### Why did he kill him? Because

"He killed him because"

##### his works were evil and his brother's righteous

"Cain's works were evil and his brother's works were righteous" or "Cain did evil things and his brother did what was right"

#### 1 John 3:13

##### my brothers

"my fellow believers." John's readers were both male and female.

##### if the world hates you

"if those who do not honor God hate you who do honor God"

#### 1 John 3:14

##### we have passed out of death into life

"we are no longer spiritually dead but are spiritually alive"

##### life

Here "life" refers to being alive spiritually.

##### remains in death

"is still spiritually dead"

#### 1 John 3:15

##### Anyone who hates his brother is a murderer

"Whoever hates another believer is as guilty as someone who kills a person"

##### no murderer has eternal life residing in him

"a murderer does not have the power of spiritual life"

#### 1 John 3:16

##### Christ laid down his life for us

"Christ willingly died for us"

#### 1 John 3:17

##### the world's goods

material possessions like money, food, or clothing

##### sees his brother in need

"realizes a fellow believer needs help"

##### shuts up his heart of compassion from him

"does not show him compassion" or "does not willingly help him"

##### how does the love of God remain in him?

"God's love is not in him"

#### 1 John 3:18

##### let us not love in word or in tongue, but in actions and truth

"do not just say that you love people, but show that you truly love people by helping them"

##### in actions and truth

"let us love in actions and truth"

#### 1 John 3:19

##### we are from the truth

"we are living according to the way Jesus taught us"

##### we assure our hearts

"we do not feel guilty"

#### 1 John 3:20

##### if our hearts condemn us

"if we know that we have sinned and as a result feel guilty"

##### God is greater than our hearts

"God knows more than we do"

#### 1 John 3:21

##### Beloved, if

"You people whom I love, if"

#### 1 John 3:22

##### do the things that are pleasing before him

"do the things that are pleasing to him" or "do what pleases him"

#### 1 John 3:23

##### This is his commandment: that we should believe ... just as he gave us this commandment

"This is what God commands us to do: Believe ... just as he commanded us to do"

#### 1 John 3:24

##### remains in him, and God remains in him

"continues to have fellowship with him, and God continues to have fellowship with him"

##### he remains in us

"God continues to have fellowship with us"

## Chapter 4

#### 1 John 4:1

##### Beloved, do not believe

"You people whom I love, do not believe"

##### do not believe every spirit

"do not trust every prophet who claims to have a message from a spirit"

##### test the spirits

"think carefully about what the prophet says"

#### 1 John 4:2

##### has come in the flesh

"has come as a human being"

#### 1 John 4:3

##### This is the spirit of the antichrist, ... is coming, and now is already in the world

"These are prophets opposed to Christ, whom you have heard are coming, and now are already in the world"

#### 1 John 4:4

##### God, children

"God, you who are as dear to me as my own children"

##### have overcome them

"have not believed the false teachers"

##### the one who is in you is

"God, who is in you, is"

##### the one who is in the world

"the devil who is in the people of the world"

#### 1 John 4:5

##### They are from the world

"The false teachers are of the world"

##### therefore what they say is from the world

"therefore what the false teachers say is of the world"

##### and the world listens to them

"so the people who do not obey God listen to them"

#### 1 John 4:7

##### Beloved, let us love

"You people whom I love, let us love"

##### let us love one another

"believers are to love other believers"

##### and everyone who loves is born from God and knows God

"and because those who love their fellow believers have become God's children and know him"

##### for love is from God

"because God causes us to love each other"

##### born from God

Here this means someone has a relationship to God like a child to his father.

#### 1 John 4:8

##### The person who does not love does not know God, for God is love

"Those who do not love their fellow believers do not know God, because the character of God is to love people"

#### 1 John 4:9

##### Because of this ... among us, that God has sent his only Son

"Because of this ... among us: God has sent his only Son." The phrase "Because of this" refers to the phrase "that God has sent his only Son"

##### the love of God was revealed among us

"God showed that he loves us"

##### so that we would live because of him

"to enable us to live eternally because of what Jesus did"

#### 1 John 4:10

##### In this is love, not that

"The true demonstration of love was not that" or "This is true love: not that"

##### he sent his Son to be the atoning sacrifice for our sins

"he sent his Son to be the sacrifice that satisfied his wrath against our sins"

#### 1 John 4:11

##### if God so loved us

"since God loved us in this way"

##### we also should love one another

"believers are to love other believers"

#### 1 John 4:12

##### God remains in us

"God continues to have fellowship with us"

##### his love is perfected in us

"God's love is complete in us"

#### 1 John 4:13

##### we remain in him and he in us

"we continue to have fellowship with God and he continues to have fellowship with us"

##### and he in us

"and he remains in us"

##### By this we know ... us, because he has given

"We know ... us because he gave" or "By this we know ... us: he gave"

##### because he has given us some of his Spirit

"because he has put his Holy Spirit in us"

#### 1 John 4:14

##### Also, we have seen and testify that the Father has sent the Son to be the Savior of the world

"And we apostles have seen the Son of God and tell everyone that God the Father has sent his Son to save people on this earth". These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### 1 John 4:15

##### Whoever confesses that Jesus is the Son of God

"Anyone who says the truth about Jesus, that he is the Son of God"

##### God remains in him and he in God

"God continues to have fellowship with him and he continues to have fellowship with God"

##### and he in God

"and he remains in God"

#### 1 John 4:16

##### God is love

"the character of God is love"

##### the one who remains in this love

"those who continue to love others"

##### remains in God, and God remains in him

"continues to have fellowship with God, and God continues to have fellowship with him"

#### 1 John 4:17

##### Because of this, this love has been made perfect among us, so that we will have confidence

"Because whoever lives in love is in God and God is in him, God has made his love for us complete, and so we may have complete confidence" or "We are confident that God will accept us on the day he judges everyone, so we know he has made his love for us complete"

##### this love has been made perfect among us

"God has made his love for us complete"

##### because as he is, just so are we in this world

"because the relationship that Jesus has with God is the same relationship we have with God in this world"

#### 1 John 4:18

##### Instead, perfect love throws out fear

"Instead, when our love is complete, we are no longer afraid"

##### because fear has to do with punishment

"because we would be afraid only if we thought that he would punish us"

##### But the one who fears has not been made perfect in love

"But when a person is afraid that God will punish him, his love is not complete"

#### 1 John 4:20

##### hates his brother

"hates a fellow believer"

##### the one who does not love his brother, whom he has seen, cannot love God, whom he has not seen

"the one who hates his brother, whom he has seen, cannot love God, whom he has not seen"

## Chapter 5

#### 1 John 5:1

##### is born from God

"is a child of God"

#### 1 John 5:2

##### This is how we know that we love the children of God: ... God and obey his commandments.

"When we love God and do what he commands, then we know that we love his children"

#### 1 John 5:3

##### For this is love for God: that we keep his commandments

"Because when we do what he commands, that is true love for God"

##### his commandments are not burdensome

"what he commands is not difficult"

##### burdensome

"heavy" or "difficult"

#### 1 John 5:4

##### everyone who is born from God overcomes

"all children of God overcome"

##### overcomes the world

"has victory over the world," or "refuses to do the evil things unbelievers do"

##### the world

"everything in the world that is against God"

##### And this is the victory that has overcome the world, even our faith

"And this is what gives us the power to resist whatever would lead us to sin against God: our faith" or "And it is our faith that gives us the power to resist whatever would lead us to sin against God"

#### 1 John 5:5

##### Who is the one who overcomes the world?

"I will tell you who overcomes the world"

##### The one who believes that Jesus is the Son of God

"Anyone who believes that Jesus is the Son of God"

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### 1 John 5:6

##### This is the one who came by water and blood: Jesus Christ

"God showed that Jesus Christ is his son at Jesus's baptism and his death on the cross"

##### He came not only by water, but also by water and blood

"God did not show us Jesus was his son just through his baptism, but through his baptism and his death on the cross"

#### 1 John 5:9

##### If we receive the testimony of men

"If we believe what men testify"

##### the testimony of God is greater

the testimony of God is more important and more reliable

#### 1 John 5:10

##### Anyone who believes in the Son of God ... in himself

"Whoever believes in Jesus knows for sure Jesus is the Son of God"

##### has made him out to be a liar

"has called God a liar"

##### because he has not believed the testimony that God has given concerning his Son

"because he has not believed that God has told the truth about his Son"

#### 1 John 5:11

##### And the testimony is this

"This is what God says"

##### life

The word "life" throughout this letter refers to more than physical life. Here it refers to being alive spiritually.

##### this life is in his Son

"this life is through his Son" or "we will live forever if we are joined with his Son" or "we will live forever if we are united with his Son"

#### 1 John 5:12

##### The one who has the Son has life. The one who does not have the Son of God does not have life

"He who believes in the Son of God has eternal life. He who does not believe in the Son of God does not have eternal life"

#### 1 John 5:13

##### these things

"this letter"

##### to you who believe in the name of the Son of God

"to you who trust in the Son of God". This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate "Son" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### 1 John 5:14

##### this is the confidence we have before him, that

"we are confident in God's presence because we know that"

##### if we ask anything according to his will

"if we ask for the things that God desires"

#### 1 John 5:15

##### we know that we have whatever we have asked of him

"we know that we will receive that for which we have asked God"

#### 1 John 5:16

##### his brother

"a fellow believer"

##### death

This refers to eternal death, that is, eternity spent away from God's presence.

#### 1 John 5:18

##### the evil one cannot harm him

The phrase "the evil one" refers to Satan, the devil.

#### 1 John 5:19

##### the whole world lies in the power of the evil one

"the whole world is controlled by the evil one"

##### the whole world lies in the power

"all the people of the world are under the power"

#### 1 John 5:20

##### has given us understanding

"has enabled us to understand the truth"

##### we are in him who is true

"we are united to him who is true by being united to his Son Jesus Christ"

##### This one is the true God

"This one" refers to Jesus Christ, or "This one" refers to the one true God.

##### and eternal life

"and the one who gives eternal life"

#### 1 John 5:21

##### Children

"My dear children in Christ" or "You who are as dear to me as my own children"

##### keep yourselves from idols

"do not worship idols"

## Chapter 1

#### 2 John 1:1

##### General Information:

Tradition identifies the apostle John as the writer of this letter. Though possibly addressed to an individual woman; because he writes that they should "love one another," this is probably to a church.

##### From the elder to the chosen lady and her children

"I, John the elder, am writing this letter to the chosen lady and her children"

##### the elder

This refers to John, the apostle and disciple of Jesus.

##### to the chosen lady and her children

This probably refers to a congregation and the believers that belong to it.

#### 2 John 1:3

##### Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### in truth and love

The word "truth" describes "love." Possibly the phrase means "in true love."

#### 2 John 1:4

##### just as we have received this commandment from the Father

"just as God the Father commanded us". This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father

#### 2 John 1:5

##### I were writing to you a new commandment, but one that we have had from the beginning

"I were commanding you to do something new, but what Christ commanded us to do when we first believed"

##### beginning—that we should love one another

"beginning. He commanded that we should love one another"

#### 2 John 1:6

##### This is the commandment, just as you heard from the beginning, that you should walk in it

"And he has commanded you, since you first believed, to love one another"

#### 2 John 1:7

##### For many deceivers have gone out into the world

"For many false teachers have left the congregation"

##### many deceivers

"many false teachers"

##### Jesus Christ came in the flesh

"Jesus Christ came as a real human"

##### This is the deceiver and the antichrist

"They are the ones who deceive others and oppose Christ himself"

#### 2 John 1:8

##### Look to yourselves

"Watch out" or "Be on guard"

##### lose the things

"lose your future rewards in heaven"

##### the things for which we have labored

"the things that we have accomplished."

##### full reward

"complete reward in heaven"

#### 2 John 1:9

##### Whoever goes on ahead

"Whoever claims to know more about God" or "Whoever disobeys the truth"

##### does not have God

"does not belong to God"

##### The one who remains in the teaching, this one has both the Father and the Son

"Someone who follows Christ's teaching belongs to both the Father and the Son". These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

#### 2 John 1:10

##### do not receive him into your house

"do not welcome him into your house"

#### 2 John 1:11

##### participates in his evil deeds

"shares with him in his evil deeds"

#### 2 John 1:12

##### I did not wish to write them with paper and ink

John does not wish to write these other things but would like to come say the words to them.

##### speak face to face

"speak to you in person"

#### 2 John 1:13

##### General Information

The word "your" in verse 13 refers to the group of believers that John is writing to.

##### The children of your chosen sister

This may refer to the members of another church.

## Chapter 1

#### 3 John 1:1

##### The elder

This refers to John.

##### Gaius

A fellow believer.

#### 3 John 1:2

##### all may go well with you and that you may be healthy

"you may do well in all things and be healthy"

##### just as it is well with your soul

"just as you are doing well spiritually"

#### 3 John 1:3

##### brothers came

"fellow believers came." These people were probably all male.

##### you walk in truth

"you are living your life according to God's truth"

#### 3 John 1:4

##### my children

"my spiritual children"

#### 3 John 1:5

##### Beloved

Here this is used as a term of endearment for a fellow believer.

##### you practice faithfulness

"you are doing what is faithful to God"

##### labor for the brothers and for strangers

"help fellow believers and those you do not know"

#### 3 John 1:6

##### You do well to send them

John is thanking Gaius for helping these believers.

#### 3 John 1:7

##### because it was for the sake of the name that they went out

"for they have gone out to tell people about Jesus"

##### taking nothing

"receiving no gifts or help"

##### the Gentiles

The Gentiles here are the non-Jews who do not believe in Christ.

#### 3 John 1:8

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to John and those with him, and possibly includes all believers.

##### so that we will be fellow workers for the truth

"so that we will cooperate with them in announcing God's truth to people"

#### 3 John 1:9

##### General Information:

The word "us" refers to John and those with him and does not include Gaius.

##### congregation

This refers to Gaius and the group of believers who met together to worship God.

##### Diotrephes

He was a member of the congregation.

##### who loves to be first among them

"who loves to be the most important one among them" or "who loves to act as though he's their leader"

#### 3 John 1:10

##### falsely accusing us with wicked words

"he says evil things about us that certainly are not true"

##### refused to welcome the brothers

"did not welcome the fellow believers"

##### stops those who want to welcome them

"stops those who want to welcome the believers"

##### drives them out of the church

"he forces them to leave the congregation"

#### 3 John 1:11

##### do not imitate what is evil

"do not copy the evil things that people do"

##### but what is good

"but imitate the good things that people do"

##### is of God

"belongs to God"

##### has not seen God

"does not belong to God"

#### 3 John 1:12

##### Demetrius received a good testimony from everyone

"All who know Demetrius testify that he is a good man" or "Every believer who knows Demetrius speaks well of him"

##### Demetrius

He is probably a man whom John wants Gaius and the congregation to welcome when he comes to visit.

##### by the truth itself

"the truth itself speaks well of him."

##### We also testify about him

"We also speak well of Demetrius"

#### 3 John 1:13

##### I do not wish to write them to you with pen and ink

John does not wish to write these other things at all. He would prefer to tell them in person.

#### 3 John 1:14

##### I hope to see you soon

"I plan to come to you"

##### face to face

"in person"

#### 3 John 1:15

##### May peace be with you

"May God give you peace"

##### The friends greet you

"The friends here greet you”

##### Greet our friends there by name

"Greet each of our friends there for me”

## Chapter 1

#### Jude 1:1

##### Jude, a servant of

"I am Jude, a servant of"

##### brother of James

James and Jude were half brothers of Jesus.

#### Jude 1:2

##### May mercy and peace and love be multiplied to you

"May God continue to be merciful to you so that you live peacefully and love one another more and more

#### Jude 1:3

##### our common salvation

"the salvation we share"

##### I had to write

"I felt a great need to write"

##### to exhort you to struggle earnestly for the faith

"to encourage you to defend the true teaching"

##### once for all

"finally and completely"

#### Jude 1:4

##### For certain men have slipped in secretly among you

"For some men have come in among the believers without drawing attention to themselves"

##### These men were marked out for condemnation

"These were men whom God chose to condemn"

##### who have changed the grace of our God into sensuality

"who teach that God's grace permits one to continue to live in sexual sin"

##### deny our only Master and Lord, Jesus Christ

they teach that he is not God or these men do not obey Jesus Christ

#### Jude 1:5

##### the Lord saved a people out of the land of Egypt

"the Lord rescued the Israelites long ago from Egypt"

#### Jude 1:6

##### their own position of authority

"the responsibilities God entrusted to them"

##### their proper dwelling place

The proper dwelling place of angels is heaven.

##### God has kept them in everlasting chains, in utter darkness

"God has put these angels in a dark prison from which they will never escape"

##### utter darkness

"in utter darkness in hell".

##### the great day

the final day when God will judge everyone

#### Jude 1:7

##### Sodom and Gomorrah and the cities around them

"the people of Sodom and Gomorrah and the people in the cities around them"

##### gave themselves over to sexual immorality and perverse sexual acts

The sexual sins of Sodom and Gomorrah were the result of the same kind of rebellion as the angels' evil ways.

##### as an example of those who suffer the punishment

The destruction of the people of Sodom and Gomorrah became an example of the fate of all who reject God.

#### Jude 1:8

##### these dreamers

These are the people who disobey God, probably because they claim to have seen visions that gave them authority to do so.

##### defile their bodies

"sin and defile themselves"

##### they slander

"they speak insults about"

##### glorious ones

This refers to spiritual beings, such as angels.

#### Jude 1:9

##### did not dare to bring a slanderous judgment against him

"did not dare to insult or condemn him"

#### Jude 1:10

##### whatever they do not understand

"anything of which they do not know the meaning." or "everything good that they do not understand"

#### Jude 1:11

##### walked in the way of Cain

"lived the same way Cain lived"

#### Jude 1:12

##### dangerous reefs

Reefs are large rocks that are very close to the surface of water in the sea. Ships can easily be destroyed if they hit these rocks.

##### autumn trees, without fruit—twice dead, uprooted

"These people are like dead people."

##### autumn trees, without fruit

Trees in autumn look dead because their leaves have all fallen off.

##### twice dead, uprooted

After these "autumn trees" have lost their leaves and fruit, they die their first death. Then people uproot them, and they die their second death.

##### uprooted

completely pulled out of the ground

#### Jude 1:13

##### violent waves in the sea

As the sea's waves are blown by a strong wind, so the ungodly people are easily moved in many directions.

##### foaming up their shame

"and just as waves bring up foam and dirt, these men pollute others with their shame"

##### for whom the gloom of complete darkness has been reserved forever

"and God will put them in the gloom and complete darkness of hell forever"

#### Jude 1:14

##### the seventh from Adam

If Adam is counted as the first generation of mankind, Enoch is the seventh.

##### holy ones

"angels" or "saints" or "angels and saints"

#### Jude 1:15

##### to execute judgment on

"to make judgment on" or "to judge"

#### Jude 1:16

##### grumblers, complainers

"Grumblers" tend to speak quietly, while "complainers" speak openly.

##### Their mouths speak loud boasts

They praise themselves so that others can hear.

##### flattering others

"giving false praise to others"

#### Jude 1:18

##### mockers who will follow their own ungodly desires

"mockers who will continue to dishonor God by doing the evil things they wish to do"

#### Jude 1:19

##### It is these

"It is these mockers"

##### they are worldly

"they are only concerned with doing what is evil"

##### they do not have the Spirit

"the Holy Spirit is not within them"

#### Jude 1:20

##### But you, beloved

"Do not be like them, beloved. Instead"

##### build yourselves up

Strengthen yourselves spiritually

#### Jude 1:21

##### wait for

"eagerly look forward to"

##### the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ that brings you eternal life

"the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ who makes you live forever with him"

#### Jude 1:22

##### those who doubt

"those who do not yet believe that Jesus is God"

#### Jude 1:23

##### snatching them out of the fire

"doing for them whatever needs to be done to keep them from dying without Christ. This is like pulling them from the fire"

##### to others show mercy with fear

"be kind to others, but be afraid of sinning the way they do"

##### hating even the garment defiled by the flesh

"hating even the clothing that they have polluted by their sin"

#### Jude 1:24

##### to cause you to stand before his glorious presence

"and to allow you to enjoy and worship his glory". His glory is brilliant light that represents his greatness.

##### glorious presence without blemish and with

"glorious presence, where you will be without sin and have great joy"

#### Jude 1:25

##### to the only God our Savior through Jesus Christ our Lord

"to the only God, who saved us because of what Jesus Christ did." This emphasizes that God the Father as well as the Son is the Savior. These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. It is best to translate "Father" and "Son" with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### be glory, majesty, dominion, and authority, before all time, now, and forever

God has always had, now has, and always will have glory, absolute leadership, and complete control of all things.

## Chapter 1

#### Revelation 1:1

##### his servants

This refers to people who believe in Christ.

##### what must soon take place

"the events that must happen soon"

##### made it known

"communicated it"

##### to his servant John

"to me, John, his servant"

#### Revelation 1:2

##### who testified about ... all the things that he saw

"And John testified about ... all the things that he saw"

##### the word of God

"the message that God spoke"

#### Revelation 1:3

##### the one who reads aloud

"anyone who reads aloud"

##### obey what is written in it

"obey what John has written in it" or "obey what they read in it"

##### the time is near

"the things that must happen will soon happen"

#### Revelation 1:4

##### May grace be to you and peace

"May you receive grace and peace" or "May you experience grace and peace." This is a wish or blessing.

##### from the one who is

"from God, who is"

##### seven spirits

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The "seven spirits" refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God.

#### Revelation 1:5

##### and from Jesus Christ

"and may grace be to you and peace also from Jesus Christ"

##### the firstborn from the dead

"the first person to be raised from death, never to die again"

##### has freed us from our sins

"has released us from our sins"

#### Revelation 1:6

##### has made us a kingdom, priests

"has set us apart and begun to rule over us and he has made us priests"

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### to him be the glory and the power

This is a wish or prayer. Possible meanings are 1) "May people honor his glory and power" or 2) "May he have glory and power." John prays that Jesus Christ will be honored and will be able to rule completely over everyone and everything.

#### Revelation 1:7

##### every eye

"every person" or "everyone"

##### including those who pierced him

"even those who killed him will see him"

#### Revelation 1:8

##### "I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "the one who is ... the Almighty."

"The Lord God says, 'I am the Alpha and the Omega, the one who is ... the Almighty.'" or "'I am the Alpha and the Omega, the one who is ... the Almighty,' says the Lord God."

##### the Alpha and the Omega

These are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. If readers do not know this, you may consider using the first and last letters of your alphabet.

#### Revelation 1:9

##### your ... you

These refer to the believers in the seven churches.

##### I, John—your brother and the one who shares with you in the suffering and kingdom and patient endurance that are in Jesus—was

"I, John, am your brother who shares with you in God's kingdom and also suffers and patiently endures trials along with you because we belong to Jesus. I was"

##### because of the word of God

"because I told others the message that God spoke"

##### the testimony about Jesus

"the testimony that God has given about Jesus"

#### Revelation 1:10

##### I was in the Spirit

"I was influenced by the Spirit" or "The Spirit influenced me"

##### the Lord's day

the day of worship for believers in Christ

##### trumpet

This refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

#### Revelation 1:11

##### Smyrna ... Pergamum ... Thyatira ... Sardis ... Philadelphia ... Laodicea

These are names of cities in the region of western Asia that today is modern Turkey.

#### Revelation 1:12

##### whose voice

"who"

#### Revelation 1:13

##### son of man

This expression describes a human figure, someone who looks human.

##### a golden sash

a piece of cloth worn around the chest. It may have had golden threads in it.

#### Revelation 1:14

##### His head and hair were as white as wool—as white as snow

Wool and snow are examples of things that are very white. The repetition of "as white as" emphasizes that they were very white.

##### wool

This is the hair of a sheep or goat. It was known to be very white.

##### his eyes were like a flame of fire

"his eyes were glowing like a flame of fire"

#### Revelation 1:15

##### like polished bronze, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace

"like bronze that has been purified in a hot furnace and polished"

##### furnace

a strong container for holding a very hot fire. People would put metal in it, and the hot fire would burn away any impurities that were in the metal.

##### the sound of many rushing waters

This is very loud, like the sound of a large, fast flowing river, of a large waterfall, or of loud waves in the sea.

#### Revelation 1:16

##### a sword ... was coming out of his mouth

The sword blade was sticking out of his mouth. The sword itself was not in motion.

##### a sword with two sharp edges

This refers to a double-edged sword, which is sharpened on both sides to cut both directions.

#### Revelation 1:17

##### fell at his feet like a dead man

John lay down facing the ground. He was probably very frightened and was showing Jesus great respect.

##### He placed his right hand on me

"He touched me with his right hand"

##### I am the first and the last

This refers to the eternal nature of Jesus.

#### Revelation 1:18

##### I have the keys of death and of Hades

"I have the power over death and over Hades" or "I have the power to give life to people who have died and to let them out of Hades"

#### Revelation 1:20

##### stars

The seven starts represent the angels of the seven churches” or “The seven stars are a symbol of the angels of the seven churches.

##### the angels of the seven churches

Possible meanings are that these "angels" are 1) heavenly angels who protect the seven churches or 2) human messengers to the seven churches.

##### seven churches

This refers to seven churches that actually existed in Asia Minor at that time. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:11.

## Chapter 2

#### Revelation 2:1

##### the angel

Possible meanings are that this "angel" is 1) a heavenly angel who protects this church or 2) a human messenger to the church, either a messenger who went from John to the church or the leader of the church. See how you translated "angel" in Revelation 1:20.

#### Revelation 2:2

##### I know ... your hard labor, and your patient endurance

"I know ... that you work very hard and that you endure patiently"

##### you have found them to be false

"you have recognized that those people are false apostles"

#### Revelation 2:3

##### for my name

"because of me" or "because you believe in my name" or "because you believe in me"

##### you have not grown weary

"you have not become discouraged" or "you have not quit"

#### Revelation 2:4

##### I have against you the fact that

"I disapprove of you because" or "I am angry with you because"

##### you have left behind your first love

"you have stopped loving me as you did at the beginning"

#### Revelation 2:5

##### from where you have fallen

"how much you have changed" or "how much you used to love me"

#### Revelation 2:6

##### Nicolaitans

people who followed the teachings of a man named Nicolaus

#### Revelation 2:7

##### Let the one who has an ear, hear

"Let the one who is willing to listen, listen to" or "The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

##### the one who conquers

“anyone who is victorious” or “Those who win the fight against sin”

##### the paradise of God

"God's garden."

#### Revelation 2:8

##### the first and the last

This refers to the eternal nature of Jesus. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:17.

#### Revelation 2:9

##### I know your sufferings and your poverty

"I know how you have suffered and how poor you are"

##### I know the slander of those who say they are Jews

"I know how people who say they are Jews have said terrible things about you"

##### but they are not

"but they are not real Jews"

##### a synagogue of Satan

"a congregation of Satan” or “a group that belongs to Satan"

#### Revelation 2:10

##### The devil is about to throw some of you into prison

"The devil will soon cause others to put some of you in prison"

##### Be faithful until death

"Be faithful to me even if they kill you." The use of the word "until" does not mean that you should stop being faithful at death.

##### the crown

"the winner's crown." This was a wreath, originally of olive branches or laurel leaves, that was put on the head of a victorious athlete.

##### the crown of life

Possible meanings are 1) "a crown that shows that I have given you eternal life" or 2) "true life as a prize like a winner's crown"

#### Revelation 2:11

##### Let the one ... hear

"If you are willing to listen, listen to" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

##### The one who conquers

“anyone who is victorious” or “Those who win the fight against sin”

##### will not be hurt by the second death

"will not experience the second death" or "will not die a second time"

#### Revelation 2:12

##### Pergamum

This is the name of a city in a part of western Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:11.

#### Revelation 2:13

##### Satan's throne

Possible meanings are 1) Satan's power and evil influence on people, or 2) the place where Satan rules.

##### you hold on tightly to my name

"you firmly believe in me"

##### you did not deny your faith in me

"you continued to tell people that you believe in me"

##### Antipas

This is the name of a man.

#### Revelation 2:14

##### But I have a few things against you

"I disapprove of you because of a few things you have done" or "I am angry with you because of a few things you did."

##### who hold tightly to the teaching of Balaam, who

Possible meanings are 1) "who teach what Balaam taught; he" or 2) "who do what Balaam taught; he."

##### who taught Balak to throw a stumbling block before the sons of Israel

"who showed king Balak how to cause the people of Israel to sin"

##### be sexually immoral

"sin sexually" or "commit sexual sin"

#### Revelation 2:16

##### Repent, therefore

"So repent"

##### If you do not, I

"If you do not repent, I"

##### wage war against them

"fight against them"

##### with the sword in my mouth

"with the sword in my mouth, which is the word of God"

#### Revelation 2:17

##### To the one who conquers

“anyone who is victorious” or “Those who win the fight against sin”

#### Revelation 2:18

##### Thyatira

This is the name of a city in a part of western Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:11.

##### Son of God

This refers to Jesus, the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### who has eyes like a flame of fire

"whose eyes glow like a flame of fire"

##### feet like polished bronze

"whose feet are very shiny like polished bronze"

#### Revelation 2:19

##### your love and faith and service and your patient endurance

"How you have loved me and others, trusted me, served me and others, and endured troubles patiently"

#### Revelation 2:20

##### But I have this against you

"But I disapprove of some of the things you are doing" or "But I am angry with you because of something you are doing."

##### the woman Jezebel, who

"the woman who is just like Jezebel and"

#### Revelation 2:21

##### I gave her time to repent

"I gave her opportunity to repent" or "I waited for her to repent"

#### Revelation 2:22

##### I will throw her onto a sickbed ... into great suffering

"I will make her lie sick in bed ... I will make suffer greatly" or "I will make her very sick ... I will make suffer greatly"

##### those who commit adultery with her into great suffering

"I will make those who commit adultery with her to suffer greatly"

##### unless they repent of her deeds

"if they do not repent from doing the evil that she does" or "if they do not repent of participating in her deeds"

#### Revelation 2:23

##### I will strike her children dead

"I will kill her children"

##### her children

'her followers" or "the people who do what she teaches"

##### thoughts and hearts

"what people think and want"

##### I will give to each one of you

"I will punish or reward each one of you"

#### Revelation 2:24

##### everyone who does not hold this teaching

"everyone who does not believe this teaching"

##### deep things

"secret things"

#### Revelation 2:26

##### The one who conquers

“anyone who is victorious” or “Those who win the fight against sin”

##### does my works

"does what I command him to do"

#### Revelation 2:27

##### He will rule ... break them into pieces

This is a prophecy from the Old Testament about a king of Israel, but Jesus applies it here to those to whom he gives authority over the nations.

##### He will rule them with an iron rod

Ruling harshly is spoken of as ruling with an iron rod. Alternate translation: "He will rule them harshly as if striking them with an iron stick"

##### like clay jars he will break them into pieces

"He will defeat his enemies completely as if breaking clay jars into pieces"

#### Revelation 2:28

##### Just as I have received from my Father

Some languages may need to tell what was received. Possible meanings are 1) "Just as I have received authority from my Father" or 2) "Just as I have received the morning star from my Father."

##### my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

##### I will also give him

Here "him" refers to the one who conquers.

##### morning star

This is a bright star that sometimes appears early in the morning just before dawn. It was a symbol of victory.

## Chapter 3

#### Revelation 3:1

##### Sardis

This is the name of a city in the western part of Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:11.

##### the seven spirits

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The "seven spirits" refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God.

##### the seven stars

These stars are symbols that represent the seven angels of the seven churches.

##### You have a name that you are alive

"You have a reputation for being alive" or "People think that you are alive"

##### alive ... dead

Obeying and honoring God is spoken of as being alive; disobeying and dishonoring him is spoken of as being dead.

#### Revelation 3:2

##### Wake up and strengthen what remains but is about to die

"Wake up and complete the work that remains; otherwise what you have done will become worthless" or "Wake up. If you do not finish what you have started to do, your previous work will have been useless"

#### Revelation 3:3

##### what you have received and heard

"God's word that you heard and the truth that you believed"

##### if you do not wake up

"If you are not alert" or "If you are not careful"

##### I will come as a thief

Jesus will come at a time when people do not expect him, just as a thief comes when not expected.

#### Revelation 3:4

##### a few names

"a few people"

##### have not stained their clothes

"have not made their lives sinful"

##### will walk with me

"will live with me"

##### dressed in white

"and they will be dressed in white, which shows that they are pure"

#### Revelation 3:5

##### The one who conquers

“anyone who is victorious” or “Those who win the fight against sin”

##### will be clothed in white garments

"will wear white garments" or "I will give white clothes"

##### I will confess his name

"I will announce that he belongs to me"

##### before my Father

"in the presence of my Father"

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Revelation 3:6

##### Let the one ... hear

"If you are willing to listen, listen to" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

#### Revelation 3:7

##### Philadelphia

This is the name of a city in the western part of Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:11.

##### key of David

Jesus speaks of his authority to decide who may go into his kingdom as if it were King David's key.

##### he opens and no one shuts

"he opens the door to the kingdom and no one can close it"

##### he shuts and no one can open

"he closes the door and no one can open it"

#### Revelation 3:8

##### I have put before you an open door

"I have opened a door for you"

##### you have obeyed my word

Possible meanings are 1) "you have followed by teachings" or 2) "you have obeyed my commands"

#### Revelation 3:9

##### those calling themselves Jews but are not, but rather liars

"those calling themselves Jews when they are not Jews: instead, they are liars." These words further describe "those who belong to the synagogue of Satan."

##### bow down

"bow down in submission"

##### before your feet

"before you" or "to you"

##### they will know

"they will learn" or "they will admit"

#### Revelation 3:10

##### will also keep you from the hour of testing

"will also prevent the hour of testing from happening to you" or "will protect you so you do not enter the hour of testing"

##### is coming

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming.

#### Revelation 3:11

##### I am coming soon

"I am coming to judge soon"

##### Hold to what you have

"Continue to believe firmly"

##### crown

A crown was a wreath, originally of olive branches or laurel leaves, that was put on the head of a victorious athlete. Here "crown" stands for a reward.

#### Revelation 3:12

##### The one who conquers I will make a pillar in the temple of my God

“anyone who is victorious” or “Those who win the fight against sin”

#### Revelation 3:13

##### Let the one ... hear

"If you are willing to listen, listen to" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

#### Revelation 3:14

##### Laodicea

This is the name of a city in the western part of Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in Revelation 1:11.

##### The words of the Amen

Here "the Amen" is a name for Jesus Christ. He guarantees God's promises by saying amen to them.

##### the ruler over God's creation

Possible meanings are 1) "the one who rules over everything that God created" or 2) "the one through whom God created everything."

#### Revelation 3:15

##### you are neither cold nor hot

"you are like water that is neither cold nor hot"

#### Revelation 3:16

##### I am about to vomit you out of my mouth

"I will reject you as I would spit out lukewarm water"

#### Revelation 3:18

##### Buy from me gold refined by fire so that you may become rich, and brilliant white garments so you may clothe yourself and not show the shame of your nakedness, and salve to anoint your eyes so you will see

"Come to me and receive spiritual wealth, which is more valuable than gold that is refined by fire. Receive from me righteousness, which is like brilliant white garments, so that you will not be ashamed. And receive from me wisdom, which is like salve for the eyes, so that you may understand spiritual things"

#### Revelation 3:19

##### be earnest and repent

"be serious and repent"

#### Revelation 3:20

##### I am standing at the door and am knocking

"I am like one standing at the door and knocking"

##### hears my voice

"hears me speak" or "hears me call"

##### I will come into his home

"I will go in to his home"

##### and will eat with him

This represents being together as friends.

#### Revelation 3:21

##### The one who conquers

“anyone who is victorious” or “Those who win the fight against sin”

##### to sit down with me on my throne

"to rule with me" or "to sit down on my throne and rule with me"

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Revelation 3:22

##### Let the one ... hear

"If you are willing to listen, listen to" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

## Chapter 4

#### Revelation 4:1

##### After these things

"Just after I had seen these things." Here "these things" refers to what John saw in Revelation 2:1-3:22

##### an open door in heaven

This expression stands for the ability that God gave John to see into heaven, at least by means of a vision.

##### speaking to me like a trumpet

"speaking to me loudly like the sound of a trumpet"

##### trumpet

This refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

#### Revelation 4:2

##### I was in the Spirit

"I was influenced by the Spirit" or "The Spirit influenced me"

#### Revelation 4:3

##### jasper and carnelian

These are valuable stones. Jasper may have been clear like glass or crystal, and carnelian may have been red.

##### emerald

a green, valuable stone

#### Revelation 4:4

##### golden crowns

These were likenesses of wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. Such crowns, made of leaves, were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads.

#### Revelation 4:5

##### flashes of lightning

Use your language's way of describing what lightning looks like each time it appears.

##### rumblings, and crashes of thunder

These are the loud noises that thunder makes. Use your language's way of describing the sound of thunder.

##### seven spirits of God

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The "seven spirits" refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God.

#### Revelation 4:6

##### a sea of glass

"glass that was spread out like a sea"

##### like crystal

"clear as crystal"

##### In the middle of the throne and around the throne

"Immediately around the throne" or "Close to the throne and around it"

##### four living creatures

"four living beings" or "four living things"

#### Revelation 4:7

##### The first living creature was like a lion, the second living creature was like a calf, the third living creature had a face like a man, and the fourth living creature was like a flying eagle

How the head of each living creature appeared to John is expressed as a comparison with something more familiar.

##### living creature

"living being" or "living thing."

#### Revelation 4:8

##### full of eyes on top and underneath

The top and bottom of each wing was covered with eyes.

##### who is to come

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming.

#### Revelation 4:9

##### the one who sits on the throne, the one who lives forever and ever

This is one person. The one who sits on the throne lives forever and ever.

#### Revelation 4:10

##### fall down

They purposely lie down facing the ground to show that they are worshiping.

##### They lay their crowns before the throne

"they lay their crowns before the throne to show that they are submitting to him"

##### lay

Possible meanings are 1) to place or 2) to throw down forcibly, as of something worthless. The reader should understand that the elders are acting respectfully.

#### Revelation 4:11

##### our Lord and our God

"our Lord and God." This is one person, the one sitting on the throne.

##### to receive glory and honor and power

"to be praised for your glory, honor, and power" or "for everyone to praise you because you are glorious, honorable, and powerful"

## Chapter 5

#### Revelation 5:1

##### Then I saw

"After I saw those things, I saw"

##### the one who was seated on the throne

This is the same "one" as in Revelation 4:2-3.

##### a scroll written on the front and on the back

"a scroll with writing on the front and the back"

##### sealed with seven seals

"and it had seven seals keeping it closed"

#### Revelation 5:2

##### Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?

This can be translated as a command: "The one who is worthy to do this should come to break the seals and open the scroll!"

#### Revelation 5:3

##### in heaven or on the earth or under the earth

"anywhere in heaven or on the earth or under the earth"

#### Revelation 5:5

##### Look

"Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

##### The Lion of the tribe of Judah

"The one who is called the Lion of the tribe of Judah" or "The king who is called the Lion of the tribe of Judah"

##### The Lion

The king is spoken of as if he were a lion because a lion is very strong.

##### the Root of David

"the Descendant of David"

#### Revelation 5:6

##### a Lamb

A "lamb" is a young sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ.

##### seven spirits of God

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The "seven spirits" refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God.

##### sent out into all the earth

"which God sent out over all the earth"

#### Revelation 5:8

##### fell down

"lay down on the ground." Their faces were toward the ground to show that they were worshiping the Lamb. They did this on purpose; they did not fall accidentally.

##### Each of them

Possible meanings are 1) "each of the elders and living creatures" or 2) "each of the elders."

##### a golden bowl full of incense, which are the prayers of God's holy people

The incense here is a symbol for the believers' prayers to God.

#### Revelation 5:9

##### For you were slaughtered

"For they slaughtered you" or "For people killed you"

##### slaughtered

If your language has a word for killing an animal for a sacrifice, consider using it here.

##### with your blood

Since blood represents a person's life, losing the blood represents dying. This probably means "by your death" or "by dying."

##### you purchased people for God

"you bought people so that they could belong to God" or "you paid the price so that people could belong to God"

##### from every tribe, language, people, and nation

This means that people from every ethnic group are included.

#### Revelation 5:11

##### ten thousands of ten thousands and thousands of thousands

"millions" or "too many thousands to count"

#### Revelation 5:12

##### Worthy is the Lamb, who has been slaughtered

"The Lamb, who has been slaughtered, is worthy"

##### to receive power, wealth, wisdom, strength, honor, glory, and praise

"for everyone to honor, glorify, and praise him because he is powerful, wealthy, wise, and strong"

#### Revelation 5:13

##### in heaven and on the earth and under the earth

This means everywhere: the place where God and the angels live, the place where people and animals live, and the place where those who have died are.

##### To the one who sits on the throne and to the Lamb be

"May he who sits on the throne and the Lamb have"

## Chapter 6

#### Revelation 6:1

##### Come!

This is a command to one person, apparently the rider of the white horse who is spoken of in verse 2.

#### Revelation 6:2

##### he was given a crown

This can be translated with an active verb. Alternate translation: "he received a crown" or "God gave him a crown"

#### Revelation 6:3

##### the second seal

"the next seal" or "seal number two"

##### the second living creature

"the next living creature" or "living creature number two"

#### Revelation 6:4

##### came out—fiery red

"came out. It was red like fire" or "came out. It was bright red"

##### To its rider was given permission

"God gave permission to its rider" or "Its rider received person"

##### This rider was given a huge sword

"This rider received a huge sword" or "God gave this rider a huge sword"

#### Revelation 6:5

##### the third seal

"the next seal" or "seal number three"

##### the third living creature

"the next living creature" or "living creature number three"

##### a pair of scales

a tool used for weighing things

#### Revelation 6:6

##### A choenix of wheat for one denarius

"A choenix of wheat now costs one denarius" or "Buy a choenix of wheat with one denarius"

##### one denarius

"one silver coin" or "the pay for one day of work"

##### But do not harm the oil and the wine

If the oil and wine were harmed, there would be less of them for people to buy, and their prices would go up.

#### Revelation 6:7

##### the fourth seal

"the next seal" or "seal number four"

##### the fourth living creature

"the next living creature" or "living creature number four"

#### Revelation 6:8

##### pale horse

"grey horse." This is the color of a dead body, so its color is a symbol of death.

##### one-fourth of the earth

"one-fourth of the people on the earth"

##### the sword

A sword is a weapon, and here it represents war.

##### with the wild animals of the earth

This means that Death and Hades would cause the wild animals to attack and kill people.

#### Revelation 6:9

##### the fifth seal

"the next seal" or "seal number five"

##### under the altar

This may have been "at the base of the altar."

##### those who had been killed

"those whom others had killed"

##### because of the word of God and the testimony which they held

"because they testified about the word of God"

#### Revelation 6:10

##### avenge our blood

"punish those who killed us"

#### Revelation 6:11

##### Then each of them was given a white robe

"Then each of them received a white robe"

##### they were told

"God told them" or "an angel told them"

##### until the full number of their fellow servants and their brothers who were to be killed, just as they had been killed, was made complete

"until enemies have killed all of Christ's servants whom God had determined would die, just as those under the altar had died"

##### brothers

"fellow Christians" or "fellow believers"

#### Revelation 6:12

##### the sixth seal

"the next seal" or "seal number six"

##### as black as sackcloth

"as black as mourning clothes"

##### like blood

"red like blood"

#### Revelation 6:13

##### just as a fig tree drops its unripe figs when shaken by a stormy wind

"just as figs do when a stormy wind shakes a fig tree and causes it to drop its unripe figs"

#### Revelation 6:14

##### The sky vanished like a scroll that was being rolled up

The sky was normally thought of as being as strong as a sheet of metal, but now it had become as weak as a sheet of paper and was easily torn and rolled up.

#### Revelation 6:15

##### the commanders

soldiers who command warriors during battle

##### caves

large holes in the sides of hills

#### Revelation 6:16

##### the face of the one

"the presence of the one" or "the one"

#### Revelation 6:17

##### the great day of their wrath has come

"this is the terrible time when they will punish people"

##### their wrath

"Their" refers to the one on the throne and the Lamb.

##### Who is able to stand?

"No one can survive."

## Chapter 7

#### Revelation 7:1

##### the four corners of the earth

The earth is spoken of as if it were flat and square like a sheet of paper. The phrase "the four corners" refers to the north, south, east, and west.

#### Revelation 7:2

##### the seal of the living God

"the marker of the living God" or "the stamp of the living God"

#### Revelation 7:3

##### put a seal on the foreheads

"put a mark on the foreheads"

##### foreheads

The forehead is the top of the face, above the eyes.

#### Revelation 7:4

##### those who were sealed

"those whom God's angel marked"

##### 144,000

"one hundred forty-four thousand people"

#### Revelation 7:5

##### twelve thousand from ... Judah were sealed

"God's angel marked twelve thousand from ... Judah"

#### Revelation 7:9

##### a huge multitude

"a huge crowd" or "a great number of people"

##### white robes

Here the color "white" represents purity.

#### Revelation 7:10

##### Salvation belongs to our God, who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb!

"Our God, who sits on the throne, and the Lamb have saved us!"

#### Revelation 7:11

##### the four living creatures

These are the four creatures mentioned in Revelation 4:6-8.

#### Revelation 7:12

##### Praise, glory, wisdom, thanksgiving, honor, power, and strength be to our God

"Our God is worthy of all praise, glory, wisdom, thanks, honor, power and strength" or "We must give praise, glory, thanks, and honor to our God"

##### forever and ever

These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the praise will never end.

#### Revelation 7:13

##### these, clothed with white robes

The white robes showed that these people were righteous.

#### Revelation 7:14

##### have come out of the great tribulation

"have survived the great tribulation" or "have lived through the great tribulation"

##### the great tribulation

"the time of terrible suffering"

##### They have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb

"They have been made righteous by washing their robes white in his blood"

##### the blood of the Lamb

The word "blood" is used to refer to the death of Lamb.

#### Revelation 7:15

##### they ... them

These words refer to those people who have come through the great tribulation.

##### day and night

These two parts of the day are used together to mean "all the time" or "without stopping"

##### will spread his tent over them

"will shelter them" or "will protect them"

#### Revelation 7:16

##### They ... them

These words refer to those people who have come through the great tribulation.

##### The sun will not beat down

"The sun will not burn them" or "The sun will not make them weak"

#### Revelation 7:17

##### them ... them ... their

These words refer to those people who have come through the great tribulation.

##### the Lamb at the center of the throne will

"the Lamb, who is standing in the middle of the area around the throne, will be"

##### For the Lamb ... will shepherd them

"For the Lamb ... will be like a shepherd to them" or "For the Lamb ... will care for them as a person cares for his animals"

##### he will guide them to springs of living water

"he will guide them like a shepherd guiding his sheep to fresh water" or "he will guide them to life like a shepherd guiding his sheep to living water"

##### God will wipe away every tear from their eyes

"God will wipe away their sadness, like wiping away tears" or "God will cause them to not be sad anymore"

## Chapter 8

#### Revelation 8:1

##### the seventh seal

"the next seal" or "the final seal" or "seal number seven"

#### Revelation 8:2

##### seven trumpets were given to them

Possible meanings are 1) "God gave them seven trumpets" or 2) "the Lamb gave them seven trumpets"

#### Revelation 8:3

##### he would offer it

"he would offer the incense to God by burning it"

#### Revelation 8:4

##### the angel's hand

"the bowl in the angel's hand"

#### Revelation 8:5

##### filled it with fire

"filled it with burning coals" or "filled it with coals of fire"

#### Revelation 8:7

##### It was thrown down onto the earth

"The angel threw the hail and fire mixed with blood down onto the earth"

##### a third of it was burned up, a third of the trees were burned up, and all the green grass was burned up

"it burned up a third of the earth, a third of the trees, and all the green grass"

#### Revelation 8:8

##### The second angel

"The next angel" or "Angel number two"

##### something like a great mountain burning with fire was thrown

"the angel threw something like a great mountain burning with fire"

##### became blood

Possible meanings are it 1) "became red like blood" or it 2) really became blood.

#### Revelation 8:9

##### the living creatures in the sea

"the things living in the sea" or "the fish and other animals that lived in the sea"

#### Revelation 8:10

##### a huge star fell from the sky, blazing like a torch

"a huge star that was blazing like a torch fell from the sky." The fire of the huge star looked similar to the fire of a torch.

##### torch

a stick with one end lit on fire to provide light

#### Revelation 8:11

##### The name of the star is Wormwood

"The name of the star is Bitterness" or "The name of the star is Bitter Medicine"

##### became wormwood

"became bitter like wormwood" or "became bitter"

##### died from the waters that became bitter

"died when they drank the bitter water"

#### Revelation 8:12

##### a third of the sun was struck

"a third of the sun changed" or "God changed a third of the sun"

##### a third of them turned dark

Possible meanings are 1) "one third of the time they were dark" or 2) "one third of the sun, one third of the moon, and one third of the stars became dark"

#### Revelation 8:13

##### because of the remaining trumpet blasts that are about to be sounded by the three angels

"because the three angels who have not yet sounded their trumpets are about to sound them"

## Chapter 9

#### Revelation 9:1

##### I saw a star from heaven that had fallen

John saw the star after it had fallen. He did not watch if fall.

##### the key to the shaft of the bottomless pit

"the key that unlocks the shaft of the bottomless pit"

##### the shaft of the bottomless pit

Possible meanings are 1) "shaft" is another way of referring to the pit and describes it as long and narrow, or 2) "shaft" refers to the opening of the pit.

##### the bottomless pit

This is an extremely deep, narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom.

#### Revelation 9:2

##### like smoke from a huge furnace

"like the great amount of smoke that comes from a huge furnace"

##### turned dark

"became dark"

#### Revelation 9:3

##### locusts

insects that fly together in large groups. People fear them because they can eat up all the leaves in gardens and on trees.

##### power like that of scorpions

"the ability to sting people as scorpions do"

#### Revelation 9:4

##### They were told not to damage the grass on the earth or any green plant or tree

Ordinary locusts were a terrible threat to people because when they swarm, they can eat up all the grass and all the leaves on plants and trees. These locusts were told not to do this.

##### but only the people

"but only to harm the people"

##### the seal of God

"the mark of God" or "stamp of God"

##### foreheads

The forehead is the top of the face, above the eyes.

#### Revelation 9:5

##### those people

the people whom the locusts were stinging

##### but only to torture them

"but only given permission to make them suffer terrible pain"

##### to torture them for five months

The locusts would be allowed to do this for five months.

##### the sting of a scorpion

A scorpion is a small insect with a poisonous stinger at the end of its long tail. The sting can cause severe pain or even death.

#### Revelation 9:6

##### people will seek death but will not find it

"people will try to find a way to die but will not find it" or "people will try to kill themselves but will not find a way to die"

#### Revelation 9:7

##### crowns of gold

These were likenesses of wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. Examples actually made of leaves were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads.

#### Revelation 9:10

##### They had tails

The word "They" refers to the locusts.

##### with stingers like scorpions

"with stingers like scorpion stingers" or "with stingers that could cause terrible pain as scorpion stingers can"

##### in their tails they had power to harm people for five months

Possible meanings are 1) they had power for five months to harm people or 2) they could sting people and the people would be in pain for five months.

#### Revelation 9:11

##### Abaddon ... Apollyon

Both names mean "Destroyer."

#### Revelation 9:13

##### I heard a voice coming

"I heard someone speaking"

##### horns of the golden altar

These are horn-shaped extensions at each of the four corners of the top of the altar.

#### Revelation 9:14

##### the four angels who had been bound

"the four angels whom God had commanded someone to bind" or "the four angels whom God bound"

#### Revelation 9:15

##### The four angels who had been prepared for ... that year were released

"The angel released the four angels who had been prepared for ... that year"

##### for that hour, that day, that month, and that year

"for that exact time"

#### Revelation 9:16

##### 200,000,000

Some ways to express this are: "two hundred million" or "two hundred thousand thousand" or "twenty thousand times ten thousand." If your language does not have a specific number for this, you could also see how you translated a similar large number in Revelation 5:11

#### Revelation 9:17

##### out of their mouths came fire, smoke, and sulfur

"fire, smoke, and sulfur came out of their mouths"

#### Revelation 9:20

##### those who were not killed by these plagues

"those whom the plagues had not killed"

##### the works of their hands

"the deeds they had done"

##### things that cannot see, hear, or walk

"even though idols cannot see, hear, or walk"

## Chapter 10

#### Revelation 10:1

##### He was clothed in a cloud

John speaks of the angel as if he were wearing a cloud as his clothing.

##### His face was like the sun

"His face was bright like the sun"

##### his feet were like pillars of fire

"his legs were like pillars of fire"

#### Revelation 10:2

##### He put his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land

"He stood with his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land"

#### Revelation 10:3

##### Then he shouted

"Then the angel shouted"

##### the seven thunders spoke out

"the seven thunders made a loud noise" or "the thunder sounded very loudly seven times"

#### Revelation 10:4

##### but I heard a voice from heaven

"but I heard someone speaking from heaven"

##### Seal up

"Keep secret"

#### Revelation 10:6

##### He swore by the one who lives forever and ever

"He asked that what he was going to say would be confirmed by the one who lives forever and ever"

##### There will be no more delay

"There will be no more waiting" or "God will not delay"

#### Revelation 10:7

##### the mystery of God will be accomplished

"God will accomplish his mystery" or "God will complete his secret plan"

#### Revelation 10:8

##### The voice I heard from heaven

"The one I heard speak from heaven" or "The one who had spoken to me from heaven"

#### Revelation 10:9

##### make ... bitter

"make ... sour" or "make ... acid." This refers to a bad taste from the stomach after eating something that is not good.

## Chapter 20

#### Revelation 20:1

##### Then I saw

Here "I" refers to John.

##### bottomless pit

This is an extremely deep, narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom.

#### Revelation 20:3

##### sealed it over him

"sealed it to prevent anyone from opening it"

##### deceive the nations

"deceive the people-groups"

##### he must be set free

"God will command the angel to free him"

#### Revelation 20:4

##### who had been given authority to judge

"whom God had given authority to judge"

##### who had been beheaded

"whose heads others had cut off"

##### for the testimony about Jesus and for the word of God

"because they had spoken the truth about Jesus and about the word of God"

##### They came to life

"They came back to life" or "They became alive again"

#### Revelation 20:5

##### The rest of the dead

"All of the other dead people"

##### the thousand years were ended

"the end of the 1,000 years"

#### Revelation 20:6

##### Over these the second death has no power

"These people will not experience the second death"

##### the second death

"the final death in the lake of fire"

#### Revelation 20:7

##### Satan will be released from his prison

"God will release Satan from his prison"

#### Revelation 20:9

##### They went

"Satan's army went"

##### the beloved city

This refers to Jerusalem.

##### fire came down from heaven and devoured them

"God sent fire from heaven to burn them up"

#### Revelation 20:10

##### The devil, who deceived them, was thrown into

"God threw the devil, who had deceived them, into" or "God's angel threw the devil, who had deceived them, into"

##### lake of burning sulfur

"the lake of fire that burns with sulfur" or "place full of fire that burns with sulfur."

##### where the beast and the false prophet had been thrown

"where he had also thrown the beast and the false prophet"

##### They will be tormented

"God will torment them"

#### Revelation 20:11

##### The earth and the heavens fled away from his presence, but there was no place for them to go

John describes heaven and earth as if they were people who were trying to escape God's judgment. This means that God completely destroyed the old heaven and earth.

#### Revelation 20:12

##### the books were opened

"someone opened the books"

##### The dead were judged

"God judged the people who had died and now lived again"

##### by what was recorded

"by what he had recorded"

#### Revelation 20:13

##### The sea gave up the dead ... Death and Hades gave up the dead

Here John speaks of the sea, death, and Hades as if they were living persons.

##### the dead were judged

"God judged the dead people"

##### Hades

Here "Hades" is a metonym that represents the place where unbelievers go when they die, to wait for God's judgment.

#### Revelation 20:14

##### Death and Hades were thrown

"God threw Death and Hades" or "God's angel threw Death and Hades"

##### the second death

"the final death in the lake of fire"

#### Revelation 20:15

##### If anyone's name was not found written

"If God's angel did not find a person's name"